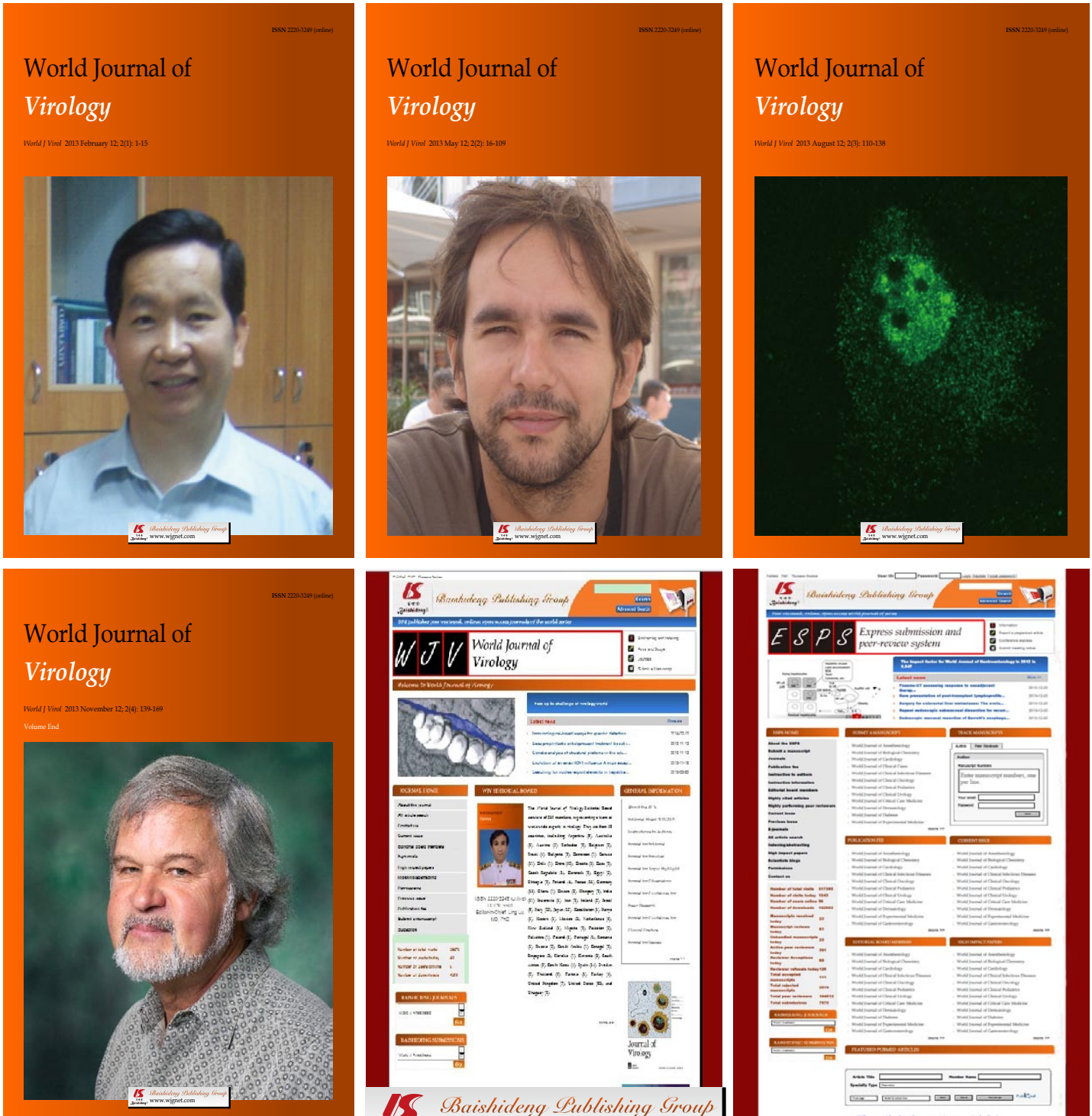
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

2013 Bound Volume 2 Issue 1-4: 1-169



World Journal of Virology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of virology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Virology* Editorial Board consists of 342 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in virology. They are from 58 countries, including Argentina (5), Australia (6), Austria (3), Barbados (1), Belgium (2), Brazil (6), Bulgaria (1), Cameroon (1), Canada (12), Chile (1), China (52), Croatia (2), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (1), Egypt (2), Ethiopia (1), Finland (4), France (11), Germany (12), Ghana (1), Greece (2), Hungary (1), India (11), Indonesia (1), Iran (1), Ireland (3), Israel (5), Italy (24), Japan (13), Kazakhstan (1), Kenya (1), Kosovo (1), Mexico (2), Netherlands (6), New Zealand (1), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (2), Palestine (1), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Romania (1), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Senegal (1), Singapore (2), Slovakia (1), Slovenia (2), South Africa (3), South Korea (4), Spain (14), Sweden (3), Thailand (8), Tunisia (1), Turkey (4), United Kingdom (7), United States (82), and Uruguay (1).

Guang-Wen Cao, *Shanghai*
Paul Kay Sheung Chan, *Hong Kong*
Yuan-Ding Chen, *Kunming*
An-Chun Cheng, *Ya'an*
Shang-Jin Cui, *Harbin*
Xiao-Ping Dong, *Beijing*
Zai-Feng Fan, *Beijing*
Jean-Michel Garcia, *Hong Kong*
Xiu-Guo Hua, *Shanghai*
Wen-Lin Huang, *Guangdong*
Margaret Ip, *Hong Kong*
Dao-Hong Jiang, *Wuhan*
Jian-Qi Lian, *Xi'an*
Xin-Yong Liu, *Jinan*
Xiao-Yang Mo, *Changsha*
Beatrice Nal, *Hong Kong*
Cheng-Feng Qin, *Beijing*
Hua-Ji Qiu, *Harbin*
Xiao-Feng Ren, *Harbin*
Huai-Chang Sun, *Yangzhou*
Jian-Wei Wang, *Beijing*
Ning Wang, *Beijing*
You-Chun Wang, *Beijing*
Mary Miu Yee Waye, *Hong Kong*
Patrick CY Woo, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Qing Wu, *Nanjing*
Rui Wu, *Luoyang*
Yu-Zhang Wu, *Chongqing*
Chuang-Xi Zhang, *Hangzhou*
Guo-Zhong Zhang, *Beijing*
Chun-Fu Zheng, *Wuhan*

Croatia

Snjezana Zidovec Lepej, *Zagreb*
Pero Lučin, *Rijeka*

Cuba

Maria G Guzman, *La Habana*

Czech Republic

Daniel Ruzek, *Ceske Budejovice*

Denmark

Håvard Jenssen, *Roskilde*

Egypt

Samia Ahmed Kamal, *Cairo*
Abdel-Rahman Zekri, *Cairo*

Ethiopia

Woldaregay Erku Abegaz, *Addis Ababa*

Finland

Jussi Hepojoki, *Helsinki*
Anne Jääskeläinen, *Helsinki*
Irmeli Lautenschlager, *Helsinki*
Antti Vaheri, *Helsinki*

France

Laurent Belec, *Paris*
Christian A Devaux, *Montpellier*
Jean Dubuisson, *Lille*
Wattel Eric, *Lyon*
Duverlie Gilles, *Amiens*
Gilles Gosselin, *Montpellier*
Bedouelle Hugues, *Paris*
Eric J Kremer, *Montpellier*
Denis Rasschaert, *Tours*
Farzin Roohvand, *Tehran and Paris*
Christian Trépo, *Lyon*

Germany

Gualtiero Alvisi, *Heidelberg*
Claus Thomas Bock, *Berlin*
Andreas Dotzauer, *Bremen*
Ingo Drexler, *Düsseldorf*
Christoph Eisenbach, *Heidelberg*
Thomas Iftner, *Göttingen*
Florian Lang, *TuBingen*
Michael Nevels, *Regensburg*
Stefan Pöhlmann, *Göttingen*
Andreas MH Sauerbrei, *Jena*
Jonas Schmidt-Chanasit, *Hamburg*
Frank Tacke, *Aachen*

Ghana

Kwamena W Sagoe, *Accra*

Greece

Apostolos I Beloukas, *Athens*
George V Papatheodoridis, *Athens*

Hungary

Krisztián Bányai, *Budapest*

India

Akhil C Banerjea, *New Delhi*
Jayta Bhattacharyaan, *Pune*
Runu Chakravarty, *Kolkata*
Sibnarayan Datta, *Tezpur*
Jitendra Kumar, *Punjab*
Sunil Kumar Mukherjee, *New Delhi*
Ramesh S Paranjape, *Pune*
Sharma Pradeep, *Kamal*
HK Pradhan, *New Delhi*
Shamala D Sekaran, *New Delhi*
Rasappa Viswanathan, *Coimbatore*

Indonesia

Andi Utama, *Tangerang*

Iran

Seyed M Ghiasi, *Tehran*

Ireland

Carlo Bidoia, *Dublin*
Liam J Fanning, *Cork*
Weifeng Shi, *Dublin*

Israel

Irit Davidson, *Bet Dagan*
Yedidya Gafni, *Bet Dagan*
Murad Ghanim, *Bet Dagan*
Murad Ghanim, *Rehovot*
Raz Jelinek, *Beer Sheva*

Italy

Alberto Alberti, *Sassari*
Gualtiero Alvisi, *Padua*
Giorgio Barbarini, *Voghera*
Massimiliano Berretta, *Aviano*
Franco Maria Buonaguro, *Naples*
Maria R Capobianchi, *Procida*
Arnaldo Caruso, *Brescia*
Daniel Oscar Cicero, *Buenos Aires*
Marco Ciotti, *Rome*
Cristina Costa, *Turin*
Piergiuseppe De Berardinis, *Naples*
Federico De Marco, *Rome*
Massimo EA De Paschale, *Legnano*
Maurizia Debiaggi, *Pavia*
Paolo Fabris, *Vicenza*
Daniele Focosi, *Pisa*
Simone Giannecchini, *Florence*
Roberto Manfredi, *Bologna*
Vito Martella, *Bari*
Nicola Principi, *Milan*
Giuseppe Portella, *Aichi Prefecture*
Giovanni Rezza, *Rome*
Diego Ripamonti, *Bergamo*
Teresa Antonia Santantonio, *Foggia*

Japan

Masashi Emoto, *Maebashi*
Bin Gotoh, *Otsu*
Kazuyoshi Ikuta, *Suita*
Hiroki Isomura, *Nagoya*
Hideya Kawasaki, *Suita*
Eiichi N Kodama, *Sendai*
Hiromitsu Moriyama, *Tokyo*
Kenji Okuda, *Aichi Prefecture*
Ikuo Shoji, *Aichi Prefecture*
Nobuhiro Suzuki, *Kurashiki*
Takashi Suzuki, *Kurashiki*
Akifumi Takaori-Kondo, *Kyoto*
Tetsuya Toyoda, *Toyohashi*

Kazakhstan

Vladimir E Berezin, *Almaty*

Kenya

George Gachara Maina, *Nairobi*

Kosovo

Lul Raka, *Nairobi*

Mexico

Juan Ernesto Ludert, *Mexico City*
Julio Reyes-Leyva, *Metepec*

Netherlands

KS Meriaha Benschop, *Amsterdam*
Ben Berkhout, *Amsterdam*
Byron EE Martina, *Rotterdam*
Willem JG Melchers, *Nijmegen*
Monique Nijhuis, *Utrecht*
John W Rossen, *Tilburg*

New Zealand

Olga S Garkavenko, *Auckland*

Nigeria

Olajide Adewale Owolodun, *Jos*

Pakistan

Muhammad Masroor Alam, *Islamabad*
Muhammad Imran Qadir, Faisalabad

Palestine

Ahamd Y Amro, *Jerusalem*

Poland

Brygida Knysz, *Wroclaw*

Portugal

Celso Cunha, *Lisbon*

Romania

Anda Baicus, *Bucharest*

Russia

Anton Buzdin, *Moscow*
Elena Vasil'evna Gavrilova, *Novosibirsk*

Saudi Arabia

Ahmed Sayed Abdel-Moneim, *Al-Taif*

Senegal

Assan Jaye, *Banjul*

Singapore

Sophie Bellanger, *Singapore*
Ding Xiang Liu, *Singapore*

Slovakia

Gabriela Bukovska, *Bratislava*

Slovenia

Uros Krapez, *Ljubljana*
Andrej Steyer, *Ljubljana*

South Africa

Huub C Gelderblom, *Durban*
Dirk Stephan, *Stellenbosch*
Janusz Tadeusz Paweska, *Stellenbosch*

South Korea

Sang Hoon Ahn, *Seoul*
Tae-Jin Choi, *Busan*
Junsoo Park, *Wonju*
Sang heui Seo, *Daejeon*

Spain

Alfredo Berzal-Herranz, *Granada*
Rafael Blasco, *Madrid*
Luis Enjuanes, *Madrid*
Juan Martínez Hernández, *Madrid*
Jaime Gómez Laguna, *Córdoba*
Cecilio Lopez-Galindez, *Madrid*
F Xavier López-Labrador, *Valencia*
José A Melero, *Madrid*
Luis Menéndez-Arias, *Madrid*
Andrés Moya, *Valencia*
David Roiz Pereda, *Granada*
Pilar Perez-Romero, *Sevilla*
Juan-Carlos Saiz, *Madrid*
Natalia Soriano-Sarabia, *Madrid*

Sweden

Göran P L Bucht, *Umeå*
Ali Mirazimi, *Stockholm*
Bo F Oberg, *Huddinge*

Thailand

Prasert Auewarakul, *Bangkok*
Parin Chaivisuthangkura, *Bangkok*
Wasin Charerntantanakul, *Chiang Mai*
Wansika Kiatpathomchai, *Bangkok*
Sasisopin Kiertiburanakul, *Bangkok*
Winyou Mitarnun, *Chiang Mai*
Yong Poovorawan, *Bangkok*
Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*

Tunisia

Olfa Bahri, *Tunis*

Turkey

Ömer Coşkun, *Ankara*
Iftihar Koksal, *Trabzon*
Aykut Ozdarendeli, *Kayseri*
Ayca Arzu Sayiner, *Izmir*

United Kingdom

Shiu-Wan Chan, *Manchester*
Maurizio Chiriva-Internati, *Nottingham*
Iain M Morgan, *Glasgow*
Mark Richard Nelson, *London*
Adrian William Philbey, *Glasgow*
James P Stewart, *Liverpool*
Gavin W G Wilkinson, *Cardiff*

United States

Nafees Ahmad, *Tucson*
Ashok Aiyar, *Los Angeles*
Judith M Ball, *Texas*
Igor M Belyakov, *Gaithersburg*
Lbachir BenMohamed, *Irvine*
Preeti Bharaj, *Orlando*
Jay C Brown, *Virginia*
Victor Ephraim Buckwold, *Walkersville*
Alexander Bukreyev, *Galveston*
Joseph John Carter, *Seattle*
Maria Graciela Castro, *Los Angeles*
YanPing Chen, *Beltsville*
Xiaojiang S Chen, *Los Angeles*
Pawel S Ciborowski, *Omaha*
Harel Dahari, *Chicago*
David A Davis, *Omaha*
Don J Diamond, *Duarte*
Vincent N Fondong, *Dover*
Phillip A Furman, *Princeton*
Shou-Jiang Gao, *San Antonio*
Kaplan Gerardo, *Bethesda*
David Richard Gretch, *Seattle*
Hailong Guo, *Rochester*
Haitao Guo, *Doylestown*
Young Shin Hahn, *Charlottesville*
Amnon Hizi, *Bethesda*
Kuan-The Jeang, *Bethesda*
Wei Jiang, *Charleston*
Xia Jin, *Rochester*
Clinton Jimmie Jones, *Lincoln*
Robert Jordan, *Oregon*
Adriana Elisa Kajon, *Albuquerque*
Krishna MV Ketha, *Bethesda*
Paul R Kinchington, *Pittsburgh*
Prasad S Koka, *San Diego*

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2013 February 12; 2(1): 1-15

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 2 Number 1 February 12, 2013

World Journal of Virology
Volume 2 Number 1 February 12, 2013

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjv@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 12, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i1.1

World J Virol 2013 February 12; 2(1): 1-5
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Betanodavirus: Mitochondrial disruption and necrotic cell death

Jiann-Ruey Hong

Jiann-Ruey Hong, Laboratory of Molecular Virology and Biotechnology, Institute of Biotechnology, National Cheng Kung University, Tainan 701, Taiwan
Author contributions: Hong JR solely contributed to this paper.
Supported by A grant awarded Dr. Jiann-Ruey Hong from the National Science Council, Taiwan, No. NSC 97-2313-B-006-004-MY3
Correspondence to: Dr. Jiann-Ruey Hong, Laboratory of Molecular Virology and Biotechnology, Institute of Biotechnology, National Cheng Kung University, No.1, University Road, Tainan 701, Taiwan. jrhong@mail.ncku.edu.tw
Telephone: +886-6-2003082 Fax: +886-6-2766505
Received: March 8, 2012 Revised: February 3, 2013
Accepted: February 8, 2013
Published online: February 12, 2013

Abstract

Betanodaviruses cause viral nervous necrosis, an infectious neuropathological condition in fish that is characterized by necrosis of the central nervous system, including the brain and retina. This disease can cause mass mortality in larval and juvenile populations of several teleost species and is of global economic importance. The mechanism of brain and retina damage during betanodavirus infection is poorly understood. In this review, we will focus recent results that highlight betanodavirus infection-induced molecular death mechanisms *in vitro*. Betanodavirus can induce host cellular death and post-apoptotic necrosis in fish cells. Betanodavirus-induced necrotic cell death is also correlated with loss of mitochondrial membrane potential in fish cells, as this necrotic cell death is blocked by the mitochondrial membrane permeability transition pore inhibitor bongkrekic acid and the expression of the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 family member zfBcl-xL. Moreover, this mitochondria-mediated necrotic cell death may require a caspase-independent pathway. A possible cellular death pathway involving mitochondrial function and the modulator zfBcl-xs is discussed which may provide new insights into the necrotic pathogenesis of betanodavirus.

Key words: Nervous necrosis virus; Mitochondrial membrane potential; Bongkrekic acid; zfBcl-xL; Caspase-independent; Brain damage

Hong JR. Betanodavirus: Mitochondrial disruption and necrotic cell death. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(1): 1-5 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i1.1

BETANODAVIRUS

Betanodaviruses cause viral nervous necrosis, an infectious neuropathological condition in fish that is characterized by necrosis of the central nervous system, including the brain and retina[1]. This disease can cause mass mortality in larval and juvenile populations of several teleost species and is of global economic importance[2].

The family *Nodaviridae* is comprised of the genera *Alphanodavirus* and *Betanodavirus*. *Alphanodavirus* predominantly infects insects, while *Betanodavirus* predominantly infects fish[3-7]. Nodaviruses are small, nonenveloped, spherical viruses with bipartite positive-sense RNA genomes (RNA1 and RNA2) that are capped but not polyadenylated[3]. RNA1 encodes a non-structural protein of approximately 110 kDa that has been designated RNA-dependent RNA polymerase or protein A. This protein is vital for replication of the viral genome. RNA2 encodes a 42 kDa capsid protein that may also function in the induction of cell death[8,9]. Nodaviruses also synthesize RNA3, a sub-genomic RNA species from the 3' terminus of RNA1. RNA3 contains two putative open reading frames that potentially encode a 111 amino-acid protein B1 and a 75 amino-acid protein B2[3,10,11]. Recently, the betanodavirus B1 protein has been shown to have an anti-necrotic death function during the early replication stages[10]. In contrast, the betanodavirus B2 protein appears to function as a suppressor of host siRNA silencing[12,13] or as a

necrotic death factor[14,15]. In addition, red-spotted grouper nervous necrosis virus (RGNNV) infection and expression can trigger the ER stress response, which results in the upregulation of the 78 kDa glucose regulated protein at the early replication stage[16]. Very recently, RGNNV has been shown to induce the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) during the early and middle replication stages[17].

NECROTIC CELL DEATH DURING BETANODAVIRUS INFECTION

Apoptosis and necrosis are two stereotyped mechanisms by which nucleated eukaryotic cells die[18,19]. Necrosis is considered a pathological reaction to major perturbations in the cellular environment such as anoxia[20], while apoptosis is a physiological process that preserves homeostasis by facilitating normal tissue turnover[21,22]. The mechanisms leading to apoptosis are better understood[23-26].

Tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) is a crucial regulator of the innate and adaptive immune response against microbial infection *via* its regulation of cell death and survival[27]. TNF-α is a pro-inflammatory cytokine that plays important roles in diverse host responses, such as cell proliferation, differentiation, necrosis, apoptosis, and induction of other cytokines. Recently, TNF-α has been shown to induce either nuclear factor κB-initiated survival or apoptosis, depending on the cellular context[28]. As such, many viruses have strategies to neutralize TNF-α either by direct binding and inhibition of the ligand or receptor or by modulation of various downstream signaling events[29,30].

The death receptors (DRs), including TNF receptor-1 (TNF-R1), Fas, DR3, DR4, DR5, and TRAIL, contain an intracellular "death domain" that influences downstream signaling pathways by means of homotypic interactions with adaptor proteins, such as FADD, TRADD, and receptor-interacting protein-1 (RIP1)[31]. These DRs induce apoptosis in many cell types through activation of caspase 8. Activated caspase 8 may act indirectly to induce apoptosis through cleavage of Bid. The truncated Bid protein acts on the mitochondria to cause the release of cytochrome c, which further activates downstream caspase 9. Furthermore, TNF-R1 is also involved in the initiation of necrotic cell death (Figure 1)[32]. TNFα and other cytokines that bind to receptors of different-classes promote the generation of ROS, which functions as a second messenger in the necrotic cell death pathway[33,34].

RIP1 is an intracellular adaptor molecule with kinase activity[35]. The RIP1[36] and RIP3[37] proteins appear to be crucial for the initiation of caspase-independent cell death. RIP1 is also necessary for the generation of ROS by TNF-α[33,34].

Other research has shown that TNF-α activates RIP1 kinase-mediated signaling, promoting the induction of downstream genes influencing necrosis or apoptosis[38].

In aquatic betanodavirus systems, RGNNV induces exposure of phosphatidylserine (PS; an early apoptotic marker) at an early apoptotic stage[39], as determined by annexin-V assays. Secondary necrotic morphological changes are also evident at middle and late stages under phase-contrast microscopy in RGNNV-infected grouper cells using acridine orange (AO) and ethidium bromide (EtBr) to identify apoptotic and post-apoptotic necrotic cells; double-stained cells are often observed. Furthermore, RGNNV infection can induce ROS production in mitochondria at the early replication stage [24 h postinfection (*p.i.*)]. Viral expression during this stage leads to ROS production, triggering an oxidative stress response[17], which may contribute to secondary necrotic cell death. In our system, RGNNV induces necrotic cell death, but whether or not this requires RIP1 kinase-mediated signaling is still unknown.

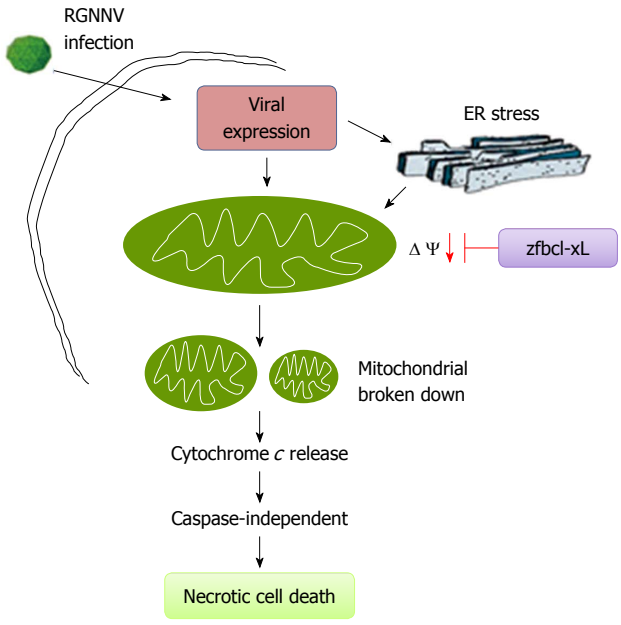


Figure 1 Schematic working model for mitochondrial dysfunction caused by betanodavirus infection. Red-spotted grouper nervous necrosis virus infection and early replication causes an ER stress response upon entry in the early replication stage [12 h postinfection (*p.i.*)]. Subsequently, this ER stress signaling can affect a number of important events, including enhanced viral expression, induction of mitochondrial membrane potential (MMP) loss, mitochondrial breakdown, and cytochrome c release at the middle replication stage (48 h *p.i.*). Bcl-2 may also be downregulated at the middle replication stage, as overexpression of Bcl-xL prevents loss of MMP. In regard to downstream events, cytochrome c release is not required or caspases activation or triggering of necrotic cell death at the late replication stage (72 h *p.i.*).

BETANODAVIRUS INFECTION AFFECTS MITOCHONDRIAL FUNCTION

Apoptosis is controlled at the mitochondrial level by the sequestration of apoptogenic proteins in the mitochondrial intermembrane space and the cytosolic release of these factors on exposure to proapoptotic signals[39,40]. Disruption of the mitochondrial membrane potential (MMP) initiates the caspase cascade, leading to downstream activation of apoptosis[40,41]. MMP can affect both the inner and outer mitochondrial membranes, and this

precedes the signs of necrotic or apoptotic cell death, including the apoptosis-specific activation of caspases[42]. Adenine nucleotide translocase (ANT) plays a role in the exchange of ATP for ADP through the inner mitochondrial membrane, thus supplying the cytoplasm with ATP newly synthesized by oxidative phosphorylation. In a search for proapoptotic proteins, Bauer *et al*[43] identified the protein ANT1 as the main inducer of apoptosis. The overexpression of ANT1 produces rapid cell death, with a concomitant decrease in MMP and an increase in nucleosomal DNA degradation. Since this cell death is sensitive to caspase inhibitors and to inhibitors of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore (MPTP), such as bongkrekic acid (BKA), apoptosis and the involvement of MPTP are thus implicated[43]. Hence, the mitochondrion is appreciated as a central integrator of pro-death stimuli, streamlining various types of proapoptotic signals into a common caspase-dependent pathway[41].

In a betanodavirus system, secondary necrosis is correlated with loss of MMP in grouper liver cells[44] and mitochondrial breakdown at the middle and late apoptotic stages[11]. The loss of MMP is dramatically inhibited by the ANT specific inhibitor BKA, which enhances host-cell viability at the early and middle apoptotic stages[44]. Furthermore, RGNNV-induced mitochondrial cytochrome c release is also blocked following BKA treatment at the early (24 h *p.i.*) and middle (48 h *p.i.*) stages.

THE ROLE OF ANTI-APOPTOTIC BCL-2 FAMILY MEMBERS DURING BETANODAVIRUS INFECTION

Apoptosis removes damaged, infected, and superfluous cells. In most circumstances, a cell's decision to live or die rests largely with the Bcl-2 family of interacting proteins[45,46]. The Bcl-2 family of proteins includes both anti- and pro-apoptotic molecules that act at a critical intracellular decision point along a common death pathway[47]. The ratio of antagonists (Bcl-2, Bcl- xL, Mcl-1, Bcl-W, and A1) to agonists (Bax, Bak, Bcl-xS, Bid, Bik, Bad, PUMA, and NOXA) dictates whether a cell responds to a proximal apoptotic stimulus[46,47]. The Bcl-2 family member proteins also interact with mitochondria to regulate MMP[42]. Changes in MMP, which can include permeabilization of both the inner and outer membranes, precede necrotic or apoptotic cell death[40], highlighting the central role of the mitochondrion as a integrator of pro-death stimuli[41]. Cytochrome *c* release from mitochondria into the cytosol is initiated by the interaction of mitochondria with one or more members of the Bcl-2 family. Thus, Bcl-2 proteins, which critically regulate apoptosis, function prior to the irreversible damage of cellular constituents[48-50].

In our fish system, we found that RGNNV infection can induce downregulation of the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 genes at the middle apoptotic stage (48 h *p.i.*)[16]. Subsequently, mitochondrial damage and RGNNV-induced necrotic cell death were assessed in stable cell lines producing the anti-apoptotic Bcl-2 proteins, zfBcl-xL or zfMcl-1a. Both zfBcl-xL and zfMcl-1a strongly inhibited RGNNV-induced necrotic cell death and reduced the percentage of necrotic cells at 36 h *p.i.* by up to 90% (zfBcl-xL) and 93% (zfMcl-1a), respectively, when compared with the NNV-infected control group. Cell viability was correspondingly enhanced at 36 h *p.i.* by 102% (zfBcl-xL) and 98% (zfMcl-1a), respectively, when compared with the NNV-infected control group[11]. Furthermore, overexpression of zfBcl-xL dramatically blocked RGNNV viral death factor protein α[9] and B2[14] induction of cell death.

CASPASE-INDEPENDENT DEATH PATHWAY IN BETANODAVIRUS-INFECTED CELLS

The mitochondrion is seen as a central integrator of pro-death stimuli, streamlining various types of proapoptic signals into a common caspase-dependent pathway[41], although the absolute requirement for caspase activation in apoptosis is no longer considered dogma[51,52].

The molecular cornerstones of apoptosis are the family of cysteinyl aspartate-specific proteases, collectively known as caspases. At least 13 caspases have been identified[53], and members of this family can be subdivided into two groups: initiators and executioners. Initiator caspases serve to relay death signals from proapoptotic signals to executioner caspases, which then cleave key proteins involved in cellular structure and function. Known initiators include caspase 8 and caspase 9, whereas known effectors include caspase 3[54], caspase 6, and caspase 7.

Our analysis of caspase 3, caspase 8, and caspase 9 activities revealed no significant differences relative to normal control cells at 0, 24, 48, and 72 h *p.i.* with RGNNV (MOI = 5), and cell death was not effectively blocked by treatment with a pan-caspase inhibitor[11]. The results of these assays suggest that betanodavirus can induce caspase-dependent and caspase-independent death pathways that may be dependent on the specific cell line used. In grouper liver cells, RGNNV may preferentially induce caspase-independent death, but GGNNV induces caspase-dependent death in sea bass cells[8].

CONCLUSION

We have reviewed the cellular impact of RGNN viral infection on cell viability *via* modulation of mitochondrial necrotic cell death in fish cells. Over recent years, our knowledge about mitochondria-mediated apoptotic cell death has expanded, but our understanding of mitochondria-mediated necrotic cell death is still limited, especially in lower vertebrates. In addition, we are beginning to uncover the physiological roles of mitochondria-mediated caspase-independent necrotic cell death. However, despite these recent advances, many questions remain largely unanswered. What signaling occurs upstream of

necrotic cell death following betanodavirus infection? Does induction of autophagy affect necrotic cell death during viral replication? What parameters, in addition to mitochondria-shaping proteins, control mitochondrial fusion and fission[15,55]? Hopefully, future studies will increase our understanding of the mechanisms underlying mitochondria-mediated necrosis, its functions in multiple biological processes, and the regulatory signaling pathways that control its activation. This knowledge will be of great importance for validating mitochondria-mediated necrosis as an effective target for the treatment of various diseases, including RNA viral infections.

REFERENCES

1 **Bovo G**, Nishizawa T, Maltese C, Borghesan F, Mutinelli F, Montesi F, De Mas S. Viral encephalopathy and retinopathy of farmed marine fish species in Italy. *Virus Res* 1999; **63**: 143-146 [PMID: 10509726 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-1702(99)00068-4]

2 **Tan C**, Huang B, Chang SF, Ngoh GH, Munday B, Chen SC, Kwang J. Determination of the complete nucleotide sequences of RNA1 and RNA2 from greasy grouper (Epinephelus tauvina) nervous necrosis virus, Singapore strain. *J Gen Virol* 2001; **82**: 647-653 [PMID: 11172107]

3 **Ball LA**, Johnson KL. Reverse genetics of nodaviruses. *Adv Virus Res* 1999; **53**: 229-244 [PMID: 10582101 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-3527(08)60350-4]

4 **Schneemann A**, Reddy V, Johnson JE. The structure and function of nodavirus particles: a paradigm for understanding chemical biology. *Adv Virus Res* 1998; **50**: 381-446 [PMID: 9521003 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-3527(08)60812-X]

5 **Toffolo V**, Negrisolo E, Maltese C, Bovo G, Belvedere P, Colombo L, Valle LD. Phylogeny of betanodaviruses and molecular evolution of their RNA polymerase and coat proteins. *Mol Phylogenet Evol* 2007; **43**: 298-308 [PMID: 16990016 DOI: 10.1016/j.ympev.2006.08.003]

6 **Delsert C**, Morin N, Comps M. A fish encephalitis virus that differs from other nodaviruses by its capsid protein processing. *Arch Virol* 1997; **142**: 2359-2371 [PMID: 9672600 DOI: 10.1007/s007050050248]

7 **Mori K**, Nakai T, Muroga K, Arimoto M, Mushiake K, Furusawa I. Properties of a new virus belonging to nodaviridae found in larval striped jack (Pseudocaranx dentex) with nervous necrosis. *Virology* 1992; **187**: 368-371 [PMID: 1736540 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(92)90329-N]

8 **Guo YX**, Wei T, Dallmann K, Kwang J. Induction of caspase-dependent apoptosis by betanodaviruses GGNNV and demonstration of protein alpha as an apoptosis inducer. *Virology* 2003; **308**: 74-82 [PMID: 12706091 DOI: 10.1016/S0042-6822(02)00098-3]

9 **Wu HC**, Chiu CS, Wu JL, Gong HY, Chen MC, Lu MW, Hong JR. Zebrafish anti-apoptotic protein zfBcl-xL can block betanodavirus protein alpha-induced mitochondria-mediated secondary necrosis cell death. *Fish Shellfish Immunol* 2008; **24**: 436-449 [PMID: 18276161 DOI: 10.1016/j.fsi.2008.01.001]

10 **Chen LJ**, Su YC, Hong JR. Betanodavirus non-structural protein B1: A novel anti-necrotic death factor that modulates cell death in early replication cycle in fish cells. *Virology* 2009; **385**: 444-454 [PMID: 19136133 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.11.048]

11 **Chen SP**, Wu JL, Su YC, Hong JR. Anti-Bcl-2 family members, zfBcl-x(L) and zfMcl-1a, prevent cytochrome c release from cells undergoing betanodavirus-induced secondary necrotic cell death. *Apoptosis* 2007; **12**: 1043-1060 [PMID: 17245642 DOI: 10.1007/s10495-006-0032-x]

12 **Fenner BJ**, Goh W, Kwang J. Sequestration and protection of double-stranded RNA by the betanodavirus b2 protein. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 6822-6833 [PMID: 16809288 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00079-06]

13 **Iwamoto T**, Mise K, Takeda A, Okinaka Y, Mori K, Arimoto M, Okuno T, Nakai T. Characterization of Striped jack nervous necrosis virus subgenomic RNA3 and biological activities of its encoded protein B2. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 2807-2816 [PMID: 16186236 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80902-0]

14 **Su YC**, Wu JL, Hong JR. Betanodavirus non-structural protein B2: A novel necrotic death factor that induces mitochondria-mediated cell death in fish cells. *Virology* 2009; **385**: 143-154 [PMID: 19116179 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.11.036]

15 **Su YC**, Hong JR. Betanodavirus B2 causes ATP depletion-induced cell death via mitochondrial targeting and complex II inhibition in vitro and in vivo. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 39801-39810 [PMID: 20870718 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.164988]

16 **Su YC**, Wu JL, Hong JR. Betanodavirus up-regulates chaperone GRP78 via ER stress: roles of GRP78 in viral replication and host mitochondria-mediated cell death. *Apoptosis* 2011; **16**: 272-287 [PMID: 21170590 DOI: 10.1007/s10495-010-0565-x]

17 **Chang CW**, Su YC, Her GM, Ken CF, Hong JR. Betanodavirus induces oxidative stress-mediated cell death that prevented by anti-oxidants and zfcatalase in fish cells. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e25853 [PMID: 21991373 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0025853]

18 **Wyllie AH**, Kerr JF, Currie AR. Cell death: the significance of apoptosis. *Int Rev Cytol* 1980; **68**: 251-306 [PMID: 7014501 DOI: 10.1016/S0074-7696(08)62312-8]

19 **Majno G**, Joris I. Apoptosis, oncosis, and necrosis. An overview of cell death. *Am J Pathol* 1995; **146**: 3-15 [PMID: 7856735]

20 **Herman B**, Nieminen AL, Gores GJ, Lemasters JJ. Irreversible injury in anoxic hepatocytes precipitated by an abrupt increase in plasma membrane permeability. *FASEB J* 1988; **2**: 146-151 [PMID: 3342967]

21 **Duvall E**, Wyllie AH. Death and the cell. *Immunol Today* 1986; **7**: 115-119

22 **McConkey DJ**, Nicotera P, Hartzell P, Bellomo G, Wyllie AH, Orrenius S. Glucocorticoids activate a suicide process in thymocytes through an elevation of cytosolic Ca2+ concentration. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1989; **269**: 365-370 [PMID: 2537063 DOI: 10.1016/0003-9861(89)90119-7]

23 **Jeurissen SH**, Wagenaar F, Pol JM, van der Eb AJ, Noteborn MH. Chicken anemia virus causes apoptosis of thymocytes after in vivo infection and of cell lines after in vitro infection. *J Virol* 1992; **66**: 7383-7388 [PMID: 1331529]

24 **Chen CS**, Mrksich M, Huang S, Whitesides GM, Ingber DE. Geometric control of cell life and death. *Science* 1997; **276**: 1425-1428 [PMID: 9162012 DOI: 10.1126/science.276.5317.1425]

25 **Inoue Y**, Yasukawa M, Fujita S. Induction of T-cell apoptosis by human herpesvirus 6. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 3751-3759 [PMID: 9094650]

26 **Hong JR**, Wu JL. Molecular regulation of cellular apoptosis by fish infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV) infection. *Curr Top Virol* 2002; **2**: 151-160

27 **Fiers W**, Beyaert R, Declercq W, Vandenabeele P. More than one way to die: apoptosis, necrosis and reactive oxygen damage. *Oncogene* 1999; **18**: 7719-7730 [PMID: 10618712 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1203249]

28 **Ting AT**, Pimentel-Muiños FX, Seed B. RIP mediates tumor necrosis factor receptor 1 activation of NF-kappaB but not Fas/APO-1-initiated apoptosis. *EMBO J* 1996; **15**: 6189-6196 [PMID: 8947041]

29 **Benedict CA**. Viruses and the TNF-related cytokines, an evolving battle. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2003; **14**: 349-357 [PMID: 12787571 DOI: 10.1016/S1359-6101(03)00030-3]

30 **Benedict CA**, Banks TA, Ware CF. Death and survival: viral regulation of TNF signaling pathways. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2003; **15**: 59-65 [PMID: 12495734 DOI: 10.1016/

S0952-7915(02)00018-3]
31 **Zheng L**, Bidere N, Staudt D, Cubre A, Orenstein J, Chan FK, Lenardo M. Competitive control of independent programs of tumor necrosis factor receptor-induced cell death by TRADD and RIP1. *Mol Cell Biol* 2006; **26**: 3505-3513 [PMID: 16611992 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.26.9.3505-3513.2006]
32 **Morgan MJ**, Kim YS, Liu ZG. TNFalpha and reactive oxygen species in necrotic cell death. *Cell Res* 2008; **18**: 343-349 [PMID: 18301379 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2008.31]
33 **Meurer R**, MacIntyre DE. Lack of effect of pertussis toxin on TNF-alpha-induced formation of reactive oxygen intermediates by human neutrophils. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1989; **159**: 763-769 [PMID: 2930541 DOI: 10.1016/0006-291X(89)90060-0]
34 **Shakibaei M**, Schulze-Tanzil G, Takada Y, Aggarwal BB. Redox regulation of apoptosis by members of the TNF superfamily. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2005; **7**: 482-496 [PMID: 15706096 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2005.7.482]
35 **Festjens N**, Vanden Berghe T, Cornelis S, Vandenabeele P. RIP1, a kinase on the crossroads of a cell's decision to live or die. *Cell Death Differ* 2007; **14**: 400-410 [PMID: 17301840 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cdd.4402085]
36 **Holler N**, Zaru R, Micheau O, Thome M, Attinger A, Valitutti S, Bodmer JL, Schneider P, Seed B, Tschopp J. Fas triggers an alternative, caspase-8-independent cell death pathway using the kinase RIP as effector molecule. *Nat Immunol* 2000; **1**: 489-495 [PMID: 11101870 DOI: 10.1038/82732]
37 **He S**, Wang L, Miao L, Wang T, Du F, Zhao L, Wang X. Receptor interacting protein kinase-3 determines cellular necrotic response to TNF-alpha. *Cell* 2009; **137**: 1100-1111 [PMID: 19524512 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.05.021]
38 **Hitomi J**, Christofferson DE, Ng A, Yao J, Degterev A, Xavier RJ, Yuan J. Identification of a molecular signaling network that regulates a cellular necrotic cell death pathway. *Cell* 2008; **135**: 1311-1323 [PMID: 19109899 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.10.044]
39 **Wang X**. The expanding role of mitochondria in apoptosis. *Genes Dev* 2001; **15**: 2922-2933 [PMID: 11711427]
40 **Madesh M**, Antonsson B, Srinivasula SM, Alnemri ES, Hajnóczky G. Rapid kinetics of tBid-induced cytochrome c and Smac/DIABLO release and mitochondrial depolarization. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 5651-5659 [PMID: 11741882 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M108171200]
41 **Ferri KF**, Kroemer G. Organelle-specific initiation of cell death pathways. *Nat Cell Biol* 2001; **3**: E255-E263 [PMID: 11715037 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1101-e255]
42 **Zamzami N**, Kroemer G. The mitochondrion in apoptosis: how Pandora's box opens. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **2**: 67-71 [PMID: 11413468 DOI: 10.1038/35048073]
43 **Bauer MK**, Schubert A, Rocks O, Grimm S. Adenine nucleotide translocase-1, a component of the permeability transition pore, can dominantly induce apoptosis. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **147**: 1493-1502 [PMID: 10613907 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.147.7.1493]
44 **Chen SP**, Yang HL, Her GM, Lin HY, Jeng MF, Wu JL, Hong JR. Betanodavirus induces phosphatidylserine exposure and loss of mitochondrial membrane potential in secondary necrotic cells, both of which are blocked by bongkrekic acid. *Virology* 2006; **347**: 379-391 [PMID: 16430940 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2005.11.052]
45 **Cory S**, Huang DC, Adams JM. The Bcl-2 family: roles in cell survival and oncogenesis. *Oncogene* 2003; **22**: 8590-8607 [PMID: 14634621 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1207102]
46 **Danial NN**, Korsmeyer SJ. Cell death: critical control points. *Cell* 2004; **116**: 205-219 [PMID: 14744432 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(04)00046-7]
47 **Youle RJ**, Strasser A. The BCL-2 protein family: opposing activities that mediate cell death. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2008; **9**: 47-59 [PMID: 18097445 DOI: 10.1038/nrm2308]
48 **Galluzzi L**, Brenner C, Morselli E, Touat Z, Kroemer G. Viral control of mitochondrial apoptosis. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e1000018 [PMID: 18516228 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000018]
49 **Farrow SN**, Brown R. New members of the Bcl-2 family and their protein partners. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 1996; **6**: 45-49 [PMID: 8791486 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-437X(96)90009-X]
50 **Shen Y**, Shenk TE. Viruses and apoptosis. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 1995; **5**: 105-111 [PMID: 7749317 DOI: 10.1016/S0959-437X(95)90061-6]
51 **Chipuk JE**, Green DR. Do inducers of apoptosis trigger caspase-independent cell death? *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2005; **6**: 268-275 [PMID: 15714200 DOI: 10.1038/nrm1573]
52 **Kroemer G**, Martin SJ. Caspase-independent cell death. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 725-730 [PMID: 16015365 DOI: 10.1038/nm1263]
53 **Thornberry NA**, Lazebnik Y. Caspases: enemies within. *Science* 1998; **281**: 1312-1316 [PMID: 9721091 DOI: 10.1126/science.281.5381.1312]
54 **Nicholson DW**, Ali A, Thornberry NA, Vaillancourt JP, Ding CK, Gallant M, Gareau Y, Griffin PR, Labelle M, Lazebnik YA. Identification and inhibition of the ICE/CED-3 protease necessary for mammalian apoptosis. *Nature* 1995; **376**: 37-43 [PMID: 7596430 DOI: 10.1038/376037a0]
55 **Karbowski M**, Youle RJ. Dynamics of mitochondrial morphology in healthy cells and during apoptosis. *Cell Death Differ* 2003; **10**: 870-880 [PMID: 12867994 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cdd.4401260]

P-Reviewers Chaivisuthangkura P, Ghiringhelli PD
S- Editor Song XX **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i1.6

World J Virol 2013 February 12; 2(1): 6-15
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEW

Hepatitis C virus resistance to new specifically-targeted antiviral therapy: A public health perspective

Karina Salvatierra, Sabrina Fareleski, Alicia Forcada, F Xavier López-Labrador

Karina Salvatierra, Sabrina Fareleski, F Xavier López-Labrador, Joint Unit in Genomics and Health, Centre for Public Health Research, Public Health Department, Generalitat Valenciana/Institut Cavanilles, University of Valencia, 46020 Valencia, Spain
Alicia Forcada, Instituto de Biomedicina de Valencia-Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas, 46010 Valencia, Spain
F Xavier López-Labrador, CIBER in Epidemiology and Public Health (CIBER-ESP), Instituto de Salud Carlos III, 46020 Valencia, Spain
F Xavier López-Labrador, Department of Microbiology, Medical School, University of Valencia, 46010 Valencia, Spain
Author contributions: Salvatierra K and Fareleski S contributed equally to this work; all authors wrote the review article.
Supported by The Fondo de Investigación Sanitaria, Instituto de Salud Carlos III, Spanish Ministry of Economy, Directorate of Science (PI10/00512 and CIBER-ESP); López-Labrador FX Holds a P.I. Position supported by the Fondo de Investigación Sanitaria, Instituto de Salud Carlos III, Spain
Correspondence to: Dr. F Xavier López-Labrador, Joint Unit in Genomics and Health, Centre for Public Health Research, Public Health Department, Generalitat Valenciana/Institut Cavanilles, University of Valencia, Av. Catalunya 21, 46020 Valencia, Spain. f.xavier.lopez@uv.es
Telephone: +34-96-1985839 Fax: +34-96-1925703
Received: April 7, 2012 Revised: December 30, 2012
Accepted: January 17, 2013
Published online: February 12, 2013

Abstract

Until very recently, treatment for chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection has been based on the combination of two non-viral specific drugs: pegylated interferon-α and ribavirin, which is effective in, overall, about 40%-50% of cases. To improve the response to treatment, novel drugs have been designed to specifically block viral proteins. Multiple compounds are under development, and the approval for clinical use of the first of such direct-acting antivirals in 2011 (Telaprevir and Boceprevir), represents a milestone in HCV treatment. HCV therapeutics is entering a new expanding era, and a highly-effective cure is envisioned for the first time since the discovery of the virus in 1989. However, any antiviral treatment may be limited by the capacity of the virus to overcome the selective pressure of new drugs, generating antiviral resistance. Here, we try to provide a basic overview of new treatments, HCV resistance to new antivirals and some considerations derived from a Public Health perspective, using HCV resistance to protease and polymerase inhibitors as examples.

Key words: Specifically-targeted antiviral therapy; Direct-acting antiviral; Protease inhibitors; Polymerase inhibitors; Viral resistance

Salvatierra K, Fareleski S, Forcada A, López-Labrador FX. Hepatitis C virus resistance to new specifically-targeted antiviral therapy: A public health perspective. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(1): 6-15 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i1/6.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i1.6

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infects an estimated 170 million people worldwide, which represents around 2%-3% of the global population[1]. Chronic HCV infection causes a progressive liver disease associated with increased risk of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma[2]. When end-stage liver disease is established, the only reliable therapeutic intervention, liver transplantation, is limited by the fact that a new chronic hepatitis is established in the graft, which can be lost in the early years post-transplantation[3]. The burden of HCV disease varies throughout the world, with country-specific prevalence ranging from < 1% to > 10%. The epidemiology of HCV infection is changing, and the transmission routes, demographics of infected individuals, and HCV genotype distribution varies between countries[4,5]. Public Health policies will likely need

to be adapted to these differences. With the new availability of highly effective therapies, there is now a time of increasing opportunities to significantly reduce HCV-related morbidity and mortality. Until very recently the standard treatment for chronic HCV infection was the combination of pegylated interferon-α (Peg-IFNα) and ribavirin (RBV)[6]. Rather than targeting the virus directly, these drugs are immunomodulators, although RBV may also increase the mutation rate of the HCV genome[7]. The majority of responder patients remain virus-free after 5 years of follow-up and are considered to be cured[8]. However, the efficacy of this therapy is variable, ranging from 40% to 80% depending on: viral genotype, stage of liver fibrosis, viral load, side effects and treatment discontinuation, body-mass index, age, race, and host genetics[9]. Genome-wide association studies revealed single nucleotide polymorphisms in the promoter region of the *IL28B* gene, encoding interferon lambda-3, as the strongest predictors for treatment response[10]. Increasing response rates are expected due to the development of numerous new direct-acting antivirals (DAAs) active against HCV (STAT-C: Specifically-Targeted Antiviral-Treatment for hepatitis C). Some of these compounds are in advanced clinical trials to be used either as an adjunct to Peg-IFNα + RBV, and/or combined with other DAAs. STAT-C drugs include inhibitors of the viral proteins NS3/4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B[11,12]. The well-defined virus-specific enzymatic functions of the NS3/4A serine protease and the NS5B RNA-dependent RNA-polymerase (RdRp) made them the initial focus for drug development and represent the most advanced STAT-C drugs, showing potent antiviral efficacy *in vitro* and *in vivo*. In 2011, the NS3/4A protease inhibitors (PIs) Telaprevir (Vertex Pharmaceuticals) and Boceprevir (Schering-Merck) became the first STAT-C compounds approved for clinical use; and NS5A inhibitors and several NS5B polymerase inhibitors entered phase Ⅱ of development[11]. In addition, STAT-C drugs targeting other HCV proteins and drugs directed to host proteins that interact with the virus have also entered clinical development. There is a glimpse of optimism in the field, hoping that new STAT-C medications will allow shorter treatment durations and increase the rates of patients responding to antiviral treatment[13].

From a Public Health perspective, the extension of new, more effective, treatments including STAT-C compounds will: (1) eventually reduce the disease burden of chronic hepatitis C in the near future; (2) reduce the long-term costs of delayed care by increasing efforts to screen undiagnosed cases, with the aim of giving access to treatment and preventing progression of the disease; and (3) require a reinforcement of Public Health surveillance[14].

However, this optimism may be tempered by evidence demonstrating that HCV variants resistant to STAT-C compounds are rapidly selected *in vitro* and *in vivo*[15-17]. Eventually all classes of STAT-C, including NS3/4A protease and NS5B polymerase inhibitors, select for HCV resistant variants, although some nucleosidic inhibitors exhibit a higher barrier to resistance[18]. This is not surprising, given the high error rate of HCV replication and the rapid turnover of circulating virions. In fact, resistant variants arise from preexisting subpopulations of viral genomes already circulating in the infected individual, before therapy is started[19]. Selective drug pressure changes the balance between the different intra-individual HCV quasispecies; and resistant genomes dominate the circulating viruses in patients with treatment failure or suboptimal treatment response, as evidenced in patients treated with NS3/4 PIs[20-22]. Fortunately, resistant variants remain sensitive to Peg-IFN + RBV, which still makes their elimination possible with the current Peg-IFN + RBV treatment[16]. However, these therapy regimens are complex, and simplification is eagerly pursued. Finally, most of the first-generation STAT-C compounds have been designed using HCV proteins and replicon assays based in HCV subtype 1b, and the efficacy in other viral subtypes may be suboptimal (lower genetic barrier), given the diversity of this virus and the high number of genotypes and subtypes[23]. Due to the low genetic barrier (the number of nucleotide substitutions required for the virus to acquire resistance to a given drug) of some compounds, there are concerns that high-level resistance will develop quickly, and the possibility of transmission of resistant strains among intravenous drug users[24]. From a Public Health perspective, it seems necessary: (1) to determine the prevalence of major HCV resistant variants in the infected population; (2) to determine the efficacy of STAT-C compounds on HCV subtypes other than 1b; and (3) to establish virology laboratories for HCV genotypic resistance testing and surveillance. Finally, because the distribution of HCV subtypes varies in different geographical regions, policies may have to be refined locally to give access to treatment with optimized STAT-C regimes.

HCV BIOLOGY AND THE BASIS FOR RESISTANCE

HCV is an enveloped virus, the only member of the genus *Hepacivirus* within the family *Flaviviridae*, with a positive-sense, single-stranded RNA genome of about 9600 bases flanked by two highly-conserved non-coding regions[25]. The genome encodes a single polyprotein of around 3000 amino acids, processed by both host and viral proteases into the mature three structural and seven non-structural proteins, including the components of the capsid and envelope (core, E1 and E2) and the viral enzymes needed for replication and virion assembly (p7, NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A and NS5B), respectively (Figure 1)[26]. Like other RNA viruses, the high error rate of the RdRp makes HCV evolution very rapid, with a mutation rate estimated at 10^{-3} to 10^{-5} nucleotides per site[27].

Evolution of the virus has led to the distinction of six major genotypes and more than 40 subtypes. Genotypes 1, 2 and 3 are more common in Western countries, genotypes 1, 4 and 5 in Africa, and genotype 6 in Asia[23]. The distribution of HCV genotypes and subtypes varies be-

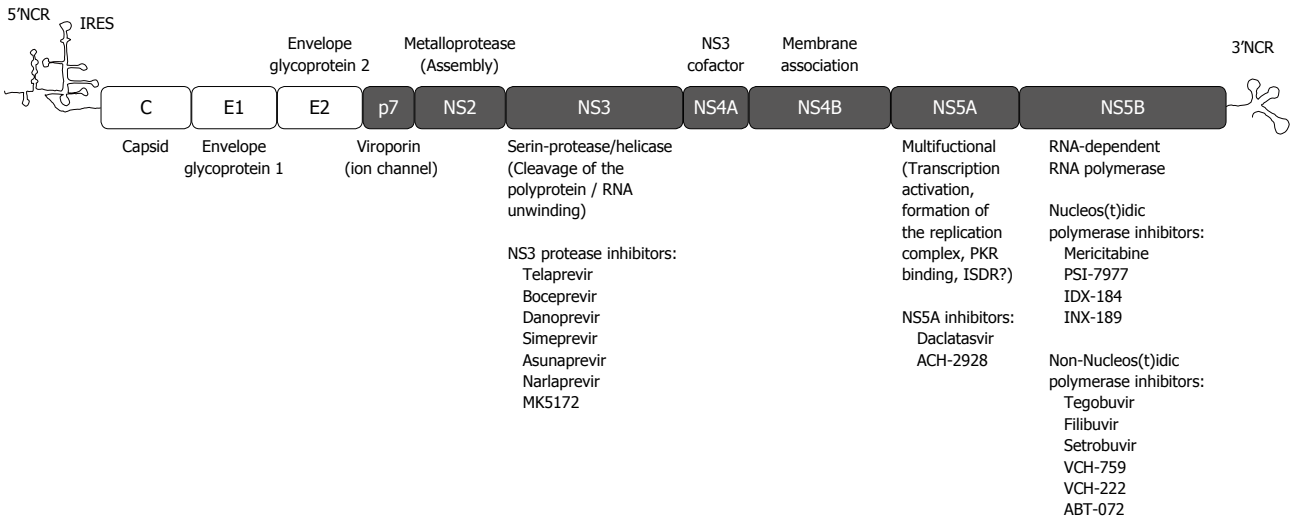


Figure 1 Diagram of the hepatitis C virus genes and the viral polyprotein, with two non-coding regions in the 5' and 3' ends of the viral genome, structural (with) and non-structural (grey) proteins. The targets for the most-developed Specifically-Targeted Antiviral-Treatment for hepatitis C compounds are indicated, together with drugs in advanced development.

tween countries probably because of the spread through different routes of transmission, such as blood-transfusion and healthcare-related practices (subtype 1b) or intravenous drug use (subtype 1a and genotype 3) which is now the main route of infection in most countries[4]. For instance, the prevalence of HCV subtype 1b varies from more than 50% of infected individuals in Italy, Poland, Romania, Turkey, or Russia to less than 25% in Canada. Similarly, the prevalence of non-1 genotypes is also very variable, accounting from less than 25% of the infections in Romania, Turkey, or the Czech Republic to more than 50% in Sweden, Norway, or the United Kingdom[4]. Local HCV genotype/subtype epidemiology may be relevant to the design of optimal treatment strategies because the cross-genotype efficacy of most STAT-C compounds is very limited (see below).

HCV displays another level of genetic variability: intraindividual variation. The combination of a high mutation rate with the production of around 10^{12} virions per day[28] results in every infected individual carrying a pool of slightly variant viral genomes which can eventually contain every possible single (and maybe double) mutants: a cloud of variants common in RNA viruses, so-called "quasispecies"[21,29].

This extensive genetic variability gives HCV the capacity to generate drug resistance. Mutations that change amino acids of STAT-C target proteins, including NS3 and NS5B, do occur in the absence of the drugs, and can cause conformational changes that may interfere with drug-target interaction. If DAA-resistant variants are already present before the start of treatment, they will be rapidly selected and become dominant in the viral quasispecies once the drug is administered, because they will be under positive selective pressure. In addition, unless the replication of the virus is fully suppressed, even if resistance is not present prior to therapy, adaptive mutations can eventually emerge during STAT-C administration, that reduce the susceptibility of the virus to the drug.

Not surprisingly, several mutations were soon identified *in vitro* to be associated with reduced susceptibility to NS3 and NS5B inhibitors[17], some of these are present in natural isolates from naive individuals[30-35], and were later related to STAT-C treatment failure in clinical trials[18].

The role of naturally-occurring variations in resistance to STAT-C inhibitors is therefore a focus of intensive research. An example is the study of HCV resistance to NS3/4A protease and NS5B polymerase inhibitors. Table 1 shows a summary, extracted from several reviews, of the most important amino acid variations in HCV NS3/4A protease, NS5A protein and NS5B polymerase associated with resistance to DAAs.

HCV resistance to NS3/4A PIs

The viral *NS3* gene encodes amino acids 1027-1657 of the polyprotein (numbering on HCV-H77-1a strain), including a serine protease located in the N-terminal domain (amino acids NS3 1-181) and an NTPase/RNA helicase in the C-terminal part (amino acids NS3 182-623)[36]. The chymotrypsin-like protease requires a cofactor, the NS4A protein, and is responsible for critical steps in the virus lifecycle: (1) the cleavage of the viral polyprotein in the NS3-NS4A, NS4A-NS4B, NS4B-NS5A and NS5A-NS5B junctions; and (2) the modification of the cellular response, interfering with the interferon pathway[37-39]. Thus, blocking NS3/4A protease activity may inhibit both processing of the viral polyprotein and viral down-regulation of the innate immune response.

Clinical development of the first-in-class HCV PI (Ciluprevir, BILN-2061) showed exceptional antiviral activity both *in vitro* and *in vivo* in phase I Studies, but further development was halted because cardiotoxicity was detected in animals[40]. These promising results were reproduced with other PIs, such as Telaprevir (VX-950), Boceprevir

Table 1 Most important variations related to hepatitis C virus viral resistance to NS3 protease and NS5b polymerase *in vitro* and/or *in vivo*

Inhibitor class	Amino acid variations implicated in resistance
First generation NS3/A PI	
Ciluprevir	(NS3) R155K/T/Q, A156V/T, D168A/V/T/H
Telaprevir	(NS3) V36M/A, T54A, R155K/T, A156V/T/S, V36M/A+R155K/T, V36M/A+A156V/T
Boceprevir	(NS3) V36M/A/L, T54S/A, R155K, V55A, R155T, A156S, V158I, V170A, I170T
Second generation NS3/A PI	
Danoprevir	(NS3) R155K, D168E
Simeprevir	(NS3) Q80R/Q, R155K/T/Q, A156S/V/T, D168A/V/T/H
Asunaprevir	(NS3) R155K, A156V/T, D168A/E/T/V/Y
Narlaprevir	(NS3) V36A/M, R155K/T/Q, A156S/V/T, V170A
MK5172	(NS3) A156V/T, D168A/V/T/H
NS5A inhibitors	
Daclatasvir	(NS5A) Q30R, L31 M/V, Y93C/N
NA polymerase inhibitors	
Mericitabine	(NS5B) S282T *in vitro*, not reported *in vivo*
PSI-7977	Not reported *in vivo*
IDX-184	Not reported *in vivo*
INX-189	Not reported
NNI polymerase inhibitors	
Tegobuvir	(NS5B) C316N, Y448H
Filibuvir	(NS5B) M423T/I/V, M426T, I482T
Setrobuvir	(NS5B) M414T/L, G554D, D559G
VCH-759	(NS5B) L419M/V, M423T/I/V, I482L/V/T, V494I/A
VCH-222	(NS5B) L419M, M423T, I482L
ABT-072	(NS5B) C316Y, M414T, Y448H/C, S556G

Summary from[11,17,18,77-80]. PI: Protease inhibitors; NA: Nucleos(t)ide analogs; NNI: Non-nucleos(t)idic (allosteric) inhibitors.

(SCH-503034), and Danoprevir (ITMN-191). Several other PIs belonging to two inhibitor classes are in clinical trials: linear ketoamids, and macrocyclic compounds, including Simeprevir (TMC435, Tibotec/Medivir), Asunaprevir (BMS-650032, Bristol-Myers Squibb), Danoprevir (RG7227, Roche/InterMune), BI201335 (Boehringer-Ingelheim), ACH-1625 and ACH-2684 (Achillion), Vaniprevir and MK-5172 (Merck and Co.)[11,12].

Two of these have been approved recently for clinical use: Telaprevir and Boceprevir. HCV resistance to both linear and macrocyclic PIs by amino acid substitutions is well documented *in vitro* and *in vivo*[41]. The selection of resistant mutants is rapid (during the first weeks of exposure to the DAA), and compound-specific, although some resistant strains however may show a reduced fitness, which allows viral control using the standard Peg-IFN + RBV treatment[16]. A major concern of HCV resistance to first-generation PIs is cross-resistance. Substitutions NS3-R155K/T and NS3-A156S/T/V confer a high level of resistance to both Boceprevir and Telaprevir and cross-resistance to most NS3 PIs. Substitutions NS3-V36A/M and NS3-T54A/S confer a low level of resistance to both Telaprevir and Boceprevir, and NS3-V170A/T to Boceprevir. There is also some cross-resistance of mutations in positions 36, 54 and 170 with other compounds, while changes in positions NS3-80, NS3-155 and NS3-168 are implicated in resistance to macrocyclic inhibitors[17,42]. Double mutants may also be selected by STAT-C treatments, combining two resistance mutations for the same or different PI class, with a potential for broad resistance to both linear and macrocyclic inhibitors[43]. However, given the available experience with human immunodeficiency virus, the selection of double or triple HCV mutants resistant to different drugs targeting different viral genes (*i.e.*, protease and polymerase) seems unlikely. Selected resistant variants in the protease have been implicated in late relapse after cessation of treatment, and may decline or remain detectable for years after treatment failure[44-46]. These resistance mutations may also revert to wild-type virus with time, but still some resistant viruses revert very slowly[47]. In addition, resistant variants exist, at different levels, before treatment. First, the NS3/4 protease is polymorphic in sites associated with resistance between HCV genotypes 1-6, and between some subtypes. For instance, variations in NS3-V170 are present in most HCV genotype 1 isolates, and polymorphism in NS3-D168 is characteristic of HCV genotype 3[32]. As the development of NS3/4A PIs was based in HCV genotype 1, subtype 1b, their antiviral activity with non-1b genotypes, may be not as effective, although some PIs inhibit more than one HCV genotype[22,42,48-50]. Currently neither Boceprevir nor Telaprevir should be used in patients infected with HCV genotypes other than 1. First-generation PIs have some activity in HCV genotypes 2 and 4, but very limited activity in genotype 3-infected patients[51]. Among PIs in clinical development, Simeprevir showed potent activity against HCV genotype 1, but lesser activity against genotypes 2, 4, 5, and 6[50].

Second, even within HCV genotype 1, large studies in several countries have found resistance in STAT-C naive patients (prevalence up to 5.5%)[33-35]. Thus, naturally-occurring polymorphisms can modify the treatment

response to STAT-C. In addition, there are differences in the genetic barrier to resistance between viral subtypes. HCV subtype 1a has a low genetic barrier for approved PIs, and this is the reason for higher viral breakthrough rates and selection of resistant variants observed in patients infected with subtype 1a during treatment with Boceprevir and Telaprevir. The resistance mutation R155K emerges from a single nucleotide substitution in subtype 1a viruses; whereas two different substitutions are needed in the subtype 1b viruses[17,18]. Viral breakthrough and relapse after treatment with Simeprevir is usually associated with signature resistance mutations at NS3 positions 80, 122, 155, and/or 168 (positions 80 and 168 are polymorphic between subtypes), but the distribution of mutations also varies significantly between subtypes 1a and 1b[52]. For Asunaprevir, the primary NS3 protease substitutions associated with high-level resistance identified *in vitro* occur predominately at the polymorphic amino acid residue D168 (D168A/G/H/V/Y). In addition, in single- and 3-d multiple-ascending-dose studies in HCV genotype 1a- or 1b-infected patients, a predominant pre-existing NS3 baseline polymorphism (NS3-Q80K) had ambiguous effects, but no clinically-relevant resistance-associated variants emerged in these clinical studies[53]. Finally, the large turnover and population size, together with the high mutation rate of the virus implicates that HCV variants resistant to new DAAs may be present as minority species (not detectable by direct population sequencing) within the complex pool of viral genomes circulating in a single patient[33,54,55]. Pre-existing variants resistant to Boceprevir or Telaprevir may impair virologic response before treatment is initiated[56,57]. The role of naturally-occurring polymorphisms and minority variants in treatment failure is just being elucidated, and clinical development of STAT-C compounds with pan-genotypic activity is needed.

HCV resistance to NS5A inhibitors

The HCV NS5A genomic region encodes a serine phosphoprotein of 448 amino acids (a.a. 2421-3011 of the polyprotein, numbering on HCV-H77-1a strain), which seems to have a role in transcriptional activation and participates in enhancing viral replication. NS5A has been linked to interferon sensitivity, and includes a variable region (V3), and PKR and zinc binding domains[26]. NS5A replication complex inhibitors undergoing clinical trials include Daclatasvir (BMS-790052, Bristol-Myers Squibb) and ACH-2928 (Achillion)[12]. Daclastavir is a potent oral NS5A inhibitor, studied in combination with the NS3 PI Asunaprevir alone (n = 11), or plus Peg-IFNα + RBV (n = 10) for 24 wk in genotype-1 infected patients[58]. Double and quad combination therapy produced SVR in 36% and 90% of patients respectively. In the double therapy group, viral relapse occurred in one patient (HCV subtype 1a). An analysis of baseline samples revealed a preexisting NS3 variant (R155K) conferring resistance to Asunaprevir at the time of viral relapse, whereas the NS5A resistance variant Q30E was detected only at relapse. All patients with viral breakthrough (n = 6, 55%) were infected with HCV subtype 1a. There was no resistance variants at baseline and resistance variants to both Daclatasvir and Asunaprevir had emerged in all cases by the time of viral breakthrough. Viral variants in the NS5A domain included Q30R, L31 M/V, and Y93C/N; and variants in the NS3 protease included R155K and D168A/E/T/V/Y[58]. Another phase Ⅱa study in Japan examined the combination of Daclastavir with Asunaprevir, without Peg-IFN and RBV (n = 10, HCV genotype 1b). All the nine patients who completed the full course of treatment, achieved SVR (HCV-RNA was negative at weeks 12 and 24), and there as no viral breakthrough[59]. In a survey in Japan, resistance mutations to Daclatasvir NS5A-L31M and/or Y93H were detected in 11.2% of 307 untreated patients with HCV subtype 1b infection, and Y93H (8.2%) was more prevalent than L31M (2.7%)[60]. Fifteen patients (4.9%) were infected with NS3-protease variants harboring V36A, T54S, Q80R or D168E, resistance mutations. While mutations conferring resistance to Daclatasvir or to NS3 inhibitors were frequent in this treatment-naive study population, double mutants with possible resistance to both drugs were rare. In addition, the cross-genotypic activity of Daclatasvir is under investigation. Thus, there is a rationale for expanding these double or quad therapy regimes including Dacaltasvir, but potential differences in efficacy between subtype 1a and 1b viruses should be further explored.

HCV resistance to NS5B polymerase inhibitors

The HCV NS5B genomic region encodes a 66 kDa protein composed of 591 amino acids (a.a. 2421-3011 of the polyprotein, numbering on HCV-H77-1a strain): an RdRp. The HCV RdRp resembles other viral polymerases, with a GDD motif and a right hand structure with palm, fingers and thumb domains[61]. The polymerase replicates the viral genome, in the catalytic sites located at the palm domain, from a negative strand RNA template intermediate, using an active triphosphate (NTP) as primer[62]. Depending on their chemical structure and mechanism of action, specific NS5B inhibitors can be divided into two groups: nucleoside/nucleotide analogues (NA) and non-nucleoside inhibitors (NNI). NA are alternative NTP substrates for the polymerase, forming a structure in the catalytic site that prevents the addition of new NTPs, resulting in premature chain-termination of nascent RNA[61]. The NNI inhibitors, rather than competing with NTPs, act by blocking the enzyme in the initiation of replication, preventing the conformational change necessary to elongate the nascent new copy of the RNA viral genome[63]. Four different allosteric NNI binding sites have been identified: NNI-Site A/thumb 1, NNI-Site B/thumb 2, NNI-Site C/palm 1, and NNI-Site D/palm 2; which are targets for benzimidazoles, dihydropyrones and thiophenes, benzothiazidines, and benzofurans, respectively[61]. Although the *NS5B* gene is less variable than other parts of the HCV genome, viral genetic polymorphism and mutation may also limit the

efficacy of NS5B-specific inhibitors[19,35,64,65].

The nucleos(t)ide inhibitors usually act at the catalytic site of the RdRp, where the GDD motif is located. In the replicon model, 2'-C-methyl-nucleosides select for the NS5B-S282T change, and some nucleotide inhibitors select for several other changes (S15G, R222Q, C223Y, C223H, L320I, V321I)[61,66,67]. However, a combination of at least three changes (S15G/C223H/V321I) was required to confer a high level of resistance[68]. NA inhibitors show, in fact, a high genetic barrier for the emergence of resistance[69], and no resistance mutations have been observed in NA monotherapy[70], or in combination with a PI[71]. In addition, in combination with Peg-IFNα + RBV, no viral breakthroughs due to resistance mutations could be identified[70]. NA inhibitors are therefore the most promising drugs due to the limited number of resistance mutations described[11], and the low frequency of resistant viruses circulating in the population[19,72]. Unfortunately, drugs in development in this class are few, compared to NNI.

NNI exhibit a different range of resistance profiles depending on the target site in the NS5B RdRp. Numerous substitutions associated with resistance to NNI were found mainly in the four allosteric sites A, B, C and D. Some particular changes seem extremely important for resistance, such as NS5B-M423V/I, which increases 31 times the resistance to the drug AG-02154[65]. In addition, secondary mutations may increase resistance profiles. When combined with the substitutions T19P, M71V, M423V or A442T, the change NS5B-A338V causes an increase of up to 17 times the resistance to dihydropyrones and Thiophene[73]. Variable responses to NNI may be due to natural variation in baseline susceptibility[74]. The NS5B-C316N change is frequent in HCV subtype 1b[32], and together with NS5B-Y448H, NS5B-D559G or NS5B-Y555C can increase resistance to benzofurans 30 fold.

NS5B polymerase inhibitors undergoing clinical trials include Mericitabine (RG-7128, Roche), PSI-7977 and Tegobuvir (Gilead), INX-189 (Inhibitex), Filibuvir (PF-00868554, Pfizer), VCH-222 (Vertex), ABT-072 (Abbott), and Setrobuvir (ANA-598, Anadys)[12]. Among these, nucleos(t)ide analogs such as RG-7128, PSI-7977 and INX-189 display a high genetic barrier to resistance and can be efficacious against several HCV genotypes, while non-nucleosidic inhibitors (Filibuvir, VCH-222, ABT-072, Setrobuvir, Tegobuvir) normally display a lower genetic barrier and a genotype-dependent antiviral effect (Table 1)[70,75].

CONCLUSION

Specifically-targeted antiviral therapies for HCV are entering the clinics, and more than 50 compounds are in development. The first major targets are NS3/A protease and NS5B polymerase, but other viral and host targets are in of drug development, such as the viral NS3 helicase, NS4A and NS5A proteins, or cyclophyllin inhibitors and modulators of the innate immune response. In the near future, the rate of sustained virological response will be much greater than with Peg-IFNα + RBV treatment. Due to the selective pressure of DAAs, resistant viruses circulating in the infected population can lead to treatment failure. A single mutation in the coding sequence of the viral enzyme may be sufficient to confer different levels of resistance to a particular drug. The emergence of these resistant variants has been generally observed soon after starting treatment, especially in monotherapy, as a result of the rapid decline of wild-type virus and the dominance of preexisting minority variants. Therefore, the selection of resistant viral strains can compromise new STAT-C regimens, and clinicians must take into account this problem.

In clinical trials with a single STAT-C drug, viral isolates from patients with treatment failure have exhibited one, or more than one, resistance mutation and some of them lasted for years. These results indicate that the success of new treatments using a single STAT-C may be compromised, and will require a high genetic barrier to resistance, optimal drug exposure and strict adherence. From a Public Health perspective, the allocation of resources needs to be maximized to treatment regimens ensuring success; this will depend on the effectiveness of drugs inhibiting all viral variants, minimizing the emergence of mutations. Maximum effectiveness to prevent the emergence of resistance will probably rely on a combination of DAAs with a high genetic barrier to inhibit different viral targets simultaneously, ideally with each inhibitor linked to a different set of resistance mutations.

Several combinations of DAAs, with or without concomitant Peg-IFNα + RBV administration, have obtained different efficacies in controlling HCV replication, with those regimens including compounds with a higher barrier to resistance [like nucleos(t)ide analogues, or NS5A inhibitors] being the more promising in minimizing the emergence of resistance[58,71,76]. To ensure the success of future treatments, it will be important to evaluate the true frequencies of naturally-occurring substitutions that may confer resistance to new DAA's in HCV isolates circulating in the infected population. At the Public Health level, it may be interesting to reinforce epidemiological surveillance to obtain specific data on the geographical distribution of HCV genotypes/subtypes and their prevalence in different cohorts of infected patients, because of the differential response to currently approved and new STAT-C treatment regimes in development. Strategies for increasing (or limiting) access to new treatments may require different approaches in different geographical regions. In addition, active HCV resistance surveillance is needed. Genotype sequencing on viral breakthrough (and also prior to treatment initiation) of the HCV genomic regions targeted by DAAs may be useful to identify resistance pathways, particularly in those patients in whom Peg-IFNα + RBV therapy has failed; the first candidates for newer STAT-C regimens.

Finally, the future availability of highly potent STAT-C combinations can potentially decrease the global burden

of HCV disease, and pave the way for HCV eradication. However, the high cost of STAT-C drugs, their limited efficacy in non-1 HCV genotypes, the emergence of resistance, and the need for sophisticated monitoring of new treatments makes them unreliable for resource-limited countries where the highest prevalence of chronic infection is concentrated. Clinical development of simple and affordable all-oral combination therapeutic regimes with antiviral activity to all HCV genotypes is required, and the development of an effective vaccine is still a relevant unmet goal.

REFERENCES

1 **Lavanchy D**. Chronic viral hepatitis as a public health issue in the world. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2008; **22**: 991-1008 [PMID: 19187863 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpg.2008.11.002]

2 **Ghany MG**, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. Diagnosis, management, and treatment of hepatitis C: an update. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1335-1374 [PMID: 19330875 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22759]

3 **Berenguer M**, Prieto M, Rayón JM, Mora J, Pastor M, Ortiz V, Carrasco D, San Juan F, Burgueño MD, Mir J, Berenguer J. Natural history of clinically compensated hepatitis C virus-related graft cirrhosis after liver transplantation. *Hepatology* 2000; **32**: 852-858 [PMID: 11003634 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2000.17924]

4 **Cornberg M**, Razavi HA, Alberti A, Bernasconi E, Buti M, Cooper C, Dalgard O, Dillion JF, Flisiak R, Forns X, Frankova S, Goldis A, Goulis I, Halota W, Hunyady B, Lagging M, Largen A, Makara M, Manolakopoulos S, Marcellin P, Marinho RT, Pol S, Poynard T, Puoti M, Sagalova O, Sibbel S, Simon K, Wallace C, Young K, Yurdaydin C, Zuckerman E, Negro F, Zeuzem S. A systematic review of hepatitis C virus epidemiology in Europe, Canada and Israel. *Liver Int* 2011; **31** Suppl 2: 30-60 [PMID: 21651702 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2011.02539.x]

5 **Averhoff FM**, Glass N, Holtzman D. Global burden of hepatitis C: considerations for healthcare providers in the United States. *Clin Infect Dis* 2012; **55** Suppl 1: S10-S15 [PMID: 22715208 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis361]

6 **Zeuzem S**. Interferon-based therapy for chronic hepatitis C: current and future perspectives. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **5**: 610-622 [PMID: 18838975 DOI: 10.1038/ncpgasthep1274]

7 **Cuevas JM**, González-Candelas F, Moya A, Sanjuán R. Effect of ribavirin on the mutation rate and spectrum of hepatitis C virus in vivo. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 5760-5764 [PMID: 19321623 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00201-09]

8 **Maylin S**, Martinot-Peignoux M, Moucari R, Boyer N, Ripault MP, Cazals-Hatem D, Giuily N, Castelnau C, Cardoso AC, Asselah T, Féray C, Nicolas-Chanoine MH, Bedossa P, Marcellin P. Eradication of hepatitis C virus in patients successfully treated for chronic hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 821-829 [PMID: 18593587 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.05.044]

9 **Asselah T**, Estrabaud E, Bieche I, Lapalus M, De Muynck S, Vidaud M, Saadoun D, Soumelis V, Marcellin P. Hepatitis C: viral and host factors associated with non-response to pegylated interferon plus ribavirin. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 1259-1269 [PMID: 20633102 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02283.x]

10 **Suppiah V**, Moldovan M, Ahlenstiel G, Berg T, Weltman M, Abate ML, Bassendine M, Spengler U, Dore GJ, Powell E, Riordan S, Sheridan D, Smedile A, Fragomeli V, Müller T, Bahlo M, Stewart GJ, Booth DR, George J. IL28B is associated with response to chronic hepatitis C interferon-alpha and ribavirin therapy. *Nat Genet* 2009; **41**: 1100-1104 [PMID: 19749758 DOI: 10.1038/ng.447]

11 **Gelman MA**, Glenn JS. Mixing the right hepatitis C inhibitor cocktail. *Trends Mol Med* 2010; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21106440 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2010.10.005]

12 **Poordad F**, Dieterich D. Treating hepatitis C: current standard of care and emerging direct-acting antiviral agents. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 449-464 [PMID: 22676357 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2012.01617.x]

13 **Enserink M**. Infectious diseases. First specific drugs raise hopes for hepatitis C. *Science* 2011; **332**: 159-160 [PMID: 21474720 DOI: 10.1126/science.332.6026.159]

14 **Hatzakis A**, Wait S, Bruix J, Buti M, Carballo M, Cavaleri M, Colombo M, Delarocque-Astagneau E, Dusheiko G, Esmat G, Esteban R, Goldberg D, Gore C, Lok AS, Manns M, Marcellin P, Papatheodoridis G, Peterle A, Prati D, Piorkowsky N, Rizzetto M, Roudot-Thoraval F, Soriano V, Thomas HC, Thursz M, Valla D, van Damme P, Veldhuijzen IK, Wedemeyer H, Wiessing L, Zanetti AR, Janssen HL. The state of hepatitis B and C in Europe: report from the hepatitis B and C summit conference*. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18** Suppl 1: 1-16 [PMID: 21824223 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01499.x]

15 **Trozzi C**, Bartholomew L, Ceccacci A, Biasiol G, Pacini L, Altamura S, Narjes F, Muraglia E, Paonessa G, Koch U, De Francesco R, Steinkuhler C, Migliaccio G. In vitro selection and characterization of hepatitis C virus serine protease variants resistant to an active-site peptide inhibitor. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 3669-3679 [PMID: 12610142 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.6.3669-3679.2003]

16 **Kieffer TL**, Sarrazin C, Miller JS, Welker MW, Forestier N, Reesink HW, Kwong AD, Zeuzem S. Telaprevir and pegylated interferon-alpha-2a inhibit wild-type and resistant genotype 1 hepatitis C virus replication in patients. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 631-639 [PMID: 17680654 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21781]

17 **Sarrazin C**, Zeuzem S. Resistance to direct antiviral agents in patients with hepatitis C virus infection. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 447-462 [PMID: 20006612 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2009.11.055]

18 **Halfon P**, Locarnini S. Hepatitis C virus resistance to protease inhibitors. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 192-206 [PMID: 21284949 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.01.011]

19 **Le Pogam S**, Seshaadri A, Kosaka A, Chiu S, Kang H, Hu S, Rajyaguru S, Symons J, Cammack N, Nájera I. Existence of hepatitis C virus NS5B variants naturally resistant to non-nucleoside, but not to nucleoside, polymerase inhibitors among untreated patients. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **61**: 1205-1216 [PMID: 18343801 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn085]

20 **Susser S**, Welsch C, Wang Y, Zettler M, Domingues FS, Karey U, Hughes E, Ralston R, Tong X, Herrmann E, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Characterization of resistance to the protease inhibitor boceprevir in hepatitis C virus-infected patients. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1709-1718 [PMID: 19787809 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23192]

21 **Rong L**, Dahari H, Ribeiro RM, Perelson AS. Rapid emergence of protease inhibitor resistance in hepatitis C virus. *Sci Transl Med* 2010; **2**: 30ra32 [PMID: 20445200 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3000544]

22 **Bae A**, Sun SC, Qi X, Chen X, Ku K, Worth A, Wong KA, Harris J, Miller MD, Mo H. Susceptibility of treatment-naive hepatitis C virus (HCV) clinical isolates to HCV protease inhibitors. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2010; **54**: 5288-5297 [PMID: 20855726 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00777-10]

23 **Simmonds P**. Genetic diversity and evolution of hepatitis C virus--15 years on. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 3173-3188 [PMID: 15483230 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80401-0]

24 **Tong CY**, Cane PA, Pillay D. ARHAI: antiviral resistance. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67** Suppl 1: i65-i68 [PMID: 22855880]

25 **Miller RH**, Purcell RH. Hepatitis C virus shares amino acid sequence similarity with pestiviruses and flaviviruses as well as members of two plant virus supergroups. *Proc Natl*

Acad Sci USA 1990; **87**: 2057-2061 [PMID: 2156259]
26 **Moradpour D**, Penin F, Rice CM. Replication of hepatitis C virus. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2007; **5**: 453-463 [PMID: 17487147 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro1645]
27 **Brown RJ**, Juttla VS, Tarr AW, Finnis R, Irving WL, Hemsley S, Flower DR, Borrow P, Ball JK. Evolutionary dynamics of hepatitis C virus envelope genes during chronic infection. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 1931-1942 [PMID: 15958671 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80957-0]
28 **Neumann AU**, Lam NP, Dahari H, Gretch DR, Wiley TE, Layden TJ, Perelson AS. Hepatitis C viral dynamics in vivo and the antiviral efficacy of interferon-alpha therapy. *Science* 1998; **282**: 103-107 [PMID: 9756471 DOI: 10.1126/science.282.5386.103]
29 **Domingo E**, Menéndez-Arias L, Quiñones-Mateu ME, Holguín A, Gutiérrez-Rivas M, Martínez MA, Quer J, Novella IS, Holland JJ. Viral quasispecies and the problem of vaccine-escape and drug-resistant mutants. *Prog Drug Res* 1997; **48**: 99-128 [PMID: 9204684]
30 **Holland-Staley CA**, Kovari LC, Golenberg EM, Pobursky KJ, Mayers DL. Genetic diversity and response to IFN of the NS3 protease gene from clinical strains of the hepatitis C virus. *Arch Virol* 2002; **147**: 1385-1406 [PMID: 12111414 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-002-0807-5]
31 **Vallet S**, Gouriou S, Nousbaum JB, Legrand-Quillien MC, Goudeau A, Picard B. Genetic heterogeneity of the NS3 protease gene in hepatitis C virus genotype 1 from untreated infected patients. *J Med Virol* 2005; **75**: 528-537 [PMID: 15714495 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.20302]
32 **López-Labrador FX**, Moya A, Gonzàlez-Candelas F. Mapping natural polymorphisms of hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease and antiviral resistance to inhibitors in worldwide isolates. *Antivir Ther* 2008; **13**: 481-494 [PMID: 18672527]
33 **Bartels DJ**, Zhou Y, Zhang EZ, Marcial M, Byrn RA, Pfeiffer T, Tigges AM, Adiwijaya BS, Lin C, Kwong AD, Kieffer TL. Natural prevalence of hepatitis C virus variants with decreased sensitivity to NS3.4A protease inhibitors in treatment-naive subjects. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **198**: 800-807 [PMID: 18637752 DOI: 10.1086/591141]
34 **Kuntzen T**, Timm J, Berical A, Lennon N, Berlin AM, Young SK, Lee B, Heckerman D, Carlson J, Reyor LL, Kleyman M, McMahon CM, Birch C, Schulze Zur Wiesch J, Ledlie T, Koehrsen M, Kodira C, Roberts AD, Lauer GM, Rosen HR, Bihl F, Cerny A, Spengler U, Liu Z, Kim AY, Xing Y, Schneidewind A, Madey MA, Fleckenstein JF, Park VM, Galagan JE, Nusbaum C, Walker BD, Lake-Bakaar GV, Daar ES, Jacobson IM, Gomperts ED, Edlin BR, Donfield SM, Chung RT, Talal AH, Marion T, Birren BW, Henn MR, Allen TM. Naturally occurring dominant resistance mutations to hepatitis C virus protease and polymerase inhibitors in treatment-naïve patients. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 1769-1778 [PMID: 19026009 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22549]
35 **Gaudieri S**, Rauch A, Pfafferott K, Barnes E, Cheng W, McCaughan G, Shackel N, Jeffrey GP, Mollison L, Baker R, Furrer H, Günthard HF, Freitas E, Humphreys I, Klenerman P, Mallal S, James I, Roberts S, Nolan D, Lucas M. Hepatitis C virus drug resistance and immune-driven adaptations: relevance to new antiviral therapy. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1069-1082 [PMID: 19263475 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22773]
36 **Grakoui A**, McCourt DW, Wychowski C, Feinstone SM, Rice CM. Characterization of the hepatitis C virus-encoded serine proteinase: determination of proteinase-dependent polyprotein cleavage sites. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 2832-2843 [PMID: 8386278]
37 **Meylan E**, Curran J, Hofmann K, Moradpour D, Binder M, Bartenschlager R, Tschopp J. Cardif is an adaptor protein in the RIG-I antiviral pathway and is targeted by hepatitis C virus. *Nature* 2005; **437**: 1167-1172 [PMID: 16177806 DOI: 10.1038/nature04193]
38 **Li XD**, Sun L, Seth RB, Pineda G, Chen ZJ. Hepatitis C virus protease NS3/4A cleaves mitochondrial antiviral signaling protein off the mitochondria to evade innate immunity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 17717-17722 [PMID: 16301520 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0508531102]
39 **Foy E**, Li K, Sumpter R, Loo YM, Johnson CL, Wang C, Fish PM, Yoneyama M, Fujita T, Lemon SM, Gale M. Control of antiviral defenses through hepatitis C virus disruption of retinoic acid-inducible gene-I signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 2986-2991 [PMID: 15710892 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0408707102]
40 **Lamarre D**, Anderson PC, Bailey M, Beaulieu P, Bolger G, Bonneau P, Bös M, Cameron DR, Cartier M, Cordingley MG, Faucher AM, Goudreau N, Kawai SH, Kukolj G, Lagacé L, LaPlante SR, Narjes H, Poupart MA, Rancourt J, Sentjens RE, St George R, Simoneau B, Steinmann G, Thibeault D, Tsantrizos YS, Weldon SM, Yong CL, Llinàs-Brunet M. An NS3 protease inhibitor with antiviral effects in humans infected with hepatitis C virus. *Nature* 2003; **426**: 186-189 [PMID: 14578911 DOI: 10.1038/nature02099]
41 **Kieffer TL**, Kwong AD, Picchio GR. Viral resistance to specifically targeted antiviral therapies for hepatitis C (STAT-Cs). *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 202-212 [PMID: 19903720 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkp388]
42 **Lim SR**, Qin X, Susser S, Nicholas JB, Lange C, Herrmann E, Hong J, Arfsten A, Hooi L, Bradford W, Nájera I, Smith P, Zeuzem S, Kossen K, Sarrazin C, Seiwert SD. Virologic escape during danoprevir (ITMN-191/RG7227) monotherapy is hepatitis C virus subtype dependent and associated with R155K substitution. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 271-279 [PMID: 22064535 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.05636-11]
43 **Sarrazin C**, Kieffer TL, Bartels D, Hanzelka B, Müh U, Welker M, Wincheringer D, Zhou Y, Chu HM, Lin C, Weegink C, Reesink H, Zeuzem S, Kwong AD. Dynamic hepatitis C virus genotypic and phenotypic changes in patients treated with the protease inhibitor telaprevir. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 1767-1777 [PMID: 17484874 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.02.037]
44 **Zeuzem S**, Hezode C, Ferenci P, Dusheiko GM, Alves K, Bengtsson L, Gharakhanian S, Kauffman R, Alam J, Pawlotsky J. Telaprevir in combination with peginterferon-alfa-2a with or without ribavirin in the treatment of chronic hepatitis C: Final results of the PROVE 2 study. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 418A-419A
45 **Susser S**, Welker MW, Zettler M, Wohnsland A, Hughes E, Ralston R, Tong X, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Clonal analysis of mutations selected in the HCV NS3 protease domain of genotype 1 non-responders treated with boceprevir (SCH503034). *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: S29
46 **Susser S**, Forestier N, Vermehren J, Grigorian N, Karey U, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Decline of detectable resistance mutations within the NS3 protease quasispecies during long-term follow-up after treatment with telaprevir. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: S300
47 **Vierling JM**, Ralston R, Lawitz EJ, McCone J, Gordon S, Pound D, Davis M, Galati J, Jacobson I, Rossaro L, Anderson FH, King J, Cassidy W, Bourliere M, Esteban-Mur R, Ravendhran N, Galler G, Mendez P, Brass CA, Albrecht JK. Long-term outcomes following combination treatment with boceprevir plus pegintron/ribavirin (P/R) in patients with chronic hepatitis C, genotype 1 (CHC-G1). *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: S470-S471
48 **Imhof I**, Simmonds P. Genotype differences in susceptibility and resistance development of hepatitis C virus to protease inhibitors telaprevir (VX-950) and danoprevir (ITMN-191). *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1090-1099 [PMID: 21480315 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24172]
49 **Gottwein JM**, Scheel TK, Jensen TB, Ghanem L, Bukh J. Differential efficacy of protease inhibitors against HCV genotypes 2a, 3a, 5a, and 6a NS3/4A protease recombinant viruses. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1067-1079 [PMID: 21699793 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.06.004]

50 **Moreno C**, Berg T, Tanwandee T, Thongsawat S, Van Vlierberghe H, Zeuzem S, Lenz O, Peeters M, Sekar V, De Smedt G. Antiviral activity of TMC435 monotherapy in patients infected with HCV genotypes 2-6: TMC435-C202, a phase IIa, open-label study. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 1247-1253 [PMID: 22326470 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.12.033]

51 **Mangia A**, Mottola L. Treatment of non-genotype 1 hepatitis C virus patients. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2012; **14**: 87-93 [PMID: 22113745 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-011-0235-3]

52 **Lenz O**, Fevery B, Vijgen L, Verbeeck J, Peeters M, Beumont-Mauviel M, Zeuzem S, Picchio G. TMC435 in patients infected with HCV genotype 1 who have failed previous pegylated interferon / ribavirin treatment: Virologic analyses of the ASPIRE trial. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56** Suppl 2: S5

53 **McPhee F**, Friborg J, Levine S, Chen C, Falk P, Yu F, Hernandez D, Lee MS, Chaniewski S, Sheaffer AK, Pasquinelli C. Resistance analysis of the hepatitis C virus NS3 protease inhibitor asunaprevir. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 3670-3681 [PMID: 22508297 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00308-12]

54 **Nasu A**, Marusawa H, Ueda Y, Nishijima N, Takahashi K, Osaki Y, Yamashita Y, Inokuma T, Tamada T, Fujiwara T, Sato F, Shimizu K, Chiba T. Genetic heterogeneity of hepatitis C virus in association with antiviral therapy determined by ultra-deep sequencing. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e24907 [PMID: 21966381 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0024907]

55 **Fonseca-Coronado S**, Escobar-Gutiérrez A, Ruiz-Tovar K, Cruz-Rivera MY, Rivera-Osorio P, Vazquez-Pichardo M, Carpio-Pedroza JC, Ruíz-Pacheco JA, Cazares F, Vaughan G. Specific detection of naturally occurring hepatitis C virus mutants with resistance to telaprevir and boceprevir (protease inhibitors) among treatment-naïve infected individuals. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 281-287 [PMID: 22116161 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.05842-11]

56 **Hiraga N**, Imamura M, Abe H, Hayes CN, Kono T, Onishi M, Tsuge M, Takahashi S, Ochi H, Iwao E, Kamiya N, Yamada I, Tateno C, Yoshizato K, Matsui H, Kanai A, Inaba T, Tanaka S, Chayama K. Rapid emergence of telaprevir resistant hepatitis C virus strain from wildtype clone in vivo. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 781-788 [PMID: 21626527 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24460]

57 **Vermehren J**, Susser S, Lange CM, Forestier N, Karey U, Hughes E, Ralston R, Tong X, Zeuzem S, Sarrazin C. Mutations selected in the hepatitis C virus NS3 protease domain during sequential treatment with boceprevir with and without pegylated interferon alfa-2b. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 120-127 [PMID: 22239501 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01449.x]

58 **Lok AS**, Gardiner DF, Lawitz E, Martorell C, Everson GT, Ghalib R, Reindollar R, Rustgi V, McPhee F, Wind-Rotolo M, Persson A, Zhu K, Dimitrova DI, Eley T, Guo T, Grasela DM, Pasquinelli C. Preliminary study of two antiviral agents for hepatitis C genotype 1. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 216-224 [PMID: 22256805 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1104430]

59 **Chayama K**, Takahashi S, Toyota J, Karino Y, Ikeda K, Ishikawa H, Watanabe H, McPhee F, Hughes E, Kumada H. Dual therapy with the nonstructural protein 5A inhibitor, daclatasvir, and the nonstructural protein 3 protease inhibitor, asunaprevir, in hepatitis C virus genotype 1b-infected null responders. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 742-748 [PMID: 21987462 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24724]

60 **Suzuki F**, Sezaki H, Akuta N, Suzuki Y, Seko Y, Kawamura Y, Hosaka T, Kobayashi M, Saito S, Arase Y, Ikeda K, Kobayashi M, Mineta R, Watahiki S, Miyakawa Y, Kumada H. Prevalence of hepatitis C virus variants resistant to NS3 protease inhibitors or the NS5A inhibitor (BMS-790052) in hepatitis patients with genotype 1b. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **54**: 352-354 [PMID: 22658798 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.04.024]

61 **De Francesco R**, Carfí A. Advances in the development of new therapeutic agents targeting the NS3-4A serine protease or the NS5B RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of the hepatitis C virus. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2007; **59**: 1242-1262 [PMID: 17869377 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2007.04.016]

62 **Behrens SE**, Tomei L, De Francesco R. Identification and properties of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase of hepatitis C virus. *EMBO J* 1996; **15**: 12-22 [PMID: 8598194]

63 **Reich S**, Golbik RP, Geissler R, Lilie H, Behrens SE. Mechanisms of activity and inhibition of the hepatitis C virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 13685-13693 [PMID: 20194503 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.082206]

64 **Beaulieu PL**. Recent advances in the development of NS5B polymerase inhibitors for the treatment of hepatitis C virus infection. *Expert Opin Ther Pat* 2009; **19**: 145-164 [PMID: 19441916 DOI: 10.1517/13543770802672598]

65 **Shi ST**, Herlihy KJ, Graham JP, Fuhrman SA, Doan C, Parge H, Hickey M, Gao J, Yu X, Chau F, Gonzalez J, Li H, Lewis C, Patick AK, Duggal R. In vitro resistance study of AG-021541, a novel nonnucleoside inhibitor of the hepatitis C virus RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 675-683 [PMID: 18070954 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00834-07]

66 **Thompson A**, Patel K, Tillman H, McHutchison JG. Directly acting antivirals for the treatment of patients with hepatitis C infection: a clinical development update addressing key future challenges. *J Hepatol* 2009; **50**: 184-194 [PMID: 19022518 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.10.011]

67 **Lam AM**, Espiritu C, Bansal S, Micolochick Steuer HM, Zennou V, Otto MJ, Furman PA. Hepatitis C virus nucleotide inhibitors PSI-352938 and PSI-353661 exhibit a novel mechanism of resistance requiring multiple mutations within replicon RNA. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 12334-12342 [PMID: 21957306 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.05639-11]

68 **Sofia MJ**. Nucleotide prodrugs for HCV therapy. *Antivir Chem Chemother* 2011; **22**: 23-49 [PMID: 21860070 DOI: 10.3851/IMP1797]

69 **McCown MF**, Rajyaguru S, Le Pogam S, Ali S, Jiang WR, Kang H, Symons J, Cammack N, Najera I. The hepatitis C virus replicon presents a higher barrier to resistance to nucleoside analogs than to nonnucleoside polymerase or protease inhibitors. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 1604-1612 [PMID: 18285474 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01317-07]

70 **Le Pogam S**, Seshaadri A, Ewing A, Kang H, Kosaka A, Yan JM, Berrey M, Symonds B, De La Rosa A, Cammack N, Nájera I. RG7128 alone or in combination with pegylated interferon-α2a and ribavirin prevents hepatitis C virus (HCV) Replication and selection of resistant variants in HCV-infected patients. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 1510-1519 [PMID: 20942646 DOI: 10.1086/656774]

71 **Gane EJ**, Roberts SK, Stedman CA, Angus PW, Ritchie B, Elston R, Ipe D, Morcos PN, Baher L, Najera I, Chu T, Lopatin U, Berrey MM, Bradford W, Laughlin M, Shulman NS, Smith PF. Oral combination therapy with a nucleoside polymerase inhibitor (RG7128) and danoprevir for chronic hepatitis C genotype 1 infection (INFORM-1): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-escalation trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 1467-1475 [PMID: 20951424 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(10)61384-0]

72 **Sentandreu V**, González-Candelas F, Moya A, López-Labrador FX. Hepatitis C virus NS3/4A protease and NS5B polymerase polymorphism in worldwide isolates: anticipated problems for STAT-C therapies in non-1 genotypes. In: Fourth European Congress of Virology 2010; Cernobbio, Italy; 2010 Apr 7-11

73 **Howe AY**, Cheng H, Thompson I, Chunduru SK, Herrmann S, O'Connell J, Agarwal A, Chopra R, Del Vecchio AM. Molecular mechanism of a thumb domain hepatitis C virus nonnucleoside RNA-dependent RNA polymerase inhibitor. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 4103-4113 [PMID: 16940072 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00365-06]

74 **Sun SC**, Bae A, Qi X, Harris J, Wong KA, Miller MD, Mo H. Natural variation in drug susceptibility to HCV polymerase inhibitors in treatment-naïve HCV patient isolates. *J Viral*

Hepat 2011; **18**: 861-870 [PMID: 21108698 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01396.x]

75 **Lam AM**, Espiritu C, Bansal S, Micolochick Steuer HM, Niu C, Zennou V, Keilman M, Zhu Y, Lan S, Otto MJ, Furman PA. Genotype and subtype profiling of PSI-7977 as a nucleotide inhibitor of hepatitis C virus. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 3359-3368 [PMID: 22430955 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00054-12]

76 **Zeuzem S**, Buggisch P, Agarwal K, Marcellin P, Sereni D, Klinker H, Moreno C, Zarski JP, Horsmans Y, Mo H, Arterburn S, Knox S, Oldach D, McHutchison JG, Manns MP, Foster GR. The protease inhibitor, GS-9256, and non-nucleoside polymerase inhibitor tegobuvir alone, with ribavirin, or pegylated interferon plus ribavirin in hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2012; **55**: 749-758 [PMID: 22006408 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24744]

77 **Kwo PY**, Vinayek R. The therapeutic approaches for hepatitis C virus: protease inhibitors and polymerase inhibitors. *Gut Liver* 2011; **5**: 406-417 [PMID: 22195237 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2011.5.4.406]

78 **Chevaliez S**, Asselah T. Mechanisms of non-response to antiviral treatment in chronic hepatitis C. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2011; **35** Suppl 1: S31-S41 [PMID: 21742299 DOI: 10.1016/S2210-7401(11)70005-5]

79 **Thompson AJ**, Locarnini SA, Beard MR. Resistance to anti-HCV protease inhibitors. *Curr Opin Virol* 2011; **1**: 599-606 [PMID: 22440917 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2011.10.001]

80 **Soriano V**, Vispo E, Poveda E, Labarga P, Martin-Carbonero L, Fernandez-Montero JV, Barreiro P. Directly acting antivirals against hepatitis C virus. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2011; **66**: 1673-1686 [PMID: 21652618 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkr215]

P-Reviewers Hong JR, Kodama EN, Margulies B
S- Editor Song XX **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Virol 2013 February 12; 2(1): I-V
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aim and scope

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. The current columns of *WJV* include editorial, frontier, diagnostic advances, therapeutics advances, field of vision, mini-reviews, review, topic highlight, medical ethics, original articles, case report, clinical case conference (Clinicopathological conference), and autobiography. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

WJV is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15 471 editorial borad members or peer reivewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJV* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers; (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, *etc.*; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in virology; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in virology; (13) Meta-Analysis: To evaluate the clinical effectiveness in virology by using data from two or more randomised control trials; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJV*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of virology; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Virology

ISSN

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

Launch date
February 12, 2012

Frequency
Quarterly

Editorial office
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjv@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Publisher
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F, Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Telephone: +852-58042046
Fax: +852-31158812
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Production center
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893

Representative office
USA Office
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

Instructions to authors
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

Indexed and Abstracted in
Digital Object Identifier.

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJV* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should

follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www.clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjv@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, *e.g.*, Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, *e.g.*, Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/…"), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, *e.g.*, 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, *e.g.*, PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases.

Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100725073806.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100725073726.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100725073445.htm.

Proof of financial support

For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

Links to documents related to the manuscript

WJV will be initiating a platform to promote dynamic interactions between the editors, peer reviewers, readers and authors. After a manuscript is published online, links to the PDF version of the submitted manuscript, the peer-reviewers' report and the revised manuscript will be put on-line. Readers can make comments on the peer reviewer's report, authors' responses to peer reviewers, and the revised manuscript. We hope that authors will benefit from this feedback and be able to revise the manuscript accordingly in a timely manner.

Publication fee

WJV is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 16-109

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 2 Number 2 May 12, 2013

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Ling Lu, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Kansas Medical Center, Kansas City, 3901 Rainbow Blvd, WHE 3020, KS 66160, United States

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjv@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
May 12, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.16

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 16-17
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

EDITORIAL

Reprogramming the host: Modification of cell functions upon viral infection

Gualtiero Alvisi, Giorgio Palù

Gualtiero Alvisi, Giorgio Palù, Department of Molecular Medicine, Microbiology Section, 35121 Padua, Italy
Author contributions: Both the authors contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Molecular Medicine, Microbiology Section, Via Gabelli 63, 35121 Padua, Italy. gualtiero.alvisi@unipd.it
Telephone: +39-49-8272353 Fax: +39-49-8272355
Received: April 22, 2013 Revised: April 27, 2013
Accepted: May 3, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Viruses and their hosts have co-evolved for million years. In order to successfully replicate their genome, viruses need to usurp the biosynthetic machinery of the host cell. Depending on the complexity and the nature of the genome, replication might involve or not a relatively large subset of viral products, in addition to a number of host cell factors, and take place in several subcellular compartments, including the nucleus, the cytoplasm, as well as virus-induced, rearranged membranes. Therefore viruses need to ensure the correct subcellular localization of their effectors and to be capable of disguising from the cellular defensive mechanisms. In addition, viruses are capable of exploiting host cell activities, by modulating their post-translational modification apparatus, resulting in profound modifications in the function of cellular and viral products. Not surprisingly infection of host cells by these parasites can lead to alterations of cellular differentiation and growing properties, with important pathogenic consequences. In the present hot topic highlight entitled "Reprogramming the host: modification of cell functions upon viral infection", a number of leading virologists and cell biologist thoroughly describe recent advances in our understanding of how viruses modulate cellular functions to achieve successful replication and propagation at the expenses of human cells.

Key words: Virus-host interaction; Pathogenesis; Post translational modification; Viral factories; Cancer; Differentiation; Human immunodeficiency virus; Hepatitis C virus; RNAi

Core tip: Viruses are obliged intracellular parasites causing million causalities every year. In order to successfully replicate their genome, viruses need to usurp the biosynthetic machinery of the host cell. Depending on the complexity and the nature of the genome, replication might involve or not a relatively large subset of viral products, in addition to a number of host cell factors, and take place in several subcellular compartments, including the nucleus, the cytoplasm, as well as virus-induced, rearranged membranes. We describe recent advances in our understanding of how viruses modulate cellular functions to successfully replicate at the expenses of human cells.

Alvisi G, Palù G. Reprogramming the host: Modification of cell functions upon viral infection. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 16-17 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/16.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.16

Viruses and their hosts have co-evolved for million years. In order to successfully replicate their genome, viruses need to usurp the biosynthetic machinery of the host cell. Depending on the complexity and the nature of the genome, replication might involve or not a relatively large subset of viral products, in addition to a number of host cell factors, and take place in several subcellular compartments, including the nucleus, the cytoplasm, as well as virus-induced, rearranged membranes. Therefore viruses need to ensure the correct subcellular localization of their effectors and to be capable of disguising from the cellular defensive mechanisms. In this hot topic highlight entitled "Reprogramming the host: Modification of cell functions upon viral infection", we describe recent advances in our

understanding of how viruses modulate cellular functions to achieve successful replication and propagation at the expenses of human cells.

The first review of this issue, by Amberkar *et al*[1] "High-throughput RNA interference screens integrative analysis: Towards a comprehensive understanding of the virus-host interplay", based on bioinformatic and statistical approaches, explains how high throughput technologies can help unveiling the complex relationship between viruses and host cell proteins, which might represent targets for potential therapeutic intervention.

In "Architecture and biogenesis of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories", Paul *et al*[2] propose an innovative classification of positive strand RNA viruses according to the morphology of membrane rearrangements they are able to induce, and on which genome replication is believed to take place. The interplay of viral and cellular factors in the biogenesis of these replication factories is discussed.

The relationship between viruses and the host cell defensive system is the particular focus of the two following reviews "Innate host responses to West Nile virus: Implications for central nervous system immunopathology", by Rossini *et al*[3] and "Paramyxovirus evasion of innate immunity: Diverse strategies for common targets" by Audsley *et al*[4], which both provide a simultaneously accurate and concise summary of viral strategies to subvert the innate response at the molecular level, and the implication thereof in viral mediated pathogenesis.

In the following review "Viral proteins and Src family kinases: Mechanisms of pathogenicity from a 'liaison dangereuse'", Pagano *et al*[5], describe the mechanisms by which several viruses exploit protein-protein interactions to modulate the subcellular localization and enzymatic activity of these cellular enzymes, thus promoting their replication and regulating cell survival. Indeed, viruses are known to efficiently modulate the cell post translational machinery for their own benefit. Similarly, Mattoscio *et al*[6], in "Viral manipulation of cellular protein conjugation pathways: The SUMO lesson", review the relationship between the Small Ubiquitin like MOdifier apparatus and a number of DNA and RNA viruses.

"Effects of human immunodeficiency virus on the erythrocyte and megakaryocyte lineages" by Gibellini *et al*[7], deals with the ability of human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection to affect the differentiation potential of different cellular types, including osteoclast and vessel stem cells, and its implication in pathogenesis.

Finally, the hot topic highlight is closed by an intriguing hypothesis formulated by Avanzi *et al*[8], "How virus persistence can initiate the tumorigenesis process" describing in detail how infection-reinfection/reactivation cycles of viruses might contribute to the initiation of tumorigenesis.

REFERENCES

1 **Amberkar S**, Kiani NA, Bartenschlager R, Alvisi G, Kaderali L. High-throughput RNA interference screens integrative analysis: Towards a comprehensive understanding of the virus-host interplay. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 18-31 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.18]

2 **Paul D**, Bartenschlager R. Architecture and biogenesis of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 32-48 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.32]

3 **Rossini G**, Landini MP, Gelsomino F, Sambri V, Varani S. Innate host responses to West Nile virus: Implications for central nervous system immunopathology. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 49-56 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.49]

4 **Audsley MD**, Moseley GW. Paramyxovirus evasion of innate immunity: Diverse strategies for common targets. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 57-70 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.57]

5 **Pagano MA**, Tibaldi E, Palù G, Brunati AM. Viral proteins and Src family kinases: Mechanisms of pathogenicity from a "liaison dangereuse". *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 71-78 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.71]

6 **Mattoscio D**, Segré CV, Chiocca S. Viral manipulation of cellular protein conjugation pathways: The SUMO lesson. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 79-90 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.79]

7 **Gibellini D**, Clò A, Morini S, Miserocchi A, Ponti C, Carla Re M. Effects of human immunodeficiency virus on the erythrocyte and megakaryocyte lineages. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 91-101 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.91]

8 **Avanzi S**, Alvisi G, Ripalti A. How virus persistence can initiate the tumorigenesis process. *World J Virol* 2013; **2**: 102-109 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.102]

P- Reviewer Zhong ZH **S- Editor** Song XX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.18

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 18-31
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

High-throughput RNA interference screens integrative analysis: Towards a comprehensive understanding of the virus-host interplay

Sandeep Amberkar, Narsis A Kiani, Ralf Bartenschlager, Gualtiero Alvisi, Lars Kaderali

Sandeep Amberkar, Narsis A Kiani, Lars Kaderali, Institute for Medical Informatics and Biometry, Medical Faculty Carl Gustav Carus, Technische Universität Dresden, 01307 Dresden, Germany
Ralf Bartenschlager, Department of Molecular Virology, University of Heidelberg, 69121 Heidelberg, Germany
Gualtiero Alvisi, Department of Molecular Medicine, University of Padua, 35121 Padua, Italy
Author contributions: Amberkar S, Kiani NA and Alvisi G wrote the paper; Bartenschlager R, Alvisi G and Kaderali L revised the paper; Amberkar S, Kiani NA, Bartenschlager R, Alvisi G and Kaderali L approved the final version of the manuscript
Correspondence to: Dr. Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, Department of Molecular Medicine, University of Padua, Via Aristide Gabelli, 63, 35121 Padua, Italy. gualtiero.alvisi@unipd.it
Telephone: +39-49-8272353 Fax: +39-49-8272355
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: February 15, 2013
Accepted: March 15, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Viruses are extremely heterogeneous entities; the size and the nature of their genetic information, as well as the strategies employed to amplify and propagate their genomes, are highly variable. However, as obligatory intracellular parasites, replication of all viruses relies on the host cell. Having co-evolved with their host for several million years, viruses have developed very sophisticated strategies to hijack cellular factors that promote virus uptake, replication, and spread. Identification of host cell factors (HCFs) required for these processes is a major challenge for researchers, but it enables the identification of new, highly selective targets for anti viral therapeutics. To this end, the establishment of platforms enabling genome-wide high-throughput RNA interference (HT-RNAi) screens has led to the identification of several key factors involved in the viral life cycle. A number of genome-wide HT-RNAi screens have been performed for major human pathogens. These studies enable first inter-viral comparisons related to HCF requirements. Although several cellular functions appear to be uniformly required for the life cycle of most viruses tested (such as the proteasome and the Golgi-mediated secretory pathways), some factors, like the lipid kinase Phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase Ⅲα in the case of hepatitis C virus, are selectively required for individual viruses. However, despite the amount of data available, we are still far away from a comprehensive understanding of the interplay between viruses and host factors. Major limitations towards this goal are the low sensitivity and specificity of such screens, resulting in limited overlap between different screens performed with the same virus. This review focuses on how statistical and bioinformatic analysis methods applied to HT-RNAi screens can help overcoming these issues thus increasing the reliability and impact of such studies.

Key words: RNA interference; High-throughput; Cell population; Dependency factors; Bioinformatics; Human immunodeficiency virus; Hepatitis C virus; Dengue virus; Viral infection; Virus-host interactions

Amberkar S, Kiani NA, Bartenschlager R, Alvisi G, Kaderali L. High-throughput RNA interference screens integrative analysis: Towards a comprehensive understanding of the virus-host interplay. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 18-31 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/18.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.18

INTRODUCTION

Viruses are obligate intracellular parasites causing more

than 3 million deaths per year worldwide (http://www.cdc.gov/). Development of highly efficient vaccines to prevent infection, or antiviral compounds to promote viral clearance from infected patients is hindered by their high variability and mutation rate[1]. Given the small size of their genome, which can be as small as just a few kilobases[2], viruses necessarily rely on host cell factors (HCFs) in order to propagate their genetic information. Therefore key HCFs required for the viral life cycle might represent potential target for the development of new anti-viral compounds[3]. Indeed these factors can be ablated either pharmacologically or genetically, resulting in a drop of viral replication[4,5]. While pharmacological ablation necessarily relies on the availability of highly specific inhibitors, the discovery of RNA interference (RNAi) allows to genetically hinder the expression of virtually any human gene, by reducing its mRNA levels and therefore protein expression[6,7]. The availability of libraries of small interfering RNAs (siRNAs) directed towards almost every human gene (genome-wide libraries) enables to perform large scale, high-throughput RNAi (HT-RNAi) screens to identify key HCF involved in virtually any measurable cellular process. To this end, HT-RNAi technology has been extensively used to identify cellular factors involved in cell division[8], Wnt signaling[9], Janus kinase/signal transducers and activators of transcription signaling[10], extracellular signal-regulated kinases signaling[11], caspase activation[12], mitochondrial function[13] and many others. A similar approach could also be undertaken to search for HCFs required for a certain step of the life cycle of any given virus, which is able to replicate in cell culture. Because viral infection is a multi-step process that starts with the interaction between the parasite and the target cell and ends with the release of newly generated infectious particles, any of these steps is a potential target of therapeutic intervention through silencing of the involved HCFs. Therefore, several genome-wide HT RNAi screens have been performed to identify key factors involved in the life cycle of a number of viruses, including human major pathogens such as influenza virus (INF)[14-16], human immunodeficiency virus-1 (HIV-1)[17-19], and human hepatitis C virus (HCV)[20,21], the only constrain being the availability of a robust cell culture system to assay the outcome of infection. The very first genome-wide HT-RNAi screen performed on viruses was performed on Drosophila C virus (DCV)[22]. Indeed most of the first genome wide HT-RNAi screens were performed in Drosophila cells because of several reasons, including the fact that Drosophila Melanogaster's genome was completely sequenced in 2000[23], allowing for synthesis of comprehensive Drosophila dsRNA libraries[24,25] and that long dsRNAs added to the medium of Drosophila tissue culture cells are rapidly taken up by the cells in the absence of any transfection reagents, mediating efficient and specific mRNAs knockdown[26]. The first genome-wide screen for viral HCFs relied on a very simple experimental set-up: cells were incubated with a single RNAi specific for each gene in 384 well plates for 3 d, infected with DCV, and 1 d later, processed for immunofluorescence against the capsid antigen before automated microscopic imaging. By visual inspection, the authors identified 210 dsRNA species that reduced the relative number of infected cells by > 40%. dsRNAs targeting these genes were re-synthesized and tested again for their ability to decrease DCV infection. This "validation" screening allowed identifying 112 host dependency factors (HDFs). Among them, 66 proteins were ribosomal proteins, specifically required for translation of DCV polyprotein but not for vesicular stomatitis virus, a pathogen whose genome, in contrast to that of DCV, does not contain a ribosomal entry site (IRES) mediating RNA translation in the absence of a 5' cap. The authors therefore concluded that the ribosomal genes identified in their study are essential for DVC IRES mediated genome translation.

Since this very first example, it became rapidly clear that many sources of errors such as RNAi reagent design, an inhomogeneous staining, differences in cell growing properties as well as in transfection and infection efficiencies could negatively affect the outcome of such HT-RNAi screens. Therefore, HT-RNAi screens became more and more sophisticated (Table 1). Authors started to worry to strengthen the statistical reliability of their studies by including several replicas, and increasing the number of oligos tested per gene. The most popular approach so far has been to test four different oligos per gene, pooled in a single well in a primary screen, to reduce the so called "off targets effects"[27]. Subsequently hit genes from the primary screen are further tested in a secondary validation screen, where the four different oligos used in the primary screen are tested individually for their ability to reproduce the original phenotype[17,20,21,28]. Several studies started to include the possibility to distinguish genes important early in the viral life cycle (entry/replication phases) from those involved later on (assembly/release of new viral particles), by implementing a two-step procedure, according to which cells are incubated with the siRNA library before infection with the virus of interest. Measurement of viral replication at a given time point enables to identify gene products important for early phases of the viral life cycle such as virus entry and genome replication. Simultaneously, supernatants are collected from infected cells and used to re-infect naive cells, therefore enabling to identify genes important for late stages of viral life cycle such as viral assembly and release[14,17,20]. As far as the readout is concerned, some authors preferred to utilize reporter viruses carrying either the GFP[29]-to avoid issues related to antigen staining and detection - or the Luciferase (Luc) genes in their genome[15,16,18,21], the latter solution enabling an easier and more quantitative analysis of the levels of viral replication. Interpretation of HT-RNAi screening results is also complicated by the fact that different screens performed with the same virus yielded little overlap between HCFs, raising questions concerning the reliability and reproducibility of this approach[30]. Hence, several authors have implemented interesting bioinformatics and statistical approaches (see below) to strengthen the significance and

reliability of their results by integrating RNAi data with protein-protein interaction (PPI) databases[18,20].

Overall the picture emerging from the above-mentioned studies is that different viruses rely on some common structures, such as the proteasome proteolytic pathway, the spliceosome complex, and the Golgi secretory system. Because of the "housekeeping" nature of the latter processes, these findings, although representing a crucial stating point to understand the molecular biology behind the virus-host cell interaction, might be of limited importance to the identification of anti-viral targets and to the understanding of how specific viruses differentially exploit the cell for their own purposes. However, a few virus specific HCFs have also been identified. Among them, a lipid kinase, the phosphatidylinositol-4-kinase Ⅲα (PI4K-Ⅲα) has been identified by several HT-RNAi screens as a crucial factor for HCV replication, in spite of differences in the HCV genotypes used and the experimental setup[20,21,31-33]. A recently proposed model hypothesized that during HCV infection, a viral protein recruits PI4K-Ⅲα to the sites of viral replication to increase local levels of phosphatidylinositol-4-phosphate, necessary for their integrity of the membraneous replication compartment and hence viral replication[34]. Importantly, a recent study reported that AL-9, a 4-anilino quinazoline specifically inhibiting HCV replication[35], acts a selective inhibitor of PI4K-Ⅲα[36]. This inhibitor could therefore represent the basis for the development of new-highly needed antiviral compounds to combat HCV infection. The next sections offer a brief overview on how bioinformatics and statistical approaches can overcome most limitations connected with HT-RNAi screens applied to the study the virus-host interaction, resulting in a simple workflow for the analysis of HT-RNAi screens aimed at identifying key host regulators of viral life cycles (Figure 1).

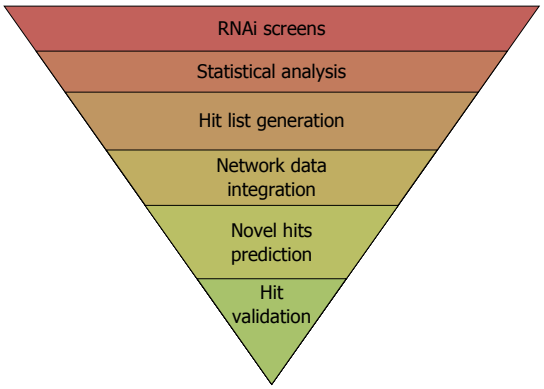


Figure 1 A schematic workflow for the analysis of high-throughput RNA interference screens to identify host cell regulators of viral life cycle.

FROM EXPERIMENTAL SET-UP TO "HIT CALLING": STATISTICAL ANALYSIS OF HT-RNAi SCREENS

Readout systems for HT RNAi screens are extremely heterogeneous, ranging from bulk readouts of fluorescence reporters to high-content microscopy based assays. Basically any phenotype, either directly or indirectly measured through a reporter, can be used as readout in HT-RNAi screens. However, the main measurement types of cell-based screens in use are: Uniform well readouts: these assays usually use high throughput plate readers to produce their measurements. Absorbance, Luminescence, Fluorescence Intensity, Fluorescent Polarization and Resonance Energy Transfer are the most usual uniform well detection methods[37]; Reporter gene systems: these are mostly high throughput assays using Fluorescence-assisted cell sorting. They employ high throughput FACS to produce readouts of GFP, Luc, *etc.*[38]; High-Content Imaging Screens: they are designed to identify those genes that alter the cellular phenotype in a desired manner (*i.e.*, decreases in the production of cellular products, nuclear and cellular morphology, proteins subcellular localization, *etc.*)[37,39].

The selection of the type of assay depends on the goal of screen and practical constrains. The analysis of arrayed screens can involve application of image analysis software or custom programs, as well as various methods of statistical analysis and Bioinformatics (see below). The aim of statistical analysis is to identify "hit" genes that are robust up- and down-regulators of viral replication. Overall, most of the methods currently used for statistical analysis of RNAi screens are reminiscent of those developed in the past for the statistical analysis of cell-based small-molecule screens, with considerable improvement having been implemented in several aspects - including data normalization, replicate tests, and selection of cut-off threshold to determine hits[40]. Cell death and cell clumping are among the most serious problems, which can be directly or indirectly linked to the silencing effect of individual siRNAs[39]. These phenomena can create background or saturation effects in the corresponding wells. In addition, viral infection might induce even more data variation since it can lead to a different cellular behaviour[41]. Errors of unknown origin may also occur over the entire process. These adverse effects can often be minimized by quality control procedures and statistical corrections. Data variation caused by stochastic reasons can be minimized performing additional experimental replicas.

Successful data analysis heavily depends on careful experimental design and assay development prior to the primary screen[42]. Therefore, for example, the optimization of transfection conditions is crucial to the success of experiments. Several factors play important roles in the development of a good assay. The nature of RNAi duplexes to be used (different companies offer RNAi with specific chemical modifications reducing off-target effects), the number of unique individual RNAi duplexes targeting each gene, the number of replicate tests, the number of "no treatment" controls (negative controls), the individual plates layout design (including the placement of negative controls) are the most important factors which should be considered during the experimental design[38,43,44]. Testing of two or more non-overlapping

Table 1 List of high-throughput RNA interference screens performed to identify host factors involved in viral life cycle

Family	Virus	Readout	Viral life cycle step(s) studied	Partition (primary/validation)
Flaviviridae (ssRNA+)	DENV[1][100]	IF	Single step	Primary: single oligo; validation, single oligo (the same)
Picornavirus (ssRNA+)	DCV[1][22]	IF	Single step	Primary: single, validation, single (the same)
Flaviviridae (ssRNA+)	HCV[21]	Luc (reporter virus)	Single step (replicon)	Primary: pools of 4 oligos; validation: the 4 oligos forming the pool tested individually
Flaviviridae (ssRNA+)	HCV[20]	IF	Two step (full virus): entry/replication; assembly/release	Primary: pools of 4 oligos; validation: the 4 oligos forming the pool tested individually
Retroviridae (dsRNA)	HIV-1[17]	Part Ⅰ: IF; part Ⅱ: Luc (reporter cell line)	Two steps: entry/replication; assembly/release	Primary: pools of 4 oligos; validation: the 4 oligos forming the pool tested individually
Retroviridae (dsRNA)	HIV-1[18]	Luc (reporter virus)	Single step	Primary only: 3 pools of 2
Retroviridae (dsRNA)	HIV-1[19]	Beta-Gal activity	Two steps, but without distinction between them	Primary: pools of 3; validation; independent poools of 3
Orthomixoviridae; (ssRNA- segmented)	INF[14]	Part Ⅰ: IF; part Ⅱ: Luc (reporter cell line)	Two steps: entry/replication; assembly/release	Primary: 4 oligoes
Orthomixoviridae; (ssRNA- segmented)	INF[15]	Luc (reporter virus)	Single step	Primary only: some genes 2 oligoes, other genes only one
Orthomixoviridae; (ssRNA- segmented)	INF[1][16]	Luc (reporter virus)	Single step	Primary only: a single sirna x gene
Rhabdoviridae (ssRNA-)	VSV[29]	IF	Single step	Primary: 2 pools of 2 oligos; validation: pool of 4 oligos from different vendor
Flaviviridae (ssRNA+)	WNV[28]	IF	Single step	Primary: pools of 4 oligos; validation: the 4 oligos forming the pool tested individually

[1]Drosophila cells. HIV: Human immunodeficiency virus; IF: Immunofluorescence; Luc: Luciferase; DENV: Dengue virus; DCV: Drosophila C virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; VSV: Vesicular stomatitis virus; WNV: West Nile virus.

RNAi reagents per gene is nowadays a general standard for primary screens[38]. Once RNAi concentration and transfection conditions have been established, checking the sensitivity to accurately differentiate between positive "hits" and negative controls can be very useful[45]. During this hit selection process, two kinds of decision errors can occur, leading to "false positives" (FPs), experimental findings that cannot be subsequently confirmed, and to "false negatives" (FNs), factors which should have been identified were not. If the assay is not sensitive enough, a high frequency of FNs will be obtained. Conversely, if the readout is too sensitive, a significant number of FPs will be identified. The best way to ascertain the rates of FNs and FPs is to perform a pilot screen. For this purpose, two or more plates fully loaded with positive and negative controls should be used to test the outputs "robustness"[46]. Three measurements are commonly used to this end: signal-to-background ratio, coefficient of variation (CV) and the Z' factor[45]. As assay variability increases, the signal-to-background ratio must increase for a screen to be successful.

Some candidates identified through a screen might generate the phenotype of interest; however, this might be due to the type of assay used for the readout or to an off-target effect. To overcome such problems, one can use an alternative, or orthogonal, screening procedure. The selected candidate forms the basis for further investigations, for example a secondary screen (also called validation screen). Secondary screens test a much smaller number of compounds (*e.g.*, the 1% strongest hits from the primary screen) and typically use at least duplicate measurements. The magnitude of the statistical artefact can be minimized, *e.g.*, by obtaining replicate measurements, and thus improving precision of the overall estimate. The assumptions that RNAi duplexes targeting specific genes randomly plated and the most of them do not have an effect on viral replication for secondary screens are not valid. Below, we present a sample workflow for analyzing RNAi screens.

Quality control

The goal of HT-RNAi screens is normally to identify "hits". To this aim, it is of crucial importance to separate FPs from bona fide "hits". This is largely related to the quality of the assay used. It is therefore necessary to monitor each step, checking the quality of raw and normalized data. To increase the probability of success, quality assessment should be performed while the screen is in progress, and also after each step of the analysis pipeline, thus allowing the detection of potential issues as they occur. This will also help with the choice of analysis methods. In case of a failed quality control for individual wells or plates, these should be either removed from further analysis or repeated.

In biological experiments the use of controls - positive and negative - helps to assess the quality of obtained data. Negative controls can be used to assess plate-to-plate variability, and provide a means to measure background noise levels of an assay. Positive controls provide an estimate of expected effect strengths, and are used to establish if effects are observed at all, and if they are of the expected strength. Controls allow the calculation of several different quality metric such as signal to noise ratios, the dynamic range[47], CV or the Z' factor. In contrast to simple signal/noise ratio, the dynamic range and the Z' factor calculate the separability of positive and negative

controls and use this criterion to evaluate assay quality. CV measures the data quality based on the reproducibility of results. In contrast to dynamic range and the Z' factor, CV does not use controls and can be used in case that controls are not available or they did not work properly in some screens or at least on individual plates. Calculating the correlation among replicates by correlation measures such as Pearson's correlation or Spearman's rank also can be used to check the reproducibility and reliability of the data.

Apart from quality metric, plate visualization is one of the most effective techniques to find systematic sources of error or identify data with poor reproducibility due to suboptimal assay design or implementation[37,39,42,43,48,49]. Heat maps and plate-well scatter plots, which allow to display the overall screen performance, as well as replicate correlation plots to visualize overall reproducibility, are the most widely used methods used for plate visualization[43,48]. Box Plots of readouts of all plates can be used to detect systematic errors among the plates.

When RNAi duplexes are randomized between plates and experiments are performed under identical conditions, the box plots of raw data should show approximately the same location and scale. However, it is possible due to systematic variability that some of the plates have lower (higher) median intensities than the others, resulting in considerably higher (lower) hit rates on these plates. This can be the consequence of pipetting issues resulting in altered transfection or infection efficiencies: such deviations can be adjusted by normalization. For more details about the individual plots and their interpretation, please refer to[47,48,50,51]. Finally, wells with lowest and highest 1%-5% of cell counts in the entire screen are sometimes excluded from further analysis in particular in the case of image based screens, because of potential interference with viral replication readout and errors in image segmentation when cells are very dens[39].

Data normalization

Readout of each spot in a plate is a function of at least two factors: the siRNA's real activity and random error. There are many sources of systematic errors (variations) that affect readouts of HT-RNAi screens. The ability of combination and comparison of all of the plates in a production run to each other is very important. Systematic errors can cause a high degree of intra-plate and plate-to-plate variability, which does not allow comparison and combination of data from different plates. Data normalization is a process intended to remove such variation from the data to allow comparison and combination of data from different plates of the screen. Intra-plate spatial effects and correlation between cell numbers and signal intensity are the most important sources of systematic errors[40]. A number of normalization methods have been developed to address these issues[42,47]. Normalization is generally performed at two levels: per-plate and per-experiment (intra- and between-plates normalization).

The per-plate (intra-plate) normalization aims at reducing systematic errors on individual plates, such as differing cell numbers over the plate, or edge-effects affecting the signal intensities. This can be the consequence of pipetting issues resulting in altered transfection or infection efficiencies, as well as of evaporation of media from the outer wells. The per-experiment (between-plate) normalization removes systematic bias that occurs between different plates. This bias might be due to measurements performed using diverse microscope settings or under different environmental situations such as different levels of humidity. Since data is varying across specific experimental setups, a standard normalization strategy that is appropriate for all of them does not exist. For example, normalization methods for primary and validation screens are different, due to the method of selection and distribution of the RNAi duplexes. Normalization methods can be categorized into two main groups: control-based and sample-based. Control-based normalization methods compare individual experimental sample values to aggregated values of negative controls, while sample-based method use the samples themselves as *de facto* negative controls[42]. The latter choice can provide more accurate measurements, because on each plate the number of experimental samples exceeds that of the negative controls by several folds. This approach is based on the assumption that most experimental samples will not display a biological effect in the assay being analyzed. Obviously, this assumption is not valid in the case of validation screens and therefore sample-based normalization methods should not be used in the case of validation screens. In this case, plates are made comparable by control-based normalization method. Additionally, the use of sample-based normalization methods is particularly problematic when dealing with statistical measures (such as mean and standard deviation) that are strongly sensitive to outliers in the data.

Controls-based normalization

Including controls on every individual plate can help identifying plate-to-plate variability and establishing background levels of an assay. One common approach to for plate-to-plate normalization is to scale the intensity values based on the controls. Whether for the normalization the negative or the positive controls shall be chosen, it depends on the type of experiment. For RNAi data, negative controls are used in most cases. It should be noted that in this approach, any inaccuracies and random measurement errors in controls would lower the accuracy and precision of the normalized values through error propagation. Therefore, it is important to obtain as accurate and precise measurements as possible. Using a relatively large number of control measurements and omitting outliers among the controls before normalizing can improve the quality of normalized values.

In this approach, the mean or median of the controls of a plate is subtracted from the readout value of each spot in the same plate and the result is divided by the controls standard deviation or median absolute deviation (MAD).

Sample-based normalization

As mentioned before, under the assumption that most

siRNAs in plate would not cause an effect, it is possible to use experimental samples as controls. Z-score normalization is a well-known data scaling strategy, which uses this assumption. For each spot, the Z-score is defined as the number of standard deviations from the mean of the samples on the plate.

The readout of each spot rescaled relative to intra-plate variation by subtracting the average of the plate values and dividing the difference by the standard deviation estimated from all measurements of the plate. In this approach, the mean of all the samples on the plate is used instead of that of the negative controls, thus limiting the need for large numbers of controls. Z-score gives explicit information on the strength of each siRNA relative to the rest of the sample distribution. An advantage of Z-score is that it integrates information about the variability of replicate measurements in the score. The main disadvantage of this method is its non-robustness to outliers, that can strongly affect estimates of the mean and standard deviation used in the Z-score.

A modified version of it called the robust Z-score, is generally considered preferable for the analysis of HT-RNAi screens. It uses the median and MAD for mean and standard deviation in the Z-score calculation.

B-score normalization

The B-score is known as a robust analogue of the Z-score. It is more robust to the presence of outliers, and also differences in the measurement error distributions of the different spots on a plate. If the quality control has identified the presence of within-plate systematic errors, the B-score normalization[52] may be applied to remove row and column effects within a single plate. The systematic measurement offsets for each row and column, row and column effects, is estimated using the Tukey median polish method. The resulting residuals within each plate are then divided by their MAD to standardize for plate-to-plate variability. This thus allows the comparison of different plates, since it scales the data according to the overall plate median. The B-score has three advantages: it is nonparametric (that is, it makes minimal distributional assumptions), it minimizes measurement bias due to positional effects, and it is resistant to statistical outliers[47].

Lowess normalization

Lowess (locally weighted least squares regression) normalization performs intra-plate corrections. If RNAi data is multi-parametric, different read-outs may depend on each other and these can cause a systematic bias. Lowess regression is a technique for fitting a smoothing curve to a data. Data points that are nearer to the estimated fit are weighted higher than more distant points. The degree of smoothing is determined by the window width parameter. A larger window width results in a smoother curve, a smaller window results in more local variation. The normalized signal intensities are the difference of the signal intensity values and the corresponding point on this curve[51]. For example, Lowess normalization can be applied to remove the correlation between signal intensities and cell count by adjusting the signal intensities for the effect of unequal cell numbers in wells. This should be done for each plate individually, since effects may be different from plate to plate[39].

Population context normalization

Very recently it was shown that different cells in a population display heterogeneity in their cellular behaviours[53,54]. This heterogeneity implies that cellular responses to a particular stimulus or perturbation, such as virus uptake, may also be variable[41]. For example certain viruses prefer to infect cells that are in a less dense region, others preferentially infect densely packed cells[54]. Therefore analyzing certain phenotypes at the single-cell level instead of using population averages to measure an effect might completely change the results. Snijder *et al*[54-56] showed that the population context of a cell strongly affects its behaviour: factors such local cells density, their position within an islet, size, distance from cell-colony edges and population size are the main determinants of cell to cell variability in HT-RNAi screening. To address this issue they suggested normalizing data by considering the population context. They corrected population context effects using quantile multidimensional bin models[55]. Knapp *et al*[57] used a similar approach in normalizing data but they developed a statistical testing procedure that takes into account individual cell measurements in hit-scoring. They used gene set enrichment analysis (EA) on sets defined not by genes but by cells coming from one spot, one siRNA or one gene. These approaches suggest that normalization for population context can lead to a substantial decrease in experimental variability, and may to some extent underlie the low gene overlap and lack of reproducibility of RNAi screens targeting even the same virus.

Hit calling

Once data have been pre-processed with quality control checks and normalization procedures, the next critical step is the hit identification procedure to decide which siRNAs should be further tested in a secondary screen. The identification of "hits" or "screening positives" is the goal of any primary RNAi screen. Hit identification is, essentially, the selection process of those samples whose measured values for a given phenotype differ significantly from that of the negative controls[52]. A wide range of hit identification techniques is available. Hits can be identified as a percentage of the genes that generate the highest measured activity (*e.g.*, top 1%), or as those whose activity exceeds a fixed "percent of control" threshold. Alternatively, the hit threshold may be defined as a number of standard deviations (typically 2) beyond the mean of the raw or processed data. This approach selects a standard deviation threshold relative to the mean or median normalized data and defines "hits" the samples that go beyond this threshold. However, hits (outliers) may cause the distribution of the siRNAs measurements to be skewed. The use of the median rather than of the mean is more robust to outliers, and has been shown to more effectively enable the identi-

fication of weak hits from RNAi data[58].

The threshold methods assume a common magnitude of random error for all measurements, but do not capture data variability effectively. To address this issue, researchers then turned to the Z-score method or strictly standardized mean difference (SSMD)[59], which can capture data variability in negative controls. According to the Z-score method, any compound whose score after Z-score normalization deviates from the bulk by a given threshold will be considered as hit. The Z-score method is based on the assumption that the measured values (usually fluorescent intensity in log scale) of all investigated siRNAs in a plate have a normal distribution. SSMD also works the best under the normality assumption. The drawback common to all of these metrics is that they rely on non-robust statistics, which may lead to inferential errors in hit detection. Because of the potential existence of true hits and strong assay artefacts, outliers are not uncommon in HT screens. The regular versions of Z-score and SSMD are sensitive to outliers[59]. In general, there are two major types of approaches for hit selection: analytic metrics and hypothesis testing. The methods belonging to the first approach (such as fold change, mean difference, SSMD, percent activity, percent viability and percent inhibition) assess and rank the size of RNAi effects, while the methods belonging to the second group (for instance *t*-test) test the null hypothesis that no difference exists among the means of particular well and negative controls or mean of plate[48,52,59,60]. If enough replicates are available, a statistical approach can be applied to assign a *P* value to each condition. If the *P* value is smaller than a given significance level, the null hypothesis can be rejected. A common practice is to use the *t*-test. It is a parametric testing method (assuming normally distributed data), which assesses the difference of the means between replicates for each condition.

If siRNA duplexes are randomly distributed on a plate and if it can be assumed that most of them have no effect, replicates in the test can be compared with the overall population. If this assumption is not valid, *e.g.*, in a validation screen, the test is carried out against negative controls. This approach needs at least three replicates of each condition and that data follows a normal distribution[61]. In case of non-normal distribution, the Mann-Whitney test can be used as non-parametric test[39].

The methods for hit selection differ according to the experimental setup of the HT-RNAi screen, depending on the fact that replicates have been performed or not. For example, the Z-score method is suitable for screens where replicates have not been performed, whereas the *t*-test is suitable for screens where three or more replicates have been performed. It is not possible to directly estimate the data variability for each siRNA in screens without replication. Instead, it is indirectly possible to estimate data variability by making the assumption that every siRNA has the same variability as a negative reference in a plate in the screen. The Z-score, the B-score and the SSMD rely on this strong assumption for cases without replicates[62].

BEYOND THE SCREEN: BIOINFORMATICS INTEGRATIVE APPROACHES FOR RELIABLE HIT IDENTIFICATION

A typical outcome of any statistical analysis of a genome-wide HT-RNAi knockdown screen is a list of gene products that significantly differ from other genes in the same study, relatively to a given readout. Classically, these lists are then subjected to over-representation analysis (ORA) or EA over different known pathway datasets such as KEGG, Reactome, Wikipathways and gene ontologies (GO), in order to facilitate interpretation of the hits functional importance. A major caveat in such analyses is the fact that the datasets used for such analyses are far from being complete. Inconsistencies and lack of concurrency between these pathway databases reduces their reliability, thus hampering the coverage of ORA/EA. This problem is particularly evident in the case of HT-RNAi screens concerning the same virus[17-19], where the overlaps over these ontologies are minimal[30]. In order to overcome this problem, network approaches have been implemented to analyze HT-RNAi screens. This section describes studies that exemplify the usage of PPI network data for analyzing RNAi screens.

Integrating network data for analyzing RNAi screens

With the wealth of public repositories housing PPI data, and exponentially growing computational power to analyze such data, the need to integrate the outcome of HT-RNAi screens with PPI data is pressing. Protein interactions between viral and host proteins are a subset of this data type that can be created by combining previously published and experimentally newly identified interactions. VirHostNet[63], VirusMINT[64] and the HIV-1 Human Protein Interaction Database (HHPID) at National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID)[65] are examples of such resources.

A host of analysis pipelines has been developed to integrate PPI data with the HT-RNAi screens hits, which can be applied to add depth and significance to latter results. An example is the SinkSource algorithm described in a recent study[66]. In the latter, the authors used a semi-supervised machine learning approach to predict novel HIV-1 HDFs using known HDFs. In other words, by combining HDFs identified from recent studies[17-19] and PPI data, the authors developed a classification algorithm that would learn from the known HDFs in a network context to then predict novel ones. The host PPI network is modeled as a liquid flow network. Each node (protein) is a reservoir of fluid while an edge (connection between 2 nodes) is a pipe. The weight of an edge indicates the amount of fluid that can flow through the pipes per unit time. When the fluid network attains equilibrium (amount of liquid flowing into each node equals amount flowing out), the reservoir height at each node denotes the confidence that the node is a HDF. HDFs identified in three previously published HIV screens[17-19] were assigned a

reservoir level at of 1 unit while non-HDFs nodes had a reservoir level of 0. This algorithm is similar to the one formulated in a previous study[67] for functional prediction of genes, except that SinkSource also accepts negative values in the form of non-HDFs which are non-lethal. These non-lethal, non-HDFs formed the negative set while HDFs identified in the three studies and their intersection formed the 4 positive datasets used for prediction of novel HDFs through a two-fold cross validation. The latter involved splitting of both the positive and negative datasets in halves and each half was used for prediction of the genes in the other half. SinkSource had higher specificity and precision-recall values when compared to six similar algorithms (used for functional gene prediction). SinkSource predicted 1394 HDFs in addition to the 908 from the above three screens, with an accuracy > 80% based on two-fold cross validation described earlier. After combining the known HDFs with those predicted by their algorithm, the authors then searched for dense subgraphs in an integrated protein network through MCODE[68]. Using this approach, they identified cellular processes and components essential for HIV replication. These included, as far as the GO cellular component are concerned: spliceosome, kinetochore and mitochondrion, whereas GTPase mediated signal transduction, DNA replication initiation and MHC protein complex were identified as enriched cellular processes.

Another example of a network based analysis between PPI and HT-RNAi data is from MacPherson *et al*[69]. In this study, the authors utilized the HIV-1 HHPID at NIAID[65] and applied a bi-clustering algorithm to identify clusters of genes enriched for HIV-1-Human PPIs. In order to establish a hierarchical overview of functions from the clusters, they were further linked to form a cladogram. The distance between 2 clusters was based on the number of overlaps between them; clusters with more overlaps were closer to each other than the ones with fewer overlaps. GO enrichment of these clusters then defined the cluster function and in turn allowed identification of 37 host subsystems potentially important for HIV-1 infection. Interestingly, hits previously identified in three published HIV HT-RNAi screens[17-19] were found in 10 of the 27 subsystems identified. These included proteasome core complex, regulation of apoptosis, mRNA transport, endosome, RNA polymerase activity, peptidase activity, regulation of transcription, ubiquitin camp-dependent protein kinase complex, and v-akt. Classically, the virus-host interaction dataset used in this study would only provide information about how a viral protein interacts with a host protein and its mechanism, as extracted from literature. In this study, the authors showed how a viral protein interacts with host cellular systems in contrast to a single protein. A theoretical validation was provided by highlighting systems enriched with hits from the 3 HIV-1 RNAi screens[17-19].

A very important consequence of viral-based RNAi screens could be the discovery of new potential targets for the development of anti-viral agents. Over the years, repositories holding detailed information on various drugs, including their cellular targets, have been publicly made available. de Chassey *et al*[70] used the DrugBank database, one of such resources (http://www.drugbank.ca) to identify potential drug targets for INF. By combining results from 6 different IFV HT-RNAi screens, the authors identified 925 essential host factors (EHFs), required for IFV replication[14-16,71-73]. Network analysis performed integrating these data with the PPI dataset from VirHostNet[63] revealed that 17 EHFs are directly targeted by a viral protein while the neighborhood of EHFs (proteins physically interacting with EHFs) included 204 proteins that were targeted by at least one viral protein.

In parallel, known drug molecules interacting with EHFs were further retrieved from DrugBank. This analysis revealed that 100 EHFs could be targeted by 298 different molecules comprised of 204 FDA-approved drugs and 94 experimental drugs. These 100 EHFs were further filtered down to 33 proteins, based on their ability to fulfill at least one of the following three criteria: the EHF was directly targeted by a viral protein, the EHF was connected to at least another EHF, and the EHF was connected to a non-EHF targeted by the virus. Of these, 32 EHFs could be targeted by 49 FDA approved molecules with an exception of one target, HSP90AA1, fulfilling the first 2 criteria mentioned above, is also directly interacting with a viral protein. Interestingly, the authors found that this EHF is the target of 1 FDA-approved molecule (Ribafutin) and 5 experimental molecules. Among the latter, Geldanamycin has already been proved to reduce IFV viral replication by 2 logs in cell culture[74]. Therefore the authors concluded that combination of Geldanamycin with Ribafutin (which is also used as a first line of treatment in tuberculosis) could represent a novel strategy to identify antiviral drugs to combat IFV infection.

As with any high-throughput study, the issue of false-positives and false-negatives also exist for HT-RNAi screens. FPs due to off-target effect of RNAi are common in genome-wide screens and confer ambiguity to the final hit-list selected from a screen. Hence, it is recommended to perform a multi-level validation and a functional analysis for hit genes. Even more critical and tricky is the issue of FNsof a screen. These are typically genes that have an effect but are missed due to the statistical selection criteria. Wang *et al*[75] addressed these problems by developing an algorithm based on machine learning principles, utilizing protein interaction data and network topology. Considering network centralities such as direct neighbour, shortest path, diffusion kernel and association analysis-based transformation[76] along with gene similarities, they developed a set of scoring functions called Network RNAi Phenotype (NePhe). Utilizing the guilt-by-association principle, Wang *et al*[75], reasoned that FNs would be scored higher by a scoring function over false-positives FPs, as they would be linked by a greater number of true hits. Thus, a near-ideal gene classifier would always rank FNs with a higher rank compared to a non-hit. When this methodology was applied over the Wnt

and the Hedgehog signaling pathways, the NePhe scoring system was able to identify all regulators, which were missed even by the follow-up validation screens. This algorithm was tested on 24 screens to study different molecular aspects of the fruit fly, Drosophila. Its efficacy in recovering FN in screens devoted to identifying viral HDFs in human systems is yet to be determined.

In general, these studies highlighted how using virus-host PPI databases to integrate the outcome of HT-RNAi data can maximize the relevance of the latter results, reducing FPs and FNs, increasing number of HDFs identified and eventually lead to identification of new drugs to combat viral infection.

A minor shortcoming of these studies has been that they have been largely biased towards a particular virus. For instance, all studies from[66,77-79] have been based on HIV screens while there has been only one meta-analysis on IFV screens[70]. It would be worthwhile and interesting for the community to see these approaches applied to other viruses. With the availability of several HT-RNAi screens for different viruses, a multi species meta-analysis can highlight similarities and differences between host-virus interactions, based on RNAi screen hits. Therefore, much effort still needs to be done to perform reliable HT-RNAi hits for a large number of viruses, including those such as hepatitis B virus, for which a reliable cell culture system is still not available.

Network properties of RNAi hits identified as viral HDFs

A complementary approach to integrate HT-RNAi with PPI datasets is to perform Network analyses. Particularly it is possible to characterize viral HDFs by computing several topological measures (network centralities) in addition to their biological function. These properties form the basis for interpreting the role of such hits from a network perspective. Furthermore, these scores also allow for a different level of hit prioritization for subsequent analysis. As mentioned earlier, specialized repositories host-pathogen interaction databases such as VirusMint, HIV-1-human protein interaction database, Host-Pathogen Interaction Database, VirHostNet, PHIDIAS, *etc.*[63-65,70,80,81] have fuelled these studies and shed new light on host-pathogen interactions. This section summarizes results from such studies and provides an overview of topological properties of viral HDFs.

In this context, the most comprehensive study has been recently published by Dyer *et al*[82]. The authors highlighted properties of host factors involved in the life cycle of 190 different pathogens from a network perspective. To this end, they collated experimentally identified human PPIs for 190 pathogen strains partitioned into 54 groups (35 viral, 17 bacterial, and two protozoan) pooled from 7 public databases[62,68,83-87], to determine properties of proteins targeted by most pathogens, including viruses. The main conclusion from this study was that pathogens preferentially target bottlenecks and hubs, implying that targeting central proteins is a common strategy shared by different pathogens. This study revealed that viral targeted host proteins also play a major role in different cancers of which some are induced by a viral infection itself (*e.g.*, Herpesvirus and Papillomavirus). Gulbahce *et al*[88] showed that the neighborhood of HDFs is as important as the HDFs themselves. They formulated what they term as "local impact hypothesis" wherein they propose that genes associated with virally implicated diseases are located in the neighborhood of viral targets. They tested their hypothesis by calculating the mean shortest path between genes that are viral targets and the ones implicated in a viral disease. This mean value was significantly shorter than between random samples. Scanning for genes within these path lengths, and subsequent experimental validation in human keratinocyte populations for HPV16 expressing E6, E7 proteins revealed 104 genes regulated by the 15 targets of E6 and E7 (these genes were 2 connections or paths away from these 15 targets). Of these 104 genes, 22 were also differentially expressed in IMR90 cells expressing HPV16 E6 or E7 proteins. A novel link was predicted between HPV and Fanconi anemia, through the E6->TP53->*FANCC* pathway through the *FANCC* gene which was one of the 22 genes described above.

Similar studies have been conducted recently with a specific focus towards HIV-1 host protein interactions. van Dijk *et al*[78] analyzed the HIV-1-Human protein interaction data and also highlighted the fact that viral products preferentially interact with host proteins that represent hubs or bottlenecks. Furthermore, they also determined enriched network motifs, statistically significant patterns of interacting proteins, from this network that allowed dynamic interpretation of interactions. For example, one of the enriched motifs included the 2 nodes feedback loop found in the HIV-host activation/inhibition network. This suggests the inhibitory nature of HIV proteins on human proteins that in turn inhibit the HIV protein. This motif occurred mostly for HIV Tat and Gp120 proteins with the human interferon γ. GO enrichment of the observed network motif indicated that it is involved in immune response.

Another independent study, performed using the same HIV-1-Human protein interaction dataset, reiterated that HIV-1 proteins attack hubs and bottlenecks over others[77]. By implementing an ascertainment bias, that normalizes weightage given to the genes based on publication count in order to avoid false interpretations[89], the authors came to two striking conclusions. First, HIV-1 interacting proteins and gene essentiality didn't have a strong correlation. Secondly, HIV-1 interacting proteins didn't tend to be disease-associated. Still, GO enrichment analyses of HIV-1 interacting proteins suggested that proviral and antiviral interactions are highly complex.

These studies thus have further enhanced our knowledge of the intricacies involved in HIV-1 infection, and opened new doors for the development of novel hypotheses.

Similar studies have been performed to experimentally determine the virus-host interactome of HCV, DENV and HTLV-1/2[90-92]. More recently a comprehensive study

focused on determining the interactome of 70 viral modulators of the innate immune response from 30 different viruses[93].

The common outcome of these studies is that viral proteins have the remarkable tendency to have significantly more targets, to be more central to the networks, to participate in more cellular pathways and are more likely to hold key positions in these pathways, as compared to an average human protein. On the same lines, both experimental and computational approaches helped identifying some common features of HDFs. These proteins have higher values of degree and of betweenness, which imply that viral proteins preferentially target proteins that are "central" to a given network. Smaller mean path length values of the HDFs, relative to the whole network also indicate that viral proteins target subnetworks that are "closely bound". Future studies in this direction might delve a bit deeper to uncover more topological features beyond what is already known.

Indeed, given the limited size of their genomes, viral products are required to interact with a high number of host proteins, which usually represent key factors regulating several biological processes. Morever these approaches can also help us to identify new HDFs: using these topological features, computational algorithms can be formulated to predict potential "generic" HDFs. For *e.g.*, PageRank centrality is one such feature. It is utilized by Google in order to decide the rank of the search hits. In the simplest sense, a node's importance is determined by the importance of its neighbors. Thus, the more "important" a node is topologically, the more it might also be biologically important, and therefore likely to be the target of viruses to overtake cellular functions. Jaeger *et al*[79], used this centrality measure to identify 21 surface membrane proteins critical for HIV-1 infection of which 11 are novel predictions, 3 are confirmed hits (chemokine receptor CCR1, chemokine binding protein 2 and duffy antigen chemokine receptor) and 7 have been confirmed in other studies. These receptors are potentially involved in different phases of HIV infection and influence progression of AIDS.

Degree, betweenness, pagerank and shortest-paths are just few of the many network centralities that have been defined to date for HDFs. It would be interesting to compute some additional measures to characterize HDFs. Quantifying structural properties of viral HDFs can help researchers in developing efficient machine learning algorithms to predict novel HDFs with greater accuracy. In addition to such predictions, a further, crucial layer of analysis would be to check for mouse orthologs of such predicted HDFs and verify if they are lethal for mouse. This step allows filtering of candidate HDFs, to be used for secondary validation, which can produce a lethal phenotype. Specificity and tissue localization of these HDFs can then be determined by utilizing tissue specific expression data from Protein Atlas (http://www.proteinatlas.org/)[94]. These steps would give a comprehensive overview of all HDFs beyond function and thus would aid in hypothesizing regulatory mechanisms and interactions between viral proteins and HDFs. Moreover, this would also reduce time, effort and cost of experimentalists and would serve as a guide to a more directed approach for hit validation.

All the above mentioned studies, both those considering RNAi hits and those which do not, strongly underlined the importance of inclusion of PPI network information to propose better hypotheses as well as therapeutic targets. They also highlighted the fact that for increasing reliability and confidence in HT-RNAi screens, validation by computational approaches *via* multiple data-types and sources is as important as verification with biological assays. Indeed, combination of data generated by different screens performed using the same virus, has evidently shown to strengthen the statistical significance of hits and reduce FP. The upcoming virus-host interaction databases, together with the availability of expression data and powerful, public tools for integrating and analyzing HT-RNAi screens will undoubtedly provide a comprehensive understanding of virus-host interactions at a cellular level.

CONCLUSION

Despite the remarkable efforts done so far to apply the use of HT-RNAi screening approaches to the study of the host cell-virus relationship, a great body of work is still required before we reach a comprehensive overview of how different viruses selectively exploit the host cell. This will finally lead to the design of specific antiviral compounds targeting host cell functions, which are therefore less prone to the selection of drug resistant viral strains. This process is strongly limited by the high number of different human pathogenic viruses, and that identification of HCFs required for viral replication necessarily relies on the availability of robust *in vitro* systems to propagate such viruses. Unfortunately, despite the tremendous advances made in the field, for example with the development of systems to propagate HCV[95-97], we are still lacking a system to efficiently propagate *in vitro* other important human pathogens (the most striking example being exemplified by Hepatitis B Virus, responsible for approximately 600 thousand causalities each year[98].

Beside this crucial shortcoming, it seems that the initial concerns related to the specificity and sensitivity of the HT-RNAi technology can be solved by combining data from different independent screens performed for the same virus, and by implementing sophisticated statistical algorithms that take into account differences within a cell population - an approach that have been proposed to strongly limit variance[54-56], as well as integrating HT-RNAi data with PPI datasets. In particular, the latter approach has been successfully used to reduce the number of FNs and FPs[75], to identify new HDFs[66], and also to identify new potential drug targets for treatment of viral infection[70]. Another major benefit of such integrative approaches relies in the possibility to perform network analysis of host factors and PPI datasets[77,82], thus en-

abling study the connections of viral products and the cellular effectors that are directly targeted by their action.

A third crucial point which needs to be considered is the growing need for in depth biochemical and biological characterization of the newly described hits. Indeed it is important not only to know the name and the molecular function of HDFs, but also the reason why exactly these factors are required for the life cycle of a given virus, for example, by enabling the formation of its replication compartments, or by being incorporated into the mature virion to mediate later on the recognition of a cellular receptor, to cite just a couple of examples of two well characterized viral HDFs for HCV, namely PIK4α and ApoE[34,60,99]. This knowledge enables at the same time to understand more in detail the mechanisms behind the usurpation of the host cell by viruses and to devise strategies to prevent this process.

In summary, progress still needs to be done in three directions before a complete understanding of the virus-host interplay: Development of appropriate cell culture systems to enable *in vitro* culture of human pathogenic viruses and their use to perform HT-RNAi screens, which should be rigorously analyzed by statistical analysis methods. Integration of data generated in different studies using the same virus, with other datasets, such as those deposited in PPI databases, to maximize sensitivity and specificity of the results. In depth characterization of identified hits of major relevance, including potential targets for the development of anti-viral drugs.

REFERENCES

1 **Pond SL**, Murrell B, Poon AF. Evolution of viral genomes: interplay between selection, recombination, and other forces. *Methods Mol Biol* 2012; **856**: 239-272 [PMID: 22399462 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-61779-585-5_10]

2 **Wang KS**, Choo OL, Weiner AJ, Ou JH, Denniston KJ, Gerin JL, Houghton M. The viroid-like structure of the hepatitis delta (delta) genome: synthesis of a viral antigen in recombinant bacteria. *Prog Clin Biol Res* 1987; **234**: 71-82 [PMID: 3628425]

3 **Lange CM**, Zeuzem S. Diacylglycerol acyltransferase-1: a critical host factor for hepatitis C virus assembly and potential new drug target. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1345-1347 [PMID: 21354164]

4 **Chiu YL**, Cao H, Jacque JM, Stevenson M, Rana TM. Inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication by RNA interference directed against human transcription elongation factor P-TEFb (CDK9/CyclinT1). *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 2517-2529 [PMID: 14963154]

5 **Johnson RA**, Wang X, Ma XL, Huong SM, Huang ES. Human cytomegalovirus up-regulates the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3-K) pathway: inhibition of PI3-K activity inhibits viral replication and virus-induced signaling. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 6022-6032 [PMID: 11390604 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.13.6022-6032.2001]

6 **Fire A**, Xu S, Montgomery MK, Kostas SA, Driver SE, Mello CC. Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Nature* 1998; **391**: 806-811 [PMID: 9486653 DOI: 10.1038/35888]

7 **Timmons L**, Fire A. Specific interference by ingested dsRNA. *Nature* 1998; **395**: 854 [PMID: 9804418 DOI: 10.1038/27579]

8 **Kittler R**, Putz G, Pelletier L, Poser I, Heninger AK, Drechsel D, Fischer S, Konstantinova I, Habermann B, Grabner H, Yaspo ML, Himmelbauer H, Korn B, Neugebauer K, Pisabarro MT, Buchholz F. An endoribonuclease-prepared siRNA screen in human cells identifies genes essential for cell division. *Nature* 2004; **432**: 1036-1040 [PMID: 15616564]

9 **Furlong EE**. A functional genomics approach to identify new regulators of Wnt signaling. *Dev Cell* 2005; **8**: 624-626 [PMID: 15866154]

10 **Müller P**, Kuttenkeuler D, Gesellchen V, Zeidler MP, Boutros M. Identification of JAK/STAT signalling components by genome-wide RNA interference. *Nature* 2005; **436**: 871-875 [PMID: 16094372]

11 **Friedman A**, Perrimon N. A functional RNAi screen for regulators of receptor tyrosine kinase and ERK signalling. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 230-234 [PMID: 17086199]

12 **Yi CH**, Sogah DK, Boyce M, Degterev A, Christofferson DE, Yuan J. A genome-wide RNAi screen reveals multiple regulators of caspase activation. *J Cell Biol* 2007; **179**: 619-626 [PMID: 17998402]

13 **Chen J**, Shi X, Padmanabhan R, Wang Q, Wu Z, Stevenson SC, Hild M, Garza D, Li H. Identification of novel modulators of mitochondrial function by a genome-wide RNAi screen in Drosophila melanogaster. *Genome Res* 2008; **18**: 123-136 [PMID: 18042644]

14 **Karlas A**, Machuy N, Shin Y, Pleissner KP, Artarini A, Heuer D, Becker D, Khalil H, Ogilvie LA, Hess S, Mäurer AP, Müller E, Wolff T, Rudel T, Meyer TF. Genome-wide RNAi screen identifies human host factors crucial for influenza virus replication. *Nature* 2010; **463**: 818-822 [PMID: 20081832]

15 **König R**, Stertz S, Zhou Y, Inoue A, Hoffmann HH, Bhattacharyya S, Alamares JG, Tscherne DM, Ortigoza MB, Liang Y, Gao Q, Andrews SE, Bandyopadhyay S, De Jesus P, Tu BP, Pache L, Shih C, Orth A, Bonamy G, Miraglia L, Ideker T, García-Sastre A, Young JA, Palese P, Shaw ML, Chanda SK. Human host factors required for influenza virus replication. *Nature* 2010; **463**: 813-817 [PMID: 20027183]

16 **Hao L**, Sakurai A, Watanabe T, Sorensen E, Nidom CA, Newton MA, Ahlquist P, Kawaoka Y. Drosophila RNAi screen identifies host genes important for influenza virus replication. *Nature* 2008; **454**: 890-893 [PMID: 18615016]

17 **Brass AL**, Dykxhoorn DM, Benita Y, Yan N, Engelman A, Xavier RJ, Lieberman J, Elledge SJ. Identification of host proteins required for HIV infection through a functional genomic screen. *Science* 2008; **319**: 921-926 [PMID: 18187620]

18 **König R**, Zhou Y, Elleder D, Diamond TL, Bonamy GM, Irelan JT, Chiang CY, Tu BP, De Jesus PD, Lilley CE, Seidel S, Opaluch AM, Caldwell JS, Weitzman MD, Kuhen KL, Bandyopadhyay S, Ideker T, Orth AP, Miraglia LJ, Bushman FD, Young JA, Chanda SK. Global analysis of host-pathogen interactions that regulate early-stage HIV-1 replication. *Cell* 2008; **135**: 49-60 [PMID: 18854154]

19 **Zhou H**, Xu M, Huang Q, Gates AT, Zhang XD, Castle JC, Stec E, Ferrer M, Strulovici B, Hazuda DJ, Espeseth AS. Genome-scale RNAi screen for host factors required for HIV replication. *Cell Host Microbe* 2008; **4**: 495-504 [PMID: 18976975]

20 **Li Q**, Brass AL, Ng A, Hu Z, Xavier RJ, Liang TJ, Elledge SJ. A genome-wide genetic screen for host factors required for hepatitis C virus propagation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 16410-16415 [PMID: 19717417]

21 **Tai AW**, Benita Y, Peng LF, Kim SS, Sakamoto N, Xavier RJ, Chung RT. A functional genomic screen identifies cellular cofactors of hepatitis C virus replication. *Cell Host Microbe* 2009; **5**: 298-307 [PMID: 19286138]

22 **Cherry S**, Doukas T, Armknecht S, Whelan S, Wang H, Sarnow P, Perrimon N. Genome-wide RNAi screen reveals a specific sensitivity of IRES-containing RNA viruses to host translation inhibition. *Genes Dev* 2005; **19**: 445-452 [PMID: 15713840]

23 **Adams MD**, Celniker SE, Holt RA, Evans CA, Gocayne JD, Amanatides PG, Scherer SE, Li PW, Hoskins RA, Galle RF,

George RA, Lewis SE, Richards S, Ashburner M, Henderson SN, Sutton GG, Wortman JR, Yandell MD, Zhang Q, Chen LX, Brandon RC, Rogers YH, Blazej RG, Champe M, Pfeiffer BD, Wan KH, Doyle C, Baxter EG, Helt G, Nelson CR, Gabor GL, Abril JF, Agbayani A, An HJ, Andrews-Pfannkoch C, Baldwin D, Ballew RM, Basu A, Baxendale J, Bayraktaroglu L, Beasley EM, Beeson KY, Benos PV, Berman BP, Bhandari D, Bolshakov S, Borkova D, Botchan MR, Bouck J, Brokstein P, Brottier P, Burtis KC, Busam DA, Butler H, Cadieu E, Center A, Chandra I, Cherry JM, Cawley S, Dahlke C, Davenport LB, Davies P, de Pablos B, Delcher A, Deng Z, Mays AD, Dew I, Dietz SM, Dodson K, Doup LE, Downes M, Dugan-Rocha S, Dunkov BC, Dunn P, Durbin KJ, Evangelista CC, Ferraz C, Ferriera S, Fleischmann W, Fosler C, Gabrielian AE, Garg NS, Gelbart WM, Glasser K, Glodek A, Gong F, Gorrell JH, Gu Z, Guan P, Harris M, Harris NL, Harvey D, Heiman TJ, Hernandez JR, Houck J, Hostin D, Houston KA, Howland TJ, Wei MH, Ibegwam C, Jalali M, Kalush F, Karpen GH, Ke Z, Kennison JA, Ketchum KA, Kimmel BE, Kodira CD, Kraft C, Kravitz S, Kulp D, Lai Z, Lasko P, Lei Y, Levitsky AA, Li J, Li Z, Liang Y, Lin X, Liu X, Mattei B, McIntosh TC, McLeod MP, McPherson D, Merkulov G, Milshina NV, Mobarry C, Morris J, Moshrefi A, Mount SM, Moy M, Murphy B, Murphy L, Muzny DM, Nelson DL, Nelson DR, Nelson KA, Nixon K, Nusskern DR, Pacleb JM, Palazzolo M, Pittman GS, Pan S, Pollard J, Puri V, Reese MG, Reinert K, Remington K, Saunders RD, Scheeler F, Shen H, Shue BC, Sidén-Kiamos I, Simpson M, Skupski MP, Smith T, Spier E, Spradling AC, Stapleton M, Strong R, Sun E, Svirskas R, Tector C, Turner R, Venter E, Wang AH, Wang X, Wang ZY, Wassarman DA, Weinstock GM, Weissenbach J, Williams SM, WoodageT KC, Wu D, Yang S, Yao QA, Ye J, Yeh RF, Zaveri JS, Zhan M, Zhang G, Zhao Q, Zheng L, Zheng XH, Zhong FN, Zhong W, Zhou X, Zhu S, Zhu X, Smith HO, Gibbs RA, Myers EW, Rubin GM, Venter JC. The genome sequence of Drosophila melanogaster. *Science* 2000; **287**: 2185-2195 [PMID: 10731132]

24 **Kiger AA**, Baum B, Jones S, Jones MR, Coulson A, Echeverri C, Perrimon N. A functional genomic analysis of cell morphology using RNA interference. *J Biol* 2003; **2**: 27 [PMID: 14527345 DOI: 10.1186/1475-4924-2-27]

25 **Lum L**, Yao S, Mozer B, Rovescalli A, Von Kessler D, Nirenberg M, Beachy PA. Identification of Hedgehog pathway components by RNAi in Drosophila cultured cells. *Science* 2003; **299**: 2039-2045 [PMID: 12663920]

26 **Caplen NJ**, Fleenor J, Fire A, Morgan RA. dsRNA-mediated gene silencing in cultured Drosophila cells: a tissue culture model for the analysis of RNA interference. *Gene* 2000; **252**: 95-105 [PMID: 10903441]

27 **Myers JW**, Chi JT, Gong D, Schaner ME, Brown PO, Ferrell JE. Minimizing off-target effects by using diced siRNAs for RNA interference. *J RNAi Gene Silencing* 2006; **2**: 181-194 [PMID: 19771225]

28 **Krishnan MN**, Ng A, Sukumaran B, Gilfoy FD, Uchil PD, Sultana H, Brass AL, Adametz R, Tsui M, Qian F, Montgomery RR, Lev S, Mason PW, Koski RA, Elledge SJ, Xavier RJ, Agaisse H, Fikrig E. RNA interference screen for human genes associated with West Nile virus infection. *Nature* 2008; **455**: 242-245 [PMID: 18690214]

29 **Panda D**, Das A, Dinh PX, Subramaniam S, Nayak D, Barrows NJ, Pearson JL, Thompson J, Kelly DL, Ladunga I, Pattnaik AK. RNAi screening reveals requirement for host cell secretory pathway in infection by diverse families of negative-strand RNA viruses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 19036-19041 [PMID: 22065774]

30 **Bushman FD**, Malani N, Fernandes J, D'Orso I, Cagney G, Diamond TL, Zhou H, Hazuda DJ, Espeseth AS, König R, Bandyopadhyay S, Ideker T, Goff SP, Krogan NJ, Frankel AD, Young JA, Chanda SK. Host cell factors in HIV replication: meta-analysis of genome-wide studies. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000437 [PMID: 19478882 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000437]

31 **Berger KL**, Cooper JD, Heaton NS, Yoon R, Oakland TE, Jordan TX, Mateu G, Grakoui A, Randall G. Roles for endocytic trafficking and phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase III alpha in hepatitis C virus replication. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 7577-7582 [PMID: 19376974]

32 **Trotard M**, Lepère-Douard C, Régeard M, Piquet-Pellorce C, Lavillette D, Cosset FL, Gripon P, Le Seyec J. Kinases required in hepatitis C virus entry and replication highlighted by small interference RNA screening. *FASEB J* 2009; **23**: 3780-3789 [PMID: 19608626]

33 **Borawski J**, Troke P, Puyang X, Gibaja V, Zhao S, Mickanin C, Leighton-Davies J, Wilson CJ, Myer V, Cornellataracido I, Baryza J, Tallarico J, Joberty G, Bantscheff M, Schirle M, Bouwmeester T, Mathy JE, Lin K, Compton T, Labow M, Wiedmann B, Gaither LA. Class III phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase alpha and beta are novel host factor regulators of hepatitis C virus replication. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 10058-10074 [PMID: 19605471]

34 **Reiss S**, Rebhan I, Backes P, Romero-Brey I, Erfle H, Matula P, Kaderali L, Poenisch M, Blankenburg H, Hiet MS, Longerich T, Diehl S, Ramirez F, Balla T, Rohr K, Kaul A, Bühler S, Pepperkok R, Lengauer T, Albrecht M, Eils R, Schirmacher P, Lohmann V, Bartenschlager R. Recruitment and activation of a lipid kinase by hepatitis C virus NS5A is essential for integrity of the membranous replication compartment. *Cell Host Microbe* 2011; **9**: 32-45 [PMID: 21238945]

35 **Schmitz U**, Tan SL. NS5A--from obscurity to new target for HCV therapy. *Recent Pat Antiinfect Drug Discov* 2008; **3**: 77-92 [PMID: 18673121]

36 **Bianco A**, Reghellin V, Donnici L, Fenu S, Alvarez R, Baruffa C, Peri F, Pagani M, Abrignani S, Neddermann P, De Francesco R. Metabolism of phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase IIIα-dependent PI4P Is subverted by HCV and is targeted by a 4-anilino quinazoline with antiviral activity. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002576 [PMID: 22412376]

37 **Campeau E**, Gobeil S. RNA interference in mammals: behind the screen. *Brief Funct Genomics* 2011; **10**: 215-226 [PMID: 21791555]

38 **Mohr SE**, Perrimon N. RNAi screening: new approaches, understandings, and organisms. *Wiley Interdiscip Rev RNA* 2012; **3**: 145-158 [PMID: 21953743 DOI: 10.1002/wrna.110]

39 **Börner K**, Hermle J, Sommer C, Brown NP, Knapp B, Glass B, Kunkel J, Torralba G, Reymann J, Beil N, Beneke J, Pepperkok R, Schneider R, Ludwig T, Hausmann M, Hamprecht F, Erfle H, Kaderali L, Kräusslich HG, Lehmann MJ. From experimental setup to bioinformatics: an RNAi screening platform to identify host factors involved in HIV-1 replication. *Biotechnol J* 2010; **5**: 39-49 [PMID: 20013946 DOI: 10.1002/biot.200900226]

40 **Mohr S**, Bakal C, Perrimon N. Genomic screening with RNAi: results and challenges. *Annu Rev Biochem* 2010; **79**: 37-64 [PMID: 20367032 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-biochem-060408-092949]

41 **Barr AR**, Bakal C. A direct look at RNAi screens. *Mol Syst Biol* 2012; **8**: 580 [PMID: 22531120 DOI: 10.1038/msb.2012.14]

42 **Birmingham A**, Selfors LM, Forster T, Wrobel D, Kennedy CJ, Shanks E, Santoyo-Lopez J, Dunican DJ, Long A, Kelleher D, Smith Q, Beijersbergen RL, Ghazal P, Shamu CE. Statistical methods for analysis of high-throughput RNA interference screens. *Nat Methods* 2009; **6**: 569-575 [PMID: 19644458]

43 **Boutros M**, Ahringer J. The art and design of genetic screens: RNA interference. *Nat Rev Genet* 2008; **9**: 554-566 [PMID: 18521077]

44 **Sharma S**, Rao A. RNAi screening: tips and techniques. *Nat Immunol* 2009; **10**: 799-804 [PMID: 19621037]

45 **Echeverri CJ**, Perrimon N. High-throughput RNAi screening in cultured cells: a user's guide. *Nat Rev Genet* 2006; **7**: 373-384 [PMID: 16607398 DOI: 10.1038/nrg1836]

46 **Zhang XD**. Novel analytic criteria and effective plate designs

for quality control in genome-scale RNAi screens. *J Biomol Screen* 2008; **13**: 363-377 [PMID: 18567841]
47 **Malo N**, Hanley JA, Cerquozzi S, Pelletier J, Nadon R. Statistical practice in high-throughput screening data analysis. *Nat Biotechnol* 2006; **24**: 167-175 [PMID: 16465162 DOI: 10.1038/nbt1186]
48 **Boutros M**, Brás LP, Huber W. Analysis of cell-based RNAi screens. *Genome Biol* 2006; **7**: R66 [PMID: 16869968]
49 **Macarrón R**, Hertzberg RP. Design and Implementation of High Throughput Screening Assays. In: Janzen WP, Walker JM, editors. High Throughput Screening. Totowa: Humana Press, 2002: 1-29
50 **Gunter B**, Brideau C, Pikounis B, Liaw A. Statistical and graphical methods for quality control determination of high-throughput screening data. *J Biomol Screen* 2003; **8**: 624-633 [PMID: 14711388 DOI: 10.1177/1087057103258284]
51 **Rieber N**, Knapp B, Eils R, Kaderali L. RNAither, an automated pipeline for the statistical analysis of high-throughput RNAi screens. *Bioinformatics* 2009; **25**: 678-679 [PMID: 19168909]
52 **Brideau C**, Gunter B, Pikounis B, Liaw A. Improved statistical methods for hit selection in high-throughput screening. *J Biomol Screen* 2003; **8**: 634-647 [PMID: 14711389 DOI: 10.1177/1087057103258285]
53 **Altschuler SJ**, Wu LF. Cellular heterogeneity: do differences make a difference? *Cell* 2010; **141**: 559-563 [PMID: 20478246]
54 **Snijder B**, Sacher R, Rämö P, Damm EM, Liberali P, Pelkmans L. Population context determines cell-to-cell variability in endocytosis and virus infection. *Nature* 2009; **461**: 520-523 [PMID: 19710653]
55 **Snijder B**, Sacher R, Rämö P, Liberali P, Mench K, Wolfrum N, Burleigh L, Scott CC, Verheije MH, Mercer J, Moese S, Heger T, Theusner K, Jurgeit A, Lamparter D, Balistreri G, Schelhaas M, De Haan CA, Marjomäki V, Hyypiä T, Rottier PJ, Sodeik B, Marsh M, Gruenberg J, Amara A, Greber U, Helenius A, Pelkmans L. Single-cell analysis of population context advances RNAi screening at multiple levels. *Mol Syst Biol* 2012; **8**: 579 [PMID: 22531119]
56 **Snijder B**, Pelkmans L. Origins of regulated cell-to-cell variability. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2011; **12**: 119-125 [PMID: 21224886 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3044]
57 **Knapp B**, Rebhan I, Kumar A, Matula P, Kiani NA, Binder M, Erfle H, Rohr K, Eils R, Bartenschlager R, Kaderali L. Normalizing for individual cell population context in the analysis of high-content cellular screens. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2011; **12**: 485 [PMID: 22185194 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2105-12-485]
58 **Chung N**, Zhang XD, Kreamer A, Locco L, Kuan PF, Bartz S, Linsley PS, Ferrer M, Strulovici B. Median absolute deviation to improve hit selection for genome-scale RNAi screens. *J Biomol Screen* 2008; **13**: 149-158 [PMID: 18216396 DOI: 10.1177/1087057107312035]
59 **Zhang XD**, Yang XC, Chung N, Gates A, Stec E, Kunapuli P, Holder DJ, Ferrer M, Espeseth AS. Robust statistical methods for hit selection in RNA interference high-throughput screening experiments. *Pharmacogenomics* 2006; **7**: 299-309 [PMID: 16610941 DOI: 10.2217/14622416.7.3.299]
60 **Zhang XD**, Lacson R, Yang R, Marine SD, McCampbell A, Toolan DM, Hare TR, Kajdas J, Berger JP, Holder DJ, Heyse JF, Ferrer M. The use of SSMD-based false discovery and false nondiscovery rates in genome-scale RNAi screens. *J Biomol Screen* 2010; **15**: 1123-1131 [PMID: 20852024]
61 **Manly KF**, Nettleton D, Hwang JT. Genomics, prior probability, and statistical tests of multiple hypotheses. *Genome Res* 2004; **14**: 997-1001 [PMID: 15173107 DOI: 10.1101/gr.2156804]
62 **Kerrien S**, Alam-Faruque Y, Aranda B, Bancarz I, Bridge A, Derow C, Dimmer E, Feuermann M, Friedrichsen A, Huntley R, Kohler C, Khadake J, Leroy C, Liban A, Lieftink C, Montecchi-Palazzi L, Orchard S, Risse J, Robbe K, Roechert B, Thorneycroft D, Zhang Y, Apweiler R, Hermjakob H. IntAct-open source resource for molecular interaction data. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2007; **35**: D561-D565 [PMID: 17145710]
63 **Navratil V**, de Chassey B, Meyniel L, Delmotte S, Gautier C, André P, Lotteau V, Rabourdin-Combe C. VirHostNet: a knowledge base for the management and the analysis of proteome-wide virus-host interaction networks. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2009; **37**: D661-D668 [PMID: 18984613]
64 **Chatr-aryamontri A**, Ceol A, Peluso D, Nardozza A, Panni S, Sacco F, Tinti M, Smolyar A, Castagnoli L, Vidal M, Cusick ME, Cesareni G. VirusMINT: a viral protein interaction database. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2009; **37**: D669-D673 [PMID: 18974184]
65 **Fu W**, Sanders-Beer BE, Katz KS, Maglott DR, Pruitt KD, Ptak RG. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1, human protein interaction database at NCBI. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2009; **37**: D417-D422 [PMID: 18927109]
66 **Murali TM**, Dyer MD, Badger D, Tyler BM, Katze MG. Network-based prediction and analysis of HIV dependency factors. *PLoS Comput Biol* 2011; **7**: e1002164 [PMID: 21966263 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1002164]
67 **Nabieva E**, Jim K, Agarwal A, Chazelle B, Singh M. Whole-proteome prediction of protein function via graph-theoretic analysis of interaction maps. *Bioinformatics* 2005; **21** Suppl 1: i302-i310 [PMID: 15961472]
68 **Bader GD**, Hogue CW. An automated method for finding molecular complexes in large protein interaction networks. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2003; **4**: 2 [PMID: 12525261]
69 **MacPherson JI**, Dickerson JE, Pinney JW, Robertson DL. Patterns of HIV-1 protein interaction identify perturbed host-cellular subsystems. *PLoS Comput Biol* 2010; **6**: e1000863 [PMID: 20686668 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1000863]
70 **de Chassey B**, Meyniel-Schicklin L, Aublin-Gex A, André P, Lotteau V. Genetic screens for the control of influenza virus replication: from meta-analysis to drug discovery. *Mol Biosyst* 2012; **8**: 1297-1303 [PMID: 22307679 DOI: 10.1039/c2mb05416g]
71 **Brass AL**, Huang IC, Benita Y, John SP, Krishnan MN, Feeley EM, Ryan BJ, Weyer JL, van der Weyden L, Fikrig E, Adams DJ, Xavier RJ, Farzan M, Elledge SJ. The IFITM proteins mediate cellular resistance to influenza A H1N1 virus, West Nile virus, and dengue virus. *Cell* 2009; **139**: 1243-1254 [PMID: 20064371]
72 **Shapira SD**, Gat-Viks I, Shum BO, Dricot A, de Grace MM, Wu L, Gupta PB, Hao T, Silver SJ, Root DE, Hill DE, Regev A, Hacohen N. A physical and regulatory map of host-influenza interactions reveals pathways in H1N1 infection. *Cell* 2009; **139**: 1255-1267 [PMID: 20064372]
73 **Ward SE**, Kim HS, Komurov K, Mendiratta S, Tsai PL, Schmolke M, Satterly N, Manicassamy B, Forst CV, Roth MG, García-Sastre A, Blazewska KM, McKenna CE, Fontoura BM, White MA. Host modulators of H1N1 cytopathogenicity. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e39284 [PMID: 22876275]
74 **Chase G**, Deng T, Fodor E, Leung BW, Mayer D, Schwemmle M, Brownlee G. Hsp90 inhibitors reduce influenza virus replication in cell culture. *Virology* 2008; **377**: 431-439 [PMID: 18570972]
75 **Wang L**, Tu Z, Sun F. A network-based integrative approach to prioritize reliable hits from multiple genome-wide RNAi screens in Drosophila. *BMC Genomics* 2009; **10**: 220 [PMID: 19435510]
76 **Pandey G**, Steinbach M, Gupta R, Garg T, Kumar V. Association analysis-based transformations for protein interaction networks: a function prediction case study. Proceedings of the 13th ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining; 2007 Aug 12-15; San Jose, CA, USA. New York, NY: ACM, 2007: 540-549
77 **Dickerson JE**, Pinney JW, Robertson DL. The biological context of HIV-1 host interactions reveals subtle insights into a system hijack. *BMC Syst Biol* 2010; **4**: 80 [PMID: 20529270]
78 **van Dijk D**, Ertaylan G, Boucher CA, Sloot PM. Identifying potential survival strategies of HIV-1 through virus-

host protein interaction networks. *BMC Syst Biol* 2010; **4**: 96 [PMID: 20633292]
79 **Jaeger S**, Ertaylan G, van Dijk D, Leser U, Sloot P. Inference of surface membrane factors of HIV-1 infection through functional interaction networks. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13139 [PMID: 20967291]
80 **Kumar R**, Nanduri B. HPIDB--a unified resource for host-pathogen interactions. *BMC Bioinformatics* 2010; **11** Suppl 6: S16 [PMID: 20946599]
81 **Xiang Z**, Tian Y, He Y. PHIDIAS: a pathogen-host interaction data integration and analysis system. *Genome Biol* 2007; **8**: R150 [PMID: 17663773]
82 **Dyer MD**, Murali TM, Sobral BW. The landscape of human proteins interacting with viruses and other pathogens. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e32 [PMID: 18282095]
83 **Chatr-aryamontri A**, Ceol A, Palazzi LM, Nardelli G, Schneider MV, Castagnoli L, Cesareni G. MINT: the Molecular INTeraction database. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2007; **35**: D572-D574 [PMID: 17135203]
84 **Güldener U**, Münsterkötter M, Oesterheld M, Pagel P, Ruepp A, Mewes HW, Stümpflen V. MPact: the MIPS protein interaction resource on yeast. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2006; **34**: D436-D441 [PMID: 16381906]
85 **Joshi-Tope G**, Gillespie M, Vastrik I, D'Eustachio P, Schmidt E, de Bono B, Jassal B, Gopinath GR, Wu GR, Matthews L, Lewis S, Birney E, Stein L. Reactome: a knowledgebase of biological pathways. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2005; **33**: D428-D432 [PMID: 15608231]
86 **Mishra GR**, Suresh M, Kumaran K, Kannabiran N, Suresh S, Bala P, Shivakumar K, Anuradha N, Reddy R, Raghavan TM, Menon S, Hanumanthu G, Gupta M, Upendran S, Gupta S, Mahesh M, Jacob B, Mathew P, Chatterjee P, Arun KS, Sharma S, Chandrika KN, Deshpande N, Palvankar K, Raghavnath R, Krishnakanth R, Karathia H, Rekha B, Nayak R, Vishnupriya G, Kumar HG, Nagini M, Kumar GS, Jose R, Deepthi P, Mohan SS, Gandhi TK, Harsha HC, Deshpande KS, Sarker M, Prasad TS, Pandey A. Human protein reference database--2006 update. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2006; **34**: D411-D414 [PMID: 16381900]
87 **Xenarios I**, Rice DW, Salwinski L, Baron MK, Marcotte EM, Eisenberg D. DIP: the database of interacting proteins. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2000; **28**: 289-291 [PMID: 10592249]
88 **Gulbahce N**, Yan H, Dricot A, Padi M, Byrdsong D, Franchi R, Lee DS, Rozenblatt-Rosen O, Mar JC, Calderwood MA, Baldwin A, Zhao B, Santhanam B, Braun P, Simonis N, Huh KW, Hellner K, Grace M, Chen A, Rubio R, Marto JA, Christakis NA, Kieff E, Roth FP, Roecklein-Canfield J, Decaprio JA, Cusick ME, Quackenbush J, Hill DE, Münger K, Vidal M, Barabási AL. Viral perturbations of host networks reflect disease etiology. *PLoS Comput Biol* 2012; **8**: e1002531 [PMID: 22761553 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pcbi.1002531]
89 **Pfeiffer T**, Hoffmann R. Temporal patterns of genes in scientific publications. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 12052-12056 [PMID: 17620606]
90 **de Chassey B**, Navratil V, Tafforeau L, Hiet MS, Aublin-Gex A, Agaugué S, Meiffren G, Pradezynski F, Faria BF, Chantier T, Le Breton M, Pellet J, Davoust N, Mangeot PE, Chaboud A, Penin F, Jacob Y, Vidalain PO, Vidal M, André P, Rabourdin-Combe C, Lotteau V. Hepatitis C virus infection protein network. *Mol Syst Biol* 2008; **4**: 230 [PMID: 18985028]
91 **Khadka S**, Vangeloff AD, Zhang C, Siddavatam P, Heaton NS, Wang L, Sengupta R, Sahasrabudhe S, Randall G, Gribskov M, Kuhn RJ, Perera R, LaCount DJ. A physical interaction network of dengue virus and human proteins. *Mol Cell Proteomics* 2011; **10**: M111.012187 [PMID: 21911577]
92 **Simonis N**, Rual JF, Lemmens I, Boxus M, Hirozane-Kishikawa T, Gatot JS, Dricot A, Hao T, Vertommen D, Legros S, Daakour S, Klitgord N, Martin M, Willaert JF, Dequiedt F, Navratil V, Cusick ME, Burny A, Van Lint C, Hill DE, Tavernier J, Kettmann R, Vidal M, Twizere JC. Host-pathogen interactome mapping for HTLV-1 and -2 retroviruses. *Retrovirology* 2012; **9**: 26 [PMID: 22458338]
93 **Pichlmair A**, Kandasamy K, Alvisi G, Mulhern O, Sacco R, Habjan M, Binder M, Stefanovic A, Eberle CA, Goncalves A, Bürckstümmer T, Müller AC, Fauster A, Holze C, Lindsten K, Goodbourn S, Kochs G, Weber F, Bartenschlager R, Bowie AG, Bennett KL, Colinge J, Superti-Furga G. Viral immune modulators perturb the human molecular network by common and unique strategies. *Nature* 2012; **487**: 486-490 [PMID: 22810585]
94 **Uhlen M**, Oksvold P, Fagerberg L, Lundberg E, Jonasson K, Forsberg M, Zwahlen M, Kampf C, Wester K, Hober S, Wernerus H, Björling L, Ponten F. Towards a knowledge-based Human Protein Atlas. *Nat Biotechnol* 2010; **28**: 1248-1250 [PMID: 21139605]
95 **Wakita T**, Pietschmann T, Kato T, Date T, Miyamoto M, Zhao Z, Murthy K, Habermann A, Kräusslich HG, Mizokami M, Bartenschlager R, Liang TJ. Production of infectious hepatitis C virus in tissue culture from a cloned viral genome. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 791-796 [PMID: 15951748]
96 **Lindenbach BD**, Evans MJ, Syder AJ, Wölk B, Tellinghuisen TL, Liu CC, Maruyama T, Hynes RO, Burton DR, McKeating JA, Rice CM. Complete replication of hepatitis C virus in cell culture. *Science* 2005; **309**: 623-626 [PMID: 15947137]
97 **Zhong J**, Gastaminza P, Cheng G, Kapadia S, Kato T, Burton DR, Wieland SF, Uprichard SL, Wakita T, Chisari FV. Robust hepatitis C virus infection in vitro. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 9294-9299 [PMID: 15939869]
98 **Guha C**, Mohan S, Roy-Chowdhury N, Roy-Chowdhury J. Cell culture and animal models of viral hepatitis. Part I: hepatitis B. *Lab Anim* (NY) 2004; **33**: 37-46 [PMID: 15224117]
99 **Jiang J**, Cun W, Wu X, Shi Q, Tang H, Luo G. Hepatitis C virus attachment mediated by apolipoprotein E binding to cell surface heparan sulfate. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 7256-7267 [PMID: 22532692]
100 **Sessions OM**, Barrows NJ, Souza-Neto JA, Robinson TJ, Hershey CL, Rodgers MA, Ramirez JL, Dimopoulos G, Yang PL, Pearson JL, Garcia-Blanco MA. Discovery of insect and human dengue virus host factors. *Nature* 2009; **458**: 1047-1050 [PMID: 19396146]

P- Reviewer Melero JA **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.32

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 32-48
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Architecture and biogenesis of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories

David Paul, Ralf Bartenschlager

David Paul, Ralf Bartenschlager, Department of Infectious Diseases, Molecular Virology, University of Heidelberg, 69120 Heidelberg, Germany
Author contributions: Paul D and Bartenschlager R contributed equally to write this paper.
Supported by The DFG, SFB638, TP A5 and SFB/TRR83, TP 13
Correspondence to: Dr. Ralf Bartenschlager, Professor, Department of Infectious Diseases, Molecular Virology, University of Heidelberg, Im Neuenheimer Feld 345, 69120 Heidelberg, Germany. ralf_bartenschlager@med.uni-heidelberg.de
Telephone: +49-6221-564225 Fax: +49-6221-564570
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: January 18, 2013
Accepted: January 23, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Plus-strand RNA virus replication occurs in tight association with cytoplasmic host cell membranes. Both, viral and cellular factors cooperatively generate distinct organelle-like structures, designated viral replication factories. This compartmentalization allows coordination of the different steps of the viral replication cycle, highly efficient genome replication and protection of the viral RNA from cellular defense mechanisms. Electron tomography studies conducted during the last couple of years revealed the three dimensional structure of numerous plus-strand RNA virus replication compartments and highlight morphological analogies between different virus families. Based on the morphology of virus-induced membrane rearrangements, we propose two separate subclasses: the invaginated vesicle/spherule type and the double membrane vesicle type. This review discusses common themes and distinct differences in the architecture of plus-strand RNA virus-induced membrane alterations and summarizes recent progress that has been made in understanding the complex interplay between viral and co-opted cellular factors in biogenesis and maintenance of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories.

Key words: Viral replication factory; Viral replication complex; Plus-strand RNA virus; Membrane remodeling; Virus-host interaction; Alphavirus; Enterovirus; Coronavirus; Flavivirus; Hepatitis C virus

Paul D, Bartenschlager R. Architecture and biogenesis of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 32-48 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/32.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.32

INTRODUCTION

As obligate intracellular parasites, all viruses depend on the host cell biosynthetic machinery in order to replicate their genome and generate progeny virus particles. A common feature among many different viruses is the induction of specialized membranous compartments, often forming organelle-like structures, within the cytoplasm of an infected cell. The unique features of those structures that facilitate virus propagation are best expressed by the commonly accepted term "viral replication factories". This review focuses on animal plus-strand RNA virus induced replication compartments. However, the concept of viral replication factories also applies to plant plus-strand RNA viruses as well as to other animal RNA viruses or some large DNA viruses such as vaccinia virus. These virus groups are covered by other reviews and will not be discussed here[1-3]. By analogy to an industrial manufacturing unit, virus induced replication factories serve multiple purposes.

To increase the local concentration of all necessary factors thus ensuring high efficacy

Local enrichment of the viral replication factors and co-

opted cellular proteins, together with all required metabolites, is the basis for highly efficient genome replication. This is achieved by reducing the three-dimensional (3-D) diffusion in the cytosol to two-dimensional diffusion on the surface of a membrane, thus increasing local reaction efficacy presumably by several orders of magnitude[4]. In fact, many replication enzymes encoded by plus-strand RNA viruses are membrane anchored as exemplified by the hepatitis C virus (HCV)[5]. In addition, also substrates such as ribonucleotides and metabolites providing energy for biosynthetic processes are enriched in replication compartments. Along these lines a recent study convincingly demonstrated locally elevated ATP levels at HCV replication sites[6].

To spatially coordinate different processes of the replication cycle such as RNA translation, replication and assembly

Compartmentalization allows the spatial separation and regulation of RNA translation, replication and packaging of the viral genome, thereby preventing an interference between these processes. Hence, ribosomes responsible for RNA translation and RNA-binding assembly factors are excluded from replication sites, thus avoiding interference with the replication machinery. Indeed, replication factories of all plus-strand RNA viruses are built up of ribosome-free membranes[7-11], and for all *Flaviviridae* (excess) amounts of core/capsid protein, binding RNA with high affinity, are frequently targeted to other cellular organelles such as lipid droplets (LDs) in the case of HCV and dengue virus (DENV)[12-14], or to the nucleus as observed for DENV[15,16] Japanese encephalitis virus[17] and West Nile virus (WNV)[18].

To create a protected environment shielding viral RNA and eventually also proteins from a hostile degradative environment

The generation of specialized membranous replication compartments protects viral replicase complexes and genomic RNA from degradation by cellular proteases or nucleases, respectively and "hides" the viral RNA genome from cytoplasmic sensors of the innate immune response. The RigI-like receptors efficiently recognize 5' triphosphorylated RNAs as well as double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) in a length-dependent manner[19,20], leading to mitochondrial antiviral signaling-mediated induction of interferons and nuclear factor κB-mediated inflammation[21]. Minimizing the exposure of stimuli to the innate immune surveillance, by the induction of innate sensor-protected organelle-like replication factories, is therefore an important evolutionary conserved feature of plus-strand RNA virus infection.

In the following we will summarize recent insights into the 3-D ultrastructure of plus-strand RNA virus-induced membrane rearrangements and discuss possible mechanisms of their biogenesis. Furthermore, viral subversion of host cell membrane biology, by interference with signaling pathways and recruitment of host cell factors contributing to biogenesis and maintenance of viral replication factories are highlighted.

MORPHOLOGY OF PLUS-STRAND RNA VIRUS REPLICATION FACTORIES

In the last few years, electron tomography has been instrumental to decipher the 3-D architecture of viral replication factories (for technical review see[22,23]). This accounts for evolutionary diverse plus-strand RNA viruses such as flock-house virus (FHV)[24], rubella virus (RUBV)[8], the two enteroviruses coxsackievirus B3 (CVB3)[25] and poliovirus (PV)[26], severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV)[11], equine arterivirus (EAV)[27], the two flaviviruses DENV[10] and WNV[9] and HCV[28]. Despite many differences in host range, virion morphology, genome organization, or donor membrane usage (Table 1), these analyses revealed that plus-strand RNA viruses appear to induce one of two different membrane alterations: the invaginated vesicle (InV) or spherule type and the double membrane vesicle (DMV) type. These morphologies that will be used in this review to group plus-strand RNA viruses might reflect the use of different host cell pathways and factors exploited by these viruses to establish the membranous replication compartment.

Architecture of replication factories corresponding to the InV/spherule type

Viral replication factories of the InV/spherule type are induced by alphaviruses such as Semliki Forrest virus (SFV)[29,30] and Sindbis virus[31], by FHV[24], RUBV[8], DENV[10] and WNV[9]. Although no 3-D reconstruction of alphavirus replication factories has been published yet, pioneering classical electron microscopy (EM) studies from Grimley *et al*[29] describing SFV replication sites at modified membranous structures, date back to the 1960s. Alphavirus infection induces so called cytoplasmic vacuoles (CPVs) (600-2000 nm in size), containing small invaginations called "spherules" with an average diameter of approximately 50 nm[29,32-34]. Surprisingly, at early time points after alphavirus infection, spherules are frequently found at the plasma membrane[30,31]. These spherules are subsequently internalized and become part of the endo-lysosomal membrane system, giving rise to CPVs. The single membrane invagination of spherules is continuous with its donor membrane and an approximately 8 nm small opening connects its interior with the cytoplasm[7]. Viral replicase proteins nsp1 to nsp4 as well as newly synthesized viral RNA localize to spherules[29,30]. Interestingly, the spherules themselves are devoid of ribosomes and viral capsid protein, which are frequently found juxtaposed to the spherule openings[7]. The first 3-D reconstruction of a plus-strand RNA virus replication factory was published by Kopek *et al*[24]. Electron tomography of FHV-infected cells revealed InVs on the outer mitochondrial membrane (OMM) (Figure 1A). Similar to alphavirus spherules, InVs found in FHV-infected cells are approximately 50 nm in di-

Table 1 Overview of plus-strand RNA viruses and induced replication factories

Invaginated vesicle/spherule type							
Superfamily/order	Alphavirus like	Alphavirus like	Alphavirus like	Alphavirus like			
Family	Togaviridae	Togaviridae	Togaviridae	Bromoviridae	Nodaviridae	Flaviviridae	Flaviviridae
Genus	Alphavirus	Alphavirus	Rubivirus	Bromovirus	Alphanodavirus	Flavivirus	Flavivirus
Species	SFV	SINV	RUBV	BMV	FHV	DENV	WNV
Genome	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	tripartite ss(+) RNA	bipartite ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA
Gene order	NS-S	NS-S	NS-S	NS-S	NS-S	S-NS	S-NS
Genome size (bases)	13000	12000	10000	8300	4500	10000	10000
Virion size (nm)	70	70	70	27	30	50	50
Envelope	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
Host	Mosquitoes, humans	Mosquitoes, humans	Humans	Plants, yeast	Insects	Mosquitoes, humans	Mosquitoes, mammals
Disease	Encephalitis	Sinbis fever	German measels	Plant disease	Unknown	Dengue fever	Mostly asymtomatic
Type of replication factories	Spherules at PM and CPVs	Spherules at PM and CPVs	Invaginations at CPVs	Spherules at the ER	Spherules at mitochondria	Invaginated vesicles at the ER	Invaginated vesicles at the ER
Diameter of invaginations (nm)	50	50	80-500	50-70	50	90	50-150
Primary membrane source	PM, endosomes	PM, endosomes	Endosomes	ER	Outer mitochondrial membrane	ER	ER
Proposed sites of replication	Inside spherules	Inside spherules	Inside invaginated vesicles	Inside spherules	Inside spherules	Inside invaginated vesicles	Inside invaginated vesicles
Double membrane vesicle type							
Superfamily/order		Picornavirales	Picornavirales	Nidovirales	Nidovirales	Nidovirales	
Family	Flaviviridae	Picornaviridae	Picornaviridae	Coronaviridae	Coronaviridae	Arteriviridae	
Genus	Hepacivirus	Enterovirus	Enterovirus	Coronavirus	Coronavirus	Arterivirus	
Species	HCV	PV	CVB3	SARS CoV	MHV	EAV	
Genome	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	ss(+) RNA	
Gene order	S-NS	S-NS	S-NS	S-NS	S-NS	S-NS	
Genome size (bases)	9600	8000	8000	30000	30000	13000	
Virion size (nm)	50	30	30	80-160	80-160	40-60	
Envelope	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Host	Humans	Humans	Humans	Humans	Mice	Horses, donkeys	
Disease	Hepatitis	Poliomyelitis	HFM disease	SARS	HMM illness	Haemorragic fever	
Type of replication factories	DMVs	SMTs, DMVs	SMTs, DMVs	DMVs, VPs	DMVs	DMVs	
Length/diameter of replication factories	150 nm	100-200 nm, 100-300 nm	650 nm, 150 nm	150 nm, 1-5 μm	200-350 nm	90 nm	
Primary membrane source	ER	Golgi, ER	Golgi, ER	ER	ER	ER	
Proposed sites of replication	Possible role of DMVs but largely unknown	On SMT/DMV outer membrane	On SMT/DMV outer membrane	Inside DMVs	Inside DMVs	Inside DMVs	

NS: Genes encoding nonstructural proteins; S: Genes encoding structural proteins; ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; PM: Plasma membrane; HFM: Hand-foot-and mouth; SARS-CoV: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus; HMM: High mortality murine; DMVs: Double membrane vesicles; SMTs: Single membrane tubular vesicles; VPs: Vesicle packets; PV: Poliovirus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; CVB3: Coxsackievirus B3; MHV: Mouse hepatitis virus; EAV: Equine arterivirus; CPV: Cytoplasmic vacuoles; RUBV: Rubella virus; SFV: Semliki Forrest virus; FHV: Flock-house virus; DENV: Dengue virus; WNV: West Nile virus; BMV: Brome mosaic virus; SINV: Sindbis virus.

ameter[35]. The single membrane building up the spherule is continuous with the OMM and a membranous neck with an interior diameter of approximately 10 nm connects the spherule lumen to the cytoplasm[24]. The sole viral replicase factor protein A as well as nascent viral RNA localize to spherules. By using high resolution electron tomography in combination with biochemical analyses, Kopek *et al*[24] determined that each spherule contains approximately 100 copies of protein A, covering the complete interior surface of the spherule and one or two copies of minus-strand RNA, the replication intermediate. RUBV induces replication factories with similar architecture. Replicase proteins p150 and p90, as well as nascent viral RNA localize to remodeled endosomes/lysosomes, termed cytopathic vacuoles[36-39]. Fontana *et al*[8] conducted electron tomography studies of RUBV replicon cells and observed spherule-like membrane invaginations. In addition, the authors detected bigger vacuolar invaginations and rigid straight membrane

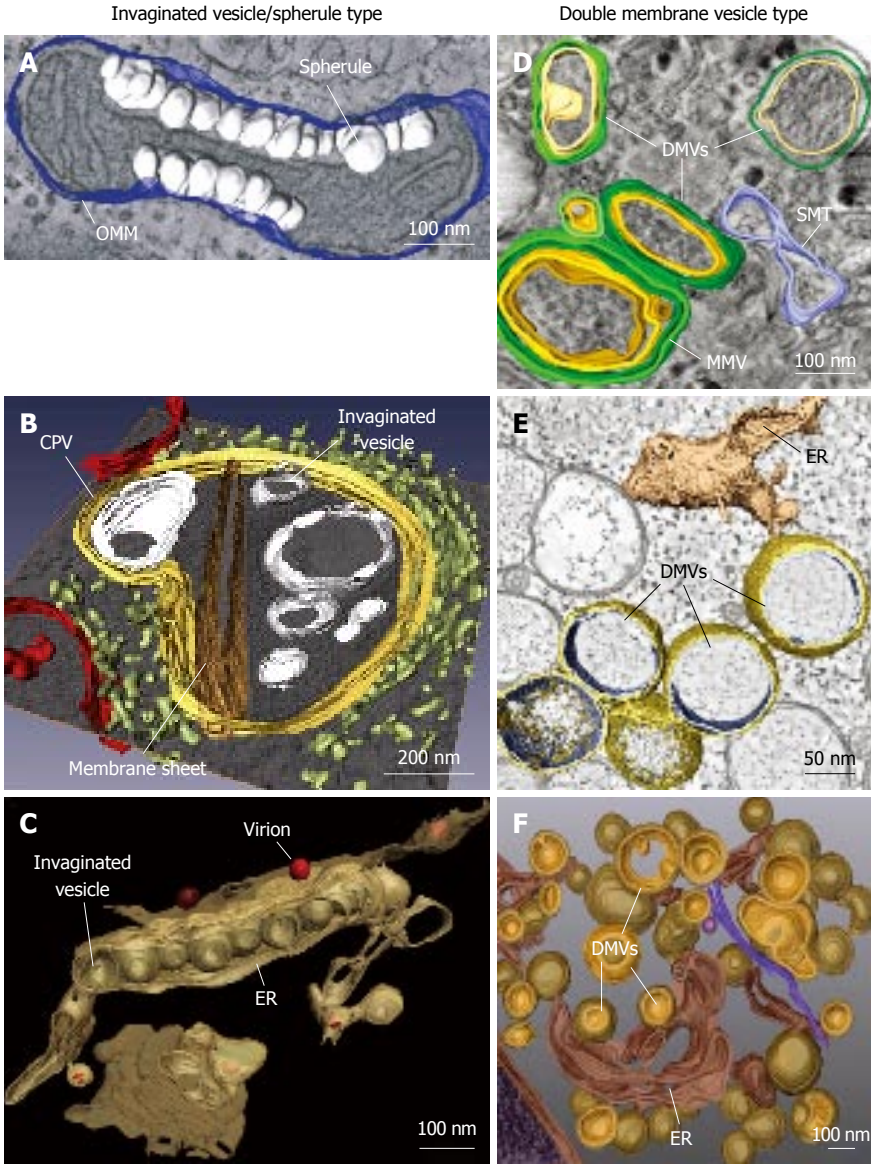


Figure 1 Classification and morphologies of plus-strand RNA virus-induced membrane alterations as revealed by electron tomography and three-dimensional reconstruction. Morphological similarities of membrane structures belonging to the invaginated vesicle (InV)/spherule type (A-C) or the DMV type (D-F). A: Flock-house virus (FHV); B: Rubella virus (RUBV); C: Dengue virus (DENV); D: Poliovirus (PV); E: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus (SARS-CoV); F: Hepatitis C virus (HCV). A: FHV-induced spherules (white) in the outer mitochondrial membrane (OMM; blue); B: InVs (white) and rigid membrane sheets (dark brown) in a modified endosome (the cytopathic vacuole, CPV) (yellow) in cells replicating RUBV. The rough endoplasmic reticulum (ER) is shown in light-green and mitochondria in red; C: Spherule-like invaginations (InVs) in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (brown) observed in DENV-infected cells. Newly formed progeny virions are shown in red; D: PV infection induces single membrane tubules (SMT) (blue), double membrane vesicles (DMVs) and multi membrane vesicles (MMVs). The DMV outer membrane is shown in green, the second membrane in yellow and a third membrane in case of MMVs in orange. These membranes are primarily derived from the Golgi; E: An interconnected network of ER-derived DMVs is found in SARS-CoV infected cells. The ER is colored in light-brown, interconnected outer membranes of DMVs in yellow and DMV inner membranes in blue; F: HCV-induced DMVs protruding from the ER (dark-brown). Outer membranes of DMVs are shown in light-brown and inner membranes in orange. Images are modified with permission from ©2007 Kopek *et al*[24] Plos Biol (A); ©2010 Elsevier Inc.[8] (B); ©2009 Elsevier Inc.[10] (C); © 2012 American Society for Microbiology[26] (D); ©2008 Knoops *et al*[11] Plos Biol (E); ©2012 Romero-Brey *et al*[28] Plos Pathog (F).

sheets, which are continuous with the outer membrane of the CPV and whose interior is connected to the cytoplasm (Figure 1B). Mitochondria localized in close proximity to CPVs and were probably engaged in supplying energy for viral replication. Importantly, CPV membranes were free of ribosomes, but frequently surrounded by rough ER sheets and Golgi stacks, thus facilitating translation and encapsidation of viral RNA, respectively[8,40]. In contrast to the replication compartments of these plus-strand RNA viruses, replication factories of Flaviviridae, exemplified by WNV and DENV, are most likely derived from the ER. Apart from the rather undefined convoluted membranes (CMs) found in DENV-infected cells, our laboratory revealed by means of electron tomography vesicular invaginations of approximately 90 nm diameter in the rough ER, which are connected by approximately 10 nm diameter necked channel openings to the cytoplasm[10] (Figure 1C). Likewise, Gillespie *et al*[9] observed in WNV replicon-containing cells, InVs in the rough ER, which were connected *via* neck-like membranous pores to the

cytoplasmic space. For both viruses, replicase proteins and dsRNA, assumed to represent a replication intermediate, localized to InVs[10,41], whereas ribosomes were excluded from the InVs, but localized in close proximity on ER membranes[9,10]. Interestingly, DENV virion budding was observed frequently close to or directly opposite of pore-like vesicle openings[10], highlighting the spatial orchestration of replication and assembly steps in the DENV replication cycle.

Architecture of DMV-like replication factories

DMV-like replication factories are formed by the enteroviruses CVB3[25] and PV[26], SARS-CoV[11], EAV[27] and HCV[28]. For PV, probably the best studied plus-strand RNA virus, structural alterations of cellular membranes were observed already more than 50 years ago. They were first described as membranous vesicles of heterogeneous size and termed clear vacuoles and U-bodies[42]. Recent electron tomography studies of PV-infected cells by Belov *et al*[26] revealed apparently empty and heterogeneous single membrane-branching tubular structures (100-200 nm diameter) that were detected at very early time points after infection. As infection progresses, these tubular structures developed into DMVs (100-300 nm in diameter), filled with presumably cytoplasmic material (Figure 1D). The very early membrane alterations were derived from the Golgi[26], but PV-induced vesicles were earlier shown to "bud" from the ER in a COP Ⅱ -dependent manner and to contain lysosomal markers[43,44]. Replicase proteins 2C and 3A as well as nascent viral RNA localize to the outside of both single and double membrane structures[26,44]. A similar 3-D architecture of virus-induced membrane alterations was recently described for CVB3, another member of the Picornaviridae family. By using electron tomography, Limpens *et al*[25] observed interconnected single membrane tubular structures (approximately 650 nm in length and approximately 80 nm in diameter) at the onset of infection. These structures transformed into DMVs (approximately 160 nm in diameter) and multimembranous structures by an enwrapping process. Immunofluorescence analyses showed co-localization of CVB3 replicase proteins 3A and 3D with dsRNA[25] during the log phase of viral replication, when predominantly single membrane tubules were present in infected cells. However, the exact localization of viral proteins and RNA with respect to the rearranged membranes remains to be determined. In contrast to picornavirus-infected cells, Knoops *et al*[11] revealed that early after infection SARS-CoV replication factories appear as presumably ER-derived CMs and interconnected DMVs (250 nm in diameter) (Figure 1E), which subsequently merge into vesicle packets (VPs) (1-5 μm in size), most likely by fusion of the DMV outer membranes. Electron tomography analysis showed that SARS-CoV-induced DMVs do not exist as isolated structures, but their outer membrane is continuous to other DMVs, CMs, or the rER, thus explaining the transition from DMVs to VPs[11]. Viral replicase proteins nsp3, 5 and 8 were sporadically found in DMVs, whereas the majority localized to CMs. In contrast, dsRNA a marker for viral replication intermediates, was predominantly found inside DMVs or inside the vesicles of VPs[11]. The DMV interior was devoid of ribosomes, which were found on the outer membranes of DMVs or rER sheets in close proximity to DMVs. Virus budding was detected at the outer membrane of VPs, arguing for spatial organization of the different steps of the SARS-CoV replication cycle[11]. A comparable architecture of virus-induced membrane rearrangements was observed for EAV, a SARS-CoV related virus that also belongs to the order *Nidovirales*. By means of electron tomography, Knoops *et al*[27] unraveled a reticulovesicular network of interconnected DMVs in EAV-infected cells. However, in contrast to SARS-CoV induced DMVs, those observed for EAV were smaller in diameter (approximately 90 nm), but also exhibited continuous outer DMV membranes. Replicase proteins nsp3 and 9 associated with DMVs and surrounding membranes and as in case of SARS-CoV, dsRNA was prominently found inside DMVs[27]. In addition to the reticulovesicular DMV network, membrane tubules with approximately 43 nm diameter were associated with the EAV capsid protein N and frequently found in close proximity to DMVs[27], thus providing another example for the spatial coordination of replication and assembly steps. Although belonging to the *Flaviviridae* that includes DENV and WNV, HCV-induced viral replication factories are very different from the InV/spherule type, but more comparable to those of unrelated *Picornaviridae* or *Coronaviridae*. Electron tomography of HCV-infected cells conducted in our laboratory, revealed ER-derived DMVs as the predominant structures, which partially develop into MMVs at later stages of infection[28] (Figure 1F). HCV-induced DMVs have an average diameter of approximately 150 nm. Around 50% of DMVs were linked to the ER *via* the outer membrane giving rise to a neck-like structure, but later on DMVs seem to detach from their donor membrane. Only a small subset (approximately 10%) exhibited a pore-like opening to the cytoplasm, whereas the vast majority showed "sealed" inner and outer membranes.

By using correlative-light-EM, DMVs were shown to contain the viral replicase protein non-structural protein (NS)5A, which co-localizes with dsRNA as shown by fluorescence microscopy[28]. However, direct detection of the HCV replication site at the ultrastructural level was not successful. DMVs localized in close proximity to the rER and LDs, an important organelle for HCV assembly[13], arguing for a compartmentalization of viral RNA translation, replication and assembly steps[28].

TOPOLOGY OF PLUS-STRAND RNA VIRUS REPLICATION SITES

In order to identify viral replication sites, various methods have been applied to detect viral RNA at the ultrastructural level. Initial studies employed metabolic radiolabeling of nascent viral RNA with ^{3}H-labeled uridine or adenosine and subsequent EM-based detection by autoradiography using film emulsions[29,33]. Others applied

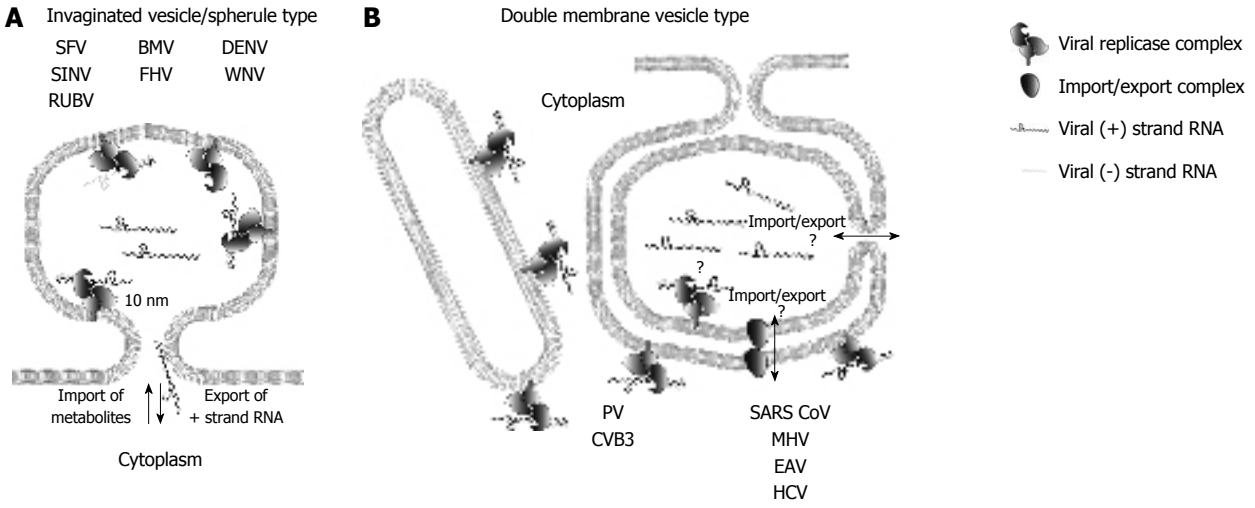


Figure 2 Topology of plus-strand RNA virus replication sites. A: RNA replication of plus-strand RNA viruses inducing invaginated vesicles/spherules is thought to occur in the spherule lumen. Examples of viruses inducing this type of remodeled membranes are denoted. The neck like opening to the cytoplasm allows export of progeny RNA destined for translation or packaging, as well as import of metabolites required for RNA replication; B: Possible topologies of RNA replication site for double membrane vesicle (DMV)-type factories. Enterovirus replication is thought to take place on the outer membrane of single membrane tubules and DMVs, whereas the exact replication site of nidovirales and hepatitis C virus (HCV) is still unclear as indicated by the question marks. Replication in the DMV lumen would require import and export across two membranes, which could be mediated *via* a proteinacous transport complex, or *via* an opening to the cytosol of not yet fully closed DMVs (see main text for details). SFV: Semliki Forrest virus; SINV: Sindbis virus; RUBV: Rubella virus; BMV: Brome mosaic virus; FHV: Flock-house virus; DENV: Dengue virus; WNV: West Nile virus; PV: Poliovirus; CVB3: Coxsackievirus B3; SARS-CoV: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus; MHV: Mouse hepatitis virus; EAV: Equine arterivirus.

in situ hybridization methods by using nucleic acid probes and detection *via* colloidal gold particles[45], labeling of dsRNA replication intermediates by using a dsRNA-specific antibody[10,11,27,41], or antibody-based detection of bromouridine, incorporated into nascent viral RNA[24,26,30]. Importantly, for identification of viral replication sites the detection of metabolically labeled viral RNA is the only reliable method; hybridization techniques do not discriminate between replicating RNA or RNA used *e.g.*, for translation or virion formation. The same applies to detection of viral RNA with the dsRNA-specific antibody that can bind to RNA structures present in genomes of plus-strand RNA viruses, thus excluding specificity for detection of active viral RNA replication. Indeed, by using the incorporation of ethynyl-uridine (EU) into actively replicating coronavirus RNA and subsequent detection *via* click-chemistry, Hagemeijer *et al*[46] observed a loss of overlap of the EU- signal with dsRNA labeling during the course of infection. For replication factories of the InV/spherule type it is commonly accepted that viral replicase complexes reside on the invaginated membrane and thus, RNA replication takes place in the spherule lumen[9,10,24,30,36,41,47] (Figure 2A). The neck-like connection to the cytoplasm allows import of all required metabolites (*e.g.*, ribonucleotides) and export of newly synthesized RNA destined for translation or packaging into the capsid. By using bromouridine labeling of nascent viral RNA, this assumption has been confirmed for RUBV[36] alphaviruses[30], FHV[24] and brome mosaic virus (BMV)[47]. However, identification of flavivirus replication sites (DENV and WNV) up to now relies only on the immuno-detection of dsRNA[10,41]. DMV-type replication factories exhibit a topologically more complex situation, as both membranes of the DMV are often sealed and no connection to the cytosol is obvious[11,25-28]. Hence, for this group of plus-strand RNA viruses different topologies of replication sites are currently proposed (Figure 2B). In case of enteroviruses, replication is thought to occur on the cytoplasmic side of single and double-membrane structures[26,48]. However, the fact that during the log phase of viral replication predominantly single membrane tubules are found in PV-or CVB3-infected cells[25,26] suggests that active enteroviral replicase complexes primarily reside on these membrane structures. In this case one might speculate that RNA replication ceases after membrane enwrapping and DMV sealing, but this remains to be determined. In case of SARS-CoV and EAV, the bulk of viral RNA is found inside the lumen of DMVs as determined by dsRNA labeling[11,27]. Moreover, nascent EAV and mouse hepatitis virus (MHV) RNA is associated with DMV membranes as shown by bromouridine labeling[49,50] arguing that DMVs are sites of viral replication. However, if replication takes place inside the DMV lumen, it is unclear how import of metabolites and export of viral RNA occurs. Even with high resolution electron tomography, neck-like membrane discontinuities of approximately 10 nm, as observed for InV/spherule like replication factories, have not been found[11,27]. Thus, proteinaceous channels or transporters might be responsible for linking DMV interior to the cytosol. In fact, proteins such as the ER translocon complex or the mitochondrial transporter outer membrane and transporter inner membrane complexes mediating transport across one or two membranes, respectively (reviewed in[51,52]), have not been visualized by electron tomography so far. Thus, an up to now unidentified enzymatic function of

viral proteins containing multiple transmembrane passages and/or recruitment of a cellular factor executing this transport function is in principle possible.

Another hypothesis is discussed for HCV-induced DMVs, which accumulate during the log phase of viral RNA replication[28]. Only a small fraction of DMVs has an opening to the cytoplasm, whereas the majority exhibits entirely closed membranes. It is speculated that replication might occur in the interior of DMVs as long as they are linked to the cytosol, but upon membrane sealing DMVs would contain dead end replication complexes that are no longer active. Apart from this possibility, the other models described above also apply to HCV, but further studies are required to define the exact site of RNA replication.

MECHANISMS OF MEMBRANE ALTERATIONS INDUCED BY VIRAL PROTEINS

Given the highly complex architecture of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories on one hand and the small genetic coding capacity of these viruses on the other hand, it is obvious that membrane alterations are induced by the concerted action of viral and cellular factors. In this section we will discuss the intrinsic membrane-active properties of viral proteins; host cell factors contributing to formation of replication factories are summarized in section 6 of this article. In principle, membrane bending can be achieved by (1) local alterations of membrane lipid composition; or (2) asymmetric interaction of proteins with membranes (Figure 3). The latter includes scaffolding of the membrane by peripheral proteins, insertion of asymmetric proteins or protein complexes into the membrane, insertion of amphipathic helices into one leaflet of the lipid bilayer or interactions of the membrane with the cytoskeleton (reviewed in[53-55]) (Figure 3C-H). Negative membrane curvature is predominant for the InV/spherule like replication factories (Figure 3A), with spherules bending the membrane away from the cytoplasm, whereas DMV-like replication factories exhibit positive membrane curvature, *i.e.*, the outer DMV membrane is bent towards the cytosol (Figure 3B). However, regions of positive membrane curvature are also present in neck like openings of spherules (Figure 3A) and the inner membranes of DMVs exhibit negative membrane curvature (Figure 3B), respectively, highlighting the complexity of membrane bending events in the induction of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories.

Several viral proteins were identified that play crucial roles in the induction of membrane rearrangements. For instance, the membrane-associated protein nsp1 of alphaviruses interacts with anionic phospholipids *via* an amphipathic helix (AH) (Figure 3G)[56] and is additionally tethered to membranes *via* a palmitic acid residue in the carboxy-terminal region of the protein[57]. AH-mediated nsp1 membrane association proved crucial for SFV replication[58], whereas palmitoylation mutants could be rescued by second site compensatory muations *in vitro*[59] but are attenuated *in vivo*[60]. Nonetheless, only expression of the P123 protein precursor induced spherule-like structures as seen in SFV-infected cells[61], demonstrating the need of nsp1 to recruit and interact with other viral and/or cellular proteins to induce spherule-like membrane rearrangements. The FHV replicase factor protein A exhibits binding affinity to specific anionic phospholipids, namely phosphatidic acid, phosphatidylglycerol and cardiolipin[62], which are enriched in mitochondrial membranes. Protein A is inserted into the OMM by an N-terminal mitochondria-targeting transmembrane sequence[63]. Self-interaction of protein A is required for FHV replication and mediated by multiple domains (Figure 3F)[64]. Nevertheless, protein A is not sufficient to induce spherule like membrane invaginations in the OMM, which requires in addition a replication-competent template RNA and protein A's polymerase activity[65]. Interestingly, these requirements do not apply to the FHV-related plant virus BMV, for which expression of protein 1a is sufficient to induce spherule-like membrane invaginations[47]. All flaviviral proteins are associated directly or indirectly with membranes either by amphipathic helices or transmembrane domains or both (Figure 3E-G). Fully processed DENV and WNV NS4A is sufficient to induce rearrangements of the ER membrane[66,67], although membrane structures induced by sole NS4A expression are morphologically distinct from those induced in infected cells. Studies of the membrane topology of DENV NS4A revealed an ER luminal helix in the central region of the protein, lying in plane in the luminal membrane leaflet[66]. This topology is compatible with the negative curvature of InVs, arguing that NS4A increases the surface area of the ER membrane on the luminal side. However, the role of NS4A self-interaction and a possible interplay with other viral (*e.g.*, NS4B) and cellular factors, in membrane remodeling remain to be determined. Also for HCV that in contrast to DENV and WNV induces DMV-type replication factories, membrane remodeling activity has been attributed to viral proteins, most prominently to NS4B. It has been proposed that expression of this protein is sufficient to induce the membranous HCV replication compartment (the "membranous web")[68]. NS4B is a highly hydrophobic protein that contains at least four transmembrane passages[69]. It is palmitoylated at its C-terminus[70] and in addition contains multiple AHs in its N-and C-terminal domains[71-73] (Figure 3E-G). The membrane-associated C-terminal domain of NS4B or the AH within it have been reported to alter membrane integrity (Figure 3G)[74,75], corroborating membrane remodeling activity of NS4B. In addition, NS4B self-interacts in a homo- and heterotypic fashion[76], which is required for HCV RNA replication[76,77] (Figure 3F). Interestingly, mutations in NS4B that inhibit HCV RNA replication also alter NS4B self-interaction and morphology of HCV-induced DMVs[77], implying a functional relationship between DMV morphology and HCV RNA

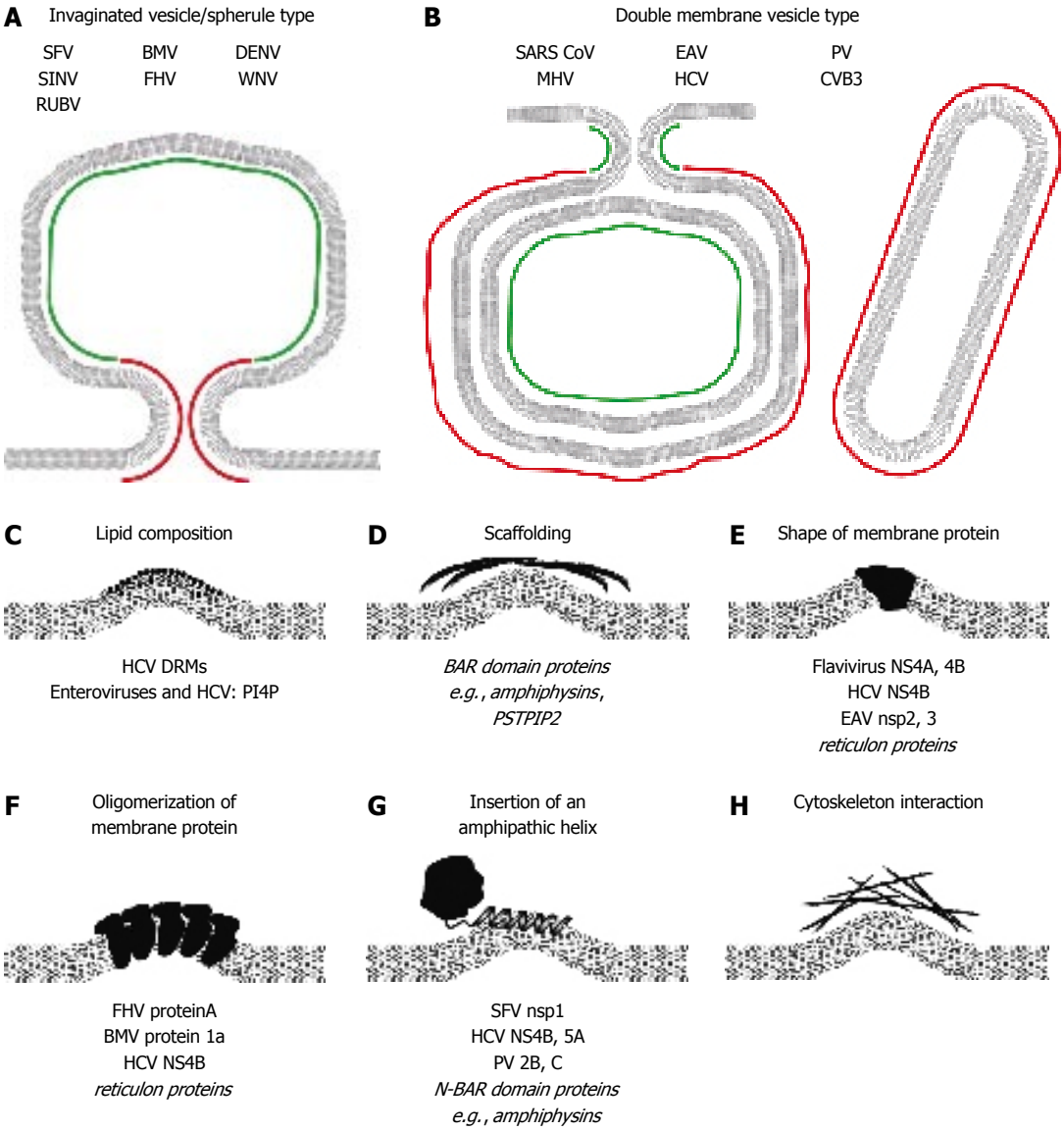


Figure 3 Mechanisms responsible for induction of membrane curvature likely contributing to formation of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories. Positive and negative membrane curvature for invaginated vesicle/spherule type (A) and double membrane vesicle type (B) replication factories is indicated in red and green, respectively. Mechanisms of membrane modifications/bending are schematically depicted in (C-H). Examples of viral and cellular (in italics) proteins are given at the bottom of each panel (see main text for details). SFV: Semliki Forrest virus; SINV: Sindbis virus; RUBV: Rubella virus; BMV: Brome mosaic virus; FHV: Flock-house virus; DENV: Dengue virus; WNV: West Nile virus; SARS-CoV: Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus; MHV: Mouse hepatitis virus; EAV: Equine arterivirus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; PV: Poliovirus; CVB3: Coxsackievirus B3; DRM: Detergent-resistant-membrane; BAR: Bin-Amphiphysin-Rvs; PSTPIP2: Proline-serine-threonine phosphatase interacting protein 2; NS4A: Non-structural protein 4A; NS4B: Non-structural protein 4B; N-BAR: N-terminal amphipathic helix containing BAR; PI4P: Phosphatidylinositol-4-phosphate.

replication. Inspite of the membrane remodeling activity of NS4B, we recently found that only an NS3-5A polyprotein fragment is sufficient to induce DMV structures with morphological similarity to those observed in HCV-infected cells[28]. In fact, MMVs and a small number of DMVs were observed in cells over-expressing just NS5A, which is a dimeric and eventually oligomeric replicase factor with an N-terminal AH[78-82] (Figure 3G). Based on these observations we assume that a concerted action of HCV replicase factors is required for the biogenesis of the membranous web. Similar observations have been made for *Nidovirales*. For instance, coronavirus nsp3, 4 and 6 contain multiple membrane-spanning domains[83-85]. These proteins appear to play a central role in membrane remodeling (Figure 3E), because mutations *e.g.*, in nsp4 exhibit impaired viral replication and altered DMV morphology[86]. Nsp3 of the related EAV also contains multiple transmembrane segments and is another key player in the induction of DMVs. Expression of nsp2-3 suffices to induce DMVs[87] and their morphology is dramatically altered by nsp3 mutations affecting an ER luminal loop[88].

In case of enteroviruses, proteins 2B, 2C or 3A are membrane-associated *via* transmembrane passages or AHs[89-91] and the expression of 2BC either alone[92] or in concert with 3A[93] induces structures similar to those in infected cells. Interestingly, expression of only 2C induces more dramatic membrane remodeling including

tubular membrane swirls inside a highly dilated ER[92], implying a regulatory role of 2B in 2C membrane remodeling. Taken together these data suggest that membrane-associated proteins of plus-strand RNA viruses have intrinsic membrane remodeling properties. However, in most cases more than one viral factor, eventually in concert with recruited cellular proteins are involved in generation of viral replication factories. Further studies using *e.g.*, recombinant viral proteins and model membranes are required to elucidate the intrinsic membrane remodeling properties of these viral proteins.

POSSIBLE ROLE OF AUTOPHAGY IN THE FORMATION OF DMV LIKE REPLICATION FACTORIES

Autophagy is an evolutionary conserved catabolic mechanism for degradation of long-lived organelles and cytoplasmic material and is crucial for cell homeostasis (reviewed in[94]). Virus-host co-evolution has shaped multiple mechanisms involving autophagy that either promote or restrict viral replication (reviewed in[95]). Due to morphological similarities between DMV-like replication factories and the also double-membrane nature of autophagosomes, it has been suggested that autophagy plays a role in biogenesis of viral replication compartments of this type as induced by enteroviruses[44,96,97], coronaviruses[98,99] and HCV[100,101]. Indeed, lipidation of microtubule - associated protein 1 light chain 3 (LC3), a key event in the induction of autophagy, was observed after enterovirus infection[96,97,102] or over-expression of 2BC[102]. Interestingly, knock-down of central autophagy components or pharmacological inhibition of the pathway decreased viral replication only slightly, whereas generation of progeny virus was clearly reduced arguing that autophagy contributes primarily to virus assembly and release[103]. In case of PV, electron tomography studies of infected cells revealed primarily single membrane structures during the log phase of viral replication, which subsequently developed into DMVs by collapsing and/or enwrapping events[26]. These data argue against a central role of autophagy *per se* in PV replication, although some factors of this pathway might contribute to heterogeneity of vesicular structures at later stages of infection. Similar observations have been made for the *Coronaviridae*. MHV infection induces lipidation of LC3 that co-localizes with nsp2/3 in infected cells[99]. Moreover, the non-lipidated form of LC3 is prominently found on isolated membrane fractions from MHV-infected cells, together with components (*e.g.*, EDEM1) of the ER-associated degradation pathway[99]. However, functional studies based on knockouts of central autophagy factors led to contradictory results. In one study, ATG5 knockout decreased virus propagation dramatically[98], whereas others found that MHV replication is independent of ATG5[104] or ATG7[99]. Hence, a central role of the complete autophagy pathway in generation of coronavirus DMVs seems unlikely, although some single factors such as LC3 might add to it. Conflicting observations concerning a role of autophagy in virus propagation have also been made in case of HCV. One study claims that autophagy is implicated in translation of incoming viral RNA, but is dispensable for RNA replication[105]. Other studies suggest that autophagosomes are sites of active replication[101] or promote assembly and release of progeny virus[106]. In addition, a recent study showed an autophagy-mediated down-regulation of innate immune response[107]. In this case, knock-down of autophagy components reduces HCV RNA replication due to a stronger innate immune response. The reasons for these discrepant results are not known, but might be due, at least in part, to the use of different Huh7 cell clones, which are known to differ in their capacity to mount innate antiviral defenses. Although LC3 lipidation is observed upon HCV infection[105] and the protein is associated with HCV membrane fractions[100], EM-based studies of membrane remodeling events argues for a role of autophagy in formation of MMVs eventually as part of a cellular stress response induced by massive membrane alterations[28]. Taken together, the role of autophagy in biogenesis of DMV like replication factories remains rather elusive. Single components of the conventional cellular autophagy are possibly involved, whereas a direct contribution of the complete pathway in generation of DMV replication compartments is rather unlikely. Finally, autophagy might be an epiphenomenom, being activated as a cellular stress response to tremendous amounts of virus induced cytoplasmic membrane alterations, engaged in cell homeostasis and survival during viral infection.

PLUS-STRAND RNA VIRUS SUBVERSION OF CELLULAR MEMBRANE BIOLOGY

Since plus-strand RNA viruses induce massive remodeling of cytoplasmic membranes, but most often have very limited genetic coding capacity it is not surprising that these viruses utilize membrane-active host cell factors and exploit cellular pathways involved in membrane homeostasis.

Viral utilization of co-opted membrane-active proteins of the host cell

Enteroviruses and the plant virus BMV co-opt cellular reticulon proteins, which are required for membrane remodeling and viral RNA replication[108,109]. The evolutionary conserved reticulon protein family is characterized by a common reticulon homology domain (RHD) involved in shaping the ER by inducing and stabilizing highly curved ER tubules[110,111]. Morphogenic properties can be attributed to elongated hydrophobic, partially membrane-spanning hairpin structures within the RHD[112], which in concert with its oligomerization properties[113] increases the surface on the cytoplasmic membrane leaflet, thereby inducing positive curvature (Figure 3E and F). Reticulon 3 has been shown to directly interact with the enterovirus 2C protein[108] and is thus likely engaged in induction and/or stabilization of positive membrane curvature of

enterovirus replication factories. BMV replicase protein 1a directly binds to and recruits reticulon proteins to spherule-like membrane invaginations and might stabilize positive membrane curvature in neck-like openings to the cytoplasm or facilitate expansion of the spherule volume by partially neutralizing overall negative membrane curvature[109]. It remains to be determined whether reticulon proteins are co-opted also by other plus-strand RNA viruses, especially those deriving their replication compartments from the ER. Another example of cellular membrane-shaping proteins are amphiphysins that are involved in formation of alphavirus replication factories[114]. These Bin-Amphiphysin-Rvs (BAR) domain containing proteins play pivotal roles in endocytosis and intracellular membrane trafficking (reviewed in[115]). Structural analyses revealed dimerization of the BAR domain mediated by helical coiled-coil interactions[116], giving rise to a concave banana-shaped structure. This complex has a positively charged inner surface, which interacts with negatively charged membrane phospholipids (reviewed in[117]). Thus, BAR domain-containing proteins sense and stabilize membrane curvature by scaffolding mechanisms, to which in case of N-terminal amphipathic helix containing BAR proteins membrane insertion of N-terminal amphipathic helices contributes (Figure 3D and G). Alphavirus nsp3 binds to SH3 domains in amphiphysin *via* a proline-rich sequence and mediates the recruitment to viral replication factories. Knock-down experiments proved an important role of amphiphysins in alphavirus replication[114]. Although their contribution to membrane remodeling during alphavirus infection remains to be discovered, one could envisage a similar mechanism as proposed for BMV and reticulon proteins. Proline-serine-threonine phosphatase interacting protein 2 (PSTPIP2) also belongs to the BAR protein superfamily (Figure 3D) and was recently shown to be involved in membrane alterations induced by HCV[118]. PSTPIP2 binds to NS4B and NS5A and thereby is recruited to the membranous replication compartment[118]. In fact, knockdown experiments showed the crucial role of PSTPIP2 in HCV membrane remodeling and RNA replication[118]. Interestingly, upon over-expression PSTPIP2 induces cytoplasmic tubular membranes[118], highlighting its ability to induce positive membrane curvature. Hence, PSTPIP2 is probably engaged in inducing and/or stabilizing positive membrane curvature of HCV replication factories. Another mechanism by which viruses can rearrange intracellular membranes has become evident for enteroviruses. PV appears to hijack components of the cellular secretory pathway, explaining why PV replication is sensitive to brefeldin A (BFA) treatment[119]. Viral proteins 3A and 3CD recruit the ADP ribosylation factor (Arf)-GEFs (GTP exchange factors) Golgi-specific BFA-resistance guanine nucleotide-exchange factor 1 (GBF1) and BFA-inhibited guanine nucleotide-exchange protein 1/2 (BIG1/2) to replication sites, leading to elevated levels of activated Arf-GTP in infected cells[120]. Arf proteins are central regulators of membrane dynamics and vesicle budding in the secretory pathway. Upon activation by Arf-GEFs, the GTP-bound form exerts its function on target membranes by recruitment of effector proteins such as lipid modifying enzymes and coat complexes, thus facilitating vesicle budding (reviewed in[121,122]). GBF1-mediated Arf activation is crucial for PV replication, although typical membrane alterations can be observed in BFA-treated cells that over-express viral proteins[123]. Nevertheless, PV replication factories of BFA-treated cells were shown to be inactive, implying a functional difference of remodeled membranes independent from morphological abnormalities[123]. Hence, PV subversion of cellular Arf-GEFs is important for maintenance of functional replication factories, rather than primary membrane remodeling. In summary, plus-strand RNA viruses recruit and utilize membrane-active host cell proteins in order to generate and/or maintain replication factories. Donor membrane usage defines engaged cellular factors, as enteroviruses employ Arf-GEFs from the Golgi, alphaviruses subvert amphiphysins localized at the plasma membrane and enteroviruses and BMV utilize ER-resident reticulon proteins (Figure 4).

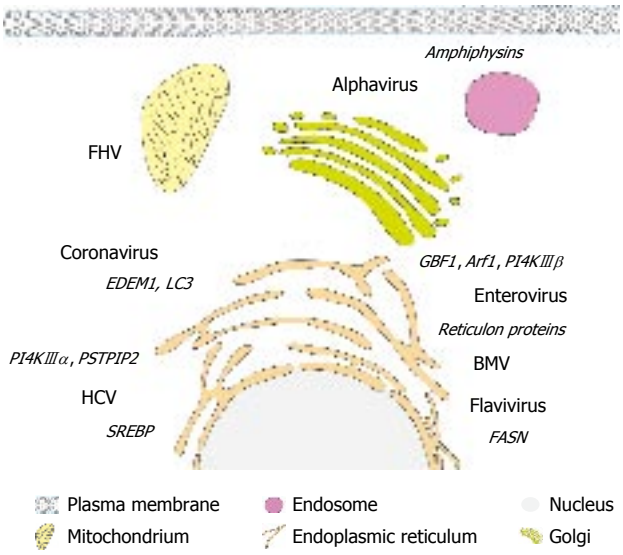


Figure 4 Primary membrane source and host cell factors subverted by different plus-strand RNA viruses. A eukaryotic cell and (endo)membrane organelles are depicted schematically as indicated on the bottom. Viruses are displayed next to their primary membrane source organelle and recruited host cell factors involved in lipogenesis and membrane remodeling are denoted in italics adjacent to each virus name. FHV: Flock-house virus; PSTPIP2: Proline-serine-threonine phosphatase interacting protein 2; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; SREBP: Sterol regulatory element-binding protein; PI4K: Phosphatidylinositol-4-kinase; GBF1: Golgi-specific BFA-resistance guanine nucleotide-exchange factor 1; BMV: Brome mosaic virus; FASN: Fatty acid synthase.

Viral exploitation of pathways regulating homeostasis of cellular membranes

Apart from remodeling existing intracellular membranes, virus infection often induces *de novo* lipid and membrane biosynthesis in order to increase membrane surface area, which is required for the formation of viral replication factories. Indeed, alteration of cellular lipid homeostasis and virus-induced lipogenesis has been reported for a broad range of plus-strand RNA viruses, including

FHV[124], BMV[125], RUBV[126], DENV[127,128], WNV[129], enteroviruses[130] and HCV[131-133]. FHV mainly stimulates glycerophospholipid metabolism[124] and inhibition of phospholipid synthesis leads to destabilization of protein A and decreases viral replication[134]. In case of DENV, high-throughput analysis revealed multiple changes in the cellular lipidome of infected cells, including specific up or down regulation of main structural lipids species, highlighting the link to virus-induced membrane remodeling[128]. Additionally, DENV NS3 recruits fatty acid synthase (FASN), which catalyzes the rate limiting step in lipid biosynthesis at the sites of viral replication[127]. Thus, DENV appears to subvert FASN for *de novo* lipid synthesis in order to generate new membranes for the formation of viral replication factories. This feature is also observed for the closely related flavivirus WNV[129], stressing the impact of this particular virus host interaction to generate flavivirus replication factories.

HCV induces lipogenesis *via* the sterol regulatory element-binding protein (SREBP) pathway[131]. SREBPs are major transcription factors for expression of genes required for lipid biosynthesis. SREBPs reside as inactive membrane-bound precursors in the ER, which upon stimulation traffic to the Golgi. There they are proteolytically activated by site 1 protease (S1P) and S2P and subsequently stimulate gene transcription (reviewed in[135]). Proteolytic cleavage of SREBP and transactivating phosphorylation has been observed in HCV-infected cells or upon over-expression of NS4B, leading to elevated levels of transcripts involved in lipogenesis such as FASN[131,136]. However, by using S1P-specific inhibitors SREBP-mediated lipogenesis was found to be dispensable for HCV replication but required for assembly and release of progeny virus[137]. In addition, the HCV replicase complex was shown to reside in detergent-resistant membranes[138]. These membrane micro domains, designated lipid rafts, are enriched for cholesterol, sphingolipids and certain proteins and they form nanoscale-ordered protein-lipid assemblies (reviewed in[139]). Sphingolipid synthesis is stimulated upon and required for HCV replication[140] and it was shown that the NS5B RdRP is activated by sphingomyelin in a genotype-specific manner[141]. A shared feature of plus-strand RNA viruses inducing DMV-like replication factories is their dependence on members of the phosphatidylinositol-4-kinase (PI4K) family and their product, phosphatidylinositol-4-phosphate (PI4P). Both enteroviruses and HCV rely on PI4P for functional replication factories, which is generated by recruitment of PI4KⅢβ in case of enteroviruses[130] and PI4KⅢα in case of HCV[142]. In non-infected cells PI4P localizes to the Golgi and the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane, where it fulfills important functions by providing "signatures" to distinct membrane compartments and by recruiting multiple factors involved in vesicle budding and lipid biosynthesis[143,144]. Subversion of PI4KⅢβ by enteroviruses is executed *via* 3A-GBF1 interaction, activating Arf that in turn recruits PI4KⅢβ to viral replication factories[130]. Locally elevated PI4P levels allow specific binding of the viral 3D RdRp to the membrane favoring viral replication. Knock-down as well as pharmacological inhibition of PI4KⅢβ dramatically decreases enteroviral replication[130].

In case of HCV, the replicase proteins NS5A and NS5B directly interact with PI4KⅢα, which is thereby recruited to HCV replication sites[142]. Importantly, in HCV-infected cells PI4P that is usually enriched at the Golgi and the plasma membrane, is prominently enriched at the ER-derived sites of HCV replication[142,145]. Numerous siRNA screens identified PI4KⅢα as a major host dependency factor for HCV replication[142,146-149], and pharmacological inhibition of PI4KⅢα activity efficiently blocks viral replication[145]. In the absence of PI4KⅢα, expression of HCV proteins NS3-5B still induces DMVs, but these vesicles are smaller in diameter, very homogeneous and tend to cluster[142]. This morphological change of the overall structure of the membranous web correlates with impaired replication although DMV morphology *per se* is only moderately affected. This phenomenon is reminiscent to what has been shown for BFA-treated cells over-expressing PV proteins[123]. These findings argue for a role of PI4P in recruiting viral factors such as PV 3D RdRp or so far unidentified cellular proteins, rather than acting as a structural lipid building up membranous replication factories. Importantly, the closely HCV-related flaviviruses DENV and WNV, which form replication factories of the InV/sperule type, do not depend on PI4KⅢα/β or PI4P[129,142], highlighting a functional relationship between PI4P and DMV-like replication factories. Therefore it would be very interesting to investigate the dependence of EAV and coronavirus replication on PI4P. We note that for the latter PI4KⅢβ was shown to be required for virus entry[150].

Taken together, the strong dependence of positive strand RNA viruses on cellular membrane-active proteins and on pathways implicated in cellular membrane homeostasis, renders those host cells factors very attractive targets for future antiviral drug development.

CONCLUSION

Although important discoveries on the 3D architecture of plus-strand RNA virus replication factories have been made, current knowledge is largely descriptive and important information about mechanisms is missing. For instance, the exact topology of RNA replication sites for DMV-type replication factories is elusive. Identification of these sites will require novel experimental techniques such as metabolic labeling of nascent viral RNA and its visualization by using microscopy methods with high resolution and specificity. Likewise, membrane remodeling events responsible for the biogenesis of replication factories are mostly unknown. They are probably mediated by a complex interplay of viral and cellular factors, but precise contributions of individual factors and their temporal and spatial coordination remain to be discovered. Studying the impact of single proteins or combinations

thereof on model membranes *in vitro* or on membranes in cellulo by using correlative light-EM based methods as described recently for studies of membrane remodeling events during endocytosis[151] are possible ways to address this topic. Furthermore, determining the proteome and lipidome of purified viral replication factories will shed light on viral and host cell factors involved in biogenesis and activity of these membranous compartments. This approach has been used with great success for small intracellular vesicles such as COP I vesicles or neuronal transport vesicles[152,153] providing insight into individual membranous structures with unprecedented detail. Another emerging field is the specific in-membrane interaction of proteins with certain lipids, as recently shown for COP I machinery protein p24 and the sphingolipid SM 18 being implicated in regulation of COP I vesicle budding[154]. The tight membrane association of proteins of plus-strand RNA viruses suggests that such specific protein-lipid interactions also occur for this large virus group. Finally, time-resolved (imaging) techniques might shed light onto coupling of viral RNA translation and replication as recently shown for HCV[155] and furthermore onto transport processes of viral and cellular components inside and outside replication factories. These studies will be instrumental to integrate their functional role into the complete viral replication cycle.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We want to express our gratitude to Ahlquist P, Belov G, Risco C, Romero-Brey I, Snijder E and Welsch S for providing EM reconstruction images and apologize to all colleagues whose work could not be cited due to space limitations.

REFERENCES

1 **Laliberté JF**, Sanfaçon H. Cellular remodeling during plant virus infection. *Annu Rev Phytopathol* 2010; **48**: 69-91 [PMID: 20337516 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-phyto-073009-114239]
2 **Novoa RR**, Calderita G, Arranz R, Fontana J, Granzow H, Risco C. Virus factories: associations of cell organelles for viral replication and morphogenesis. *Biol Cell* 2005; **97**: 147-172 [PMID: 15656780 DOI: 10.1042/BC20040058]
3 **Netherton C**, Moffat K, Brooks E, Wileman T. A guide to viral inclusions, membrane rearrangements, factories, and viroplasm produced during virus replication. *Adv Virus Res* 2007; **70**: 101-182 [PMID: 17765705 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-3527(07)70004-0]
4 **Monine MI**, Haugh JM. Reactions on cell membranes: comparison of continuum theory and Brownian dynamics simulations. *J Chem Phys* 2005; **123**: 074908 [PMID: 16229621 DOI: 10.1063/1.2000236]
5 **Moradpour D**, Penin F, Rice CM. Replication of hepatitis C virus. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2007; **5**: 453-463 [PMID: 17487147 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro1645]
6 **Ando T**, Imamura H, Suzuki R, Aizaki H, Watanabe T, Wakita T, Suzuki T. Visualization and measurement of ATP levels in living cells replicating hepatitis C virus genome RNA. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002561 [PMID: 22396648 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002561]
7 **Froshauer S**, Kartenbeck J, Helenius A. Alphavirus RNA replicase is located on the cytoplasmic surface of endosomes and lysosomes. *J Cell Biol* 1988; **107**: 2075-2086 [PMID: 2904446 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.107.6.2075]
8 **Fontana J**, López-Iglesias C, Tzeng WP, Frey TK, Fernández JJ, Risco C. Three-dimensional structure of Rubella virus factories. *Virology* 2010; **405**: 579-591 [PMID: 20655079 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.06.043]
9 **Gillespie LK**, Hoenen A, Morgan G, Mackenzie JM. The endoplasmic reticulum provides the membrane platform for biogenesis of the flavivirus replication complex. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 10438-10447 [PMID: 20686019 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00986-10]
10 **Welsch S**, Miller S, Romero-Brey I, Merz A, Bleck CK, Walther P, Fuller SD, Antony C, Krijnse-Locker J, Bartenschlager R. Composition and three-dimensional architecture of the dengue virus replication and assembly sites. *Cell Host Microbe* 2009; **5**: 365-375 [PMID: 19380115 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2009.03.007]
11 **Knoops K**, Kikkert M, Worm SH, Zevenhoven-Dobbe JC, van der Meer Y, Koster AJ, Mommaas AM, Snijder EJ. SARS-coronavirus replication is supported by a reticulovesicular network of modified endoplasmic reticulum. *PLoS Biol* 2008; **6**: e226 [PMID: 18798692 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0060226]
12 **Barba G**, Harper F, Harada T, Kohara M, Goulinet S, Matsuura Y, Eder G, Schaff Z, Chapman MJ, Miyamura T, Bréchot C. Hepatitis C virus core protein shows a cytoplasmic localization and associates to cellular lipid storage droplets. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 1200-1205 [PMID: 9037030 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.4.1200]
13 **Miyanari Y**, Atsuzawa K, Usuda N, Watashi K, Hishiki T, Zayas M, Bartenschlager R, Wakita T, Hijikata M, Shimotohno K. The lipid droplet is an important organelle for hepatitis C virus production. *Nat Cell Biol* 2007; **9**: 1089-1097 [PMID: 17721513 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1631]
14 **Samsa MM**, Mondotte JA, Iglesias NG, Assunção-Miranda I, Barbosa-Lima G, Da Poian AT, Bozza PT, Gamarnik AV. Dengue virus capsid protein usurps lipid droplets for viral particle formation. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000632 [PMID: 19851456 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000632]
15 **Tadano M**, Makino Y, Fukunaga T, Okuno Y, Fukai K. Detection of dengue 4 virus core protein in the nucleus. I. A monoclonal antibody to dengue 4 virus reacts with the antigen in the nucleus and cytoplasm. *J Gen Virol* 1989; **70** (Pt 6): 1409-1415 [PMID: 2471810 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-70-6-1409]
16 **Bulich R**, Aaskov JG. Nuclear localization of dengue 2 virus core protein detected with monoclonal antibodies. *J Gen Virol* 1992; **73** (Pt 11): 2999-3003 [PMID: 1279106 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-73-11-2999]
17 **Mori Y**, Okabayashi T, Yamashita T, Zhao Z, Wakita T, Yasui K, Hasebe F, Tadano M, Konishi E, Moriishi K, Matsuura Y. Nuclear localization of Japanese encephalitis virus core protein enhances viral replication. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 3448-3458 [PMID: 15731239 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.6.3448-3458.2005]
18 **Oh W**, Yang MR, Lee EW, Park KM, Pyo S, Yang JS, Lee HW, Song J. Jab1 mediates cytoplasmic localization and degradation of West Nile virus capsid protein. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 30166-30174 [PMID: 16882664 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M602651200]
19 **Kato H**, Takahasi K, Fujita T. RIG-I-like receptors: cytoplasmic sensors for non-self RNA. *Immunol Rev* 2011; **243**: 91-98 [PMID: 21884169 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2011.01052.x]
20 **Binder M**, Eberle F, Seitz S, Mücke N, Hüber CM, Kiani N, Kaderali L, Lohmann V, Dalpke A, Bartenschlager R. Molecular mechanism of signal perception and integration by the innate immune sensor retinoic acid-inducible gene-I (RIG-I). *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 27278-27287 [PMID: 21659521 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.256974]
21 **Belgnaoui SM**, Paz S, Hiscott J. Orchestrating the interferon antiviral response through the mitochondrial antiviral signaling (MAVS) adapter. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2011; **23**: 564-572

[PMID: 21865020 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2011.08.001]
22 **Koster AJ**, Grimm R, Typke D, Hegerl R, Stoschek A, Walz J, Baumeister W. Perspectives of molecular and cellular electron tomography. *J Struct Biol* 1997; **120**: 276-308 [PMID: 9441933 DOI: 10.1006/jsbi.1997.3933]
23 **Frey TG**, Perkins GA, Ellisman MH. Electron tomography of membrane-bound cellular organelles. *Annu Rev Biophys Biomol Struct* 2006; **35**: 199-224 [PMID: 16689634 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.biophys.35.040405.102039]
24 **Kopek BG**, Perkins G, Miller DJ, Ellisman MH, Ahlquist P. Three-dimensional analysis of a viral RNA replication complex reveals a virus-induced mini-organelle. *PLoS Biol* 2007; **5**: e220 [PMID: 17696647 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0050220]
25 **Limpens RW**, van der Schaar HM, Kumar D, Koster AJ, Snijder EJ, van Kuppeveld FJ, Bárcena M. The transformation of enterovirus replication structures: a three-dimensional study of single- and double-membrane compartments. *MBio* 2011; **2**: e00166-11 [PMID: 21972238 DOI: 10.1128/mBio.00166-11]
26 **Belov GA**, Nair V, Hansen BT, Hoyt FH, Fischer ER, Ehrenfeld E. Complex dynamic development of poliovirus membranous replication complexes. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 302-312 [PMID: 22072780 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.05937-11]
27 **Knoops K**, Bárcena M, Limpens RW, Koster AJ, Mommaas AM, Snijder EJ. Ultrastructural characterization of arterivirus replication structures: reshaping the endoplasmic reticulum to accommodate viral RNA synthesis. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 2474-2487 [PMID: 22190716 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.06677-11]
28 **Romero-Brey I**, Merz A, Chiramel A, Lee JY, Chlanda P, Haselman U, Santarella-Mellwig R, Habermann A, Hoppe S, Kallis S, Walther P, Antony C, Krijnse-Locker J, Bartenschlager R. Three-dimensional architecture and biogenesis of membrane structures associated with hepatitis C virus replication. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1003056 [PMID: 23236278 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1003056]
29 **Grimley PM**, Berezesky IK, Friedman RM. Cytoplasmic structures associated with an arbovirus infection: loci of viral ribonucleic acid synthesis. *J Virol* 1968; **2**: 1326-1338 [PMID: 5750316 DOI:]
30 **Kujala P**, Ikäheimonen A, Ehsani N, Vihinen H, Auvinen P, Kääriäinen L. Biogenesis of the Semliki Forest virus RNA replication complex. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 3873-3884 [PMID: 11264376 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.8.3873-3884.2001]
31 **Frolova EI**, Gorchakov R, Pereboeva L, Atasheva S, Frolov I. Functional Sindbis virus replicative complexes are formed at the plasma membrane. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11679-11695 [PMID: 20826696 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01441-10]
32 **Acheson NH**, Tamm I. Replication of Semliki Forest virus: an electron microscopic study. *Virology* 1967; **32**: 128-143 [PMID: 6067298 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(67)90261-9]
33 **Friedman RM**, Levin JG, Grimley PM, Berezesky IK. Membrane-associated replication complex in arbovirus infection. *J Virol* 1972; **10**: 504-515 [PMID: 4342056]
34 **Grimley PM**, Levin JG, Berezesky IK, Friedman RM. Specific membranous structures associated with the replication of group A arboviruses. *J Virol* 1972; **10**: 492-503 [PMID: 4672392]
35 **Miller DJ**, Schwartz MD, Ahlquist P. Flock house virus RNA replicates on outer mitochondrial membranes in Drosophila cells. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 11664-11676 [PMID: 11689648 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.23.11664-11676.2001]
36 **Kujala P**, Ahola T, Ehsani N, Auvinen P, Vihinen H, Kääriäinen L. Intracellular distribution of rubella virus nonstructural protein P150. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 7805-7811 [PMID: 10438871]
37 **Lee JY**, Marshall JA, Bowden DS. Characterization of rubella virus replication complexes using antibodies to double-stranded RNA. *Virology* 1994; **200**: 307-312 [PMID: 8128633 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1994.1192]
38 **Magliano D**, Marshall JA, Bowden DS, Vardaxis N, Meanger J, Lee JY. Rubella virus replication complexes are virus-modified lysosomes. *Virology* 1998; **240**: 57-63 [PMID: 9448689 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1997.8906]
39 **Fontana J**, Tzeng WP, Calderita G, Fraile-Ramos A, Frey TK, Risco C. Novel replication complex architecture in rubella replicon-transfected cells. *Cell Microbiol* 2007; **9**: 875-890 [PMID: 17087733]
40 **Risco C**, Carrascosa JL, Frey TK. Structural maturation of rubella virus in the Golgi complex. *Virology* 2003; **312**: 261-269 [PMID: 12919732 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-5822.2006.00837.x]
41 **Westaway EG**, Mackenzie JM, Kenney MT, Jones MK, Khromykh AA. Ultrastructure of Kunjin virus-infected cells: colocalization of NS1 and NS3 with double-stranded RNA, and of NS2B with NS3, in virus-induced membrane structures. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 6650-6661 [PMID: 9261387]
42 **Kallman F**, Williams RC, Dulbecco R, Vogt M. Fine structure of changes produced in cultured cells sampled at specified intervals during a single growth cycle of polio virus. *J Biophys Biochem Cytol* 1958; **4**: 301-308 [PMID: 13549502 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.4.3.301]
43 **Egger D**, Bienz K. Intracellular location and translocation of silent and active poliovirus replication complexes. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 707-718 [PMID: 15722531 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80442-0]
44 **Schlegel A**, Giddings TH, Ladinsky MS, Kirkegaard K. Cellular origin and ultrastructure of membranes induced during poliovirus infection. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 6576-6588 [PMID: 8794292]
45 **Troxler M**, Egger D, Pfister T, Bienz K. Intracellular localization of poliovirus RNA by in situ hybridization at the ultrastructural level using single-stranded riboprobes. *Virology* 1992; **191**: 687-697 [PMID: 1333118 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(92)90244-J]
46 **Hagemeijer MC**, Vonk AM, Monastyrska I, Rottier PJ, de Haan CA. Visualizing coronavirus RNA synthesis in time by using click chemistry. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 5808-5816 [PMID: 22438542 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.07207-11]
47 **Schwartz M**, Chen J, Janda M, Sullivan M, den Boon J, Ahlquist P. A positive-strand RNA virus replication complex parallels form and function of retrovirus capsids. *Mol Cell* 2002; **9**: 505-514 [PMID: 11931759 DOI: 10.1016/S1097-2765(02)00474-4]
48 **Bienz K**, Egger D, Pasamontes L. Association of polioviral proteins of the P2 genomic region with the viral replication complex and virus-induced membrane synthesis as visualized by electron microscopic immunocytochemistry and autoradiography. *Virology* 1987; **160**: 220-226 [PMID: 2820130 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(87)90063-8]
49 **Pedersen KW**, van der Meer Y, Roos N, Snijder EJ. Open reading frame 1a-encoded subunits of the arterivirus replicase induce endoplasmic reticulum-derived double-membrane vesicles which carry the viral replication complex. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 2016-2026 [PMID: 9971782]
50 **Gosert R**, Kanjanahaluethai A, Egger D, Bienz K, Baker SC. RNA replication of mouse hepatitis virus takes place at double-membrane vesicles. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 3697-3708 [PMID: 11907209 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.8.3697-3708.2002]
51 **Johnson AE**, van Waes MA. The translocon: a dynamic gateway at the ER membrane. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol* 1999; **15**: 799-842 [PMID: 10611978 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.cellbio.15.1.799]
52 **Endo T**, Yamamoto H, Esaki M. Functional cooperation and separation of translocators in protein import into mitochondria, the double-membrane bounded organelles. *J Cell Sci* 2003; **116**: 3259-3267 [PMID: 12857785 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.00667]
53 **McMahon HT**, Gallop JL. Membrane curvature and mechanisms of dynamic cell membrane remodelling. *Nature* 2005; **438**: 590-596 [PMID: 16319878 DOI: 10.1038/nature04396]
54 **Zimmerberg J**, Kozlov MM. How proteins produce cellular membrane curvature. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2006; **7**: 9-19

[PMID: 16365634 DOI: 10.1038/nrm1784]
55 **Graham TR**, Kozlov MM. Interplay of proteins and lipids in generating membrane curvature. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2010; **22**: 430-436 [PMID: 20605711 DOI: 10.1016/j.ceb.2010.05.002]
56 **Ahola T**, Lampio A, Auvinen P, Kääriäinen L. Semliki Forest virus mRNA capping enzyme requires association with anionic membrane phospholipids for activity. *EMBO J* 1999; **18**: 3164-3172 [PMID: 10357827 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/18.11.3164]
57 **Laakkonen P**, Ahola T, Kääriäinen L. The effects of palmitoylation on membrane association of Semliki forest virus RNA capping enzyme. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 28567-28571 [PMID: 8910486 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.271.45.28567]
58 **Spuul P**, Salonen A, Merits A, Jokitalo E, Kääriäinen L, Ahola T. Role of the amphipathic peptide of Semliki forest virus replicase protein nsP1 in membrane association and virus replication. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 872-883 [PMID: 17093195 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01785-06]
59 **Zusinaite E**, Tints K, Kiiver K, Spuul P, Karo-Astover L, Merits A, Sarand I. Mutations at the palmitoylation site of non-structural protein nsP1 of Semliki Forest virus attenuate virus replication and cause accumulation of compensatory mutations. *J Gen Virol* 2007; **88**: 1977-1985 [PMID: 17554031 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.82865-0]
60 **Ahola T**, Kujala P, Tuittila M, Blom T, Laakkonen P, Hinkkanen A, Auvinen P. Effects of palmitoylation of replicase protein nsP1 on alphavirus infection. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 6725-6733 [PMID: 10888610 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.15.6725-6733.2000]
61 **Salonen A**, Vasiljeva L, Merits A, Magden J, Jokitalo E, Kääriäinen L. Properly folded nonstructural polyprotein directs the semliki forest virus replication complex to the endosomal compartment. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 1691-1702 [PMID: 12525603 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.3.1691-1702.2003]
62 **Stapleford KA**, Rapaport D, Miller DJ. Mitochondrion-enriched anionic phospholipids facilitate flock house virus RNA polymerase membrane association. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 4498-4507 [PMID: 19244330 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00040-09]
63 **Miller DJ**, Ahlquist P. Flock house virus RNA polymerase is a transmembrane protein with amino-terminal sequences sufficient for mitochondrial localization and membrane insertion. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 9856-9867 [PMID: 12208963 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.19.9856-9867.2002]
64 **Dye BT**, Miller DJ, Ahlquist P. In vivo self-interaction of nodavirus RNA replicase protein a revealed by fluorescence resonance energy transfer. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 8909-8919 [PMID: 15994785 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.14.8909-8919.2005]
65 **Kopek BG**, Settles EW, Friesen PD, Ahlquist P. Nodavirus-induced membrane rearrangement in replication complex assembly requires replicase protein a, RNA templates, and polymerase activity. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12492-12503 [PMID: 20943974 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01495-10]
66 **Miller S**, Kastner S, Krijnse-Locker J, Bühler S, Bartenschlager R. The non-structural protein 4A of dengue virus is an integral membrane protein inducing membrane alterations in a 2K-regulated manner. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 8873-8882 [PMID: 17276984 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M609919200]
67 **Roosendaal J**, Westaway EG, Khromykh A, Mackenzie JM. Regulated cleavages at the West Nile virus NS4A-2K-NS4B junctions play a major role in rearranging cytoplasmic membranes and Golgi trafficking of the NS4A protein. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 4623-4632 [PMID: 16611922 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.9.4623-4632.2006]
68 **Egger D**, Wölk B, Gosert R, Bianchi L, Blum HE, Moradpour D, Bienz K. Expression of hepatitis C virus proteins induces distinct membrane alterations including a candidate viral replication complex. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 5974-5984 [PMID: 12021330 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.12.5974-5984.2002]
69 **Lundin M**, Monné M, Widell A, Von Heijne G, Persson MA. Topology of the membrane-associated hepatitis C virus protein NS4B. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 5428-5438 [PMID: 12692244 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.9.5428-5438.2003]
70 **Yu GY**, Lee KJ, Gao L, Lai MM. Palmitoylation and polymerization of hepatitis C virus NS4B protein. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 6013-6023 [PMID: 16731940 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00053-06]
71 **Elazar M**, Liu P, Rice CM, Glenn JS. An N-terminal amphipathic helix in hepatitis C virus (HCV) NS4B mediates membrane association, correct localization of replication complex proteins, and HCV RNA replication. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 11393-11400 [PMID: 15452261 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.20.11393-11400.2004]
72 **Gouttenoire J**, Castet V, Montserret R, Arora N, Raussens V, Ruysschaert JM, Diesis E, Blum HE, Penin F, Moradpour D. Identification of a novel determinant for membrane association in hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 4B. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 6257-6268 [PMID: 19357161 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02663-08]
73 **Gouttenoire J**, Montserret R, Kennel A, Penin F, Moradpour D. An amphipathic alpha-helix at the C terminus of hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 4B mediates membrane association. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 11378-11384 [PMID: 19692468 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01122-09]
74 **Guillén J**, González-Alvarez A, Villalaín J. A membranotropic region in the C-terminal domain of hepatitis C virus protein NS4B interaction with membranes. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2010; **1798**: 327-337 [PMID: 19631190 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamem.2009.07.011]
75 **Palomares-Jerez MF**, Nemesio H, Villalaín J. Interaction with membranes of the full C-terminal domain of protein NS4B from hepatitis C virus. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2012; **1818**: 2536-2549 [PMID: 22749751 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamem.2012.06.012]
76 **Gouttenoire J**, Roingeard P, Penin F, Moradpour D. Amphipathic alpha-helix AH2 is a major determinant for the oligomerization of hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 4B. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12529-12537 [PMID: 20926561 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01798-10]
77 **Paul D**, Romero-Brey I, Gouttenoire J, Stoitsova S, Krijnse-Locker J, Moradpour D, Bartenschlager R. NS4B self-interaction through conserved C-terminal elements is required for the establishment of functional hepatitis C virus replication complexes. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 6963-6976 [PMID: 21543474 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00502-11]
78 **Brass V**, Bieck E, Montserret R, Wölk B, Hellings JA, Blum HE, Penin F, Moradpour D. An amino-terminal amphipathic alpha-helix mediates membrane association of the hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 5A. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 8130-8139 [PMID: 11744739 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111289200]
79 **Penin F**, Brass V, Appel N, Ramboarina S, Montserret R, Ficheux D, Blum HE, Bartenschlager R, Moradpour D. Structure and function of the membrane anchor domain of hepatitis C virus nonstructural protein 5A. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 40835-40843 [PMID: 15247283 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M404761200]
80 **Tellinghuisen TL**, Marcotrigiano J, Rice CM. Structure of the zinc-binding domain of an essential component of the hepatitis C virus replicase. *Nature* 2005; **435**: 374-379 [PMID: 15902263 DOI: 10.1038/nature03580]
81 **Love RA**, Brodsky O, Hickey MJ, Wells PA, Cronin CN. Crystal structure of a novel dimeric form of NS5A domain I protein from hepatitis C virus. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 4395-4403 [PMID: 19244328 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02352-08]
82 **Lim PJ**, Chatterji U, Cordek D, Sharma SD, Garcia-Rivera JA, Cameron CE, Lin K, Targett-Adams P, Gallay PA. Correlation between NS5A dimerization and hepatitis C virus replication. *J Biol Chem* 2012; **287**: 30861-30873 [PMID: 22801423 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M112.376822]
83 **Kanjanahaluethai A**, Chen Z, Jukneliene D, Baker SC. Membrane topology of murine coronavirus replicase nonstructural protein 3. *Virology* 2007; **361**: 391-401 [PMID: 17222884 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2006.12.009]
84 **Oostra M**, te Lintelo EG, Deijs M, Verheije MH, Rottier PJ,

de Haan CA. Localization and membrane topology of coronavirus nonstructural protein 4: involvement of the early secretory pathway in replication. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 12323-12336 [PMID: 17855519 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01506-07]

85 **Oostra M**, Hagemeijer MC, van Gent M, Bekker CP, te Lintelo EG, Rottier PJ, de Haan CA. Topology and membrane anchoring of the coronavirus replication complex: not all hydrophobic domains of nsp3 and nsp6 are membrane spanning. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 12392-12405 [PMID: 18842706]

86 **Gadlage MJ**, Sparks JS, Beachboard DC, Cox RG, Doyle JD, Stobart CC, Denison MR. Murine hepatitis virus nonstructural protein 4 regulates virus-induced membrane modifications and replication complex function. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 280-290 [PMID: 19846526 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01772-09]

87 **Snijder EJ**, van Tol H, Roos N, Pedersen KW. Non-structural proteins 2 and 3 interact to modify host cell membranes during the formation of the arterivirus replication complex. *J Gen Virol* 2001; **82**: 985-994 [PMID: 11297673]

88 **Posthuma CC**, Pedersen KW, Lu Z, Joosten RG, Roos N, Zevenhoven-Dobbe JC, Snijder EJ. Formation of the arterivirus replication/transcription complex: a key role for nonstructural protein 3 in the remodeling of intracellular membranes. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 4480-4491 [PMID: 18305048 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02756-07]

89 **van Kuppeveld FJ**, Galama JM, Zoll J, van den Hurk PJ, Melchers WJ. Coxsackie B3 virus protein 2B contains cationic amphipathic helix that is required for viral RNA replication. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 3876-3886 [PMID: 8648724]

90 **Echeverri AC**, Dasgupta A. Amino terminal regions of poliovirus 2C protein mediate membrane binding. *Virology* 1995; **208**: 540-553 [PMID: 7747426 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.1185]

91 **Towner JS**, Ho TV, Semler BL. Determinants of membrane association for poliovirus protein 3AB. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 26810-26818 [PMID: 8900162 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.271.43.26810]

92 **Cho MW**, Teterina N, Egger D, Bienz K, Ehrenfeld E. Membrane rearrangement and vesicle induction by recombinant poliovirus 2C and 2BC in human cells. *Virology* 1994; **202**: 129-145 [PMID: 8009827 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1994.1329]

93 **Suhy DA**, Giddings TH, Kirkegaard K. Remodeling the endoplasmic reticulum by poliovirus infection and by individual viral proteins: an autophagy-like origin for virus-induced vesicles. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 8953-8965 [PMID: 10982339 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.19.8953-8965.2000]

94 **Yang Z**, Klionsky DJ. Mammalian autophagy: core molecular machinery and signaling regulation. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2010; **22**: 124-131 [PMID: 20034776 DOI: 10.1016/j.ceb.2009.11.014]

95 **Chiramel AI**, Brady NR, Bartenschlager R. Divergent roles of autophagy in virus infection. *Cells* 2013; **2**: 83-104 [DOI: 10.3390/cells2010083]

96 **Huang SC**, Chang CL, Wang PS, Tsai Y, Liu HS. Enterovirus 71-induced autophagy detected in vitro and in vivo promotes viral replication. *J Med Virol* 2009; **81**: 1241-1252 [PMID: 19475621 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21502]

97 **Kemball CC**, Alirezaei M, Flynn CT, Wood MR, Harkins S, Kiosses WB, Whitton JL. Coxsackievirus infection induces autophagy-like vesicles and megaphagosomes in pancreatic acinar cells in vivo. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12110-12124 [PMID: 20861268 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01417-10]

98 **Prentice E**, Jerome WG, Yoshimori T, Mizushima N, Denison MR. Coronavirus replication complex formation utilizes components of cellular autophagy. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 10136-10141 [PMID: 14699140 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M306124200]

99 **Reggiori F**, Monastyrska I, Verheije MH, Calì T, Ulasli M, Bianchi S, Bernasconi R, de Haan CA, Molinari M. Coronaviruses Hijack the LC3-I-positive EDEMosomes, ER-derived vesicles exporting short-lived ERAD regulators, for replication. *Cell Host Microbe* 2010; **7**: 500-508 [PMID: 20542253 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2010.05.013]

100 **Ferraris P**, Blanchard E, Roingeard P. Ultrastructural and biochemical analyses of hepatitis C virus-associated host cell membranes. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 2230-2237 [PMID: 20484561 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.022186-0]

101 **Sir D**, Kuo CF, Tian Y, Liu HM, Huang EJ, Jung JU, Machida K, Ou JH. Replication of hepatitis C virus RNA on autophagosomal membranes. *J Biol Chem* 2012; **287**: 18036-18043 [PMID: 22496373 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.320085]

102 **Taylor MP**, Kirkegaard K. Modification of cellular autophagy protein LC3 by poliovirus. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 12543-12553 [PMID: 17804493 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00755-07]

103 **Jackson WT**, Giddings TH, Taylor MP, Mulinyawe S, Rabinovitch M, Kopito RR, Kirkegaard K. Subversion of cellular autophagosomal machinery by RNA viruses. *PLoS Biol* 2005; **3**: e156 [PMID: 15884975 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.0030156]

104 **Zhao Z**, Thackray LB, Miller BC, Lynn TM, Becker MM, Ward E, Mizushima NN, Denison MR, Virgin HW. Coronavirus replication does not require the autophagy gene ATG5. *Autophagy* 2007; **3**: 581-585 [PMID: 17700057]

105 **Dreux M**, Gastaminza P, Wieland SF, Chisari FV. The autophagy machinery is required to initiate hepatitis C virus replication. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 14046-14051 [PMID: 19666601 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0907344106]

106 **Tanida I**, Fukasawa M, Ueno T, Kominami E, Wakita T, Hanada K. Knockdown of autophagy-related gene decreases the production of infectious hepatitis C virus particles. *Autophagy* 2009; **5**: 937-945 [PMID: 19625776 DOI: 10.4161/auto.5.7.9243]

107 **Ke PY**, Chen SS. Activation of the unfolded protein response and autophagy after hepatitis C virus infection suppresses innate antiviral immunity in vitro. *J Clin Invest* 2011; **121**: 37-56 [PMID: 21135505 DOI: 10.1172/JCI41474]

108 **Tang WF**, Yang SY, Wu BW, Jheng JR, Chen YL, Shih CH, Lin KH, Lai HC, Tang P, Horng JT. Reticulon 3 binds the 2C protein of enterovirus 71 and is required for viral replication. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 5888-5898 [PMID: 17182608 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M611145200]

109 **Diaz A**, Wang X, Ahlquist P. Membrane-shaping host reticulon proteins play crucial roles in viral RNA replication compartment formation and function. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 16291-16296 [PMID: 20805477 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1011105107]

110 **Voeltz GK**, Prinz WA, Shibata Y, Rist JM, Rapoport TA. A class of membrane proteins shaping the tubular endoplasmic reticulum. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 573-586 [PMID: 16469703 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.11.047]

111 **Hu J**, Shibata Y, Voss C, Shemesh T, Li Z, Coughlin M, Kozlov MM, Rapoport TA, Prinz WA. Membrane proteins of the endoplasmic reticulum induce high-curvature tubules. *Science* 2008; **319**: 1247-1250 [PMID: 18309084 DOI: 10.1126/science.1153634]

112 **Zurek N**, Sparks L, Voeltz G. Reticulon short hairpin transmembrane domains are used to shape ER tubules. *Traffic* 2011; **12**: 28-41 [PMID: 20955502 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0854.2010.01134.x]

113 **Shibata Y**, Voss C, Rist JM, Hu J, Rapoport TA, Prinz WA, Voeltz GK. The reticulon and DP1/Yop1p proteins form immobile oligomers in the tubular endoplasmic reticulum. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 18892-18904 [PMID: 18442980 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M800986200]

114 **Neuvonen M**, Kazlauskas A, Martikainen M, Hinkkanen A, Ahola T, Saksela K. SH3 domain-mediated recruitment of host cell amphiphysins by alphavirus nsP3 promotes viral RNA replication. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002383 [PMID: 22114558 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002383]

115 **Qualmann B**, Koch D, Kessels MM. Let's go bananas: revisiting the endocytic BAR code. *EMBO J* 2011; **30**: 3501-3515 [PMID: 21878992 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2011.266]

116 **Peter BJ**, Kent HM, Mills IG, Vallis Y, Butler PJ, Evans PR, McMahon HT. BAR domains as sensors of membrane curvature: the amphiphysin BAR structure. *Science* 2004; **303**: 495-499 [PMID: 14645856 DOI: 10.1126/science.1092586]

117 **Rao Y**, Haucke V. Membrane shaping by the Bin/amphiphysin/Rvs (BAR) domain protein superfamily. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2011; **68**: 3983-3993 [PMID: 21769645 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-011-0768-5]

118 **Chao TC**, Su WC, Huang JY, Chen YC, Jeng KS, Wang HD, Lai MM. Proline-serine-threonine phosphatase-interacting protein 2 (PSTPIP2), a host membrane-deforming protein, is critical for membranous web formation in hepatitis C virus replication. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 1739-1749 [PMID: 22130530 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.06001-11]

119 **Maynell LA**, Kirkegaard K, Klymkowsky MW. Inhibition of poliovirus RNA synthesis by brefeldin A. *J Virol* 1992; **66**: 1985-1994 [PMID: 1312615]

120 **Belov GA**, Altan-Bonnet N, Kovtunovych G, Jackson CL, Lippincott-Schwartz J, Ehrenfeld E. Hijacking components of the cellular secretory pathway for replication of poliovirus RNA. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 558-567 [PMID: 17079330 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01820-06]

121 **Kahn RA**. Toward a model for Arf GTPases as regulators of traffic at the Golgi. *FEBS Lett* 2009; **583**: 3872-3879 [PMID: 19879269 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2009.10.066]

122 **Nie Z**, Hirsch DS, Randazzo PA. Arf and its many interactors. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2003; **15**: 396-404 [PMID: 12892779 DOI: 10.1016/S0955-0674(03)00071-1]

123 **Belov GA**, Feng Q, Nikovics K, Jackson CL, Ehrenfeld E. A critical role of a cellular membrane traffic protein in poliovirus RNA replication. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e1000216 [PMID: 19023417 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000216]

124 **Castorena KM**, Stapleford KA, Miller DJ. Complementary transcriptomic, lipidomic, and targeted functional genetic analyses in cultured Drosophila cells highlight the role of glycerophospholipid metabolism in Flock House virus RNA replication. *BMC Genomics* 2010; **11**: 183 [PMID: 20236518 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-11-183]

125 **Lee WM**, Ahlquist P. Membrane synthesis, specific lipid requirements, and localized lipid composition changes associated with a positive-strand RNA virus RNA replication protein. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 12819-12828 [PMID: 14610203 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.23.12819-12828.2003]

126 **Williams LL**, Lew HM, Davidorf FH, Pelok SG, Singley CT, Wolinsky JS. Altered membrane fatty acids of cultured human retinal pigment epithelium persistently infected with rubella virus may affect secondary cellular function. *Arch Virol* 1994; **134**: 379-392 [PMID: 8129623 DOI: 10.1007/BF01310575]

127 **Heaton NS**, Perera R, Berger KL, Khadka S, Lacount DJ, Kuhn RJ, Randall G. Dengue virus nonstructural protein 3 redistributes fatty acid synthase to sites of viral replication and increases cellular fatty acid synthesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 17345-17350 [PMID: 20855599 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1010811107]

128 **Perera R**, Riley C, Isaac G, Hopf-Jannasch AS, Moore RJ, Weitz KW, Pasa-Tolic L, Metz TO, Adamec J, Kuhn RJ. Dengue virus infection perturbs lipid homeostasis in infected mosquito cells. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002584 [PMID: 22457619 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002584]

129 **Martín-Acebes MA**, Blázquez AB, Jiménez de Oya N, Escribano-Romero E, Saiz JC. West Nile virus replication requires fatty acid synthesis but is independent on phosphatidylinositol-4-phosphate lipids. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e24970 [PMID: 21949814 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0024970]

130 **Hsu NY**, Ilnytska O, Belov G, Santiana M, Chen YH, Takvorian PM, Pau C, van der Schaar H, Kaushik-Basu N, Balla T, Cameron CE, Ehrenfeld E, van Kuppeveld FJ, Altan-Bonnet N. Viral reorganization of the secretory pathway generates distinct organelles for RNA replication. *Cell* 2010; **141**: 799-811 [PMID: 20510927 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2010.03.050]

131 **Waris G**, Felmlee DJ, Negro F, Siddiqui A. Hepatitis C virus induces proteolytic cleavage of sterol regulatory element binding proteins and stimulates their phosphorylation via oxidative stress. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 8122-8130 [PMID: 17507484 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00125-07]

132 **Su AI**, Pezacki JP, Wodicka L, Brideau AD, Supekova L, Thimme R, Wieland S, Bukh J, Purcell RH, Schultz PG, Chisari FV. Genomic analysis of the host response to hepatitis C virus infection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 15669-15674 [PMID: 12441396 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.202608199]

133 **Diamond DL**, Syder AJ, Jacobs JM, Sorensen CM, Walters KA, Proll SC, McDermott JE, Gritsenko MA, Zhang Q, Zhao R, Metz TO, Camp DG, Waters KM, Smith RD, Rice CM, Katze MG. Temporal proteome and lipidome profiles reveal hepatitis C virus-associated reprogramming of hepatocellular metabolism and bioenergetics. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000719 [PMID: 20062526 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000719]

134 **Sharma M**, Sasvari Z, Nagy PD. Inhibition of phospholipid biosynthesis decreases the activity of the tombusvirus replicase and alters the subcellular localization of replication proteins. *Virology* 2011; **415**: 141-152 [PMID: 21561636 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2011.04.008]

135 **Eberlé D**, Hegarty B, Bossard P, Ferré P, Foufelle F. SREBP transcription factors: master regulators of lipid homeostasis. *Biochimie* 2004; **86**: 839-848 [PMID: 15589694 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2004.09.018]

136 **Park CY**, Jun HJ, Wakita T, Cheong JH, Hwang SB. Hepatitis C virus nonstructural 4B protein modulates sterol regulatory element-binding protein signaling via the AKT pathway. *J Biol Chem* 2009; **284**: 9237-9246 [PMID: 19204002 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M808773200]

137 **Olmstead AD**, Knecht W, Lazarov I, Dixit SB, Jean F. Human subtilase SKI-1/S1P is a master regulator of the HCV Lifecycle and a potential host cell target for developing indirect-acting antiviral agents. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002468 [PMID: 22241994 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002468]

138 **Shi ST**, Lee KJ, Aizaki H, Hwang SB, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus RNA replication occurs on a detergent-resistant membrane that cofractionates with caveolin-2. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 4160-4168 [PMID: 12634374 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.7.4160-4168.2003]

139 **Simons K**, Sampaio JL. Membrane organization and lipid rafts. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2011; **3**: a004697 [PMID: 21628426 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a004697]

140 **Hirata Y**, Ikeda K, Sudoh M, Tokunaga Y, Suzuki A, Weng L, Ohta M, Tobita Y, Okano K, Ozeki K, Kawasaki K, Tsukuda T, Katsume A, Aoki Y, Umehara T, Sekiguchi S, Toyoda T, Shimotohno K, Soga T, Nishijima M, Taguchi R, Kohara M. Self-enhancement of hepatitis C virus replication by promotion of specific sphingolipid biosynthesis. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002860 [PMID: 22916015 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002860]

141 **Weng L**, Hirata Y, Arai M, Kohara M, Wakita T, Watashi K, Shimotohno K, He Y, Zhong J, Toyoda T. Sphingomyelin activates hepatitis C virus RNA polymerase in a genotype-specific manner. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11761-11770 [PMID: 20844041 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00638-10]

142 **Reiss S**, Rebhan I, Backes P, Romero-Brey I, Erfle H, Matula P, Kaderali L, Poenisch M, Blankenburg H, Hiet MS, Longerich T, Diehl S, Ramirez F, Balla T, Rohr K, Kaul A, Bühler S, Pepperkok R, Lengauer T, Albrecht M, Eils R, Schirmacher P, Lohmann V, Bartenschlager R. Recruitment and activation of a lipid kinase by hepatitis C virus NS5A is essential for integrity of the membranous replication compartment. *Cell Host Microbe* 2011; **9**: 32-45 [PMID: 21238945 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2010.12.002]

143 **Graham TR**, Burd CG. Coordination of Golgi functions by phosphatidylinositol 4-kinases. *Trends Cell Biol* 2011; **21**: 113-121 [PMID: 21282087 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2010.10.002]

144 **Hammond GR**, Fischer MJ, Anderson KE, Holdich J, Koteci A, Balla T, Irvine RF. PI4P and PI(4,5)P2 are essential but independent lipid determinants of membrane identity. *Science* 2012; **337**: 727-730 [PMID: 22722250 DOI: 10.1126/sci-

ence.1222483]
145 **Bianco A**, Reghellin V, Donnici L, Fenu S, Alvarez R, Baruffa C, Peri F, Pagani M, Abrignani S, Neddermann P, De Francesco R. Metabolism of phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase IIIα-dependent PI4P Is subverted by HCV and is targeted by a 4-anilino quinazoline with antiviral activity. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002576 [PMID: 22412376 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002576]
146 **Li Q**, Brass AL, Ng A, Hu Z, Xavier RJ, Liang TJ, Elledge SJ. A genome-wide genetic screen for host factors required for hepatitis C virus propagation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 16410-16415 [PMID: 19717417 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0907439106]
147 **Tai AW**, Benita Y, Peng LF, Kim SS, Sakamoto N, Xavier RJ, Chung RT. A functional genomic screen identifies cellular cofactors of hepatitis C virus replication. *Cell Host Microbe* 2009; **5**: 298-307 [PMID: 19286138 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2009.02.001]
148 **Trotard M**, Lepère-Douard C, Régeard M, Piquet-Pellorce C, Lavillette D, Cosset FL, Gripon P, Le Seyec J. Kinases required in hepatitis C virus entry and replication highlighted by small interference RNA screening. *FASEB J* 2009; **23**: 3780-3789 [PMID: 19608626 DOI: 10.1096/fj.09-131920]
149 **Berger KL**, Cooper JD, Heaton NS, Yoon R, Oakland TE, Jordan TX, Mateu G, Grakoui A, Randall G. Roles for endocytic trafficking and phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase III alpha in hepatitis C virus replication. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 7577-7582 [PMID: 19376974 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0902693106]
150 **Yang N**, Ma P, Lang J, Zhang Y, Deng J, Ju X, Zhang G, Jiang C. Phosphatidylinositol 4-kinase IIIβ is required for severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus spike-mediated cell entry. *J Biol Chem* 2012; **287**: 8457-8467 [PMID: 22253445 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.312561]
151 **Kukulski W**, Schorb M, Kaksonen M, Briggs JA. Plasma membrane reshaping during endocytosis is revealed by time-resolved electron tomography. *Cell* 2012; **150**: 508-520 [PMID: 22863005 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.05.046]
152 **Brügger B**, Sandhoff R, Wegehingel S, Gorgas K, Malsam J, Helms JB, Lehmann WD, Nickel W, Wieland FT. Evidence for segregation of sphingomyelin and cholesterol during formation of COPI-coated vesicles. *J Cell Biol* 2000; **151**: 507-518 [PMID: 11062253 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.151.3.507]
153 **Takamori S**, Holt M, Stenius K, Lemke EA, Grønborg M, Riedel D, Urlaub H, Schenck S, Brügger B, Ringler P, Müller SA, Rammner B, Gräter F, Hub JS, De Groot BL, Mieskes G, Moriyama Y, Klingauf J, Grubmüller H, Heuser J, Wieland F, Jahn R. Molecular anatomy of a trafficking organelle. *Cell* 2006; **127**: 831-846 [PMID: 17110340 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.10.030]
154 **Contreras FX**, Ernst AM, Haberkant P, Björkholm P, Lindahl E, Gönen B, Tischer C, Elofsson A, von Heijne G, Thiele C, Pepperkok R, Wieland F, Brügger B. Molecular recognition of a single sphingolipid species by a protein's transmembrane domain. *Nature* 2012; **481**: 525-529 [PMID: 22230960 DOI: 10.1038/nature10742]
155 **Liu HM**, Aizaki H, Machida K, Ou JH, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus translation preferentially depends on active RNA replication. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e43600 [PMID: 22937067 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0043600]

P- Reviewers Chi-Ho C, Shih WL **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.49

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 49-56
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Innate host responses to West Nile virus: Implications for central nervous system immunopathology

Giada Rossini, Maria Paola Landini, Francesco Gelsomino, Vittorio Sambri, Stefania Varani

Giada Rossini, Maria Paola Landini, Unit of Clinical Microbiology, Regional Reference Centre for Microbiological Emergencies, St. Orsola University Hospital, 40138 Bologna, Italy
Maria Paola Landini, Francesco Gelsomino, Vittorio Sambri, Stefania Varani, Microbiology, Department of Experimental, Diagnostic and Specialty Medicine, University of Bologna, 40138 Bologna, Italy
Author contributions: Rossini G drafted the manuscript, revised the figures and critically revised the final version; Landini MP contributed to drafting the manuscript and the final revision; Gelsomino F contributed to drafting the manuscript and prepared the figures; Sambri V contributed to drafting the manuscript and critical revisions; Varani S designed and wrote the manuscript.
Supported by RFO of University of Bologna, the grant "Fondi Finalizzati Lab P3" from Regione Emilia-Romagna; the grant "Ricerca Finalizzata RF-2009-1539631" from the Italian Ministry of Health
Correspondence to: Stefania Varani, MD, PhD, Microbiology, Department of Experimental, Diagnostic and Specialty Medicine, University of Bologna, Padiglione 11, St. Orsola-Malpighi University Hospital, via Massarenti 9, 40138 Bologna, Italy. stefania.varani@unibo.it
Telephone: +39-51-6363511 Fax: +39-51-307397
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: January 19, 2013
Accepted: February 2, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

West Nile virus (WNV) is an emerging neurotropic flavivirus that has recently spread to America and Southern Europe *via* an enzootic/epizootic bird-mosquito-bird transmission cycle. The virus can occasionally infect humans through mosquito bites, and man-to-man transmission has also been reported *via* infected blood or organ donation. In the human host, WNV causes asymptomatic infection in about 70%-80% of cases, while < 1% of clinical cases progress to severe neuroinvasive disease; long-term neurological sequelae are common in more than 50% of these severe cases. The pathogenesis of the neuroinvasive form of WNV infection remains incompletely understood, and risk factors for developing severe clinical illness are largely unknown. The innate immune response plays a major role in the control of WNV replication, which is supported by the fact that the virus has developed numerous mechanisms to escape the control of antiviral interferons. However, exaggerated inflammatory responses lead to pathology, mainly involving the central nervous system. This brief review presents the salient features of innate host responses, WNV immunoevasion strategies, and WNV-induced immunopathology.

Key words: West Nile virus infection; Innate immunity; Antigen presenting cells; Inflammation; Interferon and cytokines; Central nervous system

Rossini G, Landini MP, Gelsomino F, Sambri V, Varani S. Innate host responses to West Nile virus: Implications for central nervous system immunopathology. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 49-56 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/49.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.49

INTRODUCTION

West Nile virus (WNV) is a lipid-enveloped virus that contains a single stranded, positive sense RNA genome. The virus is introduced into the host by an infected vector (mosquitoes generally belonging to the genus *Culex*) during its blood meal. WNV was originally found in Africa and in the Middle East but has recently reached America[1,2], where it has spread throughout the United States. In the last 15 years, WNV has also caused several human outbreaks in southern Europe[3-5].

Most individuals infected with WNV remain asymptomatic. In 20%-30% of cases, WNV causes a mild flu-

like illness. In such cases, symptoms appear suddenly and may include malaise, eye pain, headache, myalgia, gastrointestinal discomfort and rash[6]. Less than 1% of infected individuals develop neurological symptoms, including aseptic meningitis, febrile convulsion in children, encephalitis or myelitis, the last of which causes acute flaccid paralysis[7-9]. Long-term neurological sequelae are common in more than 50% of neuroinvasive cases. The virus can infect neurons in areas as diverse as the cerebral cortex, basal ganglia and thalami, as well as the brainstem and cerebellum. Currently, risk factors for developing severe clinical illness are unknown. However, it is clear that WNV central nervous system (CNS) disease occurs with increased frequency in immunocompromised individuals and the elderly[10-12].

Innate immune responses are believed to be crucial for the control of WNV replication, as a potent and rapid type I interferon (IFN) response is essential for the successful control of WNV infection in mice[13]. As a first line of defence, the host cell senses the presence of the virus by pathogen recognition receptors (PRRs), such as toll-like receptors (TLRs) and retinoic acid-inducible gene (RIG)- I like receptors. Binding of viral components to these receptors activates adaptor proteins, which in turn activate transcription factors, and induces a release of soluble mediators, including type I IFNs[14,15]. Members of RIG- I like receptor family (RIG- I and melanoma differentiation-associated gene, MDA5) and TLR family (TLR3 and TLR7) are the major innate host sensors of WNV infection. RIG- I and MDA5 are cytosolic RNA helicases that recognize ssRNA and dsRNA. RIG- I and MDA5 transmit their signal through a common adaptor molecule, IFN-promoter stimulator (IPS)-1, thus activating transcription factors such as IFN regulatory factor (IRF) 3 and IRF7 to induce the transcription of type I IFN and antiviral genes. TLR3 and TLR7 are expressed primarily in endosomes and are activated by dsRNA and ssRNA, respectively. Engagement of TLR7 leads to the activation of a signalling pathway involving an intracellular adaptor protein, myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88 (MyD88), the activation of IRF7 and the induction of type I IFNs. TLR3 activates the adaptor molecule TIR-domain-containing adapter-inducing IFN-β and induces alternative pathways that lead to the activation of the transcription factors IRF3 and nuclear factor κB (NF-κB), which consequently induce type I IFNs and inflammatory cytokines, respectively.

Antigen presenting cells (APCs) are among the first cells that encounter the virus after infection; WNV is injected intradermally by a mosquito bite and most likely initially replicates in Langerhans dendritic cells (DCs). The infected Langerhans cells migrate to draining lymph nodes from which the virus enters the bloodstream[16]. Primary viremia disseminates the virus to the reticuloendothelial system (macrophagic cells), where replication further augments viremia (secondary viremia), followed by spread in various organs including the brain. Monocytes and polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNLs) are readily recruited and activated following infection in rodent models[17].

Thus, cells of the innate immune system and their receptors are the first to encounter WNV after infection in the host, and the interaction between the virus and factors of innate immunity likely determines the outcome of the infection. In addition, macrophages (Mφs) constitute an important fraction on the inflammatory infiltrate observed in the CNS of WNV infected patients[18], suggesting that cells of innate immunity can also contribute to immunopathology in the course of WNV infection.

INTERPLAY BETWEEN CELLS OF INNATE IMMUNITY AND WNV

Despite the potentially critical role of APCs during WNV infection, few studies have addressed the effect of WNV infection on APCs obtained from humans. Human myeloid DCs (mDCs) have been shown to be among the targets of WNV infection. Production of tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α and IFN-α in infected mDCs requires viral replication[19,20] (Figure 1). Conversely, plasmacytoid DCs (pDCs) are resistant to infection but are clearly activated upon contact with the virus through stimulation of endosomal TLRs. Upon activation with WNV, pDCs release higher amount of IFN-α than mDCs[19]. It has been demonstrated that glycosylated strains of WNV use DC-SIGN (a C-type lectin that binds high-mannose N-linked glycans present on the surface of viral glycoproteins) as an attachment receptor to bind mDCs, leading to enhanced infection in cell cultures[20]. This finding suggests that glycosylated strains of WNV, mainly belonging to lineage I, exhibit an increased capability to infect mDCs and thus higher pathogenicity.

Human monocytes and monocyte-derived Mφs also undergo productive infection upon *in vitro* incubation with WNV[21]. Interestingly, these cells are infected without gross cytopathic effects, suggesting that they possess effective defence mechanisms against WNV[22]. The lack of cell deterioration upon WNV infection in monocytes/Mφs also suggests that these cells play a significant role as a reservoir in initial (or secondary) viral replication and dissemination. Upon WNV infection, monocyte-derived Mφs release interleukin (IL)-8, IFN-α, IFN-β and TNF-α[22,23]. However, in Mφ cultures activated by LPS and IFN-γ, WNV infection down-modulates the secretion of IL-1β and IFN-β and inhibits the JAK/STAT signalling pathway[23], as a potential strategy employed by the virus to evade the host response (see below).

Notably, monocyte-derived Mφs from elderly individuals show increased susceptibility to WNV infection and augmented expression levels of TLR3 upon infection, as compared to young subjects. Once stimulated with the virus, cells from the elderly also secrete higher levels of IFN-β and IL-6[24]. This *in vitro* model of WNV infection suggests that the age-associated impairment of the innate immune response to WNV may contribute to increased severity of this viral infection in older individuals.

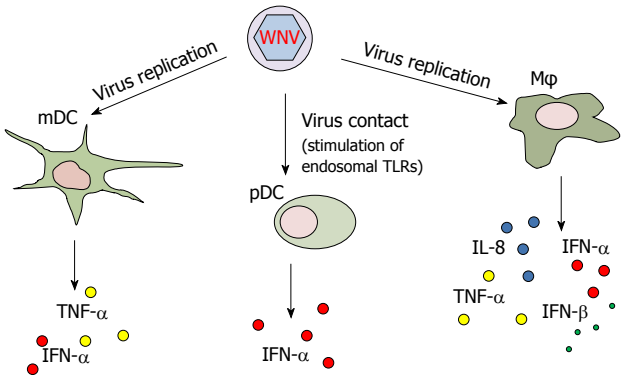


Figure 1 West Nile virus stimulates the production of interferons and pro-inflammatory cytokines in human antigen presenting cells. TLR: Toll-like receptors; WNV: West Nile virus; mDC: Myeloid dendritic cells; pDC: Plasmacytoid dendritic cells; Mφ: Macrophages; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor; IFN: Interferon; IL: Interleukin.

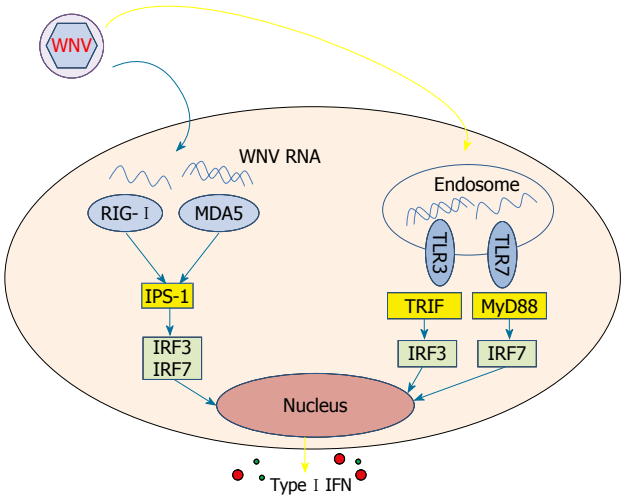


Figure 2 Receptors of innate immunity, adaptors and transcription factors involved in recognition of West Nile virus. WNV: West Nile virus; IFN: Interferon; IPS-1: IFN-β promoter stimulation-1; IRF: IFN regulatory factor; MDA5: Melanoma differentiation-associated protein 5; MyD88: Myeloid differentiation primary response gene 88; RIG; Retinoic acid-inducible gene; TLR: Toll-like receptor; TRIF: TIR-domain-containing adapter-inducing interferon-β.

IFNs AND WNV

Type I IFNs represent a major innate immune control and comprise various IFN-α and one IFN-β, which are secreted by leukocytes and parenchymal cells during viral infections[25]. These cytokines induce an antiviral state by up-regulating genes with direct and indirect antiviral functions. Type I IFNs also link innate and adaptive immunity by inducing DC maturation and by directly activating B and T cells[26].

As mentioned in the previous section, human mDCs, pDCs and monocyte-derived Mφs secrete type I IFNs upon contact with WNV[19-21]. The role of these antiviral mediators upon WNV infection and the role of the pathways involved in IFN secretion have been elucidated only in animal models. Studies in mice indicate that type I IFNs play a crucial role in the early control of WNV infection. Mice lacking IFN-α/β receptor are highly vulnerable to WNV, and uncontrolled viral replication occurs with rapid dissemination to the CNS and 100% mortality[13]. In addition, it has been observed that pre-treatment or treatment with type I IFNs *in vitro* inhibits WNV replication in Vero cells[27,28]. Additionally, treatment of primary murine neurons *in vitro* with IFN-β either before or after infection increased neuronal survival independent of its effect on WNV replication[13]. Altogether, these findings in animals and *in vitro* cultured cells support a crucial role for type I IFNs in the early phases of WNV infection by preventing viral replication and protecting infected neurons from death.

Cells recognize WNV and respond by producing type I IFNs through the endosomal receptors TLR3 and TLR7, thus activating the adaptor MyD88 and transcription factors IRF3 and IRF7 (Figure 2). This response has been demonstrated in rodent models of infection, as mice with genetic defects in any one of these receptors[29,30], adaptor[31] or transcription factors[32,33] have a higher mortality rate with experimental WNV infection (reviewed in[34]).

WNV RNA can also induce the release of type I IFNs by triggering RIG- I , which appears to be involved in the early phases of response to the virus[35]. MDA5, belonging to the RIG- I receptor family, is also involved in sensing WNV RNA; abrogation of both RIG- I and MDA5 pathways blocks activation of the antiviral response to WNV, while such an effect is not as evident if only one of the two pathways is ablated[36]. In line with these findings, infected mice lacking IPS-1, the central adaptor for RIG- I and MDA5, display uncontrolled inflammation that is coupled with the failure to protect against WNV infection[37]. Thus, TLR3 and TLR7, as well as RIG- I and MDA5, are activated by WNV and appear to induce redundant IFN-mediated responses that trigger downstream effective adaptive responses.

The regulation of IFN responses could be more complex than indicated by the present understanding. Increasing evidence indicates a crucial antiviral role for the inflammasome, a cytoplasmic multi-protein complex that recruits inflammatory caspases and triggers their activation[38]. For example, recent evidence shows that caspase-12, an important component of the inflammasome signalling, plays an important role in WNV infection by influencing RIG- I activity and type I IFN release[39]. The role of other inflammasome complex proteins in influencing the release of type I IFNs during WNV infection has not been investigated.

IFN type Ⅱ, *i.e.*, IFN-γ, is mainly produced by CD8+ T cells, it is also secreted by γδ T cells and natural killer cells and may contribute to innate immune control of viral infections. *In vivo*, IFN-γ restricts early WNV dissemination to the CNS; mice deficient in either IFN-γ or the IFN-γ receptor show a higher peripheral viral load, augmented entry into the CNS and increased lethality[40,41]. Notably, no major deficits of adaptive immunity were found in these studies, suggesting that IFN-γ plays mainly an early innate role in the control of WNV infection.

In recent years, a third type of IFN has been described. Originally termed IL-28a/b and IL-29, these proteins have been re-classified as IFN-λs, based on the similar modes of induction and the antiviral activities that they share with the type I and type Ⅱ IFNs[25]. In support to their antiviral role, IFN-λ3 has recently been identified as key cytokine in the control of a flavivirus infection, *i.e.*, hepatitis C virus[42]. The role of these mediators during the course of other flaviviruses is relatively unknown; only one study has examined the role of IFN-λ in the control of WNV to date. Similar to type I IFN, IFN-λ prevents infection by WNV virus-like particles in susceptible cells but fails to inhibit viral replication in cells infected prior to the addition of this cytokine[43].

INHIBITION OF IFN-INDUCED RESPONSES BY WNV

WNV has successfully evolved countermeasures to overcome host innate immunity and productively infect host cells by using a combination of two strategies: (1) passive evasion of the interaction with cellular PRRs and/or (2) active inhibition of different steps of the intracellular pathways that lead to type I IFN production and signalling.

Passive evasion of PRR activation

WNV may regulate the time of induction of the host cell antiviral response by modulating the activation of IRF3 during early phases of infection. WNV does not actively inhibit the RIG- I pathway but rather delays IRF3 activation, possibly by preventing host cells from sensing viral replication shortly after infection[35,44], thus allowing the virus to replicate to high titers before the host cells can mount an effective antiviral response.

Active inhibition of type I IFN production and signalling

WNV attenuates type I IFN response by targeting multiple steps of the induction and signalling cascade, and a number of nonstructural viral proteins (NSs), such as NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B and NS5 have been implicated in this process[45,46]. WNV NS1, a protein secreted from infected cells, inhibits TLR3 signalling by preventing IRF3 and NF-κB nuclear translocation[47], and NS2A has been identified as an inhibitor of IFN-β gene transcription[48].

WNV also targets essential elements of the IFN signalling pathway and thus prevent the induction of antiviral genes. Type I IFN signalling initiates when IFNα/β bind to type I receptors (IFNRs) on the cell surface. This process results in the activation of JAK1 and Tyk2, phosphorylating STAT1 and STAT2, which, in association with IRF9, form a heterotrimeric complex known as IFN-stimulated gene (ISG) factor 3. This complex translocates to the nucleus where it induces hundreds of ISGs. The expression of WNV NSs prevents the accumulation of IFNR1 in multiple cells through a non-canonical protein degradation pathway, contributing to the inhibition of the IFN response[49].

The NS5 codified by the virulent lineage I strains of WNV can function as an efficient IFN antagonist by preventing the phosphorylation and nuclear translocation of STAT1[50], while NS4B inhibits JAK1 and TyK2 phosphorylation thus blocking the STAT1 and STAT2 signalling cascade and the subsequent ISG expression. WNV infection actively promotes a redistribution of cholesterol within the cells, which contributes to the down-regulation of the IFN-stimulated JAK-STAT antiviral response to infection and thus facilitates viral replication and survival[51]. Furthermore, characteristic membranous structures induced during WNV replication are connected to viral immune evasion mechanisms, providing partial protection from the IFN-induced antiviral protein MxA[52].

However, viral control of the IFN signalling cascade is not complete, as demonstrated by occurrence of IFNα/β induction and ISG expression during WNV infection. WNV may attenuate or modulate the innate antiviral response, and the ability of only pathogenic lineage I WNV isolates to inhibit the JAK/STAT signalling pathways indicates the importance of this fine modulation as a feature of WNV pathogenesis[53].

ROLE OF INNATE IMMUNITY IN THE PATHOGENESIS OF THE NEUROINVASIVE FORM OF WNV INFECTION

Despite its severity, the pathogenesis of the neuroinvasive form of WNV infection remains incompletely understood. Knowledge in this field relies almost completely on studies in murine models, while the roles of innate mechanisms in inducing protection or causing pathology in human WNV disease are still poorly known. The increased risk of severe WNV infections for immunosuppressed patients[12,54] and the successful infection outcome in a transplant recipient by the modulation of the immunosuppressive regimen[55] suggest that an intact immune system is essential for the control of WNV infection. On the other hand, it is generally recognized that a major hallmark of WNV pathogenesis is neuroinflammation[56,57], which is caused by exaggerated innate and acquired immune responses.

WNV is believed to first multiply in mDCs and monocytes/Mφs before spreading to the brain[58], and recent evidence indicates that early viral replication in myeloid APCs has a crucial pathogenetic role; silencing such replication in Mφs and mDCs effectively suppresses virus-induced encephalitis in mice[59]. Mechanisms underlying this clear-cut effect could rely on (1) an increased viral burden induced by infected APCs, which would be sufficient for the virus to cross the blood-brain barrier, or (2) WNV-infected Mφs acting as "Trojan horses" to carry the virus into the brain[60]. Accumulation of inflammatory monocytes into the brain and their differentiation to Mφs and microglia can also worsen neuroinflammation and CNS injury, as demonstrated in a murine model of non-lethal WNV infection[61]. As an additional pathogenetic

role of infected APCs, recognition of WNV nucleic acid in monocytes/microglia by TLR3 leads to the production of TNF-α, which results in a loss of tight junctions, allowing the entry of WNV and immune cells into the perivascular space of the brain in mice[56]. Further, increased levels of macrophage migratory inhibitory factor (MIF) (a potent pro-inflammatory mediator and chemotactic factor that is produced by activated Mφs) have been found in the serum and CSF of WNV-infected patients, and abrogation of MIF in WNV-infected mice mitigates clinical disease by inducing a remarkably reduced number of infiltrating WNV-infected leukocytes in the CNS[62]. Thus, activation of cells of the monocyte/Mφ system by WNV appears to result in important neuropathological consequences, and exaggerated innate responses may cause inflammation, altering the blood brain barrier permeability and allowing the virus to enter the CNS.

On the other hand, early monocytosis induced by WNV in a murine model of infection appears to be protective against lethal disease[63]. Further murine studies on WNV infection indicate a protective role for Mφs[64] and for TLR3, the latter being essential for restricting WNV replication in neurons and protecting the host from lethal encephalitis[29]. Finally, CCR5, a chemokine receptor expressed on Mφs and T cells, is a critical antiviral agent and survival determinant in WNV infection in mice that acts by regulating the trafficking of leukocytes to the infected brain[65]. These controversial studies suggest that monocyte/Mφ involvement and TLR simulation may contribute to inducing protection or causing immunopathology during WNV neuroinvasive disease in mice.

In addition to monocytes/Mφs, other cells belonging to the innate immune system may contribute to the pathogenesis of neuroinvasive WNV infection. For example, PMNLs predominate in the CSF of patients with WNV meningitis and encephalitis in 40% of cases[8] and are recruited shortly after infection into the CNS in an experimental model of WNV infection[17]. In infected mice, the expression of PMNL-recruiting chemokines was dramatically elevated in early phases after infection and PMNLs were quickly recruited to sites of WNV infection. Depletion of PMNLs prior to WNV challenge paradoxically lowered viremia and enhanced survival[66], suggesting that these cells have a pathogenic role in the early phases of WNV infection. Mechanisms that underlie the contribution of PMNLs to the pathogenesis of WNV infection may include the efficient replication of WNV in PMNLs; these cells may act as a virus reservoir, as PMNLs are the predominant cell type recruited to the site of infection and carry the highest amount of virus[66].

As part of the innate response, two important cell types within the CNS respond to infection, *i.e.*, microglia and astrocytes. These cells have been found to be infected in tissue sections from patients with WNV meningoencephalitis[67]. WNV-infected human astrocytes are capable of releasing matrix metalloproteinase 1, 3 and 9, which contribute by disrupting the blood brain barrier and degrading tight junction proteins[68].

In addition to glial cells, which are classically considered to be the predominant source of pro-inflammatory mediators in the CNS during WNV infection, WNV-infected neurons release pro-inflammatory mediators, contributing to neuronal cell death and glial cell activation[69]. Additionally, pro-inflammatory chemokines, such as IFN-γ inducible protein 10, monocyte chemoattractant protein-5 and monokine induced by IFN-γ, are important triggers of inflammation in the brain, and their early up-regulation in the CNS is followed by the up-regulation of TNF-α at the same site in a rodent model of WNV infection[57]. Further, treatment of infected neuronal cells with antibodies blocking TNF-α and other pro-inflammatory mediators results in a significant reduction of WNV-mediated neuronal death[69], suggesting that such mediators play a major role in the pathogenesis of WNV infection in the CNS.

However, pro-inflammatory factors also possess a crucial role in defence against WNV, and leukocyte trafficking into the brain induced by TNF-α protects mice against lethal infection[70]. Altogether, contradictory findings regarding the role of innate responses to WNV infection in mice have been reported; early responses appear to be beneficial or harmful depending on the model. Different experimental settings, including the virus passage history, virus inoculation route and dose, time between the infection and the experiments and potential diverse inflammatory response to WNV in different murine strains, may account for these contradictory findings. Early control of WNV by innate responses would likely effectively restrict WNV dissemination, while continuous triggering and/or excessive reactivity of innate receptors to the virus may contribute to enhanced inflammation, which is known to be a main contributor to WNV neuropathology as a result of CNS invasion.

CONCLUSION

The innate immune response is considered to be a major controller of WNV replication, a notion that is also supported by the fact that the virus has developed numerous mechanisms to escape the control of antiviral IFNs. However, exaggerated innate immune responses appear to be detrimental and lead to neuropathology. Importantly, the role of aging in enhancing the WNV-induced innate immune response has recently been clarified in an *in vitro* model of infection[24]. Nevertheless, the mechanisms triggering protection or pathology during natural WNV infection are largely unclear.

The interplay between WNV and innate responses has been mainly studied in animal models, while studies on the effect of WNV on human cells of innate immunity are restricted to *in vitro* cultured cells. All of the abovementioned models have a common limitation, *i.e.*, the transmission of the virus does not occur by a typical route. This limitation leads to two major biases: (1) a lack of transmission of saliva and potential symbionts with the mosquito bite, and (2) a lack of "natural" stimulation

of Langerhans DCs and/or antimicrobial peptides at the inoculation site. Thus, further immunological studies in individuals undergoing natural infection are required to better understand the immunopathogenesis of WNV disease, as elucidating the immunopathological mechanisms is essential to inform novel approaches to combat this infection.

REFERENCES

1 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)**. West nile virus disease and other arboviral diseases - United States, 2011. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2012; **61**: 510-514 [PMID: 22785342]

2 **Petersen LR**, Fischer M. Unpredictable and difficult to control--the adolescence of West Nile virus. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **367**: 1281-1284 [PMID: 23013055 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMp1210537]

3 **Reiter P**. West Nile virus in Europe: understanding the present to gauge the future. *Euro Surveill* 2010; **15**: 19508 [PMID: 20403311]

4 **Magurano F**, Remoli ME, Baggieri M, Fortuna C, Marchi A, Fiorentini C, Bucci P, Benedetti E, Ciufolini MG, Rizzo C, Piga S, Salcuni P, Rezza G, Nicoletti L. Circulation of West Nile virus lineage 1 and 2 during an outbreak in Italy. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2012; **18**: E545-E547 [PMID: 23020657 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12018]

5 **Papa A**. West Nile virus infections in Greece: an update. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 2012; **10**: 743-750 [PMID: 22943398 DOI: 10.1586/eri.12.59]

6 **Lim SM**, Koraka P, Osterhaus AD, Martina BE. West Nile virus: immunity and pathogenesis. *Viruses* 2011; **3**: 811-828 [PMID: 21994755 DOI: 10.3390/v3060811]

7 **Turtle L**, Griffiths MJ, Solomon T. Encephalitis caused by flaviviruses. *QJM* 2012; **105**: 219-223 [PMID: 22367423 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/hcs013]

8 **Davis LE**, DeBiasi R, Goade DE, Haaland KY, Harrington JA, Harnar JB, Pergam SA, King MK, DeMasters BK, Tyler KL. West Nile virus neuroinvasive disease. *Ann Neurol* 2006; **60**: 286-300 [PMID: 16983682 DOI: 10.1002/ana.20959]

9 **Kramer LD**, Li J, Shi PY. West Nile virus. *Lancet Neurol* 2007; **6**: 171-181 [PMID: 17239804 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(07)70030-3]

10 **Murray K**, Baraniuk S, Resnick M, Arafat R, Kilborn C, Cain K, Shallenberger R, York TL, Martinez D, Hellums JS, Hellums D, Malkoff M, Elgawley N, McNeely W, Khuwaja SA, Tesh RB. Risk factors for encephalitis and death from West Nile virus infection. *Epidemiol Infect* 2006; **134**: 1325-1332 [PMID: 16672108 DOI: 10.1017/S0950268806006339]

11 **Murray KO**, Koers E, Baraniuk S, Herrington E, Carter H, Sierra M, Kilborn C, Arafat R. Risk factors for encephalitis from West Nile Virus: a matched case-control study using hospitalized controls. *Zoonoses Public Health* 2009; **56**: 370-375 [PMID: 19175570 DOI: 10.1111/j.1863-2378.2008.01197.x]

12 **Iwamoto M**, Jernigan DB, Guasch A, Trepka MJ, Blackmore CG, Hellinger WC, Pham SM, Zaki S, Lanciotti RS, Lance-Parker SE, DiazGranados CA, Winquist AG, Perlino CA, Wiersma S, Hillyer KL, Goodman JL, Marfin AA, Chamberland ME, Petersen LR. Transmission of West Nile virus from an organ donor to four transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 2196-2203 [PMID: 12773646 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa022987]

13 **Samuel MA**, Diamond MS. Alpha/beta interferon protects against lethal West Nile virus infection by restricting cellular tropism and enhancing neuronal survival. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 13350-13361 [PMID: 16227257 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.21.13350-13361.2005]

14 **Barton GM**, Medzhitov R. Linking Toll-like receptors to IFN-alpha/beta expression. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 432-433 [PMID: 12719735 DOI: 10.1038/ni0503-432]

15 **Yoneyama M**, Kikuchi M, Natsukawa T, Shinobu N, Imaizumi T, Miyagishi M, Taira K, Akira S, Fujita T. The RNA helicase RIG-I has an essential function in double-stranded RNA-induced innate antiviral responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 730-737 [PMID: 15208624 DOI: 10.1038/ni1087]

16 **Johnston LJ**, Halliday GM, King NJ. Langerhans cells migrate to local lymph nodes following cutaneous infection with an arbovirus. *J Invest Dermatol* 2000; **114**: 560-568 [PMID: 10692118 DOI: 10.1046/j.1523-1747.2000.00904.x]

17 **Bréhin AC**, Mouriès J, Frenkiel MP, Dadaglio G, Desprès P, Lafon M, Couderc T. Dynamics of immune cell recruitment during West Nile encephalitis and identification of a new CD19+B220-BST-2+ leukocyte population. *J Immunol* 2008; **180**: 6760-6767 [PMID: 18453596]

18 **Kelley TW**, Prayson RA, Ruiz AI, Isada CM, Gordon SM. The neuropathology of West Nile virus meningoencephalitis. A report of two cases and review of the literature. *Am J Clin Pathol* 2003; **119**: 749-753 [PMID: 12760295 DOI: 10.1309/PU4R-76JJ-MG1F-81RP]

19 **Silva MC**, Guerrero-Plata A, Gilfoy FD, Garofalo RP, Mason PW. Differential activation of human monocyte-derived and plasmacytoid dendritic cells by West Nile virus generated in different host cells. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 13640-13648 [PMID: 17913823 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00857-07]

20 **Martina BE**, Koraka P, van den Doel P, Rimmelzwaan GF, Haagmans BL, Osterhaus AD. DC-SIGN enhances infection of cells with glycosylated West Nile virus in vitro and virus replication in human dendritic cells induces production of IFN-alpha and TNF-alpha. *Virus Res* 2008; **135**: 64-71 [PMID: 18405996 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2008.02.008]

21 **Rios M**, Zhang MJ, Grinev A, Srinivasan K, Daniel S, Wood O, Hewlett IK, Dayton AI. Monocytes-macrophages are a potential target in human infection with West Nile virus through blood transfusion. *Transfusion* 2006; **46**: 659-667 [PMID: 16584445 DOI: 10.1111/j.1537-2995.2006.00769.x]

22 **Yeung AW**, Wu W, Freewan M, Stocker R, King NJ, Thomas SR. Flavivirus infection induces indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase in human monocyte-derived macrophages via tumor necrosis factor and NF-κB. *J Leukoc Biol* 2012; **91**: 657-666 [PMID: 22301793 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.1011532]

23 **Kong KF**, Wang X, Anderson JF, Fikrig E, Montgomery RR. West nile virus attenuates activation of primary human macrophages. *Viral Immunol* 2008; **21**: 78-82 [PMID: 18355125 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2007.0072]

24 **Kong KF**, Delroux K, Wang X, Qian F, Arjona A, Malawista SE, Fikrig E, Montgomery RR. Dysregulation of TLR3 impairs the innate immune response to West Nile virus in the elderly. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 7613-7623 [PMID: 18508883 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00618-08]

25 **de Weerd NA**, Nguyen T. The interferons and their receptors--distribution and regulation. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2012; **90**: 483-491 [PMID: 22410872 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2012.9]

26 **Seo YJ**, Hahm B. Type I interferon modulates the battle of host immune system against viruses. *Adv Appl Microbiol* 2010; **73**: 83-101 [PMID: 20800760 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-2164(10)73004-5]

27 **Anderson JF**, Rahal JJ. Efficacy of interferon alpha-2b and ribavirin against West Nile virus in vitro. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002; **8**: 107-108 [PMID: 11749765 DOI: 10.3201/eid0801.010252]

28 **Crance JM**, Scaramozzino N, Jouan A, Garin D. Interferon, ribavirin, 6-azauridine and glycyrrhizin: antiviral compounds active against pathogenic flaviviruses. *Antiviral Res* 2003; **58**: 73-79 [PMID: 12719009 DOI: 10.1016/S0166-3542(02)00185-7]

29 **Daffis S**, Samuel MA, Suthar MS, Gale M, Diamond MS. Toll-like receptor 3 has a protective role against West Nile virus infection. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 10349-10358 [PMID: 18715906 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00935-08]

30 **Town T**, Bai F, Wang T, Kaplan AT, Qian F, Montgomery RR, Anderson JF, Flavell RA, Fikrig E. Toll-like receptor 7 mitigates lethal West Nile encephalitis via interleukin 23-dependent immune cell infiltration and homing. *Immunity* 2009; **30**: 242-253 [PMID: 19200759 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2008.11.012]

31 **Szretter KJ**, Daffis S, Patel J, Suthar MS, Klein RS, Gale M, Diamond MS. The innate immune adaptor molecule MyD88 restricts West Nile virus replication and spread in neurons of the central nervous system. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12125-12138 [PMID: 20881045 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01026-10]

32 **Daffis S**, Samuel MA, Suthar MS, Keller BC, Gale M, Diamond MS. Interferon regulatory factor IRF-7 induces the antiviral alpha interferon response and protects against lethal West Nile virus infection. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 8465-8475 [PMID: 18562536 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00918-08]

33 **Daffis S**, Samuel MA, Keller BC, Gale M, Diamond MS. Cell-specific IRF-3 responses protect against West Nile virus infection by interferon-dependent and -independent mechanisms. *PLoS Pathog* 2007; **3**: e106 [PMID: 17676997 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.0030106]

34 **Daffis S**, Suthar MS, Gale M, Diamond MS. Measure and countermeasure: type I IFN (IFN-alpha/beta) antiviral response against West Nile virus. *J Innate Immun* 2009; **1**: 435-445 [PMID: 20375601 DOI: 10.1159/000226248]

35 **Fredericksen BL**, Gale M. West Nile virus evades activation of interferon regulatory factor 3 through RIG-I-dependent and -independent pathways without antagonizing host defense signaling. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 2913-2923 [PMID: 16501100 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.6.2913-2923.2006]

36 **Fredericksen BL**, Keller BC, Fornek J, Katze MG, Gale M. Establishment and maintenance of the innate antiviral response to West Nile Virus involves both RIG-I and MDA5 signaling through IPS-1. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 609-616 [PMID: 17977974 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01305-07]

37 **Suthar MS**, Ma DY, Thomas S, Lund JM, Zhang N, Daffis S, Rudensky AY, Bevan MJ, Clark EA, Kaja MK, Diamond MS, Gale M. IPS-1 is essential for the control of West Nile virus infection and immunity. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000757 [PMID: 20140199 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000757]

38 **Kanneganti TD**. Central roles of NLRs and inflammasomes in viral infection. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2010; **10**: 688-698 [PMID: 20847744 DOI: 10.1038/nri2851]

39 **Wang P**, Arjona A, Zhang Y, Sultana H, Dai J, Yang L, LeBlanc PM, Doiron K, Saleh M, Fikrig E. Caspase-12 controls West Nile virus infection via the viral RNA receptor RIG-I. *Nat Immunol* 2010; **11**: 912-919 [PMID: 20818395 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1933]

40 **Shrestha B**, Wang T, Samuel MA, Whitby K, Craft J, Fikrig E, Diamond MS. Gamma interferon plays a crucial early antiviral role in protection against West Nile virus infection. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 5338-5348 [PMID: 16699014 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00274-06]

41 **Wang T**, Scully E, Yin Z, Kim JH, Wang S, Yan J, Mamula M, Anderson JF, Craft J, Fikrig E. IFN-gamma-producing gamma delta T cells help control murine West Nile virus infection. *J Immunol* 2003; **171**: 2524-2531 [PMID: 12928402]

42 **Kelly C**, Klenerman P, Barnes E. Interferon lambdas: the next cytokine storm. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1284-1293 [PMID: 21303914 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.222976]

43 **Ma D**, Jiang D, Qing M, Weidner JM, Qu X, Guo H, Chang J, Gu B, Shi PY, Block TM, Guo JT. Antiviral effect of interferon lambda against West Nile virus. *Antiviral Res* 2009; **83**: 53-60 [PMID: 19501257 DOI: 10.1016/j.antiviral.2009.03.006]

44 **Fredericksen BL**, Smith M, Katze MG, Shi PY, Gale M. The host response to West Nile Virus infection limits viral spread through the activation of the interferon regulatory factor 3 pathway. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 7737-7747 [PMID: 15220448 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.14.7737-7747.2004]

45 **Liu WJ**, Wang XJ, Mokhonov VV, Shi PY, Randall R, Khromykh AA. Inhibition of interferon signaling by the New York 99 strain and Kunjin subtype of West Nile virus involves blockage of STAT1 and STAT2 activation by nonstructural proteins. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 1934-1942 [PMID: 15650219 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.3.1934-1942.2005]

46 **Guo JT**, Hayashi J, Seeger C. West Nile virus inhibits the signal transduction pathway of alpha interferon. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 1343-1350 [PMID: 15650160 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.3.1343-1350.2005]

47 **Wilson JR**, de Sessions PF, Leon MA, Scholle F. West Nile virus nonstructural protein 1 inhibits TLR3 signal transduction. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 8262-8271 [PMID: 18562533 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00226-08]

48 **Liu WJ**, Chen HB, Wang XJ, Huang H, Khromykh AA. Analysis of adaptive mutations in Kunjin virus replicon RNA reveals a novel role for the flavivirus nonstructural protein NS2A in inhibition of beta interferon promoter-driven transcription. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 12225-12235 [PMID: 15507609 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.22.12225-12235.2004]

49 **Evans JD**, Crown RA, Sohn JA, Seeger C. West Nile virus infection induces depletion of IFNAR1 protein levels. *Viral Immunol* 2011; **24**: 253-263 [PMID: 21830897 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2010.0126]

50 **Laurent-Rolle M**, Boer EF, Lubick KJ, Wolfinbarger JB, Carmody AB, Rockx B, Liu W, Ashour J, Shupert WL, Holbrook MR, Barrett AD, Mason PW, Bloom ME, Garcia-Sastre A, Khromykh AA, Best SM. The NS5 protein of the virulent West Nile virus NY99 strain is a potent antagonist of type I interferon-mediated JAK-STAT signaling. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 3503-3515 [PMID: 20106931 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01161-09]

51 **Mackenzie JM**, Khromykh AA, Parton RG. Cholesterol manipulation by West Nile virus perturbs the cellular immune response. *Cell Host Microbe* 2007; **2**: 229-239 [PMID: 18005741 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2007.09.003]

52 **Hoenen A**, Liu W, Kochs G, Khromykh AA, Mackenzie JM. West Nile virus-induced cytoplasmic membrane structures provide partial protection against the interferon-induced antiviral MxA protein. *J Gen Virol* 2007; **88**: 3013-3017 [PMID: 17947524 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.83125-0]

53 **Keller BC**, Fredericksen BL, Samuel MA, Mock RE, Mason PW, Diamond MS, Gale M. Resistance to alpha/beta interferon is a determinant of West Nile virus replication fitness and virulence. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 9424-9434 [PMID: 16973548 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00768-06]

54 **Inojosa WO**, Scotton PG, Fuser R, Giobbia M, Paolin A, Maresca MC, Brunello A, Nascimben E, Sorbara C, Rigoli R, Berti R, Gajo GB, Giometto B. West Nile virus transmission through organ transplantation in north-eastern Italy: a case report and implications for pre-procurement screening. *Infection* 2012; **40**: 557-562 [PMID: 22544764 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-012-0263-4]

55 **Morelli MC**, Sambri V, Grazi GL, Gaibani P, Pierro A, Cescon M, Ercolani G, Cavrini F, Rossini G, Capobianchi MR, Di Caro A, Menzo S, Pagliaro PP, Ghinelli F, Lazzarotto T, Landini MP, Pinna AD. Absence of neuroinvasive disease in a liver transplant recipient who acquired West Nile virus (WNV) infection from the organ donor and who received WNV antibodies prophylactically. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **51**: e34-e37 [PMID: 20597692 DOI: 10.1086/655146]

56 **Wang T**, Town T, Alexopoulou L, Anderson JF, Fikrig E, Flavell RA. Toll-like receptor 3 mediates West Nile virus entry into the brain causing lethal encephalitis. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 1366-1373 [PMID: 15558055 DOI: 10.1038/nm1140]

57 **Garcia-Tapia D**, Hassett DE, Mitchell WJ, Johnson GC, Kleiboeker SB. West Nile virus encephalitis: sequential histopathological and immunological events in a murine model of infection. *J Neurovirol* 2007; **13**: 130-138 [PMID: 17505981 DOI: 10.1080/13550280601187185]

58 **Diamond MS**, Shrestha B, Mehlhop E, Sitati E, Engle M. Innate and adaptive immune responses determine protection

against disseminated infection by West Nile encephalitis virus. *Viral Immunol* 2003; **16**: 259-278 [PMID: 14583143 DOI: 10.1089/088282403322396082]

59 **Ye C**, Abraham S, Wu H, Shankar P, Manjunath N. Silencing early viral replication in macrophages and dendritic cells effectively suppresses flavivirus encephalitis. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e17889 [PMID: 21423625 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0017889]

60 **Samuel MA**, Diamond MS. Pathogenesis of West Nile Virus infection: a balance between virulence, innate and adaptive immunity, and viral evasion. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 9349-9360 [PMID: 16973541 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01122-06]

61 **Getts DR**, Terry RL, Getts MT, Müller M, Rana S, Shrestha B, Radford J, Van Rooijen N, Campbell IL, King NJ. Ly6c+ "inflammatory monocytes" are microglial precursors recruited in a pathogenic manner in West Nile virus encephalitis. *J Exp Med* 2008; **205**: 2319-2337 [PMID: 18779347 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20080421]

62 **Arjona A**, Foellmer HG, Town T, Leng L, McDonald C, Wang T, Wong SJ, Montgomery RR, Fikrig E, Bucala R. Abrogation of macrophage migration inhibitory factor decreases West Nile virus lethality by limiting viral neuroinvasion. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 3059-3066 [PMID: 17909632 DOI: 10.1172/JCI32218]

63 **Lim JK**, Obara CJ, Rivollier A, Pletnev AG, Kelsall BL, Murphy PM. Chemokine receptor Ccr2 is critical for monocyte accumulation and survival in West Nile virus encephalitis. *J Immunol* 2011; **186**: 471-478 [PMID: 21131425 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1003003]

64 **Ben-Nathan D**, Huitinga I, Lustig S, van Rooijen N, Kobiler D. West Nile virus neuroinvasion and encephalitis induced by macrophage depletion in mice. *Arch Virol* 1996; **141**: 459-469 [PMID: 8645088 DOI: 10.1007/BF01718310]

65 **Glass WG**, Lim JK, Cholera R, Pletnev AG, Gao JL, Murphy PM. Chemokine receptor CCR5 promotes leukocyte trafficking to the brain and survival in West Nile virus infection. *J Exp Med* 2005; **202**: 1087-1098 [PMID: 16230476 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20042530]

66 **Bai F**, Kong KF, Dai J, Qian F, Zhang L, Brown CR, Fikrig E, Montgomery RR. A paradoxical role for neutrophils in the pathogenesis of West Nile virus. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 1804-1812 [PMID: 21050124 DOI: 10.1086/657416]

67 **van Marle G**, Antony J, Ostermann H, Dunham C, Hunt T, Halliday W, Maingat F, Urbanowski MD, Hobman T, Peeling J, Power C. West Nile virus-induced neuroinflammation: glial infection and capsid protein-mediated neurovirulence. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 10933-10949 [PMID: 17670819 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02422-06]

68 **Verma S**, Kumar M, Gurjav U, Lum S, Nerurkar VR. Reversal of West Nile virus-induced blood-brain barrier disruption and tight junction proteins degradation by matrix metalloproteinases inhibitor. *Virology* 2010; **397**: 130-138 [PMID: 19922973 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2009.10.036]

69 **Kumar M**, Verma S, Nerurkar VR. Pro-inflammatory cytokines derived from West Nile virus (WNV)-infected SK-N-SH cells mediate neuroinflammatory markers and neuronal death. *J Neuroinflammation* 2010; **7**: 73 [PMID: 21034511 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-7-73]

70 **Shrestha B**, Zhang B, Purtha WE, Klein RS, Diamond MS. Tumor necrosis factor alpha protects against lethal West Nile virus infection by promoting trafficking of mononuclear leukocytes into the central nervous system. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 8956-8964 [PMID: 18632856 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01118-08]

P- Reviewer Zhang LW **S- Editor** Jiang L
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.57

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 57-70
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Paramyxovirus evasion of innate immunity: Diverse strategies for common targets

Michelle D Audsley, Gregory W Moseley

Michelle D Audsley, Gregory W Moseley, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Monash University, Victoria 3800, Australia
Author contributions: Audsley MD and Moseley GW solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Dr. Gregory W Moseley, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Monash University, Wellington Road, Victoria 3800, Australia. greg.moseley@monash.edu
Telephone: +61-3-99029354 Fax: +61-3-99029500
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: February 14, 2013
Accepted: April 9, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

The paramyxoviruses are a family of > 30 viruses that variously infect humans, other mammals and fish to cause diverse outcomes, ranging from asymptomatic to lethal disease, with the zoonotic paramyxoviruses Nipah and Hendra showing up to 70% case-fatality rate in humans. The capacity to evade host immunity is central to viral infection, and paramyxoviruses have evolved multiple strategies to overcome the host interferon (IFN)-mediated innate immune response through the activity of their IFN-antagonist proteins. Although paramyxovirus IFN antagonists generally target common factors of the IFN system, including melanoma differentiation associated factor 5, retinoic acid-inducible gene-I, signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT)1 and STAT2, and IFN regulatory factor 3, the mechanisms of antagonism show remarkable diversity between different genera and even individual members of the same genus; the reasons for this diversity, however, are not currently understood. Here, we review the IFN antagonism strategies of paramyxoviruses, highlighting mechanistic differences observed between individual species and genera. We also discuss potential sources of this diversity, including biological differences in the host and/or tissue specificity of different paramyxoviruses, and potential effects of experimental approaches that have largely relied on *in vitro* systems. Importantly, recent studies using recombinant virus systems and animal infection models are beginning to clarify the importance of certain mechanisms of IFN antagonism to *in vivo* infections, providing important indications not only of their critical importance to virulence, but also of their potential targeting for new therapeutic/vaccine approaches.

Key words: Paramyxoviridae; Innate immunity; Signal transducers and activators of transcription 1; Signal transducers and activators of transcription 2; Melanoma differentiation associated factor 5; Retinoic acid-inducible gene-I

Core tip: The paramyxoviruses are a family of > 30 viruses that variously infect humans, other mammals and fish to cause diverse outcomes, ranging from asymptomatic to lethal disease, with the zoonotic paramyxoviruses Nipah and Hendra showing up to 70% case-fatality rate in humans. Here, we review the interferon antagonism strategies of paramyxoviruses, highlighting mechanistic differences observed between individual species and genera. We also discuss potential sources of this diversity, including biological differences in the host and/or tissue specificity of different paramyxoviruses, and potential effects of experimental approaches that have largely relied on *in vitro* systems.

Audsley MD, Moseley GW. Paramyxovirus evasion of innate immunity: Diverse strategies for common targets. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 57-70 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/57.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.57

INTRODUCTION

Since the discovery more than 50 years ago of type I

interferons (IFNs) as the principal mediators of mammalian innate antiviral responses, it has become increasingly evident that infection by viruses depends on the capacity to counteract host cell IFN responses. Viruses have evolved diverse strategies to antagonise IFN responses, often by hijacking and modifying cellular regulatory pathways through the activity of specific viral IFN-antagonist proteins. Among the best-studied viruses in this respect are the paramyxoviruses, which include established human pathogens such as measles virus (MeV) and mumps virus (MuV), and emerging zoonotic viruses such as the henipaviruses Nipah virus (NiV) and Hendra virus (HeV). Although effective vaccines are available for MeV, it remains a leading cause of fatalities in children, with almost 140000 human deaths globally in 2010[1], while the henipaviruses show remarkable pathogenicity, with case-fatality rates between 40%-70% in humans[2-5].

The paramyxoviruses are a subfamily of the *Paramyxoviridae* family [order *Mononegavirales* (MNV)] of enveloped, non-segmented negative-strand RNA viruses (NNSV), which also includes the *Pneumovirus* subfamily[6,7]. Based largely on antigenic cross-reactivity and neuramidase activity paramyxoviruses are currently classified into seven genera[6,7]: *Rubulavirus*, *Avulavirus*, *Henipavirus*, *Morbillivirus*, *Respirovirus, Ferlavirus* and *Aquaparamyxovirus* (Table 1). Members of the paramyxovirus family show diverse tissue tropism and infect a variety of species in a fashion that does not appear to be specific to genus classification (Table 1). Because their relatively small genomes lack dedicated IFN-antagonist genes, paramyxoviruses generally encode IFN-antagonists as accessory protein isoforms encoded within their conserved P genes, another factor in genus classification[6]. These IFN antagonists broadly target several members of a select group of signalling molecules of the IFN system, including melanoma differentiation associated factor 5 (MDA5), retinoic acid-inducible gene- I (RIG)- I , IFN regulatory factor (IRF)-3, and signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT)1 and STAT2, but use diverse mechanisms including proteosomal degradation, inhibition of phosphorylation, and subcellular mis-localisation. Intriguingly, the mechanisms can vary significantly between different genera and, in some cases, different species of the same genera.

Here we review the mechanistic data relating to paramyxovirus IFN antagonism with a focus on common and distinct features within the family, before discussing possible origins of the diversity within the family. Although much of the available research on paramyxovirus IFN antagonism has been restricted to *in vitro* studies, recent findings using *in vivo* infection and recombinant virus systems point to a pivotal role in pathogenicity that may provide potent targets for the development of new vaccines/antiviral therapeutics.

PARAMYXOVIRUS P GENE

While viruses with large genomes can encode dedicated IFN-antagonist proteins, the high error rates of the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase means that RNA viruses generally have restricted genome sizes, with the paramyxovirus genome containing only six principal genes to express essential structural/replication factors, specifically M (matrix), G/HN/H (attachment), F (fusion), L (polymerase), N/NP (nucleocapsid) and P (phosphoprotein) (Figure 1A). Thus the IFN-antagonists of RNA viruses are often encoded as "accessory" protein isoforms within one or more of the conserved genes[8,9]; in paramyxoviruses up to 9 proteins are encoded in the P gene, including V, C, and P proteins and a protein variously named W, D or I, which have established IFN antagonist functions.

Isoform expression from the *paramyxovirus P* gene is variously achieved by a conserved RNA-editing mechanism, and through the use of internal start codons and alternate open reading frames (ORFs). RNA editing is mediated by the viral RNA-dependent RNA polymerase

Table 1 Genus classification and major host species of the Paramyxovirinae subfamily

Genus	Virus	Major host
Morbillivirus	Measles virus[1]	Human
	Canine distemper virus	Canine
	Rinderpest virus	Bovine
	Peste-des-petits-ruminants virus	Caprine
	Phocine distemper virus	Phocine
	Cetacean morbillivirus	Cetacean
Rubulavirus	Mumps virus[1]	Human
	Parainfluenza virus 5 (previously, Simian virus 5)	Human
	Human parainfluenza virus 2, 4a and 4b	Human
	Mapuera virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Porcine rubulavirus	Porcine
Respirovirus	Sendai virus[1]	Murine
	Human parainfluenza virus 1, 3	Human
	Bovine parainfluenza virus 3	Bovine
Avulavirus	Newcastle disease virus[1]	Avian
	Avian paramyxoviruses 2-9	Avian
Henipavirus	Hendra virus[1]	Chiropteran/ equine /human[3]
	Nipah virus	Chiropteran/ porcine/ human[3]
	Cedar virus	Chiropteran[2]
Aquaparamyxovirus	Atlantic salmon paramyxovirus[1]	Piscine
Ferlavirus	Fer-de-Lance virus[1]	Serpentine
Unassigned	J-virus	Murine
	Beilong virus	Murine
	Tailam virus	Murine
	Menangle virus	Porcine
	Tioman virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Tupaia virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Salem virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Mossman virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Nariva virus	Chiropteran[2]
	Pigeon paramyxovirus 1	Avian

[1]Type species for each genus; [2]Virus isolated from chiropteran hosts, but pathology and broader host range is unknown; [3]Virus is highly pathogenic in humans, but humans are not a major host.

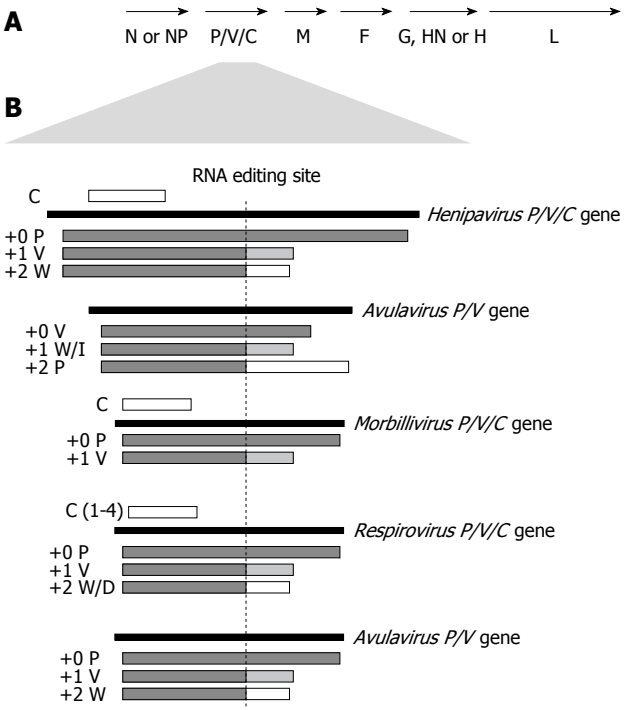


Figure 1 Coding strategies of *paramyxovirus P* genes. A: Genome organisation of the *Paramyxovirinae* subfamily; B: Paramyxoviruses express multiple proteins from the P gene through RNA editing to insert additional non-coded G nucleotides into P gene transcripts at the editing site (indicated), causing a frameshift in the downstream open reading frame (ORF) to generate distinct C-termini. Editing strategies of the 5 best-studied genera are shown, with proteins produced from unedited (+0), or edited (+1 or +2 frameshift) mRNA indicated below the P gene. Several members of the henipavirus, respirovirus and morbillivirus genera, but not the rubulaviruses or avulaviruses, produce one or more C proteins by translation from internal start codon(s) in alternate ORF(s) (indicated as a white bar above the P gene).

through the insertion of additional non-coded guanosine (G) nucleotides into P gene mRNA transcripts at a predetermined purine rich editing site. This causes a +1 or +2 frameshift in the downstream ORF[10-12] which results in the generation of two or three distinct proteins (P, V and W/D/I), which have common N-terminal sequences but unique C-termini (Figure 1B). A comparable editing process is used by Ebolavirus of the *Filovirus* family to produce isoforms from its G gene[13]. This mechanism is conserved among all paramyxoviruses examined except human parainfluenza virus (hPIV) 1 and the recently discovered cedar virus[14,15].

P protein, the polymerase cofactor essential to genome transcription/replication processes, is usually generated from the unedited ORF as the principal P gene product, with the production of edited RNA varying in a broadly genus-specific fashion (Figure 1B), although the +1 frameshift commonly encodes V protein and the +2 frameshift W/D/I[16,17]. Members of the *Rubulavirus* genus uniquely encode V protein in the unedited transcript, with P protein expression requiring editing (Figure 1B)[9], with c. 63% of the P gene mRNA transcribed unedited by the rubulavirus MuV, indicative of a particular requirement for high levels of V protein by these viruses[9]. The henipaviruses have the highest editing frequency of the paramyxoviruses: 66% to 94% of transcripts are edited, compared with c. 42% for MeV (*Morbillivirus* genus), and c. 31% for Sendai virus (SeV) (*Respirovirus* genus)[18-21]. Henipaviruses insert up to 11 additional G nucleotides[18], and in NiV-infected cells P transcripts are detected at the highest levels (c. 60%-100%) early in infection, with V and W transcripts peaking between 9.5-24 h post-infection (up to 59% and 37% respectively). This suggests that editing is regulated to enable particularly important roles for V and W late in infection[18], although other factors such as mRNA/protein stability are likely to affect the final levels of protein.

Henipaviruses, morbilliviruses, and respiroviruses use a start codon within the P gene in an alternate ORF to produce a C protein (Figure 1B), while the SeV P gene encodes up to five proteins other than P, V and W: four C proteins encoded by overlapping sequences in the +1 reading frame, and X protein, a truncated version of P protein translated from an internal start site[11,22,23]. HeV, but not NiV, encodes a putative SB (short basic) protein, homologous to SB of several viruses of other MNV families[21]. These differences in P gene coding capacity indicate different requirements of specific viruses for accessory proteins, possibly due to host/tissue specific aspects of IFN signalling (see below).

The V proteins are generally considered the principal IFN-antagonists of paramyxoviruses, and are the best studied of the P gene accessory proteins. However, there is increasing evidence that P, W, or C proteins of paramyxoviruses including NiV, MeV, and SeV play important roles in IFN antagonism by distinct mechanisms. Thus, it seems that most if not all P gene accessory proteins have evolved for roles in immune evasion as important pathogenicity factors[24-28]. Consistent with important roles in infection, V proteins show high conservation in the unique C-terminal region (Figure 2)[29-31], including absolute conservation of seven conserved cysteine residues and a histidine, which form a zinc-finger domain (highlighted in Figure 2). In the parainfluenza virus 5 (PIV5) V protein (*Rubulavirus* genus), two zinc atoms are coordinated by two loops, incorporating V residues H171, C190, C215, C218, and C194, C206, C208, C211 respectively[31,32], and mutations of these residues disrupt certain IFN inhibitory functions (see below), although the role of zinc-binding is not known. The C-terminal region is also important to the formation of oligomeric structures of V proteins and certain innate immune factors important to IFN antagonism[33].

TYPE I IFN SYSTEM

Mammalian cell responses to infection depend on the detection of pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) produced during microbial infection and replication, such as single-stranded RNA (ssRNA), double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) and RNA with exposed/uncapped 5' triphosphates that are generated by RNA viruses[34,35]. Detection of virus components is principally

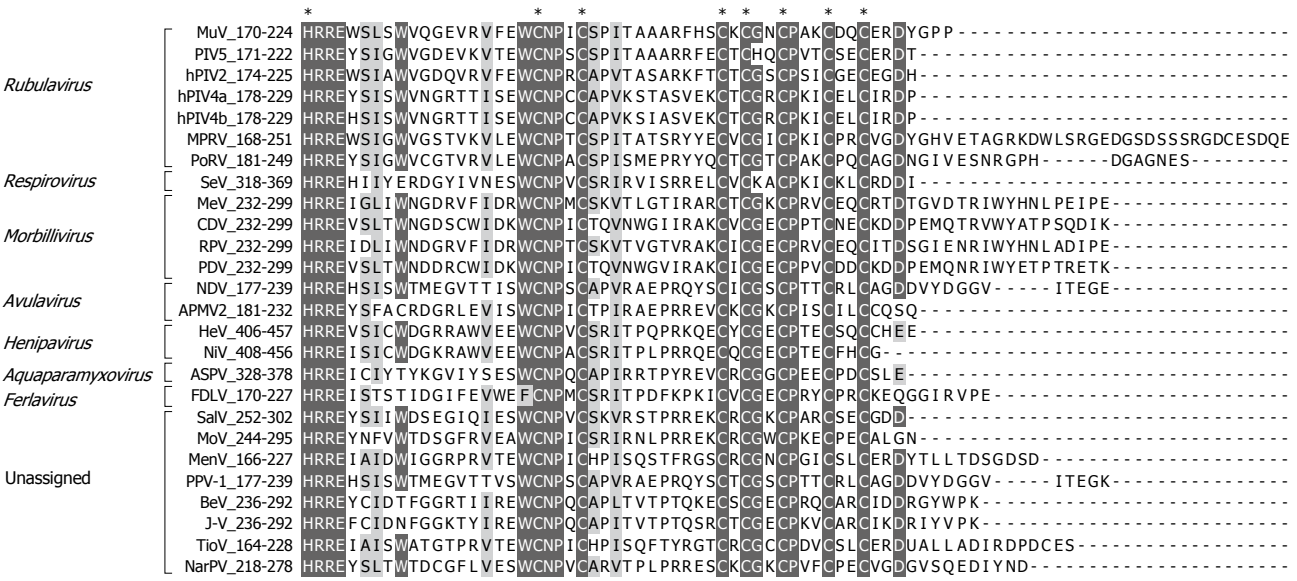


Figure 2 Conserved residues in the paramyxovirus V C-terminal domain. Paramyxovirus V protein C-terminal sequences are aligned with identical and similar residues highlighted. Asterisks indicate absolutely conserved histidine and cysteine residues involved in zinc-binding (see text for details). Residue numbers are indicated in the sequence titles. MuV: Mumps virus; PIV5: Parainfluenza virus 5; hPIV: Human PIV; MPRV: Mapuera virus; PoRV: Porcine rubulavirus; SeV: Sendai virus; MeV: Measles virus; CDV: Canine distemper virus; RPV: Rinderpest virus; PDV: Phocine distemper virus; NDV: Newcastle disease virus; APMV2: Avian paramyxovirus 2; HeV: Hendra virus; NiV: Nipah virus; ASPV: Atlantic Salmon Paramyxovirus; FDLV: Fer-de-Lance virus; SalV: Salem virus; MoV: Mossman virus; MenV: Menangle virus; PPV-1: Pigeon paramyxovirus 1; BeV: Beilong virus; J-V: J-virus; TioV: Tioman virus; NarPV: Nariva virus.

mediated by three types of PAMP-recognition-receptors (PRRs): Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and RIG- I -like receptors (RLRs), thought to be the main receptors responsible for type I IFN (IFNα/β) induction, and nucleotide-oligomerisation domain-like receptors[36].

TLRs are trans-membrane proteins expressed at the plasma membrane or on intracellular structures such as endosomes and the endoplasmic reticulum[37,38] to detect extracellular viral nucleic acids such as dsRNA (TLR3)[37-40] and G/U-rich ssRNAs (TLR7)[38]. By contrast, the almost ubiquitously expressed RLR helicases RIG- I and MDA5 detect viral dsRNA in the cytoplasm of infected cells[36,41-47]; RIG- I also recognises cytoplasmic 5' tri-phosphorylated and uncapped viral ssRNA[48-50]. RNA-activated MDA5 and RIG- I interact with the mitochondrial membrane-associated adaptor protein IFNβ promoter stimulator 1 (IPS-1, also known as MAVS, VISA, or CARDIF) *via* their caspase activation and recruitment domains (CARDs) to trigger downstream signalling (Figure 3). TLRs activate distinct pathways (Figure 3), but RLR and TLR signalling converges with the phosphorylation of the constitutively expressed cytoplasmic transcription factors IRF-3, as well as nuclear factor κB (NF-κB), causing their translocation into the nucleus to activate the transcription of early type I IFNs (IFNβ and IFNα4)[36,51-56]. Most human cell types can produce type I IFNs in response to infection, with "professional" IFN-producing immune cells including plasmacytoid DCs and macrophages being major producers during infection, due to constitutive expression of IRF-7 (which requires induction in other cell types) and the use of alternative TLR-9 pathways[57]. Importantly, paramyxoviruses can induce type I IFN expression through RIG- I , MDA5 and TLR pathways (Figure 3)[42,58,59].

Type I IFNs signal in autocrine and paracrine fashion, binding to the ubiquitously expressed IFNα/β receptor (IFNAR) to activate the Janus kinase (JAK)/STAT signalling pathway (Figure 4), resulting in the phosphorylation and nuclear translocation of STAT1 and STAT2 proteins. In the form of a heterotrimeric complex [IFN-stimulated gene factor 3 (ISGF3)] which incorporates IRF-9, STAT1 and STAT2 trans-activate hundreds of IFN-stimulated genes, many of which encode known antiviral proteins including protein kinase R, which inhibits translation of mRNAs[60]; 2'5'-oligoadenylate synthetase, which activates RNase L to effect degradation of ssRNA[60]; Mx GTPase proteins that interfere with the growth of certain viruses including the paramyxoviruses[52]; and PML, which has antiviral properties but with unresolved mechanisms[52]. IRF-7 is also up regulated to activate a positive feedback loop by forming heterodimers with IRF-3 (Figure 3) inducing "late" IFNα subtypes for prolonged responses to infection[61].

Although signalling through STAT1/2 heterodimers is essential to type I IFN responses, type I IFN activates other complexes including homodimers of STAT1 and STAT3 and STAT1-STAT3 heterodimers, which have different gene specificity or regulatory roles[62], and recent data suggest that STAT2 can also effect STAT1-independent antiviral functions[63]. Thus, type I IFN activation can affect diverse gene expression through distinct pathways. STATs are also critical to signalling by type Ⅱ and Ⅲ IFNs and various other cytokines[54,64] such as interleukin (IL)-6[65,66], presenting potential targets for viral inhibition of several immune signalling systems.

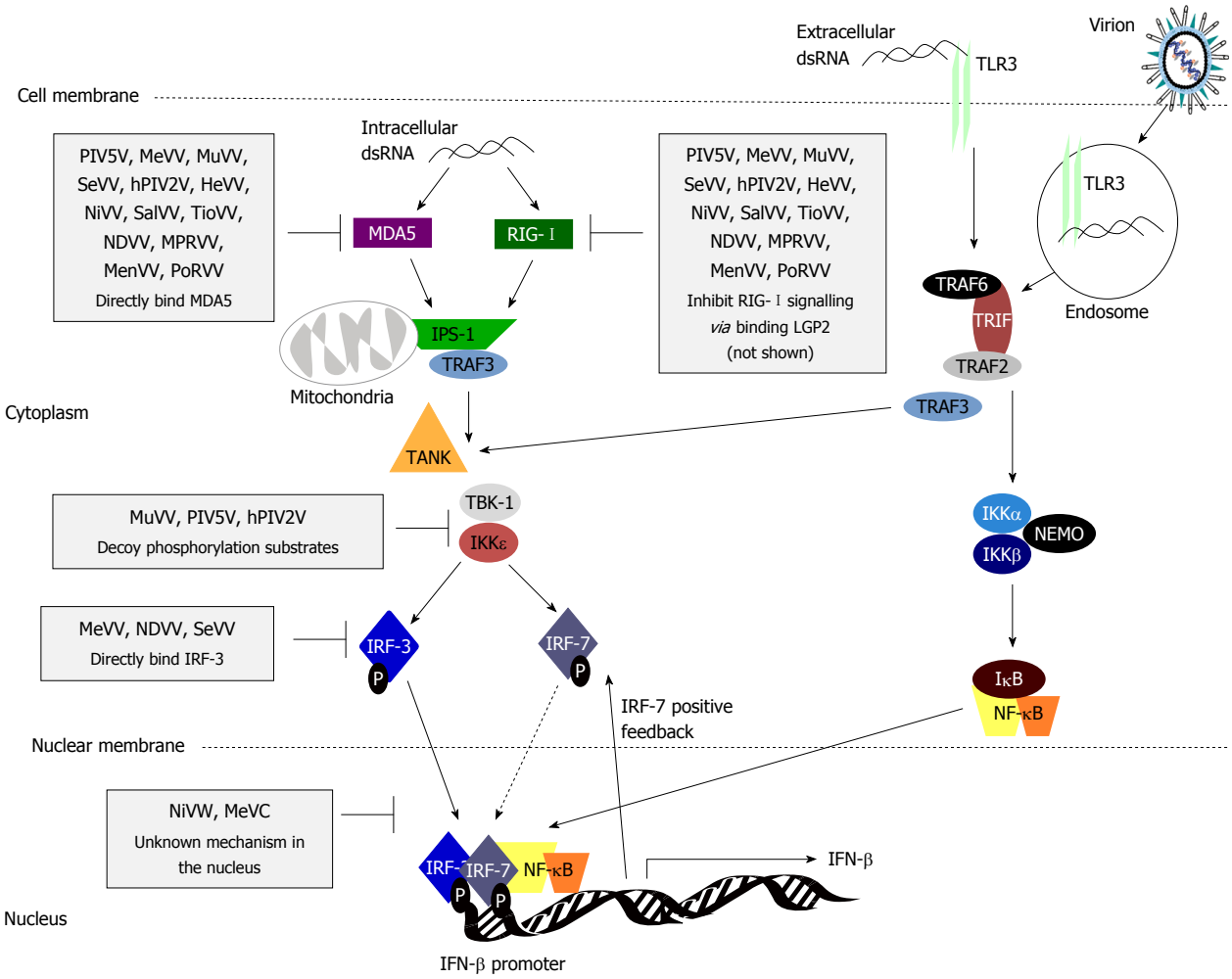


Figure 3 Type I interferon induction is inhibited by paramyxovirus interferon-antagonist proteins at multiple stages. Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) generated during virus infection, such as dsRNA, are recognised by PRRs including endosomal/surface expressed Toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3) and cytoplasmic retinoic acid-inducible gene- I (RIG- I)/melanoma differentiation associated protein 5 (MDA5). TLR3 signals through the adaptor molecule Toll/interleukin-1 receptor domain-containing adaptor inducing interferon (IFN)β (TRIF), which recruits tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated factor (TRAF)2 to activate the inhibitor of nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) kinase (IKK)α/β kinases to phosphorylate inhibitory inhibitor of NF-κB (IκB), triggering its degradation and activation/nuclear translocation of NF-κB. TLR3 signalling *via* TRAF3 results in phosphorylation/activation of IFN regulatory factor (IRF)-3, causing its homodimerisation, or heterodimerisation with IRF-7 in professional IFN producing/IFN-primed cells, and translocation into the nucleus where, with NF-κB and activating transcription factor 2 (ATF2)/c-jun (not shown), it activates early type I IFN transcription. RIG- I and MDA5 also induce phosphorylation of IRF-3 following recognition of cytoplasmic PAMPs in infected cells *via* interaction with the mitochondrial membrane protein IFNβ promoter stimulator 1 (IPS-1), which recruits and activates TANK and the TANK-binding kinases (TBKs). TBK-1 and IKKε *via* the E3 ubiquitin ligase TRAF3. Many paramyxoviruses target this pathway; steps commonly targeted are indicated (black bars) with specific examples of the paramyxovirus proteins responsible (see text for details). DC: Dendritic cell; PIV5: Parainfluenza virus 5; MeV: Measles virus; MuV: Mumps virus; SeV: Sendai virus; hPIV: Human PIV; HeV: Hendra virus; NiV: Nipah virus; SalV: Salem virus; TioV: Tioman virus; NDV: Newcastle disease virus; MPRV: Mapuera virus; MenV: Menangle virus; PoRV: Porcine rubulavirus; LGP2: Laboratory of genetics and physiology 2.

CELLULAR TARGETS OF PARAMYXOVIRUS IFN ANTAGONISTS

A large body of evidence indicates that viruses/IFN-antagonist proteins generally target multiple steps in the IFN system[52,67,68]. The requirement for this broad targeting probably relates to factors such as differences in the kinetics of viral IFN-antagonist expression compared with the mounting of IFN responses, the contribution of infected cells and non-infected professional IFN producing cells, and the overall antiviral potency of the IFN system. Most paramyxoviruses can inhibit both IFN induction and signalling by targeting several cellular proteins. Intriguingly, although paramyxoviruses generally target common factors including MDA5, IRF-3 and STATs, the mechanisms of inhibition show significant divergence between different viruses.

Targeting of MDA5

The V proteins of at least 13 paramyxoviruses tested bind to MDA5 to inhibit IFN induction[32,69-71]. Rinderpest virus (RPV) may differ, as it appears to use the C protein rather than V to inhibit MDA5 signalling, although the binding of RPV V to MDA5 has not been examined[72]. The V proteins of PIV5, hPIV2, MuV, MeV, NiV, HeV, SeV, Mapuera virus (MPRV), Menangle virus (MenV)

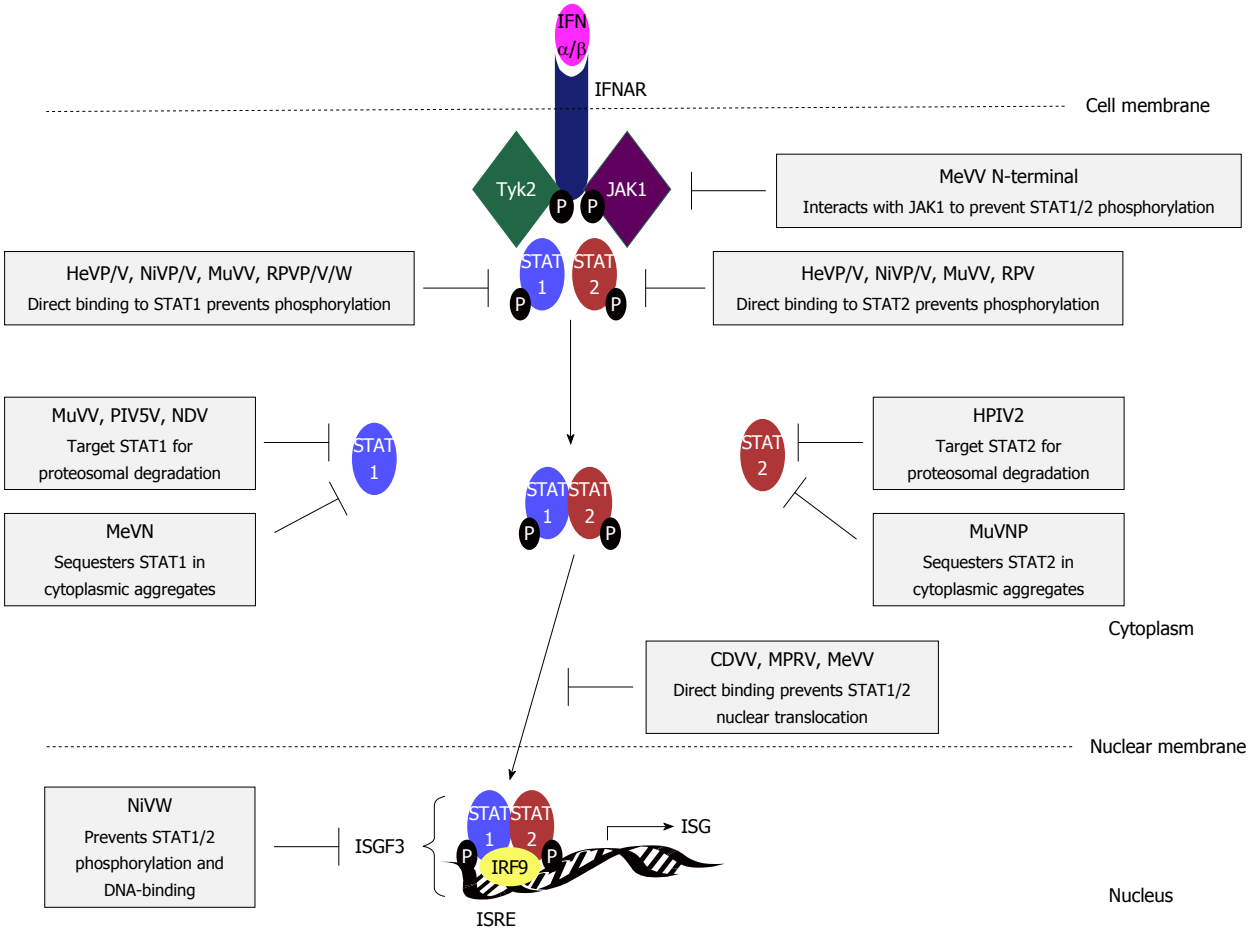


Figure 4 Interferon signalling pathways are targeted by paramyxovirus interferon-antagonist proteins through diverse mechanisms. Interferon (IFN)β binds to type I IFN receptor subunits IFNα/β receptor (IFNAR)1 and IFNAR2, causing dimerization, activation and phosphorylation of the receptor-associated kinases Janus kinase 1 (JAK1) and tyrosine kinase 2 (Tyk2), to create docking sites for the SH2 domains of signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT)1 and 2. STAT1 and 2 are phosphorylated by Tyk2 and JAK1 respectively, and form a heterodimer that translocates into the nucleus, forming the heterotrimeric transcription factor complex IFN-stimulated gene factor 3 (ISGF3) with IFN regulatory factor (IRF)-9. ISGF3 binding to IFN stimulatory response element (ISRE) sequences in the promoters of hundreds of IFN-stimulated genes (ISGs) activates the transcription of antiviral and immune-modulatory proteins to establish an antiviral state in infected and neighbouring cells, and contribute to shaping the adaptive immune response. STAT1 and/or STAT2 are targeted by almost all paramyxoviruses through the activity of several IFN antagonists by mechanisms that are reported to differ significantly; mechanisms and specific viral proteins responsible are indicated (see text for details). HeV: Hendra virus; NiV: Nipah virus; MuV: Mumps virus; RPV: Rinderpest virus; MeV: Measles virus; PIV5: Parainfluenza virus 5; NDV: Newcastle disease virus; hPIV: Human PIV; CDV: Canine distemper virus; MPRV: Mapuera virus.

and Salem virus (SalV) were shown to bind a specific region within/proximal to residues 701-816 of the MDA5 helicase domain, independently of the MDA5 ligand dsRNA[70,71,73], thereby blocking dsRNA-MDA5 interaction[70]. Although a recent study of PIV5 V identified a change in the dsRNA-binding properties of MDA5 when V was co-expressed, rather than a complete inhibition, suggesting that V may still allow non-cooperative dsRNA binding[74]. In addition, the V proteins of PIV5, MenV, and SalV might have further specialist antagonistic functions, as yeast two-hybrid assays indicated that they interacted with multiple distinct regions of MDA5[70]. A crystal structure of PIV5 V in complex with MDA5 has demonstrated that V unfolds the ATPase domain of MDA5, which allows it to bind a region normally hidden beneath the helicase fold[74]. This unfolding disturbs the ATPase hydrolysis site, and it was shown using MeV V that increasing concentrations of V correlate with decreasing ATPase activity[74].

The MDA5 binding site has been mapped to the C-terminal region of the V proteins of PIV5, MeV, MuV, Newcastle disease virus (NDV), NiV, HeV and SeV[32,69-71,75,76], with conserved residues of the zinc-finger critical to the interaction. However, the precise molecular details differ between specific paramyxoviruses, with conserved cysteine residues in the large zinc finger loop, but not the smaller loop, of PIV5 V and NiV V dispensable for antagonism of IFN induction[32], whereas MuV V and MeV V required all conserved cysteine residues[32]. A crystal structure of MDA5:PIV5 has shown PIV5 V to have six residues (174, 175, 177, 179, 184 and 197) involved in forming the interface with MDA5, only some of which are conserved with other paramyxovirus V proteins[74].

Targeting of RIG-I via laboratory of genetics and physiology 2 protein

In contrast to MDA5, V proteins do not bind directly to RIG-I, nor inhibit RIG-I oligomersation or dsRNA-

binding[70], which has been assumed to indicate that they have no direct role in inhibiting RIG- I activation, but rather target downstream signalling components such as IRF-3 (see below). However, recent data has indicated that V proteins can inhibit RIG- I by interaction with another cellular helicase, the laboratory of genetics and physiology 2 (LGP2)[73], *via* a region of LGP2 homologous to the V protein binding region in MDA5[71,73]. The interaction appears to be dependent on the unique C-terminal domain of V protein, as PIV5 P protein did not bind to LGP2, but the C-terminal domains of MeV and MuV V proteins were necessary and sufficient for the interaction[71,73]. Importantly, V proteins were able to inhibit RIG- I signalling only in cells where LGP2 was coexpressed[73], and RIG- I - LGP2 interaction was detected only in cells expressing V protein, suggesting that V facilitates or mediates this interaction to shutdown RIG- I activation[73]. Because LGP2 is homologous to RIG- I and MDA5, but lacks the CARD domain to activate downstream signalling, it is thought to be a negative regulator of IFN induction, consistent with the inhibitory effects of V protein expression. However, there is evidence that LGP2 can positively regulate IFN induction under some conditions[77-80], so the precise mechanisms of V protein/LGP2 antagonism of RIG- I remain to be determined.

Inhibition of IRF-3 activation

In addition to inhibition of PRRs, paramyxoviruses target downstream signalling components to prevent activation of IRF-3, potentially as a mechanism to inhibit signalling by both RLRs and TLRs (Figure 3). Rubulaviruses including MuV, hPIV2, and PIV5 use V protein as a decoy substrate for the IRF-3 kinases TANK-binding kinase 1 (TBK-1) and inhibitor of NF-κB kinase (IKK)ε (Figure 3), both inhibiting phosphorylation of IRF-3 and facilitating IKKε/TBK-1 polyubiquitination and degradation to prevent further signalling[81].

Henipavirus V proteins do not cause IKKε/TBK-1 degradation[81] or block TLR-3/IRF-3 dependent signalling[76,81]. For henipaviruses, this appears to be a function of the W protein, as NiV W, although having no effect on MDA5 signalling, inhibited TLR-3-dependent phosphorylation of IRF-3[82]. It is possible this is due to binding and sequestration of inactive IRF-3 in the nucleus where NiV W localises, to prevent interaction with cytoplasmic IKKε/TBK-1[82]. This model is consistent with the reported importance of NiV W protein nuclear localisation to its inhibition of TLR3-dependent IFN induction[82]. MeV C protein also inhibits IFN induction, correlating with its nuclear localisation[83], although MeV C does not affect IRF-3 directly, and appears to have an undetermined nuclear target[83]. By contrast, cytoplasmic NDV and SeV V protein bind directly to IRF-3, thereby preventing its nuclear translocation[76]. Thus, paramyxovirus targeting of IRF-3-mediated signalling involves mechanisms that appear to differ significantly between species.

Targeting of STATs by rubulaviruses: degradation and mis-localisation

Almost all rubulavirus V proteins target STAT1 or STAT2 for degradation by the host-cell proteosomal pathways[84-87] through assembly of a V-degradation complex (VDC) containing V protein, STAT1, STAT2, and components of an E3 ubiquitin ligase complex, specifically the UV damage-specific DNA binding protein 1 (DDB1), and Cul4A[88-92], which likely mediate the STAT1/2 polyubiquitination[93]. *In vitro* studies/crystallographic analysis of the PIV5 V-DBB1 complex have indicated that both the N-terminal and unique C-terminal regions of PIV5 V are required for VDC assembly and STAT1 degradation[33,88,93,94]. Intriguingly, although some rubulaviruses target only STAT1 or STAT2 for degradation (see Figure 4 for details)[95,96], both STATs are required, with the non-degraded STAT acting as a "co-factor"[97,98].

The MuV V protein VDC polyubiquitinates and degrades not only STAT1, but also STAT3[84,99], such that MuV V protein can inhibit STAT3-dependent transcriptional activation by IL-6 and v-Src[99]. MuV targeting of STAT3 is independent of STAT1 targeting, as a point mutation abrogating targeting of STAT3 did not affect STAT1[100], and STAT3 degradation does not require the STAT2 "cofactor"[99]. STAT3 targeting by the V protein of MuV is also highly specific to this species, as the V proteins of the rubulaviruses MPRV, hPIV2 and hPIV4 do not reduce cellular levels of STAT3[87,101,102].

Intriguingly, the V proteins of hPIV4a and hPIV4b do not degrade STATs or measurably affect their localisation or phosphorylation, but still bind to STAT1, STAT2 and other VDC components[101]. While these viruses appear to lack the ability to antagonise STAT signalling, the specific binding capacity of the proteins is suggestive of a previous role in STAT antagonism, which may have been lost due to changes in selective pressures[101].

MPRV V protein, by contrast with those of other rubulaviruses, binds to STAT1 and STAT2 to prevent their nuclear translocation without inducing degradation[102]. This is similar to reports for the V proteins of the henipaviruses and morbilliviruses (see below), except in that MPRV V does not inhibit STAT1 phosphorylation and can bind to STAT1 and STAT2 independently[102]. A similar mechanism may be used by the MuV NP protein, which co-localises with STAT2 in punctate aggregates in the cytoplasm of infected cells[99], indicating that NP protein, like P protein, can mediate both replication and IFN antagonist functions.

Targeting of STATs by avulaviruses

In common with rubulaviruses such as PIV5, the avulavirus NDV targets STAT1, but not STAT2, for degradation. Deletion of the C-terminal region of V protein, or deletion of both V and W C-termini by disruption of the RNA editing site, prevented STAT1 degradation by recombinant NDV[95]. As little difference was observed between virus deleted for both V and W, and virus deleted

for the V protein C-terminal domain alone, V protein appears to be the major player, and consistent with this, NDV V but not NDV W degraded STAT1 in transfected cells[95].

Targeting of STATs by morbilliviruses

MeV V binds STAT1 and STAT2 through distinct sites in its N-terminal and C-terminal regions[103], respectively, indicating that targeting of STAT2 independently of STAT1 is important to this virus. MeV V protein does not degrade STATs[104], but has been reported by different laboratories to use several distinct mechanisms, including inhibition of STAT nuclear translocation without affecting STAT phosphorylation[103-105], and inhibition of STAT1 and STAT2 phosphorylation due to interaction of its N-terminal domain with JAK1[106,107]. Canine distemper virus (CDV) and RPV V proteins also inhibit IFN-activated STAT1/STAT2 nuclear import[108,109], with RPV V protein, but not that of CDV, inhibiting STAT1/2 phosphorylation.

MeV V also interacts with IRF-9, which is likely to affect ISGF3 formation (Figure 4)[104], and with STAT3[104], a property thus far restricted in the paramyxovirus family to MeV and MuV V proteins[99,100,104,110]. HeV V and PIV5 V have been shown to lack STAT3 binding function, and while SeV infection can inhibit IFNα-dependent STAT3 phosphorylation, this appears to relate to upstream effects on Tyk2 rather than STAT3 directly[111]. STAT3 binding by other paramyxovirus V proteins, however, has not been investigated.

MeV N protein also inhibits STAT1/2 signalling[112], indicating a particular importance of STAT inhibition to MeV, and co-localises with STAT1 in cytoplasmic aggregates in infected cells, analogously to MuV NP[99,104]. STAT2 also co-localised with MeV N in aggregates, but with reduced frequency compared with STAT1[104].

STAT targeting by respiroviruses: the importance of C proteins

STAT targeting by respiroviruses differs significantly from other paramyxoviruses, due to the expression of additional proteins from the P gene (Figure 2), including four C proteins by hPIV1[14,113], which does not express V or W. The C' protein of hPIV1 binds and sequesters STAT1 in perinuclear aggregates, suggesting that the C proteins may be sufficient for IFN antagonism by this virus[114]. SeV C proteins (C', C, Y1 and Y2), also bind to STAT1 and prevent signalling and, importantly, the functions of the individual C proteins appear non-redundant, as knockout of all four proteins is required to completely prevent IFN antagonism in infected cells[115,116]. Data regarding the mechanisms of SeV C proteins activity are conflicting[116-121], with some reports suggesting that C and C', but not Y1 or Y2, cause STAT1 mono-ubiquitination/degradation[116,117] dependent on the C protein N-termini[118,119], while others reported no reduction in STAT1 expression but indicated inhibition of STAT1 and STAT2 phosphorylation by the C proteins, independently of their N-termini[120,121].

STAT targeting by henipaviruses: the roles of P, V and W

The henipavirus P, V and W proteins can bind to STAT1 and STAT2 through the shared N-terminal region[122,123] to prevent STAT1/2 phosphorylation and activation by holding them in high molecular weight complexes[110,123-125]. Transfection studies indicate that P, V and W have differing capacities to inhibit STAT signalling, with P protein the least effective[125]. This is consistent with the hypothesis that the V and W accessory proteins have evolved to enable specific, distinct roles as IFN-antagonists, sequestering STATs in the cytoplasm and the nucleus, respectively[82,122,125], whereas P protein functions principally as the polymerase cofactor, but can arrest STATs in the cytoplasm. Mutation of the shared G121 residue was found to specifically ablate STAT1 binding by V, W and P, without affecting P protein polymerase cofactor function, enabling the production of recombinant NiV impaired for STAT antagonistic functions to confirm that inhibition of STAT1 phosphorylation in NiV infected cells is due to P/V/W binding[122,126]. In wild-type NiV-infected cells, but not those infected with the mutant NiV, unphosphorylated STAT1 localised exclusively to the nucleus, similar to cells expressing W protein alone, suggesting NiV W has the predominant role in blocking STAT signalling in infected cells[122].

DIFFERENT MECHANISMS OF IMMUNE EVASION: EVOLUTION OR EXPERIMENT?

Although there is abundant evidence that *paramyxovirus P* gene-encoded proteins can antagonise IFN responses by diverse species-specific/genera-specific mechanisms, the source of this diversity is currently unclear. A major caveat of the available data is its heavy reliance on *in vitro* studies, particularly transfection studies of single IFN-antagonist proteins. Although these approaches enable highly specific analyses of the properties of particular IFN-antagonists, including mapping/mutagenesis studies, the potential to generate artefactual data due to the absence of other viral factors and/or non-physiological expression levels is a significant concern. Indeed, several transfection studies in different laboratories have generated conflicting mechanistic data for the same viral protein, including SeV C and MeV V protein[103-107,116,117,120,121], suggesting that some reported differences between IFN antagonists of different paramyxovirus species/genera might arise from experimental rather than biological differences. Importantly, however, recent studies comparing in parallel the functions of V proteins from panels of paramyxoviruses have confirmed clear divergence in specific mechanisms/interactions[70,71,76], indicating genuine divergence at the molecular level.

Recent studies have also directly compared IFN-antagonist protein expression/functions in transfected and

infected cells, identifying clear differences. Notably, one study reported that while henipavirus V and W proteins profoundly inhibit IFN/STAT signalling in transfected cells, no inhibition was apparent in infected cells, which appeared to relate to the higher expression of V/W proteins in transfected cells[127]. This suggested that STAT inhibition by V and W does not have significant roles in infected cells, but it seems unlikely that viruses would evolve proteins that can specifically target factors of the IFN response and impede their function by sophisticated mechanisms were this not important at some stage of infection. While *in vitro* infection approaches are clearly closer to natural infection than transfection, they also use controlled *in vitro* conditions including the inoculation of cultured monolayers of specific cell types with precise multiplicities of infection, and treatments with specific concentrations of IFNs. By contrast, in natural infection the kinetics of viral protein expression and induction of the IFN system is highly dynamic, involving both infected cells and professional IFN-producing cells, and factors such as the infectious dose, route of infection, host species, and infectious spread to specific tissues can vary greatly, significantly affecting requirements for IFN antagonism and the disease outcome[128]. Thus, the diverse mechanisms of IFN antagonism identified in transfection studies may have vital roles in infection *in vivo*.

Importantly, IFN antagonism has been implicated as a key factor in host and tissue specificity, with PIV5 showing limited host range dependent on the capacity of the V protein to bind to STAT2 from different species[129-132], whereas NiV V blocks IFN signalling in cells of many species, consistent with its broad infectious range[82,110,124,126]. Tissue-specific antagonism of IFN has also been reported for NiV, which induces an IFN response in endothelial but not neuronal cells, correlating with differential subcellular localisation of NiV W[133].

A genuine appreciation of the importance of specific IFN-antagonistic mechanisms to pathogenicity, however, requires the use of recombinant virus systems and *in vivo* pathogenicity models. Recent advances in this area include reports that recombinant hPIV2 impaired for V protein antagonism of MDA5 is attenuated in rhesus monkeys[134-136], and that the severity of clinical signs in MeV-infected monkeys was reduced by mutation of the P/V proteins to prevent inhibition of STAT1[137]. In addition, the deletion of V or C proteins from MeV caused attenuation in mice, but V deletion alone resulted in restricted spread in the brain[138], supporting the hypothesis that specific mechanisms of IFN-antagonism are important to infection of certain tissues. Deletion of the V C-terminal domain in recombinant NiV also reduced pathogenicity in a hamster model[123-125,139], possibly due to IFN-antagonist functions of the V C-terminal domain, such as the targeting of MDA5.

Of paramount importance to delineating the roles of specific mechanisms of IFN antagonism in pathogenicity will be the extension of *in vivo* studies to include genetically modified animals deficient in specific IFN signalling processes. For example, recent research indicated that SeV pathogenicity is increased in MDA5 knockout mice[140], suggesting that this might provide a useful model to investigate the importance of MDA5 antagonism in *in vivo* infection.

CONCLUSION

A substantial body of data from the past c. 15 years has provided key insights into the immune evasion strategies of paramyxovirus IFN-antagonists, indicating that they employ a remarkable array of mechanisms to target essential factors of the IFN response, with the limited *in vivo* infection data indicating that these functions are essential to pathogenicity. However, as much of the current mechanistic data comes from *in vitro* transfection approaches, their importance to natural infection remains largely unresolved. Future studies employing *in vivo* infection models, recombinant virus systems and genetically modified animals should begin to unravel in detail the interactions of paramyxoviruses with the IFN system *in vivo*. This is likely to result in the identification of new potential targets for the development of vaccines and antivirals required for the treatment of established prolific human pathogens such as MeV, as well as emerging zoonotic threats including NiV and HeV.

REFERENCES

1 **World Health Organization**. Measles: Fact sheet N°286. 2012. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs286/en/index.html

2 **Hossain MJ**, Gurley ES, Montgomery JM, Bell M, Carroll DS, Hsu VP, Formenty P, Croisier A, Bertherat E, Faiz MA, Azad AK, Islam R, Molla MA, Ksiazek TG, Rota PA, Comer JA, Rollin PE, Luby SP, Breiman RF. Clinical presentation of nipah virus infection in Bangladesh. *Clin Infect Dis* 2008; **46**: 977-984 [PMID: 18444812 DOI: 10.1086/529147]

3 **Ali R**, Mounts AW, Parashar UD, Sahani M, Lye MS, Isa MM, Balathevan K, Arif MT, Ksiazek TG. Nipah virus among military personnel involved in pig culling during an outbreak of encephalitis in Malaysia, 1998-1999. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2001; **7**: 759-761 [PMID: 11592256]

4 **Marsh GA**, Todd S, Foord A, Hansson E, Davies K, Wright L, Morrissy C, Halpin K, Middleton D, Field HE, Daniels P, Wang LF. Genome sequence conservation of Hendra virus isolates during spillover to horses, Australia. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2010; **16**: 1767-1769 [PMID: 21029540]

5 **Chua KB**, Bellini WJ, Rota PA, Harcourt BH, Tamin A, Lam SK, Ksiazek TG, Rollin PE, Zaki SR, Shieh W, Goldsmith CS, Gubler DJ, Roehrig JT, Eaton B, Gould AR, Olson J, Field H, Daniels P, Ling AE, Peters CJ, Anderson LJ, Mahy BW. Nipah virus: a recently emergent deadly paramyxovirus. *Science* 2000; **288**: 1432-1435 [PMID: 10827955 DOI: 10.1126/science.288.5470.1432]

6 **Lamb RA**, Parks GD. Paramyxoviridae: the viruses and their replication. In: Fields BN, Knipe DM, Howley PM, Griffin DE, Lamb RA, Martin MA, Roizman B, Straus SE, editors. Fields virology. 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2006: 1449-1496

7 **King AMQ**, Adams MJ, Carstens EB, Lefkowitz EJ. Virus taxonomy: classification and nomenclature of viruses: Ninth

Report of the International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses. San Diego: Elsevier Academic Press, 2011
8 **Chenik M**, Chebli K, Blondel D. Translation initiation at alternate in-frame AUG codons in the rabies virus phosphoprotein mRNA is mediated by a ribosomal leaky scanning mechanism. *J Virol* 1995; **69**: 707-712 [PMID: 7815533]
9 **Paterson RG**, Lamb RA. RNA editing by G-nucleotide insertion in mumps virus P-gene mRNA transcripts. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 4137-4145 [PMID: 2166809]
10 **Jacques JP**, Hausmann S, Kolakofsky D. Paramyxovirus mRNA editing leads to G deletions as well as insertions. *EMBO J* 1994; **13**: 5496-5503 [PMID: 7957115]
11 **Vidal S**, Curran J, Kolakofsky D. Editing of the Sendai virus P/C mRNA by G insertion occurs during mRNA synthesis via a virus-encoded activity. *J Virol* 1990; **64**: 239-246 [PMID: 1688384]
12 **Vidal S**, Curran J, Kolakofsky D. A stuttering model for paramyxovirus P mRNA editing. *EMBO J* 1990; **9**: 2017-2022 [PMID: 2347313]
13 **Sanchez A**, Trappier SG, Mahy BW, Peters CJ, Nichol ST. The virion glycoproteins of Ebola viruses are encoded in two reading frames and are expressed through transcriptional editing. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 3602-3607 [PMID: 8622982 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.8.3602]
14 **Matsuoka Y**, Curran J, Pelet T, Kolakofsky D, Ray R, Compans RW. The P gene of human parainfluenza virus type 1 encodes P and C proteins but not a cysteine-rich V protein. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 3406-3410 [PMID: 1851888]
15 **Marsh GA**, de Jong C, Barr JA, Tachedjian M, Smith C, Middleton D, Yu M, Todd S, Foord AJ, Haring V, Payne J, Robinson R, Broz I, Crameri G, Field HE, Wang LF. Cedar virus: a novel Henipavirus isolated from Australian bats. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002836 [PMID: 22879820 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002836]
16 **Fontana JM**, Bankamp B, Rota PA. Inhibition of interferon induction and signaling by paramyxoviruses. *Immunol Rev* 2008; **225**: 46-67 [PMID: 18837775 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00669.x]
17 **Hausmann S**, Jacques JP, Kolakofsky D. Paramyxovirus RNA editing and the requirement for hexamer genome length. *RNA* 1996; **2**: 1033-1045 [PMID: 8849779]
18 **Kulkarni S**, Volchkova V, Basler CF, Palese P, Volchkov VE, Shaw ML. Nipah virus edits its P gene at high frequency to express the V and W proteins. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 3982-3987 [PMID: 19211754 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02599-08]
19 **Lo MK**, Harcourt BH, Mungall BA, Tamin A, Peeples ME, Bellini WJ, Rota PA. Determination of the henipavirus phosphoprotein gene mRNA editing frequencies and detection of the C, V and W proteins of Nipah virus in virus-infected cells. *J Gen Virol* 2009; **90**: 398-404 [PMID: 19141449 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.007294-0]
20 **Yu X**, Tsibane T, McGraw PA, House FS, Keefer CJ, Hicar MD, Tumpey TM, Pappas C, Perrone LA, Martinez O, Stevens J, Wilson IA, Aguilar PV, Altschuler EL, Basler CF, Crowe JE. Neutralizing antibodies derived from the B cells of 1918 influenza pandemic survivors. *Nature* 2008; **455**: 532-536 [PMID: 18716625 DOI: 10.1038/nature07231]
21 **Wang LF**, Michalski WP, Yu M, Pritchard LI, Crameri G, Shiell B, Eaton BT. A novel P/V/C gene in a new member of the Paramyxoviridae family, which causes lethal infection in humans, horses, and other animals. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 1482-1490 [PMID: 9445051]
22 **Curran J**, Kolakofsky D. Scanning independent ribosomal initiation of the Sendai virus X protein. *EMBO J* 1988; **7**: 2869-2874 [PMID: 2846286]
23 **Curran J**, Boeck R, Kolakofsky D. The Sendai virus P gene expresses both an essential protein and an inhibitor of RNA synthesis by shuffling modules via mRNA editing. *EMBO J* 1991; **10**: 3079-3085 [PMID: 1655410]
24 **Gotoh B**, Komatsu T, Takeuchi K, Yokoo J. Paramyxovirus accessory proteins as interferon antagonists. *Microbiol Immunol* 2001; **45**: 787-800 [PMID: 11838896]
25 **Gotoh B**, Komatsu T, Takeuchi K, Yokoo J. Paramyxovirus strategies for evading the interferon response. *Rev Med Virol* 2002; **12**: 337-357 [PMID: 12410527 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.357]
26 **Goodbourn S**, Randall RE. The regulation of type I interferon production by paramyxoviruses. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 2009; **29**: 539-547 [PMID: 19702509 DOI: 10.1089/jir.2009.0071]
27 **Horvath CM**. Weapons of STAT destruction. Interferon evasion by paramyxovirus V protein. *Eur J Biochem* 2004; **271**: 4621-4628 [PMID: 15606749 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.2004.04425.x]
28 **Horvath CM**. Silencing STATs: lessons from paramyxovirus interferon evasion. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2004; **15**: 117-127 [PMID: 15110796]
29 **Huang C**, Kiyotani K, Fujii Y, Fukuhara N, Kato A, Nagai Y, Yoshida T, Sakaguchi T. Involvement of the zinc-binding capacity of Sendai virus V protein in viral pathogenesis. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 7834-7841 [PMID: 10933690 DOI: 10.1016/j.cytogfr.2004.02.003]
30 **Liston P**, Briedis DJ. Measles virus V protein binds zinc. *Virology* 1994; **198**: 399-404 [PMID: 8259680 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1994.1050]
31 **Paterson RG**, Leser GP, Shaughnessy MA, Lamb RA. The paramyxovirus SV5 V protein binds two atoms of zinc and is a structural component of virions. *Virology* 1995; **208**: 121-131 [PMID: 11831692 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.1135]
32 **Ramachandran A**, Horvath CM. Dissociation of paramyxovirus interferon evasion activities: universal and virus-specific requirements for conserved V protein amino acids in MDA5 interference. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11152-11163 [PMID: 20719949 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01375-10]
33 **Ulane CM**, Kentsis A, Cruz CD, Parisien JP, Schneider KL, Horvath CM. Composition and assembly of STAT-targeting ubiquitin ligase complexes: paramyxovirus V protein carboxyl terminus is an oligomerization domain. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 10180-10189 [PMID: 16051811 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.16.10180-10189.2005]
34 **Akira S**, Uematsu S, Takeuchi O. Pathogen recognition and innate immunity. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 783-801 [PMID: 16497588 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.02.015]
35 **Medzhitov R**. Recognition of microorganisms and activation of the immune response. *Nature* 2007; **449**: 819-826 [PMID: 17943118 DOI: 10.1038/nature06246]
36 **Takeuchi O**, Akira S. Innate immunity to virus infection. *Immunol Rev* 2009; **227**: 75-86 [PMID: 19120477 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00737.x]
37 **Matsumoto M**, Oshiumi H, Seya T. Antiviral responses induced by the TLR3 pathway. *Rev Med Virol* 2011; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21312311 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.680]
38 **Carty M**, Bowie AG. Recent insights into the role of Toll-like receptors in viral infection. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2010; **161**: 397-406 [PMID: 20560984 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2249.2010.04196.x]
39 **Alexopoulou L**, Holt AC, Medzhitov R, Flavell RA. Recognition of double-stranded RNA and activation of NF-kappaB by Toll-like receptor 3. *Nature* 2001; **413**: 732-738 [PMID: 11607032 DOI: 10.1038/35099560]
40 **Johnsen IB**, Nguyen TT, Ringdal M, Tryggestad AM, Bakke O, Lien E, Espevik T, Anthonsen MW. Toll-like receptor 3 associates with c-Src tyrosine kinase on endosomes to initiate antiviral signaling. *EMBO J* 2006; **25**: 3335-3346 [PMID: 16858407 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7601222]
41 **Takeuchi O**, Akira S. MDA5/RIG-I and virus recognition. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2008; **20**: 17-22 [PMID: 18272355 DOI: 10.1016/j.coi.2008.01.002]
42 **Yoneyama M**, Kikuchi M, Natsukawa T, Shinobu N, Imaizumi T, Miyagishi M, Taira K, Akira S, Fujita T. The RNA helicase RIG-I has an essential function in double-stranded

RNA-induced innate antiviral responses. *Nat Immunol* 2004; **5**: 730-737 [PMID: 15208624 DOI: 10.1038/ni1087]
43 **Kato H**, Sato S, Yoneyama M, Yamamoto M, Uematsu S, Matsui K, Tsujimura T, Takeda K, Fujita T, Takeuchi O, Akira S. Cell type-specific involvement of RIG-I in antiviral response. *Immunity* 2005; **23**: 19-28 [PMID: 16039576 DOI: 10.1016/j.immuni.2005.04.010]
44 **Luthra P**, Sun D, Silverman RH, He B. Activation of IFN-& amp; #946; expression by a viral mRNA through RNase L and MDA5. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 2118-2123 [PMID: 21245317 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1012409108]
45 **Loo YM**, Fornek J, Crochet N, Bajwa G, Perwitasari O, Martinez-Sobrido L, Akira S, Gill MA, García-Sastre A, Katze MG, Gale M. Distinct RIG-I and MDA5 signaling by RNA viruses in innate immunity. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 335-345 [PMID: 17942531 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01080-07]
46 **Baum A**, Sachidanandam R, García-Sastre A. Preference of RIG-I for short viral RNA molecules in infected cells revealed by next-generation sequencing. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 16303-16308 [PMID: 20805493 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1005077107]
47 **Kato H**, Takeuchi O, Mikamo-Satoh E, Hirai R, Kawai T, Matsushita K, Hiiragi A, Dermody TS, Fujita T, Akira S. Length-dependent recognition of double-stranded ribonucleic acids by retinoic acid-inducible gene-I and melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5. *J Exp Med* 2008; **205**: 1601-1610 [PMID: 18591409 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20080091]
48 **Pichlmair A**, Schulz O, Tan CP, Näslund TI, Liljeström P, Weber F, Reis e Sousa C. RIG-I-mediated antiviral responses to single-stranded RNA bearing 5′-phosphates. *Science* 2006; **314**: 997-1001 [PMID: 17038589 DOI: 10.1126/science.1132998]
49 **Habjan M**, Andersson I, Klingström J, Schümann M, Martin A, Zimmermann P, Wagner V, Pichlmair A, Schneider U, Mühlberger E, Mirazimi A, Weber F. Processing of genome 5′ termini as a strategy of negative-strand RNA viruses to avoid RIG-I-dependent interferon induction. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e2032 [PMID: 18446221 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0002032]
50 **Nallagatla SR**, Toroney R, Bevilacqua PC. A brilliant disguise for self RNA: 5′-end and internal modifications of primary transcripts suppress elements of innate immunity. *RNA Biol* 2008; **5**: 140-144 [PMID: 18769134 DOI: 10.4161/rna.5.3.6839]
51 **Kawai T**, Akira S. Antiviral signaling through pattern recognition receptors. *J Biochem* 2007; **141**: 137-145 [PMID: 17190786 DOI: 10.1093/jb/mvm032]
52 **Randall RE**, Goodbourn S. Interferons and viruses: an interplay between induction, signalling, antiviral responses and virus countermeasures. *J Gen Virol* 2008; **89**: 1-47 [PMID: 18089727 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.83391-0]
53 **Takeuchi O**, Akira S. Recognition of viruses by innate immunity. *Immunol Rev* 2007; **220**: 214-224 [PMID: 17979849 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2007.00562.x]
54 **Baum A**, García-Sastre A. Induction of type I interferon by RNA viruses: cellular receptors and their substrates. *Amino Acids* 2010; **38**: 1283-1299 [PMID: 19882216 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-009-0374-0]
55 **Pestka S**, Krause CD, Walter MR. Interferons, interferon-like cytokines, and their receptors. *Immunol Rev* 2004; **202**: 8-32 [PMID: 15546383 DOI: 10.1111/j.0105-2896.2004.00204.x]
56 **Díaz MO**, Testa D. Type I interferon genes and proteins. *Biotherapy* 1996; **8**: 157-162 [PMID: 8813327 DOI: 10.1007/BF01877200]
57 **Tailor P**, Tamura T, Ozato K. IRF family proteins and type I interferon induction in dendritic cells. *Cell Res* 2006; **16**: 134-140 [PMID: 16474425 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cr.7310018]
58 **Kato H**, Takeuchi O, Sato S, Yoneyama M, Yamamoto M, Matsui K, Uematsu S, Jung A, Kawai T, Ishii KJ, Yamaguchi O, Otsu K, Tsujimura T, Koh CS, Reis e Sousa C, Matsuura Y, Fujita T, Akira S. Differential roles of MDA5 and RIG-I helicases in the recognition of RNA viruses. *Nature* 2006; **441**: 101-105 [PMID: 16625202 DOI: 10.1038/nature04734]
59 **Melchjorsen J**, Jensen SB, Malmgaard L, Rasmussen SB, Weber F, Bowie AG, Matikainen S, Paludan SR. Activation of innate defense against a paramyxovirus is mediated by RIG-I and TLR7 and TLR8 in a cell-type-specific manner. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 12944-12951 [PMID: 16188996 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.20.12944-12951.2005]
60 **Hovanessian AG**. On the discovery of interferon-inducible, double-stranded RNA activated enzymes: the 2′-5′oligoadenylate synthetases and the protein kinase PKR. *Cytokine Growth Factor Rev* 2007; **18**: 351-361 [PMID: 17681872 DOI: 10.1016/j.cytogfr.2007.06.003]
61 **Marié I**, Durbin JE, Levy DE. Differential viral induction of distinct interferon-alpha genes by positive feedback through interferon regulatory factor-7. *EMBO J* 1998; **17**: 6660-6669 [PMID: 9822609 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/17.22.6660]
62 **Ho HH**, Ivashkiv LB. Role of STAT3 in type I interferon responses. Negative regulation of STAT1-dependent inflammatory gene activation. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 14111-14118 [PMID: 16571725 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M511797200]
63 **Perry ST**, Buck MD, Lada SM, Schindler C, Shresta S. STAT2 mediates innate immunity to Dengue virus in the absence of STAT1 via the type I interferon receptor. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1001297 [PMID: 21379341 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1001297]
64 **Zhou Z**, Hamming OJ, Ank N, Paludan SR, Nielsen AL, Hartmann R. Type III interferon (IFN) induces a type I IFN-like response in a restricted subset of cells through signaling pathways involving both the Jak-STAT pathway and the mitogen-activated protein kinases. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 7749-7758 [PMID: 17507495 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02438-06]
65 **Yu CL**, Meyer DJ, Campbell GS, Larner AC, Carter-Su C, Schwartz J, Jove R. Enhanced DNA-binding activity of a Stat3-related protein in cells transformed by the Src oncoprotein. *Science* 1995; **269**: 81-83 [PMID: 7541555 DOI: 10.1126/science.7541555]
66 **Zhong Z**, Wen Z, Darnell JE. Stat3: a STAT family member activated by tyrosine phosphorylation in response to epidermal growth factor and interleukin-6. *Science* 1994; **264**: 95-98 [PMID: 8140422 DOI: 10.1126/science.8140422]
67 **Oksayan S**, Ito N, Moseley G, Blondel D. Subcellular trafficking in rhabdovirus infection and immune evasion: a novel target for therapeutics. *Infect Disord Drug Targets* 2012; **12**: 38-58 [PMID: 22034934 DOI: 10.2174/187152612798994966]
68 **Basler CF**, Amarasinghe GK. Evasion of interferon responses by Ebola and Marburg viruses. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 2009; **29**: 511-520 [PMID: 19694547 DOI: 10.1089/jir.2009.0076]
69 **Childs K**, Stock N, Ross C, Andrejeva J, Hilton L, Skinner M, Randall R, Goodbourn S. mda-5, but not RIG-I, is a common target for paramyxovirus V proteins. *Virology* 2007; **359**: 190-200 [PMID: 17049367 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2006.09.023]
70 **Childs KS**, Andrejeva J, Randall RE, Goodbourn S. Mechanism of mda-5 Inhibition by paramyxovirus V proteins. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 1465-1473 [PMID: 19019954 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01768-08]
71 **Parisien JP**, Bamming D, Komuro A, Ramachandran A, Rodriguez JJ, Barber G, Wojahn RD, Horvath CM. A shared interface mediates paramyxovirus interference with antiviral RNA helicases MDA5 and LGP2. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 7252-7260 [PMID: 19403670 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00153-09]
72 **Boxer EL**, Nanda SK, Baron MD. The rinderpest virus nonstructural C protein blocks the induction of type 1 interferon. *Virology* 2009; **385**: 134-142 [PMID: 19108859 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.11.022]
73 **Childs K**, Randall R, Goodbourn S. Paramyxovirus V proteins interact with the RNA Helicase LGP2 to inhibit RIG-I-

dependent interferon induction. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 3411-3421 [PMID: 22301134 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.06405-11]
74 **Motz C**, Schuhmann KM, Kirchhofer A, Moldt M, Witte G, Conzelmann KK, Hopfner KP. Paramyxovirus V proteins disrupt the fold of the RNA sensor MDA5 to inhibit antiviral signaling. *Science* 2013; **339**: 690-693 [PMID: 23328395 DOI: 10.1126/science.1230949]
75 **Andrejeva J**, Childs KS, Young DF, Carlos TS, Stock N, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. The V proteins of paramyxoviruses bind the IFN-inducible RNA helicase, mda-5, and inhibit its activation of the IFN-beta promoter. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 17264-17269 [PMID: 15563593 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0407639101]
76 **Irie T**, Kiyotani K, Igarashi T, Yoshida A, Sakaguchi T. Inhibition of interferon regulatory factor 3 activation by paramyxovirus V protein. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 7136-7145 [PMID: 22532687 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.06705-11]
77 **Satoh T**, Kato H, Kumagai Y, Yoneyama M, Sato S, Matsushita K, Tsujimura T, Fujita T, Akira S, Takeuchi O. LGP2 is a positive regulator of RIG-I- and MDA5-mediated antiviral responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 1512-1517 [PMID: 20080593 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0912986107]
78 **Yoneyama M**, Kikuchi M, Matsumoto K, Imaizumi T, Miyagishi M, Taira K, Foy E, Loo YM, Gale M, Akira S, Yonehara S, Kato A, Fujita T. Shared and unique functions of the DExD/H-box helicases RIG-I, MDA5, and LGP2 in antiviral innate immunity. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 2851-2858 [PMID: 16116171]
79 **Saito T**, Hirai R, Loo YM, Owen D, Johnson CL, Sinha SC, Akira S, Fujita T, Gale M. Regulation of innate antiviral defenses through a shared repressor domain in RIG-I and LGP2. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 582-587 [PMID: 17190814 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0606699104]
80 **Rothenfusser S**, Goutagny N, DiPerna G, Gong M, Monks BG, Schoenemeyer A, Yamamoto M, Akira S, Fitzgerald KA. The RNA helicase Lgp2 inhibits TLR-independent sensing of viral replication by retinoic acid-inducible gene-I. *J Immunol* 2005; **175**: 5260-5268 [PMID: 16210631]
81 **Lu LL**, Puri M, Horvath CM, Sen GC. Select paramyxoviral V proteins inhibit IRF3 activation by acting as alternative substrates for inhibitor of kappaB kinase epsilon (IKKe)/TBK1. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 14269-14276 [PMID: 18362155 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M710089200]
82 **Shaw ML**, Cardenas WB, Zamarin D, Palese P, Basler CF. Nuclear localization of the Nipah virus W protein allows for inhibition of both virus- and toll-like receptor 3-triggered signaling pathways. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 6078-6088 [PMID: 15857993 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.10.6078-6088.2005]
83 **Sparrer KM**, Pfaller CK, Conzelmann KK. Measles virus C protein interferes with Beta interferon transcription in the nucleus. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 796-805 [PMID: 22072748 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.05899-11]
84 **Kubota T**, Yokosawa N, Yokota S, Fujii N. C terminal CYS-RICH region of mumps virus structural V protein correlates with block of interferon alpha and gamma signal transduction pathway through decrease of STAT 1-alpha. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2001; **283**: 255-259 [PMID: 11322797 DOI: 10.1006/bbrc.2001.4764]
85 **Kubota T**, Yokosawa N, Yokota S, Fujii N, Tashiro M, Kato A. Mumps virus V protein antagonizes interferon without the complete degradation of STAT1. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 4451-4459 [PMID: 15767445]
86 **Nishio M**, Garcin D, Simonet V, Kolakofsky D. The carboxyl segment of the mumps virus V protein associates with Stat proteins in vitro via a tryptophan-rich motif. *Virology* 2002; **300**: 92-99 [PMID: 12202209]
87 **Yokosawa N**, Yokota S, Kubota T, Fujii N. C-terminal region of STAT-1alpha is not necessary for its ubiquitination and degradation caused by mumps virus V protein. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 12683-12690 [PMID: 12438594 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.24.12683-12690.2002]
88 **Andrejeva J**, Poole E, Young DF, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. The p127 subunit (DDB1) of the UV-DNA damage repair binding protein is essential for the targeted degradation of STAT1 by the V protein of the paramyxovirus simian virus 5. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 11379-11386 [PMID: 12388698 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.22.11379-11386.2002]
89 **Lin GY**, Paterson RG, Richardson CD, Lamb RA. The V protein of the paramyxovirus SV5 interacts with damage-specific DNA binding protein. *Virology* 1998; **249**: 189-200 [PMID: 9740790 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1998.9317]
90 **Andrejeva J**, Young DF, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. Degradation of STAT1 and STAT2 by the V proteins of simian virus 5 and human parainfluenza virus type 2, respectively: consequences for virus replication in the presence of alpha/beta and gamma interferons. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 2159-2167 [PMID: 11836393 DOI: 10.1128/jvi.76.5.2159-2167.2002]
91 **Sarikas A**, Hartmann T, Pan ZQ. The cullin protein family. *Genome Biol* 2011; **12**: 220 [PMID: 21554755 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2011-12-4-220]
92 **Leung-Pineda V**, Huh J, Piwnica-Worms H. DDB1 targets Chk1 to the Cul4 E3 ligase complex in normal cycling cells and in cells experiencing replication stress. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 2630-2637 [PMID: 19276361 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3382]
93 **Ulane CM**, Horvath CM. Paramyxoviruses SV5 and HPIV2 assemble STAT protein ubiquitin ligase complexes from cellular components. *Virology* 2002; **304**: 160-166 [PMID: 12504558 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2002.1773]
94 **Li T**, Chen X, Garbutt KC, Zhou P, Zheng N. Structure of DDB1 in complex with a paramyxovirus V protein: viral hijack of a propeller cluster in ubiquitin ligase. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 105-117 [PMID: 16413485 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.10.033]
95 **Huang Z**, Krishnamurthy S, Panda A, Samal SK. Newcastle disease virus V protein is associated with viral pathogenesis and functions as an alpha interferon antagonist. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 8676-8685 [PMID: 12885886 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.16.8676-8685.2003]
96 **Precious B**, Young DF, Andrejeva L, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. In vitro and in vivo specificity of ubiquitination and degradation of STAT1 and STAT2 by the V proteins of the paramyxoviruses simian virus 5 and human parainfluenza virus type 2. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 151-158 [PMID: 15604442 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80263-0]
97 **Precious B**, Childs K, Fitzpatrick-Swallow V, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. Simian virus 5 V protein acts as an adaptor, linking DDB1 to STAT2, to facilitate the ubiquitination of STAT1. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 13434-13441 [PMID: 16227264 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.21.13434-13441.2005]
98 **Parisien JP**, Lau JF, Rodriguez JJ, Ulane CM, Horvath CM. Selective STAT protein degradation induced by paramyxoviruses requires both STAT1 and STAT2 but is independent of alpha/beta interferon signal transduction. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 4190-4198 [PMID: 11932384 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.9.4190-4198.2002]
99 **Ulane CM**, Rodriguez JJ, Parisien JP, Horvath CM. STAT3 ubiquitylation and degradation by mumps virus suppress cytokine and oncogene signaling. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 6385-6393 [PMID: 12743296 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.11.6385-6393.2003]
100 **Puri M**, Lemon K, Duprex WP, Rima BK, Horvath CM. A point mutation, E95D, in the mumps virus V protein disengages STAT3 targeting from STAT1 targeting. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 6347-6356 [PMID: 19386700 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00596-09]
101 **Nishio M**, Tsurudome M, Ito M, Ito Y. Human parainfluenza virus type 4 is incapable of evading the interferon-induced antiviral effect. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 14756-14768 [PMID: 16282476 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.23.14756-14768.2005]
102 **Hagmaier K**, Stock N, Precious B, Childs K, Wang LF, Goodbourn S, Randall RE. Mapuera virus, a rubulavirus that in-

hibits interferon signalling in a wide variety of mammalian cells without degrading STATs. *J Gen Virol* 2007; **88**: 956-966 [PMID: 17325370 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.82579-0]
103 **Caignard G**, Bouraï M, Jacob Y, Tangy F, Vidalain PO. Inhibition of IFN-alpha/beta signaling by two discrete peptides within measles virus V protein that specifically bind STAT1 and STAT2. *Virology* 2009; **383**: 112-120 [PMID: 19007958 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.10.014]
104 **Palosaari H**, Parisien JP, Rodriguez JJ, Ulane CM, Horvath CM. STAT protein interference and suppression of cytokine signal transduction by measles virus V protein. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 7635-7644 [PMID: 12805463 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.13.7635-7644.2003]
105 **Ramachandran A**, Parisien JP, Horvath CM. STAT2 is a primary target for measles virus V protein-mediated alpha/beta interferon signaling inhibition. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 8330-8338 [PMID: 18579593 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00831-08]
106 **Takeuchi K**, Kadota SI, Takeda M, Miyajima N, Nagata K. Measles virus V protein blocks interferon (IFN)-alpha/beta but not IFN-gamma signaling by inhibiting STAT1 and STAT2 phosphorylation. *FEBS Lett* 2003; **545**: 177-182 [PMID: 12804771 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(03)00528-3]
107 **Caignard G**, Guerbois M, Labernardière JL, Jacob Y, Jones LM, Wild F, Tangy F, Vidalain PO. Measles virus V protein blocks Jak1-mediated phosphorylation of STAT1 to escape IFN-alpha/beta signaling. *Virology* 2007; **368**: 351-362 [PMID: 17686504 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2007.06.037]
108 **Röthlisberger A**, Wiener D, Schweizer M, Peterhans E, Zurbriggen A, Plattet P. Two domains of the V protein of virulent canine distemper virus selectively inhibit STAT1 and STAT2 nuclear import. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 6328-6343 [PMID: 20427537 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01878-09]
109 **Nanda SK**, Baron MD. Rinderpest virus blocks type I and type II interferon action: role of structural and nonstructural proteins. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 7555-7568 [PMID: 16840335 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02720-05]
110 **Rodriguez JJ**, Wang LF, Horvath CM. Hendra virus V protein inhibits interferon signaling by preventing STAT1 and STAT2 nuclear accumulation. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 11842-11845 [PMID: 14557668 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.21.11842-11845.2003]
111 **Komatsu T**, Takeuchi K, Yokoo J, Tanaka Y, Gotoh B. Sendai virus blocks alpha interferon signaling to signal transducers and activators of transcription. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 2477-2480 [PMID: 10666284 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.5.2477-2480.2000]
112 **Takayama I**, Sato H, Watanabe A, Omi-Furutani M, Sugai A, Kanki K, Yoneda M, Kai C. The nucleocapsid protein of measles virus blocks host interferon response. *Virology* 2012; **424**: 45-55 [PMID: 22226324 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2011.12.011]
113 **Power UF**, Ryan KW, Portner A. The P genes of human parainfluenza virus type 1 clinical isolates are polycistronic and microheterogeneous. *Virology* 1992; **189**: 340-343 [PMID: 1318610 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(92)90712-X]
114 **Schomacker H**, Hebner RM, Boonyaratanakornkit J, Surman S, Amaro-Carambot E, Collins PL, Schmidt AC. The C proteins of human parainfluenza virus type 1 block IFN signaling by binding and retaining Stat1 in perinuclear aggregates at the late endosome. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e28382 [PMID: 22355301 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0028382]
115 **Gotoh B**, Takeuchi K, Komatsu T, Yokoo J, Kimura Y, Kurotani A, Kato A, Nagai Y. Knockout of the Sendai virus C gene eliminates the viral ability to prevent the interferon-alpha/beta-mediated responses. *FEBS Lett* 1999; **459**: 205-210 [PMID: 10518019 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(99)01241-7]
116 **Garcin D**, Marq JB, Strahle L, le Mercier P, Kolakofsky D. All four Sendai Virus C proteins bind Stat1, but only the larger forms also induce its mono-ubiquitination and degradation. *Virology* 2002; **295**: 256-265 [PMID: 12033784 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2001.1342]
117 **Garcin D**, Curran J, Kolakofsky D. Sendai virus C proteins must interact directly with cellular components to interfere with interferon action. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 8823-8830 [PMID: 10982324 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.19.8823-8830.2000]
118 **Garcin D**, Marq JB, Iseni F, Martin S, Kolakofsky D. A short peptide at the amino terminus of the Sendai virus C protein acts as an independent element that induces STAT1 instability. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 8799-8811 [PMID: 15280488 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.16.8799-8811.2004]
119 **Garcin D**, Marq JB, Goodbourn S, Kolakofsky D. The amino-terminal extensions of the longer Sendai virus C proteins modulate pY701-Stat1 and bulk Stat1 levels independently of interferon signaling. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 2321-2329 [PMID: 12551969 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.4.2321-2329.2003]
120 **Kato A**, Cortese-Grogan C, Moyer SA, Sugahara F, Sakaguchi T, Kubota T, Otsuki N, Kohase M, Tashiro M, Nagai Y. Characterization of the amino acid residues of sendai virus C protein that are critically involved in its interferon antagonism and RNA synthesis down-regulation. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 7443-7454 [PMID: 15220418 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.14.7443-7454.2004]
121 **Kato A**, Ohnishi Y, Hishiyama M, Kohase M, Saito S, Tashiro M, Nagai Y. The amino-terminal half of Sendai virus C protein is not responsible for either counteracting the antiviral action of interferons or down-regulating viral RNA synthesis. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 7114-7124 [PMID: 12072511 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.14.7114-7124.2002]
122 **Ciancanelli MJ**, Volchkova VA, Shaw ML, Volchkov VE, Basler CF. Nipah virus sequesters inactive STAT1 in the nucleus via a P gene-encoded mechanism. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 7828-7841 [PMID: 19515782 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02610-08]
123 **Rodriguez JJ**, Cruz CD, Horvath CM. Identification of the nuclear export signal and STAT-binding domains of the Nipah virus V protein reveals mechanisms underlying interferon evasion. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 5358-5367 [PMID: 15113915]
124 **Rodriguez JJ**, Parisien JP, Horvath CM. Nipah virus V protein evades alpha and gamma interferons by preventing STAT1 and STAT2 activation and nuclear accumulation. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 11476-11483 [PMID: 12388709 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.22.11476-11483.2002]
125 **Shaw ML**, García-Sastre A, Palese P, Basler CF. Nipah virus V and W proteins have a common STAT1-binding domain yet inhibit STAT1 activation from the cytoplasmic and nuclear compartments, respectively. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 5633-5641 [PMID: 15140960 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.11.5633-5641.2004]
126 **Hagmaier K**, Stock N, Goodbourn S, Wang LF, Randall R. A single amino acid substitution in the V protein of Nipah virus alters its ability to block interferon signalling in cells from different species. *J Gen Virol* 2006; **87**: 3649-3653 [PMID: 17098981 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.82261-0]
127 **Virtue ER**, Marsh GA, Wang LF. Interferon signaling remains functional during henipavirus infection of human cell lines. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 4031-4034 [PMID: 21289115 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02412-10]
128 **Geisbert TW**, Feldmann H, Broder CC. Animal challenge models of henipavirus infection and pathogenesis. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2012; **359**: 153-177 [PMID: 22476556 DOI: 10.1007/82_2012_208]
129 **Park MS**, García-Sastre A, Cros JF, Basler CF, Palese P. Newcastle disease virus V protein is a determinant of host range restriction. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 9522-9532 [PMID: 12915566 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.17.9522-9532.2003]
130 **Young DF**, Chatziandreou N, He B, Goodbourn S, Lamb RA, Randall RE. Single amino acid substitution in the V protein of simian virus 5 differentiates its ability to block interferon signaling in human and murine cells. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 3363-3370 [PMID: 11238862 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.7.3363-3370.2001]
131 **Iwasaki M**, Yanagi Y. Expression of the Sendai (murine parainfluenza) virus C protein alleviates restriction of measles virus growth in mouse cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**:

15384-15389 [PMID: 21896767 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1107382108]
132 **Parisien JP**, Lau JF, Horvath CM. STAT2 acts as a host range determinant for species-specific paramyxovirus interferon antagonism and simian virus 5 replication. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 6435-6441 [PMID: 12050355 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.13.6435-6441.2002]
133 **Lo MK**, Miller D, Aljofan M, Mungall BA, Rollin PE, Bellini WJ, Rota PA. Characterization of the antiviral and inflammatory responses against Nipah virus in endothelial cells and neurons. *Virology* 2010; **404**: 78-88 [PMID: 20552729 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.05.005]
134 **Schaap-Nutt A**, Higgins C, Amaro-Carambot E, Nolan SM, D'Angelo C, Murphy BR, Collins PL, Schmidt AC. Identification of human parainfluenza virus type 2 (HPIV-2) V protein amino acid residues that reduce binding of V to MDA5 and attenuate HPIV-2 replication in nonhuman primates. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 4007-4019 [PMID: 21289116 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02542-10]
135 **Schaap-Nutt A**, D'Angelo C, Amaro-Carambot E, Nolan SM, Davis S, Wise SM, Higgins C, Bradley K, Kim O, Mayor R, Skiadopoulos MH, Collins PL, Murphy BR, Schmidt AC. Recombinant human parainfluenza virus type 2 with mutations in V that permit cellular interferon signaling are not attenuated in non-human primates. *Virology* 2010; **406**: 65-79 [PMID: 20667570 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.07.011]
136 **Schaap-Nutt A**, D'Angelo C, Scull MA, Amaro-Carambot E, Nishio M, Pickles RJ, Collins PL, Murphy BR, Schmidt AC. Human parainfluenza virus type 2 V protein inhibits interferon production and signaling and is required for replication in non-human primates. *Virology* 2010; **397**: 285-298 [PMID: 19969320 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2009.11.018]
137 **Devaux P**, Hudacek AW, Hodge G, Reyes-Del Valle J, McChesney MB, Cattaneo R. A recombinant measles virus unable to antagonize STAT1 function cannot control inflammation and is attenuated in rhesus monkeys. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 348-356 [PMID: 20980517 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00802-10]
138 **Patterson JB**, Thomas D, Lewicki H, Billeter MA, Oldstone MB. V and C proteins of measles virus function as virulence factors in vivo. *Virology* 2000; **267**: 80-89 [PMID: 10648185 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1999.0118]
139 **Yoneda M**, Guillaume V, Sato H, Fujita K, Georges-Courbot MC, Ikeda F, Omi M, Muto-Terao Y, Wild TF, Kai C. The nonstructural proteins of Nipah virus play a key role in pathogenicity in experimentally infected animals. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e12709 [PMID: 20856799 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012709]
140 **Gitlin L**, Benoit L, Song C, Cella M, Gilfillan S, Holtzman MJ, Colonna M. Melanoma differentiation-associated gene 5 (MDA5) is involved in the innate immune response to Paramyxoviridae infection in vivo. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000734 [PMID: 20107606 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000734]

P- Reviewer Guo HT **S- Editor** Song XX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.71

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 71-78
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Viral proteins and Src family kinases: Mechanisms of pathogenicity from a "liaison dangereuse"

Mario Angelo Pagano, Elena Tibaldi, Giorgio Palù, Anna Maria Brunati

Mario Angelo Pagano, Elena Tibaldi, Giorgio Palù, Anna Maria Brunati, Department of Molecular Medicine, University of Padua, Padua 35121, Italy
Author contributions: Pagano MA, Tibaldi E, Palù G and Brunati AM contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Anna Maria Brunati, Professor, Department of Molecular Medicine, University of Padua, Viale G. Colombo 3, Padua 35131, Italy. alberto.bindoli@bio.unipd.it
Telephone: +39-49-8276114 Fax: +39-49-8073310
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: January 7, 2013
Accepted: January 23, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

To complete their life cycle and spread, viruses interfere with and gain control of diverse cellular processes, this most often occurring through interaction between viral proteins (VPs) and resident protein partners. Among the latter, Src family kinases (SFKs), a class of non-receptor tyrosine kinases that contributes to the conversion of extracellular signals into intracellular signaling cascades and is involved in virtually all cellular processes, have recently emerged as critical mediators between the cell's infrastructure and the viral demands. In this scenario, structural or *ex novo* synthesized VPs are able to bind to the different domains of these enzymes through specific short linear motifs present along their sequences. Proline-rich motifs displaying the conserved minimal consensus PxxP and recognizing the SFK Src homology (SH)3 domain constitute a cardinal signature for the formation of multiprotein complexes and this interaction may promote phosphorylation of VPs by SFKs, thus creating phosphotyrosine motifs that become a docking site for the SH2 domains of SFKs or other SH2 domain-bearing signaling molecules. Importantly, the formation of these assemblies also results in a change in the activity and/or location of SFKs, and these events are critical in perturbing key signaling pathways so that viruses can utilize the cell's machinery to their own benefit. In the light of these observations, although VPs as such, especially those with enzyme activity, are still regarded as valuable targets for therapeutic strategies, multiprotein complexes composed of viral and host cell proteins are increasingly becoming objects of investigation with a view to deeply characterize the structural aspects that favor their formation and to develop new compounds able to contrast viral diseases in an alternative manner.

Key words: Interaction; Phosphotyrosine; Proline-rich motif; Src homology 2 domain; Src homology 3 domain

Pagano MA, Tibaldi E, Palù G, Brunati AM. Viral proteins and Src family kinases: Mechanisms of pathogenicity from a "liaison dangereuse". *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 71-78 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/71.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.71

INTRODUCTION

Although not strictly meeting the definition of living organisms, viruses can replicate and spread, provided that they infect host cells to produce a new offspring. In this regard, viruses are obligate intracellular parasites that have evolved complex strategies to complete their life cycle, consisting of contrasting and even evading innate defense mechanisms of the host cell for which they have a tropism so as to take control over key cell pathways[1,2]. Therefore, they interfere with diverse cellular processes, especially those involving replication of genetic material, protein translation and trafficking, with viral structural and non-structural proteins undergoing post-translational modifications, such as phosphorylation, ubiquitination, glycosylation and cleavage prior to or after interacting with a vast part of

the host's proteome, thereby forming new multiprotein assemblies[2]. Indeed, much effort has been made over the last few decades to dissect the cellular signaling pathways hijacked by viruses and the underlying molecular mechanisms, leading to the identification of several host cell factors playing a major role in the viral life cycle. Among these, Src family kinases (SFKs), a class of non-receptor tyrosine kinases comprising of eight members (Src, Yes, Fyn, Fgr, Lyn, Hck, Lck and Blk), have emerged as critical mediators between the cell infrastructure and the viral demands. Although traditionally known as molecular switches situated right beneath the plasma membrane, from there relaying extracellular cues and governing signal transduction, SFKs localize to virtually all the other cell compartments, thereby regulating a wide spectrum of cellular processes, such as growth, viability, cell cycle and metabolism[3,4]. To gain a deeper understanding of how SFKs exert their function and how viruses can benefit from the interplay with SFKs, it is necessary to bear in mind the complexity of the multidomain organization and the mechanisms of activation of SFKs themselves. From the N- to the C-terminus, their structure consists of: (1) the Src homology (SH) 4 domain, a unique region that becomes myristoylated and/or palmitoylated for membrane association of SFKs; (2) the SH3 domain, which binds specific proline-rich motifs (PRMs); (3) the SH2 domain, which recognizes phosphotyrosine motifs; (4) the SH2-kinase linker; (5) a catalytic SH1 domain; and followed by (6) a C-terminal tail implicated in the downregulation of SFKs (Figure 1). The activity of SFKs is mainly modulated by the phosphorylation state of 2 critical tyrosine residues, Tyr416 and Tyr527 (based on the amino acid numbering of chicken c-Src and corresponding to Tyr419 and Tyr530 in humans), with opposing effects: the former, which lies in the activation loop, is subjected to autophosphorylation when the SFK is activated, whereas the latter is targeted by C-Src tyrosine kinase[5], resulting in the inactivation of the tyrosine kinase. The latter event is induced by a closed conformation of the SFK through 2 major intramolecular inhibitory interactions, binding of the C-terminal phosphotyrosine (Tyr527) itself to the SH2 domain and interaction of a polyproline type Ⅱ helical motif (PPⅡ) in the SH2-kinase linker with the SH3 domain. On the other hand, multiple events can induce disruption of such inhibitory mechanisms, such as dephosphorylation of the tail, with its displacement from the SH2 domain and/or displacement of the PPⅡ motif from the SH3 domain, ultimately resulting in the full activation of SFKs[6]. All these features, either functional or structural, can be exploited one at a time or in combination by most, if not all, viruses to take over the cell machinery, from the cell entry, all through the genome replication until the release of new particles. As to internalization, viral particles induce, upon interaction of cognate membrane receptors, activation of SFKs, which, as apical cellular transducers in receptor-mediated cellular signaling, take part in the activation of clathrin-, caveolin-dependent endocytic pathways, or the alternate mechanism based upon macropinocytosis and are subsequently taken up by host cells for uncoating and genome replication[7-10]. Another different mode of viral uptake into the host cell occurs in polarized cells and is mediated by SFKs, which are activated upon virus attachment to the plasma membrane, so that tight junction barrier function is perturbed to allow viruses to reach their specific receptors at the baso-lateral side of epithelial cells. As a result, viral particles can be endocytosed[9] or participate in relocalizing viral receptors from the baso-lateral to the apical membrane surface in response to cytokines released by infected macrophages with subsequent entry into the epithelial cells[10].

Thus, regardless of the viral species, it can be stated that SFKs are involved in the cell entry of viral particles simply by "doing their duty" as a component of signalosomes, that is, by relaying the extracellular cues, in this case consisting in viral ligands that bind to cell receptors, to downstream effector molecules and preparing the cellular environment to take up virions by the different mechanisms of endocytosis. An actual interaction between SFKs and viral proteins (VPs) does not occur in this early phase of infection, instead taking place only after uncoating and *ex novo* synthesis of viral gene products. This association can be mediated by the non-catalytic (SH3 and SH2) and catalytic (SH1) domains of SFKs, thereby resulting in directing the localization or affecting the activity of SFKs themselves, in order to best support genome replication, particle assembly and spread.

This review offers a brief summary of the current knowledge of the molecular mechanisms underlying the interactions between SFKs and VPs, as well as the consequences thereof, so as to highlight common or rather specific structural motifs that might become molecular targets for disrupting such associations and to provide a new perspective in managing viral infections.

INTRACELLULAR VIRAL HIJACKING OF SFKS

It has been largely described that a plethora of viruses, once they enter the cell, utilize SFKs to foster the different steps of the viral life cycle, although the molecular mechanisms have not been elucidated in many cases. However, accumulating evidence indicates that direct interaction of VPs with SFKs results in the activation of SFKs with subsequent (1) phosphorylation of VPs, which acquire new functional properties (Figure 2A-C), or (2) delocalization of SFKs to cell compartments targeted by specific VPs, where SFKs can exert their catalytic and non-catalytic action (Figure 2D), all these events often being well intertwined with one another. Although involved as apical molecular switches orchestrating virtually all cellular signaling pathways and sharing a highly similar structural arrangement, the single SFKs often demonstrate a differentiated responsiveness to VPs, which depends on the inbuilt properties of the kinase structure and the mode of interaction with VPs, especially with respect to the SH3 and SH2 domains, resulting in remarkably

Table 1 List of the viral proteins described in this review

Protein	Virus	Src family kinase	Phosphorylation sites (tyrosines)
Polyoma middle-T antigen	Polyomavirus	Src and Fyn	Y250, Y315 and Y322
Tyrosine kinase interacting protein	Herpesvirus saimiri	Lck	Y114 and Y127
Tegument protein VP11/12	Herpes simplex virus	Lck	Y not identified
Accessory viral protein X	Human immunodeficiency viruses and Simian immunodeficiency viruses	Fyn	Y66, Y69 and Y71
Latent membrane protein 2A	Epstein-Barr virus	Lyn	Y74 and Y85
Non-structural protein 5A	Hepatitis C virus	Src	Y not identified
Accessory protein Nef	Human immunodeficiency viruse-1	SFKs	None
Non-structural 1	Avian influenza virus	Src	None
Accessory protein p13	Human T-cell leukemia virus type 1	SFKs	None
RNA-dependent RNA polymerase non-structural protein 5B	Hepatitis C virus	Src	None

SFKs: Src family kinases; VP: Viral protein.

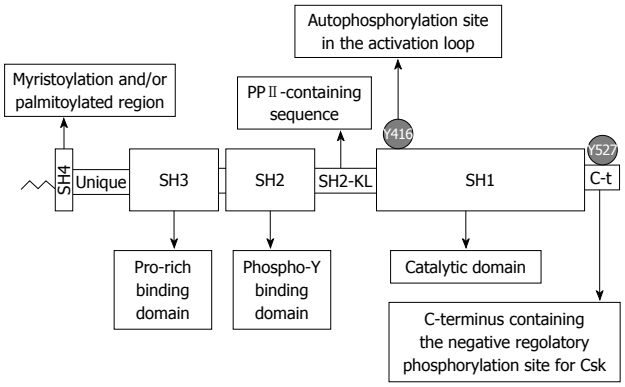


Figure 1 Diagram representing the domain organization of Src family kinases. As reported in the text, the C-terminus (C-t in the figure) when phosphorylated at Tyr527 binds to the Src homology (SH)2 domain and the polyproline type Ⅱ helical motif (PP Ⅱ) motif in the SH2 kinase linker (SH2-KL in the figure) engages the SH3 domain, thus inducing an inactive conformation. Disruption of these inhibitory interactions, in the case of viruses mostly induced by proteins bearing tyrosine phosphorylated or proline-rich motifs, leads to the full activation of Src family kinases.

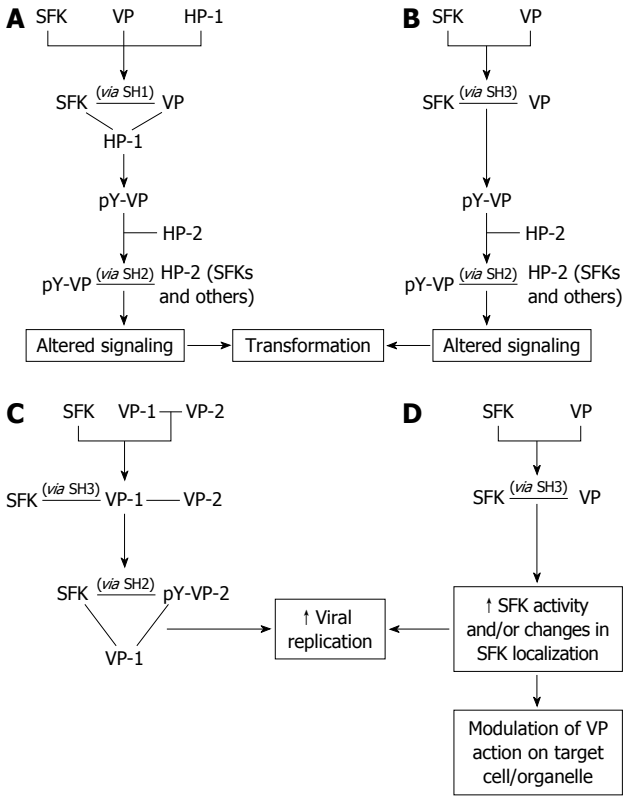


Figure 2 Models of mechanisms connecting viral proteins and Src family kinases and downstream effects. Viral proteins bind to the various modular domains of Src family kinases (SFKs), with (A) or without (B-D) concurrent association with other host proteins, resulting in the subsequent phosphorylation of the viral proteins (VPs) by which they are engaged (A, B), ultimately conferring new functional properties to VPs, or of different VPs to stabilize multiprotein complexes (C); Moreover, VPs may delocalize SFKs to different cell compartments, where SFKs in the activated form can process local substrates or act as non-catalytic mediators of the action of VPs themselves (D) (see text for further details regarding how specific VPs fit into each model. Solid lines indicate binding, arrows indicate downstream event. HP: Host protein; pY: Phosphotyrosine.

diverse effects on their non-redundant functions in a cellular scenario. This can be exemplified by VPs that can activate certain SFKs, but inhibit or leave unaffected others in the same cell type, as long as they are co-expressed. Hence, this observation, if considered in the more complex framework of the virus-host relationship, may help devise therapeutic strategies aimed at developing drugs capable of selectively disrupting VP-SFK interactions without altering signaling networks essential for the host cell life.

VPS AS SUBSTRATES FOR SFKS

The number of tyrosine phosphorylated VPs is, for the time being, rather small and these mostly include molecules from classes of viruses that can establish chronic infections, such as herpesviridae, polyomaviridae and retroviridae, among others (Table 1).

The polyoma middle-T (MT) antigen, an early product of the viral lytic cycle of the polyomavirus, which is known to contribute to the onset of multiple tumors, is phosphorylated by Src and Fyn at tyrosines that become docking sites for molecules essential for downstream signaling [*e.g.*, PLCγ, phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K) and Shc][11]. This multiprotein complex then mimics a

constantly activated growth factor receptor at the plasma membrane. Importantly, a preliminary step for SFKs to phosphorylate the MT is their activation, which occurs upon binding of their SH1 domain to the MT itself and concurrently to the dimeric core of the serine/threonine protein phosphatase 2A, which acts as a scaffold between the MT and SFKs[12,13] (modeled in Figure 2A).

Another VP that associates to the plasma membrane and exhibits a transforming ability owing to phosphorylation by the SFK Lck is the tyrosine kinase interacting protein (Tip), an oncoprotein encoded by the genome of herpesvirus saimiri, a T-lymphotropic monkey herpes virus. Importantly, Lck phosphorylates Tip at different tyrosines responsible for binding the SH2 domains of various signaling molecules, among which are Lck itself, STAT3 and STAT6, all required for promoting the transformed phenotype[14,15]. Also in this case, the essential requirement for phosphorylation is the initial interaction between the SFK and the substrate, here mediated by Tip's sequence homologous to the C-terminus of SFKs and SH3-binding PRM with Lck[16]. The plasma membrane also serves as the anchoring site for VP11/12, a tegument protein residing between the capsid and the envelope of the herpes simplex virus immediately after viral entry, this VP being strongly phosphorylated by SFKs and hence modulating cellular signaling pathways[17]. Of note, the function of VP11/12 as a component of a signalosome differs from that exerted by VP11/12 itself in the virion assembly at the perinuclear cytoplasmic foci of the infected cells, whereby it also massively localizes. During T cell infection, VP11/12 behaves as an activator and a substrate of Lck, which phosphorylates VP11/12 at a number of tyrosines serving as docking sites for, at least as documented thus far, the SH2 domain of Lck itself and the PI3K regulatory subunit p85[18]. It is to be underlined that under these conditions Lck does not operate as a transducer of TCR signaling but triggers cellular processes peculiarly directed by VP11/12, which are still being investigated. Other aspects that remain to be explored are the mechanism of Lck activation and the mode of recognition of VP11/12 as a substrate by Lck, for which, on the basis of the examples mentioned above, an interaction between linear binding motifs in VP11/12 and the non-catalytic domains of the SFK may be required. Indeed, the primary sequence of VP11/12 exhibits several PRMs, which might provide an anchorage for the SFK-SH3 domain with subsequent structural changes from the inactive close to the active open conformation of SFKs, to the catalytic pocket of which the access of VP11/12 as substrate is then favored. That the phosphorylation of VPs and the interaction between specific motifs harbored by VPs and the modular domains of SFKs may be connected seems to be further confirmed by the findings regarding Vpx, an accessory protein of the human immunodeficiency virus type 2 (HIV-2) and the simian immunodeficiency virus[19]. This VP, which is coupled to the preintegration complex and localizes to the nuclei of infected cells, shuttles to the cytoplasm to be incorporated into the viral core and ensures efficient viral replication only if it becomes phosphorylated by the SFK Fyn (especially at Y66, 69 and Y71)[20]. This event is made possible by a preliminary interaction between Vpx PRMs and Fyn SH3 domain, which may bring Vpx to the Fyn catalytic domain[21].

The nature of the binding of other VPs that are tyrosine phosphorylated and bind to SFKs remains unclear, requiring in-depth examination. One instance may be latent membrane protein 2A (LMP2A), a VP encoded by Epstein-Barr virus genome in infected B cells, which, by sequestering proteins normally associated with the B cell receptor (BCR) in the absence of BCR-triggering antigens, mimics the latter with subsequent activation of downstream survival signaling pathways, hence altering normal B cell development[22]. In particular, it has recently ascertained that phosphorylation of LMP2A by Lyn, the most expressed SFK in B lymphocytes, exerts a dual role, namely as (1) an early requirement for the formation of the LMP2A-based signalosome through creation of docking sites for the Spleen tyrosine kinase (Syk), the SH2 domain-containing adapter protein B (Shb) and Lyn itself[23]; and as (2) a key regulatory event in the modulation of LMP2A-dependent signaling by degradation of various components of this multiprotein complex (Lyn and even LMP2A itself)[24]. Also in the case of LMP2A, it is not clear how Lyn becomes activated before phosphorylating the VP. In this respect, of the several PXXP motifs along the sequence of LMP2A, the N-terminal ones have only been tested for binding SH3 domains, proving unable to do so and thus leaving open the possibility that the C-terminal PP Ⅱ helical motif may be a site of interaction and activation for Lyn[23] (the basic mechanisms demonstrated or thought to underlie interaction and downstream effects of Tip, VP11/12, Vpx and LMP2A with SFKs are illustrated in Figure 2B).

An even more intricate case is represented by the non-structural protein 5A (NS5A) encoded by the genome of the hepatitis C virus (HCV), which is essential for HCV replication and virion assembly in hepatocytes[25]. This VP has recently been found to be phosphorylated at tyrosines within SH2-binding motifs, in addition to being highly phosphorylated at serine residues[26-28]. It also bears a conserved C-terminal PRM that has been shown to bind to the recombinant SH3 domains of Hck, Lck, Lyn and Fyn, but not Src, negatively affecting the activity of Hck, Lck and Lyn but stimulating that of Fyn[29]. Although not binding to Src *via* the SH3 domain thereof, NS5A interacts with the SH2 domain of this SFK after being phosphorylated in HCV-infected hepatocytes, an event which is critical for viral replication, and whereby Fyn, the only SFK activated by NS5A upon interaction mediated *via* SH3 domain, proves dispensable[27]. A possible mechanism for the phosphorylation of NS5A and subsequent SH2 domain-mediated interaction with Src is set forth in the next section and modeled in Figure 2C. Besides, in B cells, whereby infection by HCV causes mixed cryoglobulinemia and B cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, Fyn inter-

acts with NS5A through both its SH2 and SH3 domains in a tyrosine phosphorylation-dependent manner and by recognition of a PRM of NS5A itself, respectively, resulting in inhibition of viral replication in parallel with Fyn enhanced activity[28]. These data again confirm that VPs need to specifically select SFKs, whose non-redundant functions can be exploited to dictate the different steps of viral replication.

EFFECTS ON LOCATION AND ACTIVITY OF SFKS MEDIATED BY INTERACTION WITH VPS

The mechanisms leading to the phosphorylation of VPs described above seem to mainly point to the earlier binding of VPs to the SH3 domain of SFKs as the activation event for SFKs themselves, the newly phosphorylated tyrosines providing an anchorage for signaling molecules utilized by the virus for its own benefit, even for SFKs, among others. We shall hereafter illustrate a set of VPs that are still able to interact with the SH3 domain of SFKs and function as activators of SFKs without being their substrates (a general diagram is shown in Figure 2D). From this list, the well-characterized HIV-1 accessory protein Nef stands out, it being essential for virus replication and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome pathogenesis by interacting with various host cell proteins involved in immune recognition and survival, among which SFKs are targeted with high selectivity[30-32]. Among the many interaction motifs along its sequence, Nef harbors a highly conserved PxxPxR motif, which, together with a hydrophobic pocket in the core region[33], takes part in the interface between Nef and the SH3 domain of a few of SFKs, namely Hck and Lyn[33], thus causing disruption of the negative regulatory interaction between the SH2-kinase linker and the SH3 domain itself on the back of the kinase domain and subsequent activation. Of note, in spite of the high conservation of Nef's regions for binding to these SFKs, other determinants have emerged as critical in this function and also in influencing replication of HIV-1 variants. As an example, the R71T mutation occurring immediately upstream of the PRM has been correlated with a lower ability of Nef to bind SFKs as well as a decreased capability of the HIV-1 strain bearing this mutation of replicating[34]. At the cellular level, Nef activates and reroutes specific SFKs to the Golgi apparatus, the preferential subcellular localization of this VP, thereby optimizing the environmental conditions for viral replication and provoking severe alterations of the immune response. In macrophages, Nef is described as hijacking and activating Hck, localizing it to the Golgi apparatus and perturbing the N-glycosylation/trafficking processes by triggering the MAP kinase ERK-GRASP65 cascade[35,36]; instead, in T lymphocytes, Lck is directed by Nef from the plasma membrane to the trans-Golgi network, which prevents Lck from being recruited to the immunological synapse, whose altered formation in turn results in interfering with TCR signaling[37]. In contrast to Nef, whose role has been and still is being deeply explored, the pathophysiological consequences of the interaction of other VPs with SFKs are far from being totally clarified.

The non-structural 1 (NS1) protein of the avian influenza virus (AIV), a multifunctional protein with interferon-antagonistic properties, is a further example of the interaction between the SH3 domain of SFKs through PRMs of specific VPs as a means to mediate pathogenicity by viruses[38]. First being isolated in poultry and having exhibited high virulence and pathogenicity, it was also shown to cross the species barrier, involving human fatalities, especially in the Far East. The possibility that such a viral strain or new reassortants might cause severe pandemics generated a new interest in evaluating the pathogenicity determinant in the spread and pathogenesis of the disease[39,40]. NS1 possesses two functional domains, the N-terminal RNA-binding domain containing one nuclear localization signal as well as a SH2- binding motif targetable after phosphorylation of the tyrosine residue, and the C-terminal effector domain, with two PRMs, a further nuclear localization sequence and a PDZ binding motif. Of the PRMs, the first is generally conserved in all influenza genotypes and harbors the structural determinants for binding the SH3 domain of the PI3K regulatory subunit p85 (PI/LPxxP)[41], whereas the C-terminal has a certain variability that parallels its capability of interacting with the SH3 domain of and activating the SFK Src[42]. In this respect, only NS1 bearing the consensus sequence type 2 for binding SH3 domains of Src (PXXPXK/R), was able to enhance the SFK activity, which occurred in virus genotypes that caused the most severe human influenza pandemics in 1918 and killed turkeys in Italy in 1999 with heavy economic losses, whereas the viral strains that were mutated in this region did not affect SFK activity. To date, the function of an activated form of Src in AIV-infected cells is not fully clear, although it is thought that it may be related to the localization of the Src-NS1 complex.

Another prototype for the change in subcellular localization of SFKs induced by VPs is represented by the human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 accessory protein p13, although the data refer to experimental approaches *in vitro* or in cultured cells transfected with the single SFKs or p13 itself. p13 is known to localize to mitochondria thanks to its N-terminal mitochondrial localization signal, where it brings about an inward K^+ current across the inner mitochondrial membrane, leading to swelling, depolarization and increased respiratory chain activity[43]. Recently, p13 has been found to bind to the SH3 domain of SFKs by a well-defined C-terminal PRM and to act as a carrier for SFKs themselves into mitochondria, this new localization of SFKs resulting in (1) a sharp rise in intramitochondrial tyrosine phosphorylation; and (2) a significant mitigation of p13's aforementioned effects on mitochondria[44]. This observation seems to be in line with recent findings that strongly suggest a new role for SFKs as factors that help preserve mitochondrial structural and functional integrity under stressful conditions[45], thus further providing

novel insights into the catalytic and non-catalytic role of SFKs in virus-infected cells[46,47]. The complex relationship between such functions of SFKs and the physical interaction thereof with VPs fits into another model represented by the events that lead to the formation of the HCV replication complex, in which the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase NS5B and the above mentioned substrate for SFKs, NS5A, together with the SFK Src, take part[27]. The integrity of this multimolecular complex, which is essential in HCV replication, requires Src as a scaffold for promoting a tighter interaction between NS5A and NS5B, with both the modular SH2 and SH3 domains as well as the catalytic activity of Src being implicated. Interestingly, Src is the only SFK that does not bind to NS5A through its SH3 domain[26], whereas it recognizes the C-terminal proline-rich region containing a non-canonical SH3 binding motif within NS5B[27]. On the other hand, the SH2 domain of Src interacts with a yet-to-be-identified tyrosine phosphorylated binding motif within NS5A, respectively. Although the molecular mechanism underlying the formation of the complex is unknown, it is tempting to speculate that Src stabilizes the weak interaction between NS5A and NS5B by firstly recognizing the PRM of NS5B, although it does not display an optimal consensus for binding to the SH3 domain of SFKs, thus becoming activated and enabled to phosphorylate NS5A. Phosphotyrosines on NS5A can then be targeted as docking sites by Src, further strengthening the stability of the heterotrimer (Figure 2C). What we hereby again underscore is that VPs and cellular proteins, such as SFKs, complexed into a new operative unit can serve as a key to interpreting the intricate relationship between host cells and viruses in order to elaborate novel strategies to disrupt aberrant multiprotein associations.

CONCLUDING REMARKS AND PERSPECTIVES

The significance of SFKs as critical mediators in the life cycle of viruses has been widely shown by the effects of the inhibition of their enzymatic activity or of their expression as well as by those related to the interaction with specific VPs, as hereby briefly reviewed. Indeed, this latter issue has become a new important field of investigation, with great efforts aimed at dissecting the structural aspects that favor such interactions, in order to develop therapeutic strategies capable of disrupting them to hamper viral replication. Although the different domains of SFKs exhibit various potential anchorage sites for VPs, including the SH2 and the catalytic domain, these preferentially target the SH3 domain of SFKs by their PRMs (usually a class Ⅱ motif), which generally displays the consensus sequence PxΦPxK/R (where Φ stands for a hydrophobic residue). The PRM-bearing protein can then compete with and displace the PPⅡ within the SH2-kinase linker of SFKs, thus directly interacting with the SH3 domain and inducing the transition from the "closed" to the "open" conformation, with three possible outcomes: (1) altered localization of SFKs; (2) phosphorylation of the VP with generation of docking sites available for further interactions; and (3) hyperactivation of the kinase activity. This latter effect has been explained for Hck bound to Nef, but not thus far for other SFKs, through kinetic studies, which have highlighted that Nef's PRM induces a change in the conformation of the active site of Hck by an allosteric mechanism with a decrease in the K_M for ATP[48]. Of note, even if all SFKs share a common domain structure and a mode of regulation, VPs may display different abilities to interact with each single SFK and to affect their catalytic activity by their PRM. This wide variability in the response of the single SFKs demands a further effort to extend our knowledge on the structural determinants of the SH3 domain also outside of the interface binding the viral PRM, this possibly providing the ground for the prediction of recognition elements. From a therapeutic perspective, two main schools of thought have surfaced in addressing this issue, one arguing for the use of bioengineered polypeptides capable of interfering with SH3 binding of SFKs to VPs[49-51] and the other supporting the implementation of non-toxic kinase inhibitors that bind the catalytic groove of SFKs only if the VP:SFK complex is formed (*e.g.*, Nef:Hck)[52,53]. This latter approach would be remarkably useful in preventing unpleasant or harmful side effects, since such drugs would not affect the pool of uncomplexed SFKs involved in other cellular activities.

The data hereby summarized lead us to assume that, despite the widespread occurrence of PRMs on VPs and the existence of over 200 SH3 domains, PRMs are directed to specific host targets, among which SFKs are crucial actors in sustaining virus survival[54-56]. Besides, the interaction between SFKs and PRMs of VPs seems to be emerging as a novel issue of special interest in the light of their association with virulence of viral strains and the level of pathogenicity, as reported for AIV NS1[42] and HIV-1 Nef[33,34], with the enhancement of the kinase activity being a sort of epiphenomenon related the severity of disease. In this respect, retrospective studies on highly pathogenic virosis and structural analysis of PRM-bearing proteins as well as their effect on SFKs would open new perspectives and provide further hints for pharmaceutical research and clinical applications.

REFERENCES

1 **Welsch S**, Locker JK. Hijacking cellular garbage cans. *Cell Host Microbe* 2010; **7**: 424-426 [PMID: 20542246 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2010.05.014]

2 **Culver JN**, Padmanabhan MS. Virus-induced disease: altering host physiology one interaction at a time. *Annu Rev Phytopathol* 2007; **45**: 221-243 [PMID: 17417941 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.phyto.45.062806]

3 **Ingley E**. Src family kinases: regulation of their activities, levels and identification of new pathways. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008; **1784**: 56-65 [PMID: 17905674 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbapap.2007.08.012]

4 **Salvi M**, Brunati AM, Bordin L, La Rocca N, Clari G, Toninello A. Characterization and location of Src-dependent tyrosine phosphorylation in rat brain mitochondria. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2002; **1589**: 181-195 [PMID: 12007793 DOI:

10.1016/S0167-4889(02)00174-X]
5 **Parsons JT**, Weber MJ. Genetics of src: structure and functional organization of a protein tyrosine kinase. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 1989; **147**: 79-127 [PMID: 2482802 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-74697-0_3]
6 **Chong YP**, Ia KK, Mulhern TD, Cheng HC. Endogenous and synthetic inhibitors of the Src-family protein tyrosine kinases. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2005; **1754**: 210-220 [PMID: 16198159 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbapap.2005.07.027]
7 **Coyne CB**, Bergelson JM. Virus-induced Abl and Fyn kinase signals permit coxsackievirus entry through epithelial tight junctions. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 119-131 [PMID: 16413486 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2005.10.035]
8 **Huang WR**, Wang YC, Chi PI, Wang L, Wang CY, Lin CH, Liu HJ. Cell entry of avian reovirus follows a caveolin-1-mediated and dynamin-2-dependent endocytic pathway that requires activation of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) and Src signaling pathways as well as microtubules and small GTPase Rab5 protein. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 30780-30794 [PMID: 21705803 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.257154]
9 **Nogalski MT**, Chan G, Stevenson EV, Gray S, Yurochko AD. Human cytomegalovirus-regulated paxillin in monocytes links cellular pathogenic motility to the process of viral entry. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 1360-1369 [PMID: 21084488 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02090-10]
10 **Lütschg V**, Boucke K, Hemmi S, Greber UF. Chemotactic antiviral cytokines promote infectious apical entry of human adenovirus into polarized epithelial cells. *Nat Commun* 2011; **2**: 391 [PMID: 21750545 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms1391]
11 **Courtneidge SA**, Smith AE. Polyoma virus transforming protein associates with the product of the c-src cellular gene. *Nature* 1983; **303**: 435-439 [PMID: 6304524 DOI: 10.1038/303435a0]
12 **Zhou AY**, Ichaso N, Adamarek A, Zila V, Forstova J, Dibb NJ, Dilworth SM. Polyomavirus middle T-antigen is a transmembrane protein that binds signaling proteins in discrete subcellular membrane sites. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 3046-3054 [PMID: 21228238 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02209-10]
13 **Schaffhausen BS**, Roberts TM. Lessons from polyoma middle T antigen on signaling and transformation: A DNA tumor virus contribution to the war on cancer. *Virology* 2009; **384**: 304-316 [PMID: 19022468 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.09.042]
14 **Bauer F**, Hofinger E, Hoffmann S, Rösch P, Schweimer K, Sticht H. Characterization of Lck-binding elements in the herpesviral regulatory Tip protein. *Biochemistry* 2004; **43**: 14932-14939 [PMID: 15554700 DOI: 10.1021/bi0485068]
15 **Kim Y**, Kwon EK, Jeon JH, So I, Kim IG, Choi MS, Kim IS, Choi JK, Jung JU, Cho NH. Activation of the STAT6 transcription factor in Jurkat T-cells by the herpesvirus saimiri Tip protein. *J Gen Virol* 2012; **93**: 330-340 [PMID: 22012462 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.036087-0]
16 **Romir J**, Lilie H, Egerer-Sieber C, Bauer F, Sticht H, Muller YA. Crystal structure analysis and solution studies of human Lck-SH3; zinc-induced homodimerization competes with the binding of proline-rich motifs. *J Mol Biol* 2007; **365**: 1417-1428 [PMID: 17118402 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2006.10.058]
17 **Zahariadis G**, Wagner MJ, Doepker RC, Maciejko JM, Crider CM, Jerome KR, Smiley JR. Cell-type-specific tyrosine phosphorylation of the herpes simplex virus tegument protein VP11/12 encoded by gene UL46. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 6098-6108 [PMID: 18417566 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02121-07]
18 **Wagner MJ**, Smiley JR. Herpes simplex virus requires VP11/12 to activate Src family kinase-phosphoinositide 3-kinase-Akt signaling. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 2803-2812 [PMID: 21228233 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01877-10]
19 **Planelles V**, Barker E. Roles of Vpr and Vpx in modulating the virus-host cell relationship. *Mol Aspects Med* 2010; **31**: 398-406 [PMID: 20558198 DOI: 10.1016/j.mam.2010.05.002]
20 **Singhal PK**, Rajendra Kumar P, Subba Rao MR, Mahalingam S. Nuclear export of simian immunodeficiency virus Vpx protein. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 12271-12282 [PMID: 16987982 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00563-06]
21 **Pancio HA**, Vander Heyden N, Ratner L. The C-terminal proline-rich tail of human immunodeficiency virus type 2 Vpx is necessary for nuclear localization of the viral preintegration complex in nondividing cells. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 6162-6167 [PMID: 10846100 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.13.6162-6167.2000]
22 **Fruehling S**, Swart R, Dolwick KM, Kremmer E, Longnecker R. Tyrosine 112 of latent membrane protein 2A is essential for protein tyrosine kinase loading and regulation of Epstein-Barr virus latency. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 7796-7806 [PMID: 9733815]
23 **Dergai O**, Dergai M, Skrypkina I, Matskova L, Tsyba L, Gudkova D, Rynditch A. The LMP2A protein of Epstein-Barr virus regulates phosphorylation of ITSN1 and Shb adaptors by tyrosine kinases. *Cell Signal* 2013; **25**: 33-40 [PMID: 22975684 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2012.09.011]
24 **Rovedo M**, Longnecker R. Epstein-Barr virus latent membrane protein 2A preferentially signals through the Src family kinase Lyn. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 8520-8528 [PMID: 18579586 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00843-08]
25 **Macdonald A**, Harris M. Hepatitis C virus NS5A: tales of a promiscuous protein. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 2485-2502 [PMID: 15302943 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.80204-0]
26 **Macdonald A**, Crowder K, Street A, McCormick C, Harris M. The hepatitis C virus NS5A protein binds to members of the Src family of tyrosine kinases and regulates kinase activity. *J Gen Virol* 2004; **85**: 721-729 [PMID: 14993658 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.19691-0]
27 **Pfannkuche A**, Büther K, Karthe J, Poenisch M, Bartenschlager R, Trilling M, Hengel H, Willbold D, Häussinger D, Bode JG. c-Src is required for complex formation between the hepatitis C virus-encoded proteins NS5A and NS5B: a prerequisite for replication. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1127-1136 [PMID: 21480319 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24214]
28 **Nakashima K**, Takeuchi K, Chihara K, Horiguchi T, Sun X, Deng L, Shoji I, Hotta H, Sada K. HCV NS5A protein containing potential ligands for both Src homology 2 and 3 domains enhances autophosphorylation of Src family kinase Fyn in B cells. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e46634 [PMID: 23077515 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0046634]
29 **Shelton H**, Harris M. Hepatitis C virus NS5A protein binds the SH3 domain of the Fyn tyrosine kinase with high affinity: mutagenic analysis of residues within the SH3 domain that contribute to the interaction. *Virol J* 2008; **5**: 24 [PMID: 18267011 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-5-24]
30 **Fackler OT**, Baur AS. Live and let die: Nef functions beyond HIV replication. *Immunity* 2002; **16**: 493-497 [PMID: 11970873 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00307-2]
31 **Moarefi I**, LaFevre-Bernt M, Sicheri F, Huse M, Lee CH, Kuriyan J, Miller WT. Activation of the Src-family tyrosine kinase Hck by SH3 domain displacement. *Nature* 1997; **385**: 650-653 [PMID: 9024665 DOI: 10.1038/385650a0]
32 **Alvarado JJ**, Betts L, Moroco JA, Smithgall TE, Yeh JI. Crystal structure of the Src family kinase Hck SH3-SH2 linker regulatory region supports an SH3-dominant activation mechanism. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 35455-35461 [PMID: 20810664 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.145102]
33 **Lee CH**, Saksela K, Mirza UA, Chait BT, Kuriyan J. Crystal structure of the conserved core of HIV-1 Nef complexed with a Src family SH3 domain. *Cell* 1996; **85**: 931-942 [PMID: 8681387 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)81276-3]
34 **Grzesiek S**, Bax A, Clore GM, Gronenborn AM, Hu JS, Kaufman J, Palmer I, Stahl SJ, Wingfield PT. The solution structure of HIV-1 Nef reveals an unexpected fold and permits delineation of the binding surface for the SH3 domain of Hck tyrosine protein kinase. *Nat Struct Biol* 1996; **3**: 340-345 [PMID: 8599760 DOI: 10.1038/nsb0496-340]
35 **Hassan R**, Suzu S, Hiyoshi M, Takahashi-Makise N, Ueno T, Agatsuma T, Akari H, Komano J, Takebe Y, Motoyoshi K, Okada S. Dys-regulated activation of a Src tyroine kinase

Hck at the Golgi disturbs N-glycosylation of a cytokine receptor Fms. *J Cell Physiol* 2009; **221**: 458-468 [PMID: 19585521 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.21878]
36 **Hiyoshi M**, Takahashi-Makise N, Yoshidomi Y, Chutiwitoonchai N, Chihara T, Okada M, Nakamura N, Okada S, Suzu S. HIV-1 Nef perturbs the function, structure, and signaling of the Golgi through the Src kinase Hck. *J Cell Physiol* 2012; **227**: 1090-1097 [PMID: 21567396 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.22825]
37 **Pan X**, Rudolph JM, Abraham L, Habermann A, Haller C, Krijnse-Locker J, Fackler OT. HIV-1 Nef compensates for disorganization of the immunological synapse by inducing trans-Golgi network-associated Lck signaling. *Blood* 2012; **119**: 786-797 [PMID: 22123847 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2011-08-373209]
38 **Hale BG**, Randall RE, Ortín J, Jackson D. The multifunctional NS1 protein of influenza A viruses. *J Gen Virol* 2008; **89**: 2359-2376 [PMID: 18796704 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.2008/004606-0]
39 **Hale BG**, Steel J, Manicassamy B, Medina RA, Ye J, Hickman D, Lowen AC, Perez DR, García-Sastre A. Mutations in the NS1 C-terminal tail do not enhance replication or virulence of the 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza A virus. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 1737-1742 [PMID: 20237225 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.020925-0]
40 **Hale BG**, Steel J, Medina RA, Manicassamy B, Ye J, Hickman D, Hai R, Schmolke M, Lowen AC, Perez DR, García-Sastre A. Inefficient control of host gene expression by the 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza A virus NS1 protein. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 6909-6922 [PMID: 20444891 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00081-10]
41 **Zhang DG**, Li WZ, Wang GF, Su Y, Zeng J, Zhang C, Zeng XX, Chen XX, Xu YX, Li KS. Heterologous SH3-p85beta inhibits influenza A virus replication. *Virol J* 2010; **7**: 170 [PMID: 20653952 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-7-170]
42 **Bavagnoli L**, Dundon WG, Garbelli A, Zecchin B, Milani A, Parakkal G, Baldanti F, Paolucci S, Volmer R, Tu Y, Wu C, Capua I, Maga G. The PDZ-ligand and Src-homology type 3 domains of epidemic avian influenza virus NS1 protein modulate human Src kinase activity during viral infection. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e27789 [PMID: 22110760 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0027789]
43 **Silic-Benussi M**, Biasiotto R, Andresen V, Franchini G, D'Agostino DM, Ciminale V. HTLV-1 p13, a small protein with a busy agenda. *Mol Aspects Med* 2010; **31**: 350-358 [PMID: 20332002 DOI: 10.1016/j.mam.2010.03.001]
44 **Tibaldi E**, Venerando A, Zonta F, Bidoia C, Magrin E, Marin O, Toninello A, Bordin L, Martini V, Pagano MA, Brunati AM. Interaction between the SH3 domain of Src family kinases and the proline-rich motif of HTLV-1 p13: a novel mechanism underlying delivery of Src family kinases to mitochondria. *Biochem J* 2011; **439**: 505-516 [PMID: 21732913 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20101650]
45 **Gringeri E**, Carraro A, Tibaldi E, D'Amico FE, Mancon M, Toninello A, Pagano MA, Vio C, Cillo U, Brunati AM. Lyn-mediated mitochondrial tyrosine phosphorylation is required to preserve mitochondrial integrity in early liver regeneration. *Biochem J* 2010; **425**: 401-412 [PMID: 19832701 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20090902]
46 **Obata Y**, Fukumoto Y, Nakayama Y, Kuga T, Dohmae N, Yamaguchi N. The Lyn kinase C-lobe mediates Golgi export of Lyn through conformation-dependent ACSL3 association. *J Cell Sci* 2010; **123**: 2649-2662 [PMID: 20605918 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.066266]
47 **García-Martínez JM**, Calcabrini A, González L, Martín-Forero E, Agulló-Ortuño MT, Simon V, Watkin H, Anderson SM, Roche S, Martín-Pérez J. A non-catalytic function of the Src family tyrosine kinases controls prolactin-induced Jak2 signaling. *Cell Signal* 2010; **22**: 415-426 [PMID: 19892015 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2009.10.013]
48 **Pene-Dumitrescu T**, Shu ST, Wales TE, Alvarado JJ, Shi H, Narute P, Moroco JA, Yeh JI, Engen JR, Smithgall TE. HIV-1 Nef interaction influences the ATP-binding site of the Src-family kinase, Hck. *BMC Chem Biol* 2012; **12**: 1 [PMID: 22420777 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6769-12-1]
49 **Hiipakka M**, Huotari P, Manninen A, Renkema GH, Saksela K. Inhibition of cellular functions of HIV-1 Nef by artificial SH3 domains. *Virology* 2001; **286**: 152-159 [PMID: 11448168 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2001.0973]
50 **Breuer S**, Schievink SI, Schulte A, Blankenfeldt W, Fackler OT, Geyer M. Molecular design, functional characterization and structural basis of a protein inhibitor against the HIV-1 pathogenicity factor Nef. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e20033 [PMID: 21625496 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0020033]
51 **Bouchet J**, Basmaciogullari SE, Chrobak P, Stolp B, Bouchard N, Fackler OT, Chames P, Jolicoeur P, Benichou S, Baty D. Inhibition of the Nef regulatory protein of HIV-1 by a single-domain antibody. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 3559-3568 [PMID: 21292773 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-07-296749]
52 **Emert-Sedlak L**, Kodama T, Lerner EC, Dai W, Foster C, Day BW, Lazo JS, Smithgall TE. Chemical library screens targeting an HIV-1 accessory factor/host cell kinase complex identify novel antiretroviral compounds. *ACS Chem Biol* 2009; **4**: 939-947 [PMID: 19807124 DOI: 10.1021/cb900195c]
53 **Dikeakos JD**, Atkins KM, Thomas L, Emert-Sedlak L, Byeon IJ, Jung J, Ahn J, Wortman MD, Kukull B, Saito M, Koizumi H, Williamson DM, Hiyoshi M, Barklis E, Takiguchi M, Suzu S, Gronenborn AM, Smithgall TE, Thomas G. Small molecule inhibition of HIV-1-induced MHC-I down-regulation identifies a temporally regulated switch in Nef action. *Mol Biol Cell* 2010; **21**: 3279-3292 [PMID: 20702582 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E10-05-0470]
54 **Kärkkäinen S**, Hiipakka M, Wang JH, Kleino I, Vähä-Jaakkola M, Renkema GH, Liss M, Wagner R, Saksela K. Identification of preferred protein interactions by phage-display of the human Src homology-3 proteome. *EMBO Rep* 2006; **7**: 186-191 [PMID: 16374509 DOI: 10.1038/sj.embor.7400596]
55 **Carducci M**, Licata L, Peluso D, Castagnoli L, Cesareni G. Enriching the viral-host interactomes with interactions mediated by SH3 domains. *Amino Acids* 2010; **38**: 1541-1547 [PMID: 19882298 DOI: 10.1007/s00726-009-0375-z]
56 **Ren X**, Hurley JH. Proline-rich regions and motifs in trafficking: from ESCRT interaction to viral exploitation. *Traffic* 2011; **12**: 1282-1290 [PMID: 21518163 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0854.2011.01208.x]

P- Reviewers Choi TJ, Liu XY **S- Editor** Jiang L
L- Editor Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.79

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 79-90
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Viral manipulation of cellular protein conjugation pathways: The SUMO lesson

Domenico Mattoscio, Chiara V Segré, Susanna Chiocca

Domenico Mattoscio, Chiara V Segré, Susanna Chiocca, Department of Experimental Oncology, European Institute of Oncology, Via Adamello 16, 20139 Milan, Italy
Author contributions: Mattoscio D, Segré CV and Chiocca S wrote the paper.
Correspondence to: Susanna Chiocca, PhD, Department of Experimental Oncology, European Institute of Oncology, Via Adamello 16, 20139 Milan, Italy. susanna.chiocca@ieo.eu
Telephone: +39-2-57489835 Fax: +39-2-94375990
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: January 23, 2013
Accepted: February 5, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO)ylation is a key post-translational modification mechanism that controls the function of a plethora of proteins and biological processes. Given its central regulatory role, it is not surprising that it is widely exploited by viruses. A number of viral proteins are known to modify and/or be modified by the SUMOylation system to exert their function, to create a cellular environment more favorable for virus survival and propagation, and to prevent host antiviral responses. Since the SUMO pathway is a multi-step cascade, viral proteins engage with it at many levels, to advance and favor each stage of a typical infection cycle: replication, viral assembly and immune evasion. Here we review the current knowledge on the interplay between the host SUMO system and viral lifecycle.

Key words: Virus; Small ubiquitin-like modifier; Small ubiquitin-like modifier-ylation; Exploitation; Virus assembly; Immune evasion; Innate immunity

Mattoscio D, Segré CV, Chiocca S. Viral manipulation of cellular protein conjugation pathways: The SUMO lesson. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 79-90 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/79.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.79

INTRODUCTION

Pathogenic organisms possess the remarkable ability to hijack the cellular machinery of host cells to their advantage. Viruses in particular manipulate several physiological cellular pathways to prevent antiviral responses and to create an environment that facilitates their survival and propagation.

A common strategy to create a more conducive milieu to viral development consists in exploiting cellular post-translational modifications (PTMs) mechanisms.

Between the numerous PTMs occurring in cells, small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO)ylation is emerging as a key PTM that controls the function of a plethora of proteins and biological processes. Hence, given its central regulatory role, the SUMOylation pathway is widely exploited by viruses, whose proteins can either modify and/or be modified by the SUMOylation system with various consequences.

The aim of this review is therefore focused on the mechanisms through which viruses exploit the SUMOylation pathway and the implications for viral infections and diseases. First, we will describe the general characteristics of the SUMO cycle and the enzymes involved in this pathway. Next, we will give a comprehensive overview on the latest findings on viral proteins and SUMOylation interplay, focusing in particular on the mechanisms that can promote viral infections by altering the SUMO system.

SUMO PATHWAY

The SUMO is a member of the ubiquitin-like proteins (Ubls) family. The common feature of Ubls is that they

are attached to a target protein amino group of a lysine residue through similar but distinct enzymatic cascades[1]. After conjugation, Ubls reversibly alter protein functions, without the need for new protein synthesis, thus providing cells with a rapid and versatile mechanism to quickly respond to changes in the surrounding environment.

SUMOylation was identified as a reversible PTM in 1996[2,3]. There are four different genes in the human genome coding for the different SUMO modifiers: SUMO-1, -2, -3 and -4. SUMO-2 and -3 are nearly identical in sequence, differing from each other by only three N-terminal residues, and are therefore collectively referred to as SUMO-2/3[4]. On the contrary, SUMO-2/3 significantly diverge from SUMO-1, sharing only about 45% similarity with its sequence[5]. Finally, a SUMO-4 isoform has been described[6], which shares 86% homology with SUMO-2. In humans, while SUMO-1 and SUMO-2/3 are ubiquitous, SUMO-4 expression seems to be restricted to kidneys, lymph nodes and spleen[6].

SUMO-1 conjugation has been implicated in the regulation of physiological processes because it is virtually all bound to target proteins, while SUMO-2/3 appears to be more widely expressed as a pool of free non-conjugated proteins, readily available for stress responses[4]. SUMO-4 is probably not conjugated under normal conditions and its biological role is still unclear[7]. Moreover, the different SUMO paralogs do preferentially conjugate some substrates[4,8,9], although other proteins can be equally modified by SUMO-1 or SUMO-2/3[8,10,11].

SUMO attachment to target proteins is mediated by enzymatic reactions (schematized in Figure 1) that catalyze the formation of an isopeptide bond between the SUMO C-terminus and the ε-amino group of an internal lysine in the target, generally but not necessarily found within a SUMO modification consensus motif, ψKxE[12,13] (where ψ is a bulky aliphatic residue, X is any residue).

Interestingly, SUMO-2/3 also bear the ψKxE motif and therefore can be SUMOylated, forming chains on substrate proteins through their internal lysine residue[14]. Although the formation of SUMO-1 chains has also been observed both *in vitro* and *in vivo via* non canonical consensus sites[15-17], usually SUMO-1 acts as terminator of SUMO-2/3 polymeric chains[15]. Although target proteins are predominantly conjugated to monomeric SUMO, SUMO chains also play roles in replication, turnover of SUMO targets, mitosis and meiosis[18].

SUMO proteins are 11 kDa and, similarly to most other Ubls, are synthesized as inactive precursor proteins carrying an extension of variable length (ranging from 2 to 11 amino acids). These primary translated products undergo a C-terminal cleavage to expose the diglycine motif that will be linked to the target proteins. Removal of this C-terminal end is mediated by a specific protease belonging to the sentrin-specific proteases (SENPs) family[19]. In addition to its role in SUMO processing, SENP activity is also required for SUMO depolymerization and deconjugation from its substrates[19], as detailed below.

The mature form of SUMO is conjugated to the target

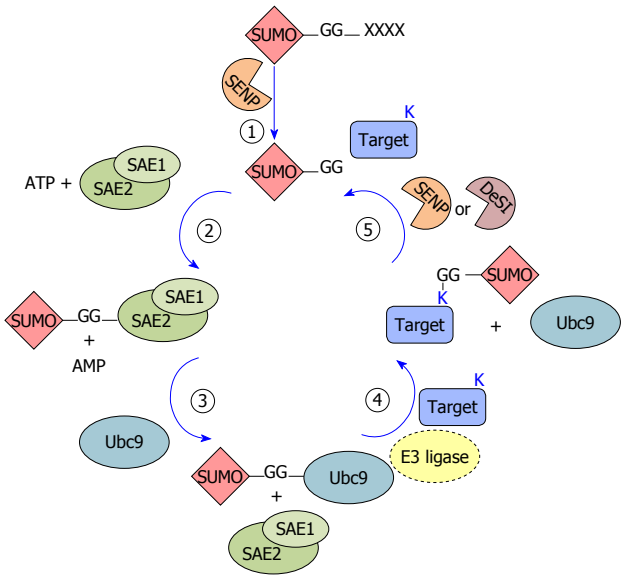


Figure 1 Schematic representation of the small ubiquitin-like modifier conjugation enzymatic cascade. The cartoon schematically represents the enzymatic steps of small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO) protein conjugation on lysines of substrate proteins. 1: SUMO protein precursors are processed by SUMO proteases (SENP) that remove the C-terminal tetrapeptide (X) and free the diglycine motif (-GG); 2: The mature form of SUMO is activated by adenylation at the C-terminal diglycine motif by the E1 enzyme (the SUMO activating enzyme, SAE1-SAE2 or AOS1-UBA2) promoting a thioester bond with a conserved Cys of the E1 enzyme; 3: SUMO is then transferred to a Cys on the E2 conjugating enzyme (Ubc9) forming an E2-SUMO thioester; 4: An isopeptide bond is formed between the diglycine motif of SUMO and a lysine (K) residue in the substrate. E3 ligases are dispensable *in vitro* but most likely required *in vivo*; 5: SUMO proteins are removed from substrates by the action of SUMO proteases (SENPs) or DeSumoylating-isopeptidase (DeSI) and free SUMO proteins are available for another cycle of conjugation.

proteins by a three-step enzymatic cascade, very similar to the ubiquitin pathway but involving different enzymes: E1 activating enzyme, E2 conjugating enzyme and E3 ligases (Figure 1).

SUMO E1 is a 110 kDa protein, composed of a heterodimer of SUMO-activating enzyme subunit (SAE) 1/2 subunits (also known as AOS1-UBA2[20,21]). During each conjugation cycle, SAE1/2 activate SUMO proteins[20] through the formation of a high-energy thioester bond between SAE2 and the C-terminal portion of SUMO[22]. Activated SUMO is then transferred[22] to the E2 enzyme ubiquitin-conjugating 9 (Ubc9). Opposite to the ubiquitin pathway, where numerous conjugating enzymes have been described, Ubc9 is the only known SUMO-conjugating enzyme[23,24] and is essential for viability in most eukaryotes[25]. Although Ubc9 itself can transfer SUMO to targets[26], specific SUMO E3 ligases are required for efficient modification.

SUMO E3 ligases can be classified into three groups on the basis of their similarity to the ubiquitin E3 ligases and in their mechanism of action, but they share the ability to act as a bridge between the Ubc9-SUMO complex and the target protein, functioning as substrate recognizers[27]. The first group encompasses members of the protein inhibitor of activated STAT (PIAS) family (PIAS1, PIAS3, PIASxα, PIASxβ and PIASy, reviewed in[28]). In

addition to the PIAS proteins, other secretory protein (SP)-RING domain-containing proteins function as SUMO E3 ligases (TOPORS[29], MUL1[30] and MMS21[31]). All these members contain a RING domain (SP, Siz/PIAS-RING) similar to the one found in ubiquitin E3 ligases. The second group is represented exclusively by the nucleoporin RanBP2 that seems to act as a composite E3 ligase in the RanBP2/RanGAP1*SUMO1/Ubc9 complex[32]. The third group comprises E3 ligases lacking the RING-domain such as the polycomb member Pc2[33], histone deacetylase (HDAC)4[34], HDAC7[35], the G-protein Rhes[36], the RNA-binding protein translocated in liposarcoma[37] and tumor-necrosis-factor-associated protein 7[38]. Moreover, members of the diverse tripartite motif (TRIM) family have been very recently discovered as a new group of SUMO E3 ligases, requiring TRIM (defined by a RING domain, one or two zinc-binding domains and a coiled-coil dimerization region) to stimulate the conjugation of both SUMO-1 and SUMO-2/3 to target proteins[39,40].

SUMOylation is a reversible process, governed by SUMO-specific proteases belonging to the SENP family and by the recently found DeSumoylating-isopeptidase (DeSI) proteins. Six true human SENP proteins have been described so far (SENP1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7), differing in their cellular distribution, selectivity for SUMO maturation and deconjugation towards different SUMO paralogs[41]. SENP1 and SENP2 are specific for both SUMO-1 and SUMO-2/3 processing and deconjugation, while SENP3 and SENP5 act preferentially on SUMO2/3. SENP6 and SENP7 seem involved mainly in deconjugating SUMO2/3 chains (see[41] and citations therein). Finally, SENP8 shows substrate specificity to another Ubl, NEDD8[42]. All the SENPs localize to the nucleus or nucleus-associated structures; on the contrary, DeSI (-1 and -2) proteins localize also in the cytoplasm and show deSUMOylating but not processing activity for SUMO1 and for both monomeric and polymeric SUMO2/3 chains[43].

Most cellular SUMO targets are transcription factors and usually SUMOylation exerts an inhibitory effect on their transactivating activity[44], by sequestering the transcription factor in ProMyelocyticLeukemia nuclear bodies (PML-NBs)[45], a nuclear domain whose assembly requires an active and efficient SUMOylation pathway[46].

Usually, after undergoing SUMOylation, the substrate protein is recognized by a binding partner containing a SUMO-interaction motif (SIM)[47]. This interplay can lead to an altered binding with interacting proteins or DNA, promotes the recruitment of another SIM-containing effector, and affects the stability, localization or enzymatic activity of the SUMOylated protein. Through these mechanisms, SUMOylation regulates a number of cellular processes, such as transcriptional regulation, mRNA maturation, meiosis, mitosis, chromatin remodeling, ion channel activity, cell growth and apoptosis (reviewed in[48]).

Therefore, because of SUMOylation marked involvement in the regulation of cell functions, it is easy to understand why viruses have evolved a variety of mechanisms to exploit this system to their advantage.

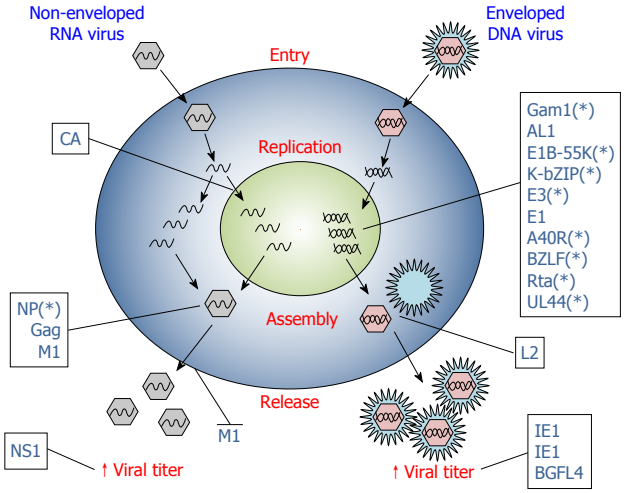


Figure 2 Viral proteins exploit small ubiquitin-like modifier at different steps of virus lifecycle. Scheme representing the different stages of viral infection (entry, replication, assembly, release) in host cells. Viral proteins interact with the small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO) machinery to promote different steps of viral life cycle, as represented. Viral proteins are designed with their acronym. The asterisk (*) indicates that the marked viral protein has not been formally shown to directly influence viral life cycle by exploiting SUMOylation, but indications of a mechanistic link are known. See text for further details on exploitation of the SUMO machinery by single viral proteins.

MANIPULATION OF THE SUMO PATHWAY: A VERSATILE SWITCH TO PROMOTE VIRAL LIFESPAN

Many different viral proteins have been characterized for their ability to interact with the SUMO pathway. Since the SUMO pathway is a multi-step cascade, viral proteins can interact with and exploit it at many levels, in order to promote each stage of a typical infection cycle (Table 1). Indeed, viruses can utilize the SUMO cellular machinery to support viral persistence and replication, assembly of the virus, and to avoid the host immune system.

In the following sections we will detail some examples of the current knowledge about the interplay between SUMO dysregulation and viral lifecycle.

SUMOylation and viral replication

Viruses lack some of the components required to replicate their genetic material and therefore need to redirect cell activities to promote their own reproduction. A large body of evidence supports a role for SUMOylation in replication of many viruses. In particular, viruses can subvert the transcriptional profile or the proliferation activity of the host cell, dysregulate the host cell cycle or interfere with the apoptotic process, or exploit SUMOylation to regulate the transcriptional activity of viral proteins involved in virus replication (Figure 2). Here we will describe only some illustrative examples of the strategies used by viruses to promote their own replication using the SUMOylation machinery. In fact, there are many other viral proteins known to interact with and/or modify the SUMO pathway and in many cases the bio-

Table 1 Viral life cycle and small ubiquitin-like modifier pathway

Virus	Protein	Interaction with SUMO	Proposed impact on viral or cellular activity	Ref.
Chicken embryo lethal orphan Adenovirus	Gam1	Overall SUMOylation decrease through SAE1/2 degradation and reduced Ubc9 expression	Cellular transcriptional activation	[49,50]
			PML-NBs dispersion	[51]
		Interference with HDAC1 SUMOylation	Cellular transcriptional activation	[51]
Geminivirus	AL1	Promotes SUMOylation of selected host factors	Viral replication	[57,58]
Adenovirus	E1B-55K	E3 ligase SUMO-1 specific	Regulator of cell cycle and apoptosis	[59,60]
		SUMOylated	Cellular transformation	[63]
			Interaction with PML-NBs	[62,64]
Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus	K-bZip	E3 ligase SUMO-2/3 specific	Regulator of cell cycle and apoptosis	[66]
		SUMOylated	Cellular transcriptional repression	[65,66]
	K-Rta	E3 ubiquitin ligase activity against SUMOylated proteins	PML-NBs dispersion	[119]
Vaccinia	E3	SUMOylated	Regulator of apoptosis	[69]
	A40R	SUMOylated	Viral replication	[74]
Bovine papillomavirus	E1	SUMOylated	Viral replication	[71,72]
Human papillomavirus	L2	SUMOylated	Viral capsid assembly	[93]
		Increase in cellular SUMO 2/3 conjugation		[93]
Moloney murine leukemia	CA	SUMOylated	Viral replication	[75]
Influenza A	NS1	SUMOylated	Viral replication	[78]
Cytomegalovirus	IE1	SUMOylated	Viral replication	[80,81]
		Interaction with selected host factors SUMOylated	PML dispersion	[123]
	IE2	Interaction with SUMOylated proteins	Viral replication	[82]
		SUMOylated	Viral replication	[83]
	UL44	Interaction with Ubc9	Viral replication	[84]
Epstein-Barr	BZLF1	SUMOylated	Reactivation of latent infections	[85,86,88]
	Rta	SUMOylated	Reactivation of latent infections	[89]
	BGLF4	Interaction with SUMOylated proteins	Viral replication and reactivation of latent infections	[91]
			PML-NBs dispersion	
Hantaan	NP	Interaction with Ubc9 and SUMO-1	Virus assembly	[95,96]
Mason-Pfizer; human immunodeficiency	Gag	Interaction with Ubc9	Virus assembly	[97] [98-100]
Influenza A	M1	SUMOylated	Virus assembly	[102,103]
Ebola Zaire	VP35	Promotes SUMOylation of selected host factors	IFN inhibition	[109,111]
Herpes simplex type-1	ICP0	E3 ubiquitin ligase activity against SUMOylated proteins	PML-NBs dispersion	[115-117]
Varicella zoster	ORF61	Interaction with SUMOylated proteins	PML-NBs dispersion	[120,121]
Encephalomyocarditis	3C	Interaction with selected host factors	PML degradation	[122]

The table schematizes known viral proteins interacting with the small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO) pathway, with a brief description of their relationship with the SUMOylation machinery and the proposed biological outcome. References are also reported (see text for further details). SAE: SUMO-activating enzyme subunit; HDAC: Histone deacetylase; PML-NBs: ProMyelocyticLeukaemia nuclear bodies; IFN: Interferon.

logical significance of this interplay is still obscure.

A hallmark of viral infection is the increase of host transcription to sustain viral replication. Gam1 is an early gene expressed by chicken embryo lethal orphan (CELO) Adenovirus that has the remarkable ability to inhibit global SUMOylation. Work from our group demonstrated that Gam1 decreases the overall SUMOylation by interaction and consequent degradation of the E1 heterodimer[49,50]. Specifically, Gam1 recruits both SAE1 and SAE2 into Cul2/5-EloB/C-Roc1 ubiquitin ligase complexes and subsequently targets SAE1 for ubiquitylation and degradation. SAE2 depletion is not tightly related to Gam1, but is rather an effect of SAE1 disappearance[50].

We also observed that Ubc9 levels are reduced upon Gam1 expression, by a yet undefined mechanism[49]. Furthermore, Gam1 disperses PML-NBs concomitant to a strong loss of SUMO-1 from the nucleus[51]. As SUMO conjugation to many transcription factors represses their activities[48], the overall decrease in SUMO conjugation caused by Gam1 could increase cellular transcriptional activity, which in turn could facilitate viral replication. Gam1 also interferes with SUMOylation of endogenous proteins such as HDAC1[51]. HDAC1 SUMOylation has an impact on the transcriptional repressive potential of the deacetylase[52,53]. Moreover, HDAC1-containing chromatin remodeling complexes are known to be exploited by viruses to regulate the progression of their infection[54]. Interestingly, a replication deficient ΔGam1 CELO virus[55] can be rescued by HDAC inhibitors treatment[56], suggesting the existence of a cross talk between cellular SUMOylation and acetylation that can be subverted and exploited by Gam1, an essential gene for CELO replication[55].

While Gam1 promotes broad changes in the global SUMOylation pattern of the host cell, AL1 protein encoded by the plant pathogen Geminivirus alters the SUMOylation status of only selected proteins[57]. AL1 is the only plant pathogen protein described so far as interacting with the SUMO pathway[58], by associating with

the plant E2 conjugating enzyme SCE1. As mentioned, AL1-SCE1 complex in plants does not produce an overall alteration of host proteins, but seems to modulate the SUMOylation level of selected host factors to create an environment suitable for viral infection.

E1B-55K is an Adenoviral early protein that functions as an E3 SUMO ligase that specifically conjugates SUMO-1 but not SUMO-2/3 to p53, inhibiting its transcriptional activity[59]. Indeed, expression of E1B-55K protein induces p53 SUMOylation[60] and E1KB-55K/p53 co-localization to PML-NBs, thus restricting p53 nuclear mobility in living cells[59]. p53 sequestration in PML-NBs seems to be a prerequisite to the altered p53 localization and activity observed in Adenovirus infected cells, preceding and addressing its ubiquitin-proteasome dependent degradation in cytoplasmic aggresomes[61]. Notably, E1B-55K associates with PML-NBs at early times after infection[62], as does p53[61]. Hence, since p53 is one of the most recognized regulators of cell cycle arrest and apoptosis, the p53-SUMO-1 conjugation could be a key event in the oncogenic transformation of primary cells induced by Adenoviruses. Interestingly, E1B-55K is also itself SUMOylated by all SUMO paralogs in a phosphorylation-dependent mechanism[63] and both SUMOylation[64] and phosphorylation[63] are required for its activity. In addition, the recent findings that E1B-55K itself interacts with Ubc9 strongly highlight that this viral protein extensively cooperates with the SUMO pathway to promote Adenovirus lifespan[63].

The K-bZIP protein encoded by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpes virus (KSHV) is another viral protein that utilizes the SUMO pathway to alter the host cell cycle. K-bZIP is a strong transcriptional repressor whose activity, similarly to E1-55K, depends on SUMOylation[65], catalyzed by K-bZip itself[66]. Other similarities to the adenoviral protein include the PML-NBs localization[65] and the ability to recruit p53 to PML-NBs[67]. Finally, K-bZIP also exhibits E3 SUMO ligase activity but, unlike E1-55K, shows preferential selectivity towards SUMO-2/3 paralogs[66]. Notably, p53 SUMO-2/3 conjugation catalyzed by K-bZIP enhances p53 transcription factor ability, suggesting a p53-mediated growth arrest by prolongation of the G1 phase of the cell cycle[66]. Growth arrest is a common outcome of herpes viruses infection[68], that poses the cell in a specific phase of the cell cycle, encouraging viral replication and protecting the host cells from undergoing apoptosis.

An additional viral protein that takes advantage of the SUMO pathway to regulate the cellular apoptotic process is the E3 protein encoded by Vaccinia virus. Indeed, recent findings[69] demonstrate that E3 SUMO-1 or SUMO-2 modification has a negative effect on E3 transcriptional transactivation of the p53-upregulated modulator of apoptosis and APAF-1 genes. Therefore, these results could indicate that SUMO conjugation is a negative regulator of the transcriptional activation of p53 by E3.

Also, bovine papillomavirus (BPV) E1, the major initiator protein for BPV replication[70], is SUMO modified but, opposite to Vaccinia virus E3, only by the SUMO-1 paralog[71]. This covalent modification is required for E1 intranuclear localization and influences viral replication activity[72].

A40R is another Vaccinia virus protein that interacts with the SUMO system to accomplish its function. Vaccinia are unique among DNA viruses because DNA replication occurs entirely in discrete cytoplasmic structures enveloped by endoplasmic reticulum (mini-nuclei) membrane, rather than in the nucleus of the infected host cell[73]. A40R gene product is SUMO-1 modified, but unlike what has been described so far, this modification appears to be very stable and not subjected to SENP deconjugating activity[74]. Consistently, all other viral proteins SUMO-1 modified are localized into the nucleus, while A40R-SUMO-1 expression has been found in the cytosolic side of endoplasmic reticulum, the same membranes that wrap the virus replication sites. The specific localization of A40R strongly suggests a role for SUMOylation in Vaccinia replication[74].

Also, Moloney murine leukemia retrovirus capsid protein (CA) utilizes a similar mechanism. In fact, this protein interacts simultaneously with both Ubc9 and E3 ligase PIASy[75], resulting in covalent transfer of SUMO-1 to CA. Surprisingly, suppression of SUMO-1 attachment by CA mutations at Ubc9 or PIASy binding sites blocks virus replication *in vivo*, but does not affect late stages of viral gene expression or virion assembly[75]. On the contrary, Rous sarcoma virus (RSV) CA-Ubc9 interaction and SUMO-1 conjugation does not influence RSV replication[76].

Nonstructural protein 1 (NS1) is one of the major factors involved in Influenza A virus replication[77]. NS1 is able to interact with human Ubc9 and is preferentially modified by SUMO-1[78]. This characteristic seems to be conserved among most Influenza virus strains, underlining the importance of SUMO modification in Influenza virus infection. SUMO-1 modification enhances the stability of NS1 and its ability to suppress host protein expression causing an acceleration in viral replication rate[78].

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) immediate early 1 (IE1) is a viral protein that acts as a key regulator of early events in virus infection cycle together with IE2. While IE2 activates a wide range of viral and cellular promoters, IE1 only modestly promotes both cellular and viral transcription[79]. However, SUMO modification of IE1 contributes to efficient CMV replication by enhancing the expression of IE2 mRNA derived from the same transcription unit, by a yet unidentified post-translational mechanism[80,81]. Furthermore, IE2 is also SUMOylated by both non-covalent and covalent SUMO-modification[82]. IE2 SUMOylation is necessary for the function of this viral transcription factor and for human CMV replication[82], opposite to the activities of most transcription factors that are regulated in a negative manner by SUMO attachment[44]. Importantly, IE2 also contains a SIM motif to interact with other SUMOylated partners, such as TAF12, a component of the transcription factor IID complex[83]. This interaction enhances the transactivation activity

of IE2, playing a further role in the progression of the CMV lytic cycle[83].

Recently, Loregian's group reported the first evidence of SUMOylation of a viral DNA-polymerase processivity factor: the UL44 protein from human CMV[84]. UL44 strongly binds to cellular Ubc9 and is widely SUMOylated during CMV infection, with accumulation at a later time post-infection. Interestingly, UL44 SUMOylation is dependent on its correct dimerization and proper DNA binding. CMV infection in cells overexpressing SUMO1 protein results in increased viral replication and viral titer, as well as a faster relocalization of UL44 from replicative foci, suggesting that UL44 SUMOylation could perhaps support later functions important for viral propagation[84].

Finally, other interesting examples of viral proteins SUMO-modified are Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), BZLF1 (also known as Zta), Rta and BGLF4 proteins.

EBV is usually maintained under latent conditions in B lymphocytes and to proliferate it must enter the lytic cycle driven by BZLF1 and Rta. BZLF1 is post-translationally modified by both SUMO-1[85] and SUMO-2/3[86]. BZLF1 is a transcriptional activator involved in the reactivation of EBV[87], allowing its switch from latent to lytic stage, characteristic of the EBV infection cycle. SUMOylation of BLZF1 plays a key role in this mechanism, negatively affecting its transcriptional activity. In fact, SUMOylated BLZF1 associates with HDAC3 and this association allocates HDAC3 to BLZF1-responsive promoters, repressing the transcription of BLZF1-induced genes[88]. Furthermore, the SUMO-mediated repression of BLZF1 is reverted by the action of a specific protein kinase (EBV-PK) that, by inhibiting BLZF1 SUMO-conjugation, promotes the transcription of BLZF1 target genes and replication of the viral genome[86].

Similarly, also Rta SUMOylation, mediated by the adaptor cellular protein RanBPM, enhances its transactivation activity and promotes viral replication of the latent EBV virus[89].

BGLF4 is a protein kinase that phosphorylates both viral and host proteins[90], strongly contributing to the EBV infection cycle. BGLF4 carries SIM motifs responsible for its binding to SUMO-2 conjugated proteins. The SUMO binding function of BGLF4, among others, is also required to enhance the production of extracellular virus during EBV lytic replication and to disperse PML-NBs[91]. Indeed, BGLF4 seems to inhibit SUMOylation, thus promoting activation of the EBV BZLF1 protein (see above), probably by SIM-mediated recruitment and phosphorylation on SUMOylated BZLF1[91].

SUMO and virus assembly

Virus assembly is the result of a series of protein-protein and protein-lipid interactions that permits localization of different viral components at sites of virus budding. Although specific for each virus strain, virus assembly typically involves the expression of late genes that direct capsid assembling and enveloping. Besides its key role in the activity of the early expressed viral proteins that drive viral replication, SUMOylation also plays fundamental roles in viral assembly processes (Figure 2).

L2, together with L1, is a structural protein of the human papillomavirus (HPV) capsid critical for the generation of infectious viral particles as well as in early events of HPV infection[92]. L2 is preferentially modified by SUMO2/3, affecting its stability[93]. In fact, SUMOylated L2 has an increased half-life compared to the non-SUMOylated mutant. Moreover, the effect of SUMOylation negatively affects L2 capacity to interact with its physiological interactor L1, suggesting a mechanism by which capsid assembly may be modulated in HPV infected cells[93]. Moreover, L2 also increases the overall SUMO-2/3 conjugation of host proteins[93].

Nucleocapsid protein (NP) of Hantaan virus (HTNV) is a structural protein that, through its oligomerization and ability to bind RNA[94], is involved in viral assembly in the infected cell. Ubc9 and SUMO-1 interaction with NP[95] determines its localization at the perinuclear region where viral replication occurs[96] and, therefore, could regulate the assembly of the HTNV. Notably, Ubc9 was also identified as a cellular protein that interacts with the Gag protein of Mason-Pfizer monkey[97] and Human Immunodeficiency viruses[98-100], regulating viral assembly, trafficking and Env incorporation. However, these activities are not dependent on Ubc9 conjugation activity, indicating that SUMOylation may not be strictly required for assembly of these viruses[97,99].

A large body of evidence shows that Influenza A virus M1 protein is essential for viral assembly and budding[101]. M1, together with other viral proteins are SUMOylated during Influenza virus infection[102,103]. Moreover, abolishment of M1 SUMOylation resulted in dramatic reduction of the virus titer in the culture fluid, accompanied by accumulation of intracellular viral proteins and viral RNA, indicating that SUMOylation of M1 modulates the assembly of Influenza A virus. On the other hand, other steps of the viral life cycle, such as virus entry, RNA replication and translation, are not affected by M1 SUMOylation[103].

SUMOylation and viral host immune evasion

Multicellular organisms normally fight infections *via* their immune system. The immune system recognizes and combats invading foreign agents through two main canonical pathways, the innate and adaptive immunity. In addition, intrinsic cellular defenses are also employed by the host to clear viral infections[104]. Intrinsic resistance represents the first line of intracellular antiviral defense that employs the classical pathogen recognition receptors (PRRs), shared by the innate immunity response, to sense viruses and to rapidly produce antiviral molecules in order to limit the initial stages of infection. Consequently and not surprisingly, viruses have evolved a variety of mechanisms to overcome cellular defenses and SUMO represents one of the most exploited pathways to this end (Figure 3).

The intrinsic and innate immune responses are primed by the activation of PRRs, such as the toll-like receptors and retinoic acid-inducible gene I which, in turn, lead to

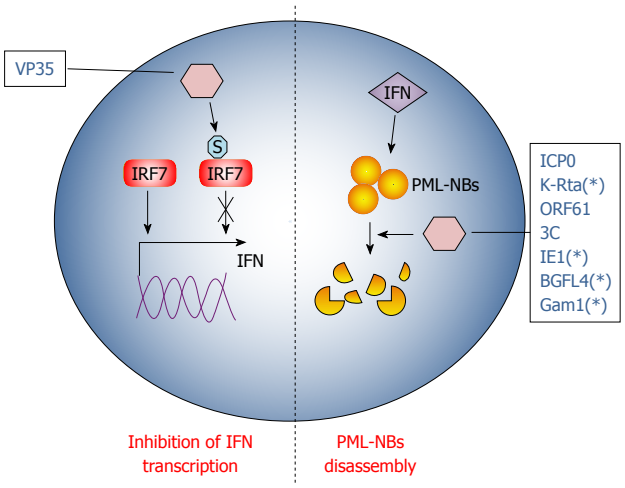


Figure 3 Viral proteins exploit small ubiquitin-like modifier to promote immune escape from innate and intrinsic responses. Schematic representation of the strategies used by viral proteins to counteract host innate and intrinsic responses through small ubiquitin-like modifier (SUMO). Viral proteins are designated with their acronym. S stands for SUMO. The asterisk (*) indicates that the marked viral protein has not been formally shown to directly influence cellular antiviral activity by exploiting SUMOylation, but indications of a mechanistic link are known. See text for further details on exploitation of the SUMO machinery by single viral proteins. IFN: Interferon; IRF: IFN regulatory factor; PML-NBs: ProMyelocyticLeukemia nuclear bodies.

interferons (IFNs) production by IFN regulatory factor (IRF)-dependent mechanisms[105].

Ebola Zaire virus (EBOV) is a human pathogen that infects initially dendritic cells and macrophages[106], inhibiting the production of the pro-inflammatory IFN type I (IFN- I)[107]. Namely, EBOV VP35 protein potently inhibits IFN- I transcription[108] using the cellular SUMO machinery in dendritic cells. Indeed, VP35 increases SUMOylation of IRF7[109], the principal cellular factor required for IFN- I transcription[110], in a PIAS1 dependent manner. VP35 forms a complex with the SUMO ligase PIAS1 and IRF7, thus increasing PIAS1-mediated IRF7 SUMO-1 and SUMO-3 conjugation[109]. Interestingly, IRFs SUMOylation appears to be a physiological process orchestrating INFs production after viral infection[111], allowing clearing of the infecting virus. Therefore, VP35 exploits SUMO to turn off IFN- I production by dendritic cells, probably worsening the maturation of these cells[112] and weakening the host innate immunity against EBOV infection.

Taken together, these reports strongly suggest the existence of a correlation between SUMO pathway exploitation by viruses and escape from the host innate immune system. However, viruses also possess a large number of mechanisms to escape the intrinsic immune system. This is not surprising, considering that the intrinsic response is the first host defense to fight viral infections.

PML-NBs are nuclear inclusions rich of SUMOylated proteins, known to be crucial organelles involved in intrinsic anti-viral response. In fact, PML-NBs seem to be implicated in the downstream effect of INF-mediated antiviral action[113]. Notably, PML-NBs are disassembled during most viral infections at very early stages, indicating that targeting PML-NBs could be an efficient viral strategy to evade IFN action[113]. Therefore, most of the mechanisms developed by DNA viruses to overcome cellular defense disperse PML-NBs: one rapid way to achieve this goal is by hijacking the SUMOylation pathway.

Herpes simplex virus type-1 (HSV-1) protein ICP0 structure encompasses a RING finger domain that acts as an E3 ubiquitin ligase, redirecting specific cellular proteins for proteasome-dependent degradation[114]. Earlier during infection, PML-NBs components are quickly recruited at sites closely associated with the viral genome in a SUMO-dependent manner[115,116], promoting the transcription of anti-viral genes. However, ICP0 counteracts this PML-NBs response targeting SUMOylated proteins for degradation, thanks to its E3 ligase activity[115]. This HSV-response is strictly required for its infection cycle, since in this way ICP0 inhibits cellular mechanisms that would otherwise repress viral transcription[114]. Interestingly, it has been shown that ICP0 falls in the SUMO targeted ubiquitin ligases (STUbLs) family[117], a class of RING finger ubiquitin ligases that contains SIMs[118]. Therefore, through its SIM motifs, ICP0 binds to important SUMOylated transcription factors in PML-NBs that, in turn, are degraded by the E3 ubiquitin ligase activity of its RING motif. This dual action of ICP0 efficiently counteracts intrinsic antiviral resistance to HSV-1 infection[117].

Like ICP0, KHSV K-Rta protein also belongs to the STUbLs family. Indeed, K-Rta contains SIM motifs and conjugates ubiquitin to SUMO and SUMO-chains, disrupting PML-NBs in a ubiquitin ligase dependent fashion[119].

A similar mechanism is also conducted by Varicella Zoster virus protein ORF61. Indeed, ORF61 colocalizes and disperses PML-NBs shortly after virus entry in its target cell[120]. It also contains three SIM motifs through which it counteracts intrinsic SUMO-promoted anti-viral control by PML-NBs[121]. Consistently, ORF61 SIM mutants are unable to disperse PML and the overall degree of virus infection is dramatically impaired when SUMO-conjugation is inhibited[121]. As for ICP0, PML-NBs dispersal by ORF61 is a two-step process accomplished by different protein domains: the ORF61 SIMs that recognize SUMOylated PML protein in PML-NBs and the RING domain that executes their dispersal[121]. However, ORF61 RING domain does not share the E3 ligase activity with ICP0 and is thus not able to degrade PML-NBs. A similar PML-NBs disruption mechanism seems to be also carried out by the already described EBV BGLF4 protein[91].

While in all the examples described above viruses extensively interact with a number of proteins in PML-NBs, encephalomyocarditis virus (EMCV) counteracts antiviral pathway targeting the PML protein alone[122]. In fact, during infection, PML is first transferred by EMCV from the nucleoplasm to the nuclear matrix and then the viral protease 3C induces PML degradation. Both PML delocalization and degradation are a consequence of covalent SUMO-1, -2 and -3 conjugation promoted by EMCV[122].

In addition to the ability to be itself SUMOylated (see above) for its transactivation functions, CMV IE1 also efficiently inhibits the intrinsic antiviral response by preventing the accumulation of SUMOylated forms of PML[123]. In this regard, CMV seems to behave as EMCV, since IE1 does not induce PML degradation.

CONCLUSION

In recent years, SUMOylation has emerged as a major regulator system involved in a variety of cellular processes. SUMO is indeed conjugated to a number of proteins that in turn can interact with many other partners through the SUMO interacting (SIM) motifs. Therefore, the SUMOylation machinery virtually affects and directs most of cellular activities, crucially regulating cellular homeostasis. Thus, exploiting SUMOylation represents a very convenient way to quickly promote and sustain pathogen survival in the host.

Viruses, in particular, exploit SUMOylation in several key steps of their intracellular life and, importantly, they also use the SUMO pathway to subvert the immune response of the host (Table 1). Both DNA and RNA viruses can use SUMOylation to promote viral genes transcription, virus assembly (Figure 2) and immune evasion (Figure 3), using apparently different mechanisms. Some viral proteins (*i.e.*, E3, E1, L2, A40R, CA, IE1, IE2, BLZF1, Rta, BGLF4, M1, E1B-55k, K-bZip, UL44) are modified by SUMO in order to activate their function; alternatively, they can influence the SUMOylation level of a specific target protein (AL1, VP35) or the global SUMOylation status of infected cells (Gam1, ICP0, K-Rta, L2). Finally, other viral products could interact with SUMO components or with host SUMO-containing proteins (NP, Gag, 3C, ORF61), usually through a SIM motif, or mimicking SUMOylation enzymes (K-bZIP, E1B-55K). Remarkably, the same virus (KSHV, CMV, EBV, Vaccinia Virus, Papillomavirus) can exploit the SUMO pathway through various proteins, as well as the same protein (Gam1, IE1, IE2, E1B-55K, K-bZIP, BGLF4) can interact with SUMO using several mechanisms perhaps also to promote different steps of viral infection.

It is interesting to note that the vast majority of viral proteins known to interact with the SUMOylation system are immediate-early or early proteins, suggesting a crucial role for SUMO in counteracting viral infection.

What we can learn from the complex network of interplay between the SUMO pathway and viruses in the virus-host interactions is that the same crucial pathway can be hijacked by different pathogens in very different ways to obtain a common goal, *i.e.*, sustaining viral infection. More studies are required to define the global picture but the findings presented here can strongly indicate the SUMO pathway as a promising target for specific antiviral therapies.

REFERENCES

1 **Hochstrasser M**. Origin and function of ubiquitin-like proteins. *Nature* 2009; **458**: 422-429 [PMID: 19325621 DOI: 10.1038/nature07958]

2 **Matunis MJ**, Coutavas E, Blobel G. A novel ubiquitin-like modification modulates the partitioning of the Ran-GTPase-activating protein RanGAP1 between the cytosol and the nuclear pore complex. *J Cell Biol* 1996; **135**: 1457-1470 [PMID: 8978815 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.135.6.1457]

3 **Mahajan R**, Delphin C, Guan T, Gerace L, Melchior F. A small ubiquitin-related polypeptide involved in targeting RanGAP1 to nuclear pore complex protein RanBP2. *Cell* 1997; **88**: 97-107 [PMID: 9019411 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)81862-0]

4 **Saitoh H**, Hinchey J. Functional heterogeneity of small ubiquitin-related protein modifiers SUMO-1 versus SUMO-2/3. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 6252-6258 [PMID: 10692421 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.275.9.6252]

5 **Lapenta V**, Chiurazzi P, van der Spek P, Pizzuti A, Hanaoka F, Brahe C. SMT3A, a human homologue of the S. cerevisiae SMT3 gene, maps to chromosome 21qter and defines a novel gene family. *Genomics* 1997; **40**: 362-366 [PMID: 9119407 DOI: 10.1006/geno.1996.4556]

6 **Bohren KM**, Nadkarni V, Song JH, Gabbay KH, Owerbach D. A M55V polymorphism in a novel SUMO gene (SUMO-4) differentially activates heat shock transcription factors and is associated with susceptibility to type I diabetes mellitus. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 27233-27238 [PMID: 15123604 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M402273200]

7 **Owerbach D**, McKay EM, Yeh ET, Gabbay KH, Bohren KM. A proline-90 residue unique to SUMO-4 prevents maturation and sumoylation. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2005; **337**: 517-520 [PMID: 16198310 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2005.09.090]

8 **Vertegaal AC**, Andersen JS, Ogg SC, Hay RT, Mann M, Lamond AI. Distinct and overlapping sets of SUMO-1 and SUMO-2 target proteins revealed by quantitative proteomics. *Mol Cell Proteomics* 2006; **5**: 2298-2310 [PMID: 17000644 DOI: 10.1074/mcp.M600212-MCP200]

9 **Tatham MH**, Kim S, Jaffray E, Song J, Chen Y, Hay RT. Unique binding interactions among Ubc9, SUMO and RanBP2 reveal a mechanism for SUMO paralog selection. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* 2005; **12**: 67-74 [PMID: 15608651 DOI: 10.1038/nsmb878]

10 **Evdokimov E**, Sharma P, Lockett SJ, Lualdi M, Kuehn MR. Loss of SUMO1 in mice affects RanGAP1 localization and formation of PML nuclear bodies, but is not lethal as it can be compensated by SUMO2 or SUMO3. *J Cell Sci* 2008; **121**: 4106-4113 [PMID: 19033381 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.038570]

11 **Citro S**, Chiocca S. Sumo paralogs: redundancy and divergencies. *Front Biosci* (Schol Ed) 2013; **5**: 544-553 [PMID: 23277067]

12 **Rodriguez MS**, Dargemont C, Hay RT. SUMO-1 conjugation in vivo requires both a consensus modification motif and nuclear targeting. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 12654-12659 [PMID: 11124955 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M009476200]

13 **Sampson DA**, Wang M, Matunis MJ. The small ubiquitin-like modifier-1 (SUMO-1) consensus sequence mediates Ubc9 binding and is essential for SUMO-1 modification. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 21664-21669 [PMID: 11259410 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M100006200]

14 **Tatham MH**, Jaffray E, Vaughan OA, Desterro JM, Botting CH, Naismith JH, Hay RT. Polymeric chains of SUMO-2 and SUMO-3 are conjugated to protein substrates by SAE1/SAE2 and Ubc9. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 35368-35374 [PMID: 11451954 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M104214200]

15 **Matic I**, van Hagen M, Schimmel J, Macek B, Ogg SC, Tatham MH, Hay RT, Lamond AI, Mann M, Vertegaal AC. In vivo identification of human small ubiquitin-like modifier polymerization sites by high accuracy mass spectrometry and an in vitro to in vivo strategy. *Mol Cell Proteomics* 2008; **7**: 132-144 [PMID: 17938407 DOI: 10.1074/mcp.M700173-MCP200]

16 **Blomster HA**, Imanishi SY, Siimes J, Kastu J, Morrice NA,

Eriksson JE, Sistonen L. In vivo identification of sumoylation sites by a signature tag and cysteine-targeted affinity purification. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 19324-19329 [PMID: 20388717 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.106955]
17 **Galisson F**, Mahrouche L, Courcelles M, Bonneil E, Meloche S, Chelbi-Alix MK, Thibault P. A novel proteomics approach to identify SUMOylated proteins and their modification sites in human cells. *Mol Cell Proteomics* 2011; **10**: M110.004796 [PMID: 21098080 DOI: 10.1074/mcp.M110.004796]
18 **Vertegaal AC**. SUMO chains: polymeric signals. *Biochem Soc Trans* 2010; **38**: 46-49 [PMID: 20074033 DOI: 10.1042/BST0380046]
19 **Hay RT**. SUMO-specific proteases: a twist in the tail. *Trends Cell Biol* 2007; **17**: 370-376 [PMID: 17768054 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2007.08.002]
20 **Desterro JM**, Rodriguez MS, Kemp GD, Hay RT. Identification of the enzyme required for activation of the small ubiquitin-like protein SUMO-1. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 10618-10624 [PMID: 10187858 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.274.15.10618]
21 **Gong L**, Li B, Millas S, Yeh ET. Molecular cloning and characterization of human AOS1 and UBA2, components of the sentrin-activating enzyme complex. *FEBS Lett* 1999; **448**: 185-189 [PMID: 10217437 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(99)00367-1]
22 **Lois LM**, Lima CD. Structures of the SUMO E1 provide mechanistic insights into SUMO activation and E2 recruitment to E1. *EMBO J* 2005; **24**: 439-451 [PMID: 15660128 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600552]
23 **Johnson ES**, Blobel G. Ubc9p is the conjugating enzyme for the ubiquitin-like protein Smt3p. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 26799-26802 [PMID: 9341106 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.43.26799]
24 **Desterro JM**, Thomson J, Hay RT. Ubch9 conjugates SUMO but not ubiquitin. *FEBS Lett* 1997; **417**: 297-300 [PMID: 9409737 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-5793(97)01305-7]
25 **Hayashi T**, Seki M, Maeda D, Wang W, Kawabe Y, Seki T, Saitoh H, Fukagawa T, Yagi H, Enomoto T. Ubc9 is essential for viability of higher eukaryotic cells. *Exp Cell Res* 2002; **280**: 212-221 [PMID: 12413887 DOI: 10.1006/excr.2002.5634]
26 **Bernier-Villamor V**, Sampson DA, Matunis MJ, Lima CD. Structural basis for E2-mediated SUMO conjugation revealed by a complex between ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme Ubc9 and RanGAP1. *Cell* 2002; **108**: 345-356 [PMID: 11853669 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(02)00630-X]
27 **Melchior F**, Schergaut M, Pichler A. SUMO: ligases, isopeptidases and nuclear pores. *Trends Biochem Sci* 2003; **28**: 612-618 [PMID: 14607092 DOI: 10.1016/j.tibs.2003.09.002]
28 **Jackson PK**. A new RING for SUMO: wrestling transcriptional responses into nuclear bodies with PIAS family E3 SUMO ligases. *Genes Dev* 2001; **15**: 3053-3058 [PMID: 11731472 DOI: 10.1101/gad.955501]
29 **Weger S**, Hammer E, Heilbronn R. Topors acts as a SUMO-1 E3 ligase for p53 in vitro and in vivo. *FEBS Lett* 2005; **579**: 5007-5012 [PMID: 16122737 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2005.07.088]
30 **Braschi E**, Zunino R, McBride HM. MAPL is a new mitochondrial SUMO E3 ligase that regulates mitochondrial fission. *EMBO Rep* 2009; **10**: 748-754 [PMID: 19407830 DOI: 10.1038/embor.2009.86]
31 **Zhao X**, Blobel G. A SUMO ligase is part of a nuclear multiprotein complex that affects DNA repair and chromosomal organization. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 4777-4782 [PMID: 15738391 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0500537102]
32 **Werner A**, Flotho A, Melchior F. The RanBP2/RanGAP1*SUMO1/Ubc9 complex is a multisubunit SUMO E3 ligase. *Mol Cell* 2012; **46**: 287-298 [PMID: 22464730 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2012.02.017]
33 **Kagey MH**, Melhuish TA, Wotton D. The polycomb protein Pc2 is a SUMO E3. *Cell* 2003; **113**: 127-137 [PMID: 12679040 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(03)00159-4]
34 **Grégoire S**, Yang XJ. Association with class IIa histone deacetylases upregulates the sumoylation of MEF2 transcription factors. *Mol Cell Biol* 2005; **25**: 2273-2287 [PMID: 15743823 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.25.6.2273-2287.2005]
35 **Gao C**, Ho CC, Reineke E, Lam M, Cheng X, Stanya KJ, Liu Y, Chakraborty S, Shih HM, Kao HY. Histone deacetylase 7 promotes PML sumoylation and is essential for PML nuclear body formation. *Mol Cell Biol* 2008; **28**: 5658-5667 [PMID: 18625722 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.00874-08]
36 **Subramaniam S**, Sixt KM, Barrow R, Snyder SH. Rhes, a striatal specific protein, mediates mutant-huntingtin cytotoxicity. *Science* 2009; **324**: 1327-1330 [PMID: 19498170 DOI: 10.1126/science.1172871]
37 **Oh SM**, Liu Z, Okada M, Jang SW, Liu X, Chan CB, Luo H, Ye K. Ebp1 sumoylation, regulated by TLS/FUS E3 ligase, is required for its anti-proliferative activity. *Oncogene* 2010; **29**: 1017-1030 [PMID: 19946338 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2009.411]
38 **Morita Y**, Kanei-Ishii C, Nomura T, Ishii S. TRAF7 sequesters c-Myb to the cytoplasm by stimulating its sumoylation. *Mol Biol Cell* 2005; **16**: 5433-5444 [PMID: 16162816 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E05-08-0731]
39 **Liang Q**, Deng H, Li X, Wu X, Tang Q, Chang TH, Peng H, Rauscher FJ, Ozato K, Zhu F. Tripartite motif-containing protein 28 is a small ubiquitin-related modifier E3 ligase and negative regulator of IFN regulatory factor 7. *J Immunol* 2011; **187**: 4754-4763 [PMID: 21940674 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1101704]
40 **Chu Y**, Yang X. SUMO E3 ligase activity of TRIM proteins. *Oncogene* 2011; **30**: 1108-1116 [PMID: 20972456]
41 **Kim JH**, Baek SH. Emerging roles of desumoylating enzymes. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2009; **1792**: 155-162 [PMID: 19162180]
42 **Mendoza HM**, Shen LN, Botting C, Lewis A, Chen J, Ink B, Hay RT. NEDP1, a highly conserved cysteine protease that deNEDDylates Cullins. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 25637-25643 [PMID: 12730221 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M212948200]
43 **Shin EJ**, Shin HM, Nam E, Kim WS, Kim JH, Oh BH, Yun Y. DeSUMOylating isopeptidase: a second class of SUMO protease. *EMBO Rep* 2012; **13**: 339-346 [PMID: 22370726 DOI: 10.1038/embor.2012.3]
44 **Gill G**. Something about SUMO inhibits transcription. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2005; **15**: 536-541 [PMID: 16095902 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2005.07.004]
45 **Seeler JS**, Dejean A. SUMO: of branched proteins and nuclear bodies. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 7243-7249 [PMID: 11704852 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1204758]
46 **Müller S**, Matunis MJ, Dejean A. Conjugation with the ubiquitin-related modifier SUMO-1 regulates the partitioning of PML within the nucleus. *EMBO J* 1998; **17**: 61-70 [PMID: 9427741 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/17.1.61]
47 **Kerscher O**. SUMO junction-what's your function? New insights through SUMO-interacting motifs. *EMBO Rep* 2007; **8**: 550-555 [PMID: 17545995 DOI: 10.1038/sj.embor.7400980]
48 **Wilson VG**. SUMO regulation of cellular processes. Dordrecht: Springer, 2009 [DOI: 10.1007/978-90-481-2649-1]
49 **Boggio R**, Colombo R, Hay RT, Draetta GF, Chiocca S. A mechanism for inhibiting the SUMO pathway. *Mol Cell* 2004; **16**: 549-561 [PMID: 15546615 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2004.11.007]
50 **Boggio R**, Passafaro A, Chiocca S. Targeting SUMO E1 to ubiquitin ligases: a viral strategy to counteract sumoylation. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 15376-15382 [PMID: 17392274 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M700889200]
51 **Colombo R**, Boggio R, Seiser C, Draetta GF, Chiocca S. The adenovirus protein Gam1 interferes with sumoylation of histone deacetylase 1. *EMBO Rep* 2002; **3**: 1062-1068 [PMID: 12393750 DOI: 10.1093/embo-reports/kvf213]
52 **David G**, Neptune MA, DePinho RA. SUMO-1 modification of histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1) modulates its biological activities. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 23658-23663 [PMID: 11960997 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M203690200]

53 **Cheng J**, Wang D, Wang Z, Yeh ET. SENP1 enhances androgen receptor-dependent transcription through desumoylation of histone deacetylase 1. *Mol Cell Biol* 2004; **24**: 6021-6028 [PMID: 15199155 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.24.13.6021-6028.2004]

54 **Roizman B**. The checkpoints of viral gene expression in productive and latent infection: the role of the HDAC/CoREST/LSD1/REST repressor complex. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 7474-7482 [PMID: 21450817 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00180-11]

55 **Glotzer JB**, Saltik M, Chiocca S, Michou AI, Moseley P, Cotten M. Activation of heat-shock response by an adenovirus is essential for virus replication. *Nature* 2000; **407**: 207-211 [PMID: 11001061 DOI: 10.1038/35025102]

56 **Chiocca S**, Kurtev V, Colombo R, Boggio R, Sciurpi MT, Brosch G, Seiser C, Draetta GF, Cotten M. Histone deacetylase 1 inactivation by an adenovirus early gene product. *Curr Biol* 2002; **12**: 594-598 [PMID: 11937030 DOI: 10.1016/S0960-9822(02)00720-0]

57 **Sánchez-Durán MA**, Dallas MB, Ascencio-Ibañez JT, Reyes MI, Arroyo-Mateos M, Ruiz-Albert J, Hanley-Bowdoin L, Bejarano ER. Interaction between geminivirus replication protein and the SUMO-conjugating enzyme is required for viral infection. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 9789-9800 [PMID: 21775461 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02566-10]

58 **Castillo AG**, Kong LJ, Hanley-Bowdoin L, Bejarano ER. Interaction between a geminivirus replication protein and the plant sumoylation system. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 2758-2769 [PMID: 14990696 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.6.2758-2769.2004]

59 **Pennella MA**, Liu Y, Woo JL, Kim CA, Berk AJ. Adenovirus E1B 55-kilodalton protein is a p53-SUMO1 E3 ligase that represses p53 and stimulates its nuclear export through interactions with promyelocytic leukemia nuclear bodies. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12210-12225 [PMID: 20861261 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01442-10]

60 **Muller S**, Dobner T. The adenovirus E1B-55K oncoprotein induces SUMO modification of p53. *Cell Cycle* 2008; **7**: 754-758 [PMID: 18461721 DOI: 10.4161/cc.7.6.5495]

61 **Liu Y**, Shevchenko A, Shevchenko A, Berk AJ. Adenovirus exploits the cellular aggresome response to accelerate inactivation of the MRN complex. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 14004-14016 [PMID: 16254336 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.22.14004-14016.2005]

62 **Doucas V**, Ishov AM, Romo A, Juguilon H, Weitzman MD, Evans RM, Maul GG. Adenovirus replication is coupled with the dynamic properties of the PML nuclear structure. *Genes Dev* 1996; **10**: 196-207 [PMID: 8566753 DOI: 10.1101/gad.10.2.196]

63 **Wimmer P**, Blanchette P, Schreiner S, Ching W, Groitl P, Berscheminski J, Branton PE, Will H, Dobner T. Cross-talk between phosphorylation and SUMOylation regulates transforming activities of an adenoviral oncoprotein. *Oncogene* 2012; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 22614022 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2012.187]

64 **Wimmer P**, Schreiner S, Everett RD, Sirma H, Groitl P, Dobner T. SUMO modification of E1B-55K oncoprotein regulates isoform-specific binding to the tumour suppressor protein PML. *Oncogene* 2010; **29**: 5511-5522 [PMID: 20639899 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2010.284]

65 **Izumiya Y**, Ellison TJ, Yeh ET, Jung JU, Luciw PA, Kung HJ. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus K-bZIP represses gene transcription via SUMO modification. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 9912-9925 [PMID: 16014952 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.15.9912-9925.2005]

66 **Chang PC**, Izumiya Y, Wu CY, Fitzgerald LD, Campbell M, Ellison TJ, Lam KS, Luciw PA, Kung HJ. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (KSHV) encodes a SUMO E3 ligase that is SIM-dependent and SUMO-2/3-specific. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 5266-5273 [PMID: 20034935 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.088088]

67 **Katano H**, Ogawa-Goto K, Hasegawa H, Kurata T, Sata T. Human-herpesvirus-8-encoded K8 protein colocalizes with the promyelocytic leukemia protein (PML) bodies and recruits p53 to the PML bodies. *Virology* 2001; **286**: 446-455 [PMID: 11485412 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2001.1005]

68 **Flemington EK**. Herpesvirus lytic replication and the cell cycle: arresting new developments. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 4475-4481 [PMID: 11312317 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.10.4475-4481.2001]

69 **González-Santamaría J**, Campagna M, García MA, Marcos-Villar L, González D, Gallego P, Lopitz-Otsoa F, Guerra S, Rodríguez MS, Esteban M, Rivas C. Regulation of vaccinia virus E3 protein by small ubiquitin-like modifier proteins. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 12890-12900 [PMID: 21957283 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.05628-11]

70 **Wilson VG**, Ludes-Meyers J. A bovine papillomavirus E1-related protein binds specifically to bovine papillomavirus DNA. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 5314-5322 [PMID: 1654443]

71 **Rangasamy D**, Wilson VG. Bovine papillomavirus E1 protein is sumoylated by the host cell Ubc9 protein. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 30487-30495 [PMID: 10871618 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M003898200]

72 **Rangasamy D**, Woytek K, Khan SA, Wilson VG. SUMO-1 modification of bovine papillomavirus E1 protein is required for intranuclear accumulation. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 37999-38004 [PMID: 11005821 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M007777200]

73 **Roberts KL**, Smith GL. Vaccinia virus morphogenesis and dissemination. *Trends Microbiol* 2008; **16**: 472-479 [PMID: 18789694 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2008.07.009]

74 **Palacios S**, Perez LH, Welsch S, Schleich S, Chmielarska K, Melchior F, Locker JK. Quantitative SUMO-1 modification of a vaccinia virus protein is required for its specific localization and prevents its self-association. *Mol Biol Cell* 2005; **16**: 2822-2835 [PMID: 15800065 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E04-11-1005]

75 **Yueh A**, Leung J, Bhattacharyya S, Perrone LA, de los Santos K, Pu SY, Goff SP. Interaction of moloney murine leukemia virus capsid with Ubc9 and PIASy mediates SUMO-1 addition required early in infection. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 342-352 [PMID: 16352559 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.1.342-352.2006]

76 **Spidel JL**, Wilson CB, Craven RC, Wills JW. Genetic Studies of the beta-hairpin loop of Rous sarcoma virus capsid protein. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 1288-1296 [PMID: 17093186 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01551-06]

77 **Hale BG**, Randall RE, Ortín J, Jackson D. The multifunctional NS1 protein of influenza A viruses. *J Gen Virol* 2008; **89**: 2359-2376 [PMID: 18796704 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.2008/004606-0]

78 **Xu K**, Klenk C, Liu B, Keiner B, Cheng J, Zheng BJ, Li L, Han Q, Wang C, Li T, Chen Z, Shu Y, Liu J, Klenk HD, Sun B. Modification of nonstructural protein 1 of influenza A virus by SUMO1. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 1086-1098 [PMID: 21047957 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00877-10]

79 **Castillo JP**, Kowalik TF. Human cytomegalovirus immediate early proteins and cell growth control. *Gene* 2002; **290**: 19-34 [PMID: 12062798 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-1119(02)00566-8]

80 **Spengler ML**, Kurapatwinski K, Black AR, Azizkhan-Clifford J. SUMO-1 modification of human cytomegalovirus IE1/IE72. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 2990-2996 [PMID: 11861864 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.6.2990-2996.2002]

81 **Nevels M**, Brune W, Shenk T. SUMOylation of the human cytomegalovirus 72-kilodalton IE1 protein facilitates expression of the 86-kilodalton IE2 protein and promotes viral replication. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 7803-7812 [PMID: 15220454 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.14.7803-7812.2004]

82 **Berndt A**, Hofmann-Winkler H, Tavalai N, Hahn G, Stamminger T. Importance of covalent and noncovalent SUMO interactions with the major human cytomegalovirus transactivator IE2p86 for viral infection. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 12881-12894 [PMID: 19812159 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01525-09]

83 **Kim ET**, Kim YE, Huh YH, Ahn JH. Role of noncovalent SUMO binding by the human cytomegalovirus IE2 transactivator in lytic growth. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 8111-8123 [PMID: 20519406 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00459-10]

84 **Sinigalia E**, Alvisi G, Segré CV, Mercorelli B, Muratore G, Winkler M, Hsiao HH, Urlaub H, Ripalti A, Chiocca S, Palù G, Loregian A. The human cytomegalovirus DNA polymerase processivity factor UL44 is modified by SUMO in a DNA-dependent manner. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e49630 [PMID: 23166733 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0049630]

85 **Adamson AL**, Kenney S. Epstein-barr virus immediate-early protein BZLF1 is SUMO-1 modified and disrupts promyelocytic leukemia bodies. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 2388-2399 [PMID: 11160742 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.5.2388-2399.2001]

86 **Hagemeier SR**, Dickerson SJ, Meng Q, Yu X, Mertz JE, Kenney SC. Sumoylation of the Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 protein inhibits its transcriptional activity and is regulated by the virus-encoded protein kinase. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 4383-4394 [PMID: 20181712 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02369-09]

87 **Wen W**, Iwakiri D, Yamamoto K, Maruo S, Kanda T, Takada K. Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 gene, a switch from latency to lytic infection, is expressed as an immediate-early gene after primary infection of B lymphocytes. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 1037-1042 [PMID: 17079287 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01416-06]

88 **Murata T**, Hotta N, Toyama S, Nakayama S, Chiba S, Isomura H, Ohshima T, Kanda T, Tsurumi T. Transcriptional repression by sumoylation of Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 protein correlates with association of histone deacetylase. *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 23925-23935 [PMID: 20516063 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.095356]

89 **Chang LK**, Liu ST, Kuo CW, Wang WH, Chuang JY, Bianchi E, Hong YR. Enhancement of transactivation activity of Rta of Epstein-Barr virus by RanBPM. *J Mol Biol* 2008; **379**: 231-242 [PMID: 18455188 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2008.04.011]

90 **Gershburg E**, Pagano JS. Conserved herpesvirus protein kinases. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008; **1784**: 203-212 [PMID: 17881303]

91 **Li R**, Wang L, Liao G, Guzzo CM, Matunis MJ, Zhu H, Hayward SD. SUMO binding by the Epstein-Barr virus protein kinase BGLF4 is crucial for BGLF4 function. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 5412-5421 [PMID: 22398289 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00314-12]

92 **Holmgren SC**, Patterson NA, Ozbun MA, Lambert PF. The minor capsid protein L2 contributes to two steps in the human papillomavirus type 31 life cycle. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 3938-3948 [PMID: 15767396 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.7.3938-3948.2005]

93 **Marusic MB**, Mencin N, Licen M, Banks L, Grm HS. Modification of human papillomavirus minor capsid protein L2 by sumoylation. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11585-11589 [PMID: 20739540 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01269-10]

94 **Gött P**, Stohwasser R, Schnitzler P, Darai G, Bautz EK. RNA binding of recombinant nucleocapsid proteins of hantaviruses. *Virology* 1993; **194**: 332-337 [PMID: 8480424 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1993.1263]

95 **Lee BH**, Yoshimatsu K, Maeda A, Ochiai K, Morimatsu M, Araki K, Ogino M, Morikawa S, Arikawa J. Association of the nucleocapsid protein of the Seoul and Hantaan hantaviruses with small ubiquitin-like modifier-1-related molecules. *Virus Res* 2003; **98**: 83-91 [PMID: 14609633 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2003.09.001]

96 **Maeda A**, Lee BH, Yoshimatsu K, Saijo M, Kurane I, Arikawa J, Morikawa S. The intracellular association of the nucleocapsid protein (NP) of hantaan virus (HTNV) with small ubiquitin-like modifier-1 (SUMO-1) conjugating enzyme 9 (Ubc9). *Virology* 2003; **305**: 288-297 [PMID: 12573574 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2002.1767]

97 **Weldon RA**, Sarkar P, Brown SM, Weldon SK. Mason-Pfizer monkey virus Gag proteins interact with the human sumo conjugating enzyme, hUbc9. *Virology* 2003; **314**: 62-73 [PMID: 14517060 DOI: 10.1016/S0042-6822(03)00348-9]

98 **Gurer C**, Berthoux L, Luban J. Covalent modification of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 p6 by SUMO-1. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 910-917 [PMID: 15613319 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.2.910-917.2005]

99 **Jaber T**, Bohl CR, Lewis GL, Wood C, West JT, Weldon RA. Human Ubc9 contributes to production of fully infectious human immunodeficiency virus type 1 virions. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 10448-10459 [PMID: 19640976 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00237-09]

100 **Martinez NW**, Xue X, Berro RG, Kreitzer G, Resh MD. Kinesin KIF4 regulates intracellular trafficking and stability of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Gag polyprotein. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 9937-9950 [PMID: 18684836 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00819-08]

101 **Rossman JS**, Lamb RA. Influenza virus assembly and budding. *Virology* 2011; **411**: 229-236 [PMID: 21237476 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.12.003]

102 **Pal S**, Santos A, Rosas JM, Ortiz-Guzman J, Rosas-Acosta G. Influenza A virus interacts extensively with the cellular SUMOylation system during infection. *Virus Res* 2011; **158**: 12-27 [PMID: 21376763]

103 **Wu CY**, Jeng KS, Lai MM. The SUMOylation of matrix protein M1 modulates the assembly and morphogenesis of influenza A virus. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 6618-6628 [PMID: 21507966 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02401-10]

104 **Boo KH**, Yang JS. Intrinsic cellular defenses against virus infection by antiviral type I interferon. *Yonsei Med J* 2010; **51**: 9-17 [PMID: 20046508 DOI: 10.3349/ymj.2010.51.1.9]

105 **Cavlar T**, Ablasser A, Hornung V. Induction of type I IFNs by intracellular DNA-sensing pathways. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2012; **90**: 474-482 [PMID: 22450802 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2012.11]

106 **Bray M**, Geisbert TW. Ebola virus: the role of macrophages and dendritic cells in the pathogenesis of Ebola hemorrhagic fever. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2005; **37**: 1560-1566 [PMID: 15896665 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2005.02.018]

107 **Mohamadzadeh M**, Chen L, Schmaljohn AL. How Ebola and Marburg viruses battle the immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2007; **7**: 556-567 [PMID: 17589545 DOI: 10.1038/nri2098]

108 **Leung LW**, Park MS, Martinez O, Valmas C, López CB, Basler CF. Ebolavirus VP35 suppresses IFN production from conventional but not plasmacytoid dendritic cells. *Immunol Cell Biol* 2011; **89**: 792-802 [PMID: 21263462 DOI: 10.1038/icb.2010.169]

109 **Chang TH**, Kubota T, Matsuoka M, Jones S, Bradfute SB, Bray M, Ozato K. Ebola Zaire virus blocks type I interferon production by exploiting the host SUMO modification machinery. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000493 [PMID: 19557165 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000493]

110 **Honda K**, Yanai H, Negishi H, Asagiri M, Sato M, Mizutani T, Shimada N, Ohba Y, Takaoka A, Yoshida N, Taniguchi T. IRF-7 is the master regulator of type-I interferon-dependent immune responses. *Nature* 2005; **434**: 772-777 [PMID: 15800576 DOI: 10.1038/nature03464]

111 **Kubota T**, Matsuoka M, Chang TH, Tailor P, Sasaki T, Tashiro M, Kato A, Ozato K. Virus infection triggers SUMOylation of IRF3 and IRF7, leading to the negative regulation of type I interferon gene expression. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 25660-25670 [PMID: 18635538 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M804479200]

112 **Jin H**, Yan Z, Prabhakar BS, Feng Z, Ma Y, Verpooten D, Ganesh B, He B. The VP35 protein of Ebola virus impairs dendritic cell maturation induced by virus and lipopolysaccharide. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 352-361 [PMID: 19828757 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.017343-0]

113 **Everett RD**, Chelbi-Alix MK. PML and PML nuclear bodies: implications in antiviral defence. *Biochimie* 2007; **89**: 819-830 [PMID: 17343971 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2007.01.004]

114 **Boutell C**, Sadis S, Everett RD. Herpes simplex virus type 1 immediate-early protein ICP0 and is isolated RING finger domain act as ubiquitin E3 ligases in vitro. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 841-850 [PMID: 11752173 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.2.841-850.2002]

115 **Cuchet-Lourenço D**, Boutell C, Lukashchuk V, Grant K, Sykes A, Murray J, Orr A, Everett RD. SUMO pathway dependent recruitment of cellular repressors to herpes simplex

virus type 1 genomes. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002123 [PMID: 21779164 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002123]

116 **Cuchet D**, Sykes A, Nicolas A, Orr A, Murray J, Sirma H, Heeren J, Bartelt A, Everett RD. PML isoforms I and II participate in PML-dependent restriction of HSV-1 replication. *J Cell Sci* 2011; **124**: 280-291 [PMID: 21172801 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.075390]

117 **Boutell C**, Cuchet-Lourenço D, Vanni E, Orr A, Glass M, McFarlane S, Everett RD. A viral ubiquitin ligase has substrate preferential SUMO targeted ubiquitin ligase activity that counteracts intrinsic antiviral defence. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002245 [PMID: 21949651 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002245]

118 **Uzunova K**, Göttsche K, Miteva M, Weisshaar SR, Glanemann C, Schnellhardt M, Niessen M, Scheel H, Hofmann K, Johnson ES, Praefcke GJ, Dohmen RJ. Ubiquitin-dependent proteolytic control of SUMO conjugates. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 34167-34175 [PMID: 17728242 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M706505200]

119 **Campbell M**, Izumiya Y. Post-Translational Modifications of Kaposi's Sarcoma-Associated Herpesvirus Regulatory Proteins - SUMO and KSHV. *Front Microbiol* 2012; **3**: 31 [PMID: 22347876]

120 **Reichelt M**, Brady J, Arvin AM. The replication cycle of varicella-zoster virus: analysis of the kinetics of viral protein expression, genome synthesis, and virion assembly at the single-cell level. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 3904-3918 [PMID: 19193797 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02137-08]

121 **Wang L**, Oliver SL, Sommer M, Rajamani J, Reichelt M, Arvin AM. Disruption of PML nuclear bodies is mediated by ORF61 SUMO-interacting motifs and required for varicella-zoster virus pathogenesis in skin. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002157 [PMID: 21901090 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002157]

122 **El McHichi B**, Regad T, Maroui MA, Rodriguez MS, Aminev A, Gerbaud S, Escriou N, Dianoux L, Chelbi-Alix MK. SUMOylation promotes PML degradation during encephalomyocarditis virus infection. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 11634-11645 [PMID: 20826694 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01321-10.]

123 **Lee HR**, Kim DJ, Lee JM, Choi CY, Ahn BY, Hayward GS, Ahn JH. Ability of the human cytomegalovirus IE1 protein to modulate sumoylation of PML correlates with its functional activities in transcriptional regulation and infectivity in cultured fibroblast cells. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 6527-6542 [PMID: 15163746 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.12.6527-6542.2004]

P- Reviewer Brown JC **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.91

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 91-101
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

Effects of human immunodeficiency virus on the erythrocyte and megakaryocyte lineages

Davide Gibellini, Alberto Clò, Silvia Morini, Anna Miserocchi, Cristina Ponti, Maria Carla Re

Davide Gibellini, Alberto Clò, Silvia Morini, Anna Miserocchi, Maria Carla Re, Department of Haematology and Oncological Sciences, Microbiology Section, University of Bologna, 40138 Bologna, Italy
Cristina Ponti, Department of Life Sciences, University of Trieste, 34127 Trieste, Italy
Maria Carla Re, Interuniversity Consortium, National Institute Biostructure and Biosystems, 00136 Rome, Italy
Author contributions: Gibellini D, Clò A, Morini S and Miserocchi A designed the paper and selected the references; Gibellini D, Ponti C and Carla Re M wrote the paper.
Supported by Funds from Fondazione Cassa di Risparmio Bologna, Italy, No. 2006.0035; Fondazione del Monte di Bologna e Ravenna, Italy, No. 376 bis; "AIDS projects" of the Italian Ministry of Health, No. 40H5; and Funds for Selected Research Topics of the University of Bologna and MURST 60%
Correspondence to: Dr. Davide Gibellini, Department of Haematology and Oncological Sciences, Microbiology Section, University of Bologna, St Orsola Hospital, Via Massarenti 9, 40138 Bologna, Italy. davide.gibellini@unibo.it
Telephone: +39-514-290927 Fax: +39-513-07397
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: January 7, 2013
Accepted: January 11, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Anaemia and thrombocytopenia are haematological disorders that can be detected in many human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-positive patients during the development of HIV infection. The progressive decline of erythrocytes and platelets plays an important role both in HIV disease progression and in the clinical and therapeutic management of HIV-positive patients. HIV-dependent impairment of the megakaryocyte and erythrocyte lineages is multifactorial and particularly affects survival, proliferation and differentiation of bone marrow (BM) CD34+ haematopoietic progenitor cells, the activity of BM stromal cells and the regulation of cytokine networks. In this review, we analyse the major HIV-related mechanisms that are involved in the genesis and development of the anaemia and thrombocytopenia observed in HIV positive patients.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Erythrocytes; Megakaryocytes; Haematopoietic progenitor cells; Virology

Gibellini D, Clò A, Morini S, Miserocchi A, Ponti C, Carla Re M. Effects of human immunodeficiency virus on the erythrocyte and megakaryocyte lineages. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 91-101 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/91.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.91

INTRODUCTION

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is the causative agent of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), which is characterised by the progressive and fatal impairment of immune system function and the occurrence of opportunistic infections and tumours[1]. Although the dysfunction of the immune system and the decline in the number and activity of CD4+ T cells represent the hallmark of HIV infection, it is noteworthy that HIV can also interfere with other cell lineages and tissues[2-5]. In addition to progressive depletion of CD4+ T lymphocytes, peripheral blood cytopenias, such as anaemia, neutropenia and thrombocytopenia, occur in most patients with AIDS[6,7] and in some HIV-positive naive individuals during the early phases of disease progression, especially when high plasma levels of HIV RNA are detectable. Interestingly, isolated thrombocytopenia can represent the first clinical manifestation in otherwise asymptomatic HIV positive patients[8] whereas anaemia and neutropenia are more common in the late stages of

HIV disease[9]. These peripheral blood cytopenias have been observed even in the absence of tumours, chemotherapeutic treatment or opportunistic infections suggesting that HIV infection may be directly associated with the induction of these haematological abnormalities[10]. The progressive depletion of these cell lineages in the blood has been related to several HIV-driven mechanisms: (1) the impairment of survival and proliferation of haematopoietic progenitor cells (HPCs); (2) the inhibition of the differentiation of HPCs into certain cell lineages or direct action on mature cells; (3) the impairment of stromal cells; and (4) the dysregulation of cytokine production and the appearance of autoimmune responses. In this report, we analyse several aspects of these major HIV-related mechanisms that are involved in the impairment of the erythrocyte and megakaryocyte (MK) lineages.

HIV AND CD34+ HPCs

The bone marrow (BM) forms a suitable environment for stem cell survival, growth and differentiation. The cellular components of BM include HPCs, HPC-derived cell lineages and stromal cells. HPCs represent a heterogeneous CD34+ cell population in the BM that includes the most primitive CD34+ haematopoietic stem cells (HSCs), which are characterised by pluripotency and a high capacity for self-renewal, and the CD34+ multi-potent progenitors (MPPs), which originate from HSCs and are multipotent but have a more limited capacity for self-renewal (Figure 1). MPPs can differentiate into common lymphoid progenitors (CLPs) and common myeloid progenitors (CMPs). CLPs can differentiate into B and T cells, natural killer cells and plasmacytoid dendritic progenitor cells. T cell differentiation occurs in the thymus whereas CMPs differentiate in the BM, through specific differentiation stages, into several cell lineages including granulocytes, erythrocytes, MKs and monocytes[11]. CMP-derived cell lineages migrate into the blood with the exception of MKs, which are maintained in the BM. The differentiation of HSCs is regulated by specific haematopoietic growth factors that induce the survival, proliferation and maturation of specific cell lineages. These factors share several common properties and act hierarchically at different stages of differentiation, and they often show synergistic or additive interactions with other growth factors. Stromal cells are the major source of these factors with the exceptions of erythropoietin (EPO) and thrombopoietin (TPO), which are largely produced in the kidneys and the liver, respectively.

The incidence of peripheral blood cytopenias in HIV positive individuals has led to hypothesis that HIV can impair BM homeostasis and affect the biology and activity of HPCs. Early studies have observed that HIV infection is correlated with the depletion of HPCs and a significant reduction in the *in vitro* growth of HPCs that have been purified from HIV-infected patients[12-17], suggesting that the multiple peripheral cytopenias may be related, at least in part, to a productive HIV infection of

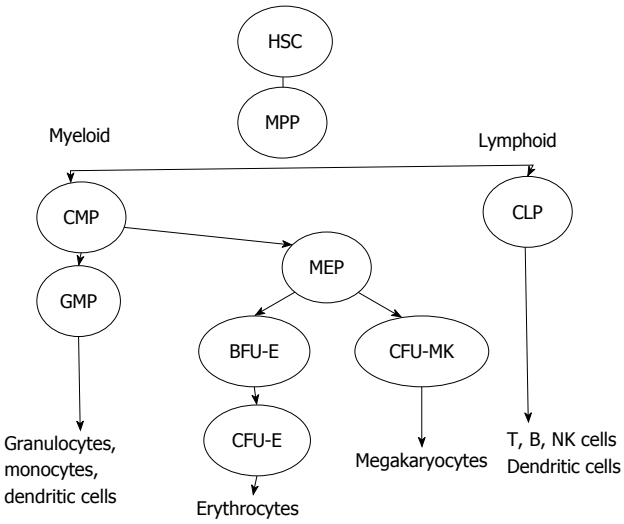


Figure 1 Human haematopoiesis. HSC: Hematopoietic stem cell; MPP: Multipotent progenitor; CLP: Common lymphoid progenitor; CMP: Common myeloid progenitor; GMP: Granulocyte/macrophage progenitor; MEP: Megakaryocyte/erithrocyte progenitor; BFU-E: Burst forming unit-erythroid; CFU-E: Colony forming unit-erythroid; CFU-MK: Colony forming unit-megakaryocyte.

BM HPCs. HIV infection may determine a progressive HPC depletion due to cell lysis, which in turn leads to the derangement of the differentiation towards various cellular lineages. This hypothesis of a potential HIV infection of HPCs may further imply an important feature in the dynamics of HIV disease: long-lived HPCs may harbour proviral HIV DNA genomes in their own genomes and act as an additional reservoir of HIV. Interestingly, cellular HIV receptors and co-receptors can be detected on HPC cell membrane. Flow cytometry analyses showed that 25%-65% of CD34+ HPCs that had been purified from the BM of healthy donors, expressed detectable levels of CD4 protein on their cell membranes[18,19]. Moreover, the CD4 protein was functionally active, and it effectively bound the HIV-1 gp120 anti-receptor[19]. The major co-receptors CXCR4 and CCR5 were also expressed on HPC cell membranes[20-22], and CXCR4 and CCR5 proteins were expressed in 53% and 35% of isolated CD34+ HPCs, respectively[23]. However, the analysis of CXCR4 and CCR5 expression was dependent on the differentiation stage. When the expression levels of CXCR4 and CCR5 were determined in CD34+/CD38- and CD34+/CD38+ HPC subsets, the CXCR4 protein expression level was relatively constant in both subsets whereas CCR5 was detected in 2% of more primitive CD34+/CD38- cells and in 35% of more mature CD34+/CD38+ subset, which indicated that CCR5 but not CXCR4 is up-regulated during differentiation from HSC into MPP[23]. The expression of HIV receptors and co-receptors on the cell membranes of CD34+ HPCs suggested that these cells could be considered a possible target of HIV infection.

To explore this hypothesis, two major experimental approaches were undertaken by several groups: (1) the challenge of BM or cord blood CD34+ HPCs, isolated

from uninfected donors, with HIV strains; and (2) the detection of HIV nucleic acids and/or viral proteins in BM CD34+ HPCs isolated from HIV-positive patients. These studies were based on the isolation and purification of CD34+ HPCs that represent a heterogeneous cell population[24,25] because the CD34+ marker could be detected not only on HSCs and MPPs but also on more committed myeloid progenitors such as CFU-GEMM, CFU-GM, BFU-E and CFU-MK progenitors.

Several reports showed that CD34+ BM HPCs, purified from uninfected donors, were resistant to HIV infection. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) or reverse transcriptase-PCR analysis of proviral HIV DNA or HIV RNA in HPCs that had been challenged with different HIV-1 strains did not reveal significant evidence of HIV infection[9,12,26-29]. In partial contrast to these data, Chelucci and coworkers[30] have purified CD34+ HPCs from the peripheral blood of healthy donors, cultured them with EPO + granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), interleukin-3 (IL-3) and SCF and then challenged with different HIV-1 strains. The analysis of p24 protein showed that 12% of CFU-GM and less than 1% of BFU-E colonies were positive whereas the CFU-GEMM progeny were negative.

Interestingly, early stem cells in the CD34+ HPCs, which are arrested in the G_0 phase of the cell cycle, were not permissive for HIV infection[23], and other reports showed that the more primitive CD34+/CD38- HPC subset was not susceptible for HIV-1 or HIV-2 infection[31,32]. However, a limited infection was revealed in the first weeks of long-term culture in CD34+/CD38+ HPCs, which suggested that HIV infects at low extent only the more committed HPC subset but not the more primitive HPCs[31].

The analysis of HIV infection in BM HPCs, purified from HIV-positive patients, was carried out to determine whether these patients could harbour proviral HIV DNA in HPCs. Two studies[33,34], based on PCR assays to detect proviral HIV DNA in BM HPCs, reported that 1 out of 14 patients and 1 out of 11 patients, respectively, were HIV DNA positive. Similar percentages of HIV proviral DNA positive samples were detected in subsequent reports[12,13,35]. In contrast with these results, a higher percentage of HIV-1 infection of CD34+ HPCs was observed in some groups of HIV-1 positive individuals especially in patients with the more advanced stages of the disease[36,37]. This discrepancy could be related to the use of different PCR assays with different sensitivities, and the possible presence of contaminating HIV-infected BM stromal cells.

Notwithstanding these controversial results, the consensus on HPC susceptibility to HIV infection, was that *in vitro* infection of HPCs occurred, under some experimental conditions, in a low fraction of HPCs, and these HPCs were the more committed HPCs, whereas the more primitive HPCs were not considered a significant HIV target. Moreover, *in vivo* infection of HPCs was infrequent suggesting a negligible role of HIV-infection of HPCs in BM derangement and the induction of cytopenias[7].

Several mechanisms have been proposed to explain HPC resistance to HIV infection. HPCs secrete the CCR5 ligands macrophage inflammatory protein-1α (MIP-1α), MIP-1β, and regulated on activation normal T cell expressed and secreted (RANTES)[37,38] and the CXCR4 ligand stromal-derived factor 1 (SDF-1)[22], which may compete with R5- or X4-tropic HIV-1 strain infection by interfering with gp120/co-receptor-binding. In addition, an analysis of the interference between gp120 and mAb directed against CXCR4 in HPCs, suggested the lack of a real CD4/CXCR4 complex on HPC membranes, which excluded the formation of the trimeric complex with gp120, essential for HIV binding and infection[22]. Zhang and coworkers have also showed that the cellular cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor p21 protein restricts HPC infection and interferes with the integration of the proviral HIV-1 genome[39].

However, recent studies have challenged the consensus about HPC resistance to HIV infection[40-44]. A report has described the HIV-1 subtype C infection in CD34+ HPCs, and the analysis of proviral HIV DNA in peripheral blood CD34+ cells showed that 12 out of 19 patients were positive. Interestingly, HIV-1 subtype B strains were not able to infect HPCs, suggesting that only specific HIV subtypes could be associated with direct infection of HPCs[40]. Carter *et al*[41] challenged purified HPCs with a molecular HIV clone p89.6 derived from the dual tropic HIV strain 89.6. A small percentage (1%-6%) of HPCs exhibited HIV-1 gag protein expression 72 h post infection. A similar infection rate was found, in contrast with previous studies, even in the more primitive CD133+CD34+CD38- HPC subset. However, the methodological approach of this study was subsequently criticised for the choice of the sole criterion of gag analysis, the infection protocol and the pseudo-viruses that were used[45]. These results were substantially confirmed by the same group in a subsequent study[42] that showed HIV infection in approximately 2% of primitive CD133+CD34+^{high} HPC subset cells. HIV infection was detectable when X4-tropic HIV subtype B strains were used, whereas R5-tropic HIV strains were ineffective on CD133+CD34+CD38- HPC subset cells, suggesting that the infection of HPCs might be detectable when X4-tropic HIV strains appear during the progression of HIV infection. These X4-tropic HIV strains are generally observed in the late stages of HIV infection and are related to more rapid disease progression and a poorer prognosis.

Carter *et al*[41] have also studied BM HPCs, isolated from six HIV-positive patients with high HIV RNA load. HIV-1 gag protein was detected in three of the six samples. When these cells were cultured with GM-CSF and tumour necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) to induce myeloid differentiation, all six of the samples were positive for the gag protein. In the same report, fresh BM HPCs, isolated from nine combination antiretroviral therapy (cART)-treated HIV positive individuals with undetectable viral loads for longer than 6 mo, were analysed using a quan-

titative real time PCR assay for integrated proviral HIV DNA. Four of the nine samples were positive with the number of proviral HIV genomes ranging between 2.5-40 copies/10000 CD34+ HPCs. These data suggested a new interpretation of the interaction between HIV and HPCs, in which a low number of HSCs and HPCs are susceptible to HIV infection and may represent an HIV reservoir. The rate of infection could be under-recorded because the data from Carter *et al*[41] indicate that HIV challenge is cytotoxic for HPCs. Moreover, their studies showed that even HIV-1 subtype B strains could infect these HPC subsets, which is in contrast to the previous study indicated above[40], suggesting that the HIV-1 subtype B cytotoxicity could explain this phenomenon. The infection of HPCs indicated that these cells could be a reservoir of HIV. Unfortunately, the hypothesis of HPCs as a viral reservoir was not confirmed by two subsequent analyses on proviral HIV-1 DNA in HPCs[46,47]. In these studies, CD34+ HPCs were purified from 11 and 8 HIV-positive patients treated with long-term suppressive cART. High sensitivity PCR assays demonstrated no HIV-1 proviral DNA in these cells[46,47].

Altogether, these recent studies have reconsidered the relationship between HIV infection and HPCs, but the data still remain controversial and further studies are needed to evaluate whether HIV infection of HPCs may be associated with the onset of blood cytopenias or may represent an additional HIV infection reservoir.

In addition to analyses of the direct infection of HPCs by HIV, several studies have been performed on granulocyte-macrophage CFUs (CFU-GMs), mixed lineage CFUs (CFU-GEMMs) or erythroid burst-forming units (BFU-Es). In this context, HPCs from HIV-1 infected patients, showed impaired *in vitro* BFU-E, CFU-GM and BFU-MK growth[12,25,27,34,36,48,49]. These results were confirmed even in HPCs purified from HIV-negative individuals and challenged with HIV even though other studies did not observe growth inhibition[26,30,50,51] probably due to the different HIV strains and cell culture conditions that were used. The significant reduction of CFU-GEMM, CFU-GM, BFU-E, and BFU-MK growth suggested an alteration of HPC proliferation with the possible involvement of apoptosis in the induction of cytopenias. Apoptosis plays an important role in the depletion of CD4+ T lymphocytes even through the interaction of HIV gp120 and CD4. HIV gp120 is also able to induce the activation of apoptosis in endothelial cells, osteoblasts, and neurons[52-54], and several studies have been performed on the effects of heat-inactivated HIV and certain viral proteins such as gp120 and Tat on the myelosuppression observed in HIV-positive patients. HIV-1 gp120 and heat-inactivated HIV-1[28,31,55,56] impaired the *in vitro* clonogenic capacity and induced apoptosis. This negative regulation of proliferation and survival was associated with transforming growth factor β1 (TGFβ1) increased production by HPCs and the occurrence of a Fas-dependent mechanism[57,58]. This reduction in survival and proliferation due to apoptosis could at least partially explain the decrease of HPCs and circulating precursors that has been noted in HIV-positive patients[13,34,36,56-62].

HIV AND BM STROMAL CELLS

The cellular components of the BM include HPCs at all stages of differentiation and stromal cells. BM stromal cells are a mixed population composed of mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs), endothelial cells, macrophages, fibroblasts, adipocytes, osteoblasts and osteoclasts, as well as dendritic cells and B and T lymphocytes that migrate from the blood to the BM. Stromal cells are essential for proper homeostasis and the regulation of BM haematopoiesis through a complex cellular cross-talk that is modulated by cytokines. *In vitro* experiments using long-term BM cultures showed that HIV-infected BM stroma was unable to support uninfected CD34+ HPC growth and differentiation compared to uninfected cultures[49,63,64]. In addition, the stromal structure of the BM in HIV patients shows morphological variations including an increased number of macrophages and a decreased number of fibroblasts[10,65]. This impairment of stromal activity and structure affects HPC differentiation and growth and it is due to the complex interaction between HIV and the different BM stromal cells that lead to a derangement of cytokine regulation. In particular, certain cell types, such as T cells, MSCs, macrophages and endothelial cells, are targeted, directly and indirectly, by HIV and its proteins including Tat and gp120[66-69]. BM MSCs can differentiate towards several cell lineages such as osteoblasts, adipocytes, fibroblasts, *etc*. *In vitro* experiments have demonstrated that HIV, gp120 and Tat can elicit a derangement of the clonogenic capacity of BM MSCs. In particular, the osteoblast differentiation is inhibited whereas adipocyte differentiation is increased. The alteration of the clonogenic activity may also explain the decreased number of fibroblasts that are detectable in the BM of HIV patients[10,65]. T cells, macrophages, endothelial cells and MKs are productively infected by HIV to different degrees in the BM. Endothelial cells are permissive for HIV infection and BM endothelial cells are infected in HIV patients at every stage of HIV disease. Endothelial cell infection was related to BM impairment in HIV-positive subjects because they exhibited a reduced ability to respond to BM micro-environmental regulatory signals that positively up-regulated the number of blood cells[69].

CD4+ T cells and macrophages are the major targets of HIV replication, and the release of specific cytokines and haematopoietic factors is affected by HIV infection. TNFα, TGFβ1, interferon-γ (IFN-γ), IL-1, IL-6, IL-10, IL-18, TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand and monocyte colony-stimulating factor are dysregulated by HIV in T cells and monocyte models[70-75]. Similarly, viral proteins such as Tat and/or gp120 increase the expression of IL-6, TNFα and IL-1[76-81]. The impairment of several cytokines during HIV infection was confirmed by clinical studies in which higher levels of IL-1, IL-18, TNFα and IL-6 in the plasma of HIV-positive patients were

detected compared to uninfected individuals[82-85]. It is noteworthy that the pro-inflammatory cytokines TNFα, IL-1, and IL-6 and the chemokines MIP-1α, MIP-1β and RANTES were up-regulated in the BM of HIV-positive patients[65,86]. TNFα involvement in the HIV-1-induced suppression of haematopoiesis, was also suggested in neutralisation studies[87]. Tat is able to elicit a significant activation of the TGFβ1 expression in macrophages that have been isolated from BM. BM macrophage culture supernatants were added to BM HPC cultures thus inducing an inhibition of HPC growth in the liquid cultures[88]. This chronic derangement of cytokine modulation can elicit several negative effects on HPCs and their differentiation into various cell lineages, cooperating in the pathogenesis of anaemia and thrombocytopenia in HIV-infected patients.

HIV AND THE MK LINEAGE

Chronic thrombocytopenia is detectable during HIV disease in approximately 10% of HIV positive patients and 15%-60% of patients with AIDS[89-92]. This haematological disorder may represent the first manifestation of HIV infection and it may progress over time and lead to severe bleeding[91]. HIV-associated thrombocytopenia is related to reduced platelet survival, ineffective platelet production and the impairment of the survival of BM MKs and their precursors. HIV targets the MK cell lineage by interfering throughout the differentiation of mature MKs (Figure 2A). As described above, HIV decreases the number and activity of HPCs and induces a growth deficit in CFU-MKs in HIV patients. An analysis of the impact of HIV-1 and gp120 during TPO-induced cord blood-derived HPC differentiation into MKs has demonstrated that gp120 treatment led to the induction of apoptosis in the CD41+ and CD61+ subsets due to TGFβ1 increase and APRIL down-regulation[55]. These data confirmed the induction of apoptosis through the gp120 engagement of CD4, observed in BM GP Ⅱb/Ⅱa+ (CD41+) megakaryocytic cells and in megakaryocytic cell line models[93-95]. Moreover, a reduction of c-mpl expression in the MK lineage due to V3 loop region of gp120 was observed in MK lineage thus indicating a further mechanism involved in the impairment of megakaryocytopoiesis[96].

HIV and gp120 altered the maturation of MKs, and decreased the number of MKs with higher ploidy[55]. Electron microscopy analysis of MKs from HIV-infected individuals with thrombocytopenia clearly demonstrated ultrastructural abnormalities, such as blebbing of the surface membrane and vacuolisation of the peripheral cytoplasm[97]. Mature MKs can be infected by HIV through binding the CD4 receptor[97-102], and HIV genomes have been detected in MKs purified from BM of HIV-positive patients[103]. The infection of MKs is not strain-restricted because both R5- and X4-tropic HIV-1 strains are able to infect MKs thus indicating that the infection may occur early in the development of HIV infection[99]. In addition to these direct effects of HIV on the MK cell lineage,

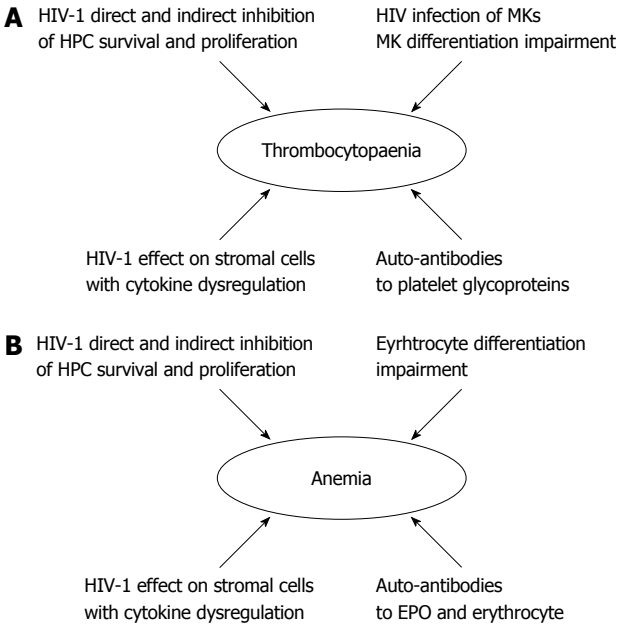


Figure 2 The mechanisms involved in human immunodeficiency virus-related thrombocytopenia and anaemia. A: Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-related thrombocytopenia; B: HIV-related anaemia. EPO: Erythropoietin; HPC: Haematopoietic progenitor cell; MK: Megakaryocyte.

HIV also supports chronic thrombocytopenia through autoimmune mechanisms[89-92], particularly evident in early stages of the disease[104,105]. Autoimmune mechanisms are related to anti-HIV antibodies cross-reacting with platelet-membrane glycoproteins, supporting the basic role of molecular mimicry in the induction of these antibodies[106-110]. In particular, an autoantibody directed against integrin GP Ⅲa49-66 induced a platelet lysis[110] and cross-reacted with some peptides derived from Nef and gp120[111]. The anti-GPⅢa49-66 antibody isolated from HIV-1 patients down-regulated MK proliferation in *in vitro* culture of human cord blood CD34+ cells driven by TPO[112].

Platelets can bind HIV-1 gp120 through its CXCR4 and fibronectin surface receptors, and platelet-bound HIV may infect permissive cells suggesting a possible role for platelets as carriers in the spread of HIV infection[113]. The interaction between platelets and HIV leads to the activation of platelets and an altered platelet morphology, which is likely due to CXCR4 binding because this protein is the receptor of SDF-1, a factor involved in enhancing platelet activation by agonists[114]. Platelet activation was detected in HIV patients and the degree of activation in circulating platelets was higher in AIDS patients than patients in earlier stages of HIV infection[115]. Activated platelets also represent a source of some pro-inflammatory cytokines. Their activation led to a strong induction of IL-1β and IL-18 secretion eliciting a further cytokine regulation derangement[114,116]. These alterations of platelet activity were also related to the impairment of coagulation homeostasis, thus increasing the complexity of the HIV/MK/platelet/coagulation interactions. These studies demonstrated that the MK lineage is a direct and

indirect target of HIV and its proteins throughout their entire differentiation and development. This targeting affects platelet maturation and activity, explaining why thrombocytopenia is a major cytopenia in HIV-positive patients.

HIV AND THE ERYTHROCYTE CELL LINEAGE

Anaemia is a clinical complication detectable in many HIV patients[117]. The overall incidence of anaemia in HIV-positive individuals is 10% in asymptomatic patients and up to 92% in patients with AIDS[6,117]. cART treatment has reduced but not solved the problem of anaemia in HIV patients. In a cohort of 1624 patients in the EuroSIDA study, the prevalence of anaemia during HAART decreased from 65% in naive patients to 53% after 6 mo of therapy and 45% after 1 year of therapy[118]. Although anaemia does not generally cause death in HIV patients, it is well known that anaemia can increase morbidity in these subjects. HIV patients with anaemia have a higher risk of reduced survival compared to non-anaemic in HIV positive patients[117,119]. The symptoms of anaemia during HIV infection are not different from the symptoms that are observed in HIV negative patients, and the diagnosis of anaemia is often a laboratory diagnosis based on a reduction of the haemoglobin (Hb) value and erythrocyte count. The anaemia is generally mild with Hb concentrations between 8-14 g/dL for men and 8-12 g/dL for women, although the degree of anaemia is dependent on the immunosuppressive context and disease stage[120]. The erythrocyte morphology does not exhibit consistent variations in the peripheral blood[121]. Microcytosis is rarely observed, whereas macrocytosis is found in HIV-positive patients treated with zidovudine (AZT). AZT treatment was related to BM suppression, and the HER and WIHS studies observed a significant increase in anaemia in AZT-treated patients[122,123]. Some reports indicated the presence of poikilocytosis, anisocytosis and ruleaux formation, but, in general, HIV-associated anaemia is characterised by normocytosis, low reticulocyte counts and an ineffective erythropoiesis with an hyporegenerative BM[6,124]. The pathogenesis of anaemia in HIV-positive patients is multifactorial (Figure 2B): the different mechanisms that are involved in the anaemia induction are characterised by the impairment of erythrocyte production and increased erythrocyte destruction[120]. HIV is directly involved in the induction of anaemia even though neoplastic diseases, vitamin deficiencies, iron metabolism impairment, pharmacological treatments and opportunistic infections are implicated in anaemia onset during HIV infection. The involvement of HPCs in the cytopenias has been illustrated above, however, it is noteworthy that Cleveland and coworkers observed the expression of CD4 on the cell membranes of erythroid differentiating cells. The co-expression of CD4 and glycophorin A indicates that some erythroid-committed cells could represent a target for HIV infection[125]. In addition, the expression of functional CXCR4[37] was detected in CD34+ BFU-Es even though its expression level decreased during erythroid differentiation. Interestingly, Tat treatment of cord blood-isolated HPCs up-regulated CXCR4 protein expression indicating a complex effect of HIV activity on erythrocyte lineage survival and differentiation[126]. Moreover, the dysfunction of erythroid differentiation could be related to BM microenvironment damage and stromal cell impairment[7,71]. IL-1β, IFN-γ, TGFβ1 and TNFα suppress the growth of progenitor cells *in vitro* and may play an important role in the induction of HIV-associated anaemia[116,126,127]. Some papers have suggested that HIV could impair the EPO-related feedback mechanisms that regulate the red blood cell homeostasis. Decreasing the Hb concentration induces EPO production, whereas in many HIV patients the presence of anaemia is coupled with a decrease in the serum EPO concentration that is independent of kidney damage[121,128,129]. Moreover, *in vitro* experiments demonstrated that HIV-1 reduced EPO synthesis[130]. Different mechanisms have been considered to explain this EPO reduction. HIV-related up-regulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-1β and TNF-α directly down-regulates EPO expression *in vitro*[131] through the cytokine-mediated formation of reactive oxygen species, which in turn impair the binding affinities of EPO-inducing transcription factors. In addition, circulating antibodies to EPO are detectable in approximatively 23% of HIV-infected patients, and a prospective study on 113 patients showed that anti-EPO antibodies could be considered an independent risk factor for anaemia[132,133]. The presence of these auto-antibodies, directed against several targets, was associated with molecular mimicry and the dysregulation of the immune system. Recent reports demonstrated that the anti-EPO antibodies recognised three major EPO molecule epitopes that span three regions including the amino acids domains 1-20 (EP1), 54-72 (EP5) and 147-166 (EP12) of which EP1 and EP12 are the domains that are involved in the EPO-EPOR interaction[134]. The region corresponding to EP1 shows a 63% sequence homology with the 34-52 amino acid sequence of HIV gag p17, and a cross-reaction between anti-EP-1 auto-antibodies and the gag fragment was detected suggesting a role for mimicry by this protein in the occurrence of anaemia[134]. HIV-associated anaemia could also be induced by haemolysis. In HIV patients, cases of haemolysis have been observed that are linked to CID, glucose-6-dehydrogenase deficiency, auto-antibodies against red blood cells, thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura and pharmacological treatment. Furthermore, some HIV positive patients exhibited the presence of a broad panel of specific and non-specific anti-erythrocyte antibodies, and, in some cases, erythrocyte lysis was mediated by complement activation. Although consistent haemolysis is rare in HIV patients, the damage and lysis of red blood cells by auto-antibodies can be considered an additional mechanism of HIV-associated anaemia[135-137].

In conclusion, the occurrence of thrombocytopenia and anaemia represent major pathological manifestations

in HIV patients. The pathogenesis of these cytopenias is multifactorial, and several targets such as HPCs, cell lineage differentiation, cytokine dysregulation and stromal cell impairment cooperate in the occurrence of these haematopoietic defects. The investigation of the different mechanisms that are involved in the genesis of these cytopenias has provided important findings on HIV pathogenesis even though some pivotal items such as the susceptibility of HPCs to HIV infection and their role as HIV infection reservoirs are still under debate and deserve additional experimental analysis. Further studies will be essential to better characterise these mechanisms and to identify useful targets for supportive therapy and management of HIV-positive patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Levy JA**. HIV pathogenesis: 25 years of progress and persistent challenges. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 147-160 [PMID: 19098484 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e3283217f9f]

2 **Borderi M**, Gibellini D, Vescini F, De Crignis E, Cimatti L, Biagetti C, Tampellini L, Re MC. Metabolic bone disease in HIV infection. *AIDS* 2009; **23**: 1297-1310 [PMID: 19550284 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32832ce85a]

3 **Gandhi RT**, Sax PE, Grinspoon SK. Metabolic and cardiovascular complications in HIV-infected patients: new challenges for a new age. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **205** Suppl 3: S353-S354 [PMID: 22577207 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis202]

4 **Maggi P**, Bartolozzi D, Bonfanti P, Calza L, Cherubini C, Di Biagio A, Marcotullio S, Montella F, Montinaro V, Mussini C, Narciso P, Rusconi S, Vescini F. Renal complications in HIV disease: between present and future. *AIDS Rev* 2012; **14**: 37-53 [PMID: 22297503]

5 **Kaul M**, Lipton SA. Mechanisms of neuronal injury and death in HIV-1 associated dementia. *Curr HIV Res* 2006; **4**: 307-318 [PMID: 16842083 DOI: 10.2174/157016206777709384]

6 **Zon LI**, Arkin C, Groopman JE. Haematologic manifestations of the human immune deficiency virus (HIV). *Br J Haematol* 1987; **66**: 251-256 [PMID: 3606961 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1987.tb01307.x]

7 **Moses A**, Nelson J, Bagby GC. The influence of human immunodeficiency virus-1 on hematopoiesis. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 1479-1495 [PMID: 9473211]

8 **Ratner L**. Human immunodeficiency virus-associated autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura: a review. *Am J Med* 1989; **86**: 194-198 [PMID: 2643870 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(89)90268-4]

9 **Davis BR**, Zauli G. Effect of human immunodeficiency virus infection on haematopoiesis. *Baillieres Clin Haematol* 1995; **8**: 113-130 [PMID: 7545035 DOI: 10.1016/S0950-3536(05)80234-3]

10 **Alexaki A**, Wigdahl B. HIV-1 infection of bone marrow hematopoietic progenitor cells and their role in trafficking and viral dissemination. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e1000215 [PMID: 19112504 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000215]

11 **Shizuru JA**, Negrin RS, Weissman IL. Hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells: clinical and preclinical regeneration of the hematolymphoid system. *Annu Rev Med* 2005; **56**: 509-538 [PMID: 15660525 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.54.101601.152334]

12 **Zauli G**, Re MC, Davis B, Sen L, Visani G, Gugliotta L, Furlini G, La Placa M. Impaired in vitro growth of purified (CD34+) hematopoietic progenitors in human immunodeficiency virus-1 seropositive thrombocytopenic individuals. *Blood* 1992; **79**: 2680-2687 [PMID: 1375110]

13 **Louache F**, Henri A, Bettaieb A, Oksenhendler E, Raguin G, Tulliez M, Vainchenker W. Role of human immunodeficiency virus replication in defective in vitro growth of hematopoietic progenitors. *Blood* 1992; **80**: 2991-2999 [PMID: 1281682]

14 **Banda NK**, Simon GR, Sipple JD, Terrell KL, Archer P, Shpall EJ, Akkina RK, Myers AM, Harrison GS. Depletion of CD34+ CD4+ cells in bone marrow from HIV-1-infected individuals. *Biol Blood Marrow Transplant* 1999; **5**: 162-172 [PMID: 10392962 DOI: 10.1053/bbmt.1999.v5.pm10392962]

15 **Zauli G**, Vitale M, Re MC, Furlini G, Zamai L, Falcieri E, Gibellini D, Visani G, Davis BR, Capitani S. In vitro exposure to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 induces apoptotic cell death of the factor-dependent TF-1 hematopoietic cell line. *Blood* 1994; **83**: 167-175 [PMID: 7506078]

16 **Thiebot H**, Louache F, Vaslin B, de Revel T, Neildez O, Larghero J, Vainchenker W, Dormont D, Le Grand R. Early and persistent bone marrow hematopoiesis defect in simian/human immunodeficiency virus-infected macaques despite efficient reduction of viremia by highly active antiretroviral therapy during primary infection. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 11594-11602 [PMID: 11689641 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.23.11594-11602.2001]

17 **Costantini A**, Giuliodoro S, Mancini S, Butini L, Regnery CM, Silvestri G, Greco F, Leoni P, Montroni M. Impaired in-vitro growth of megakaryocytic colonies derived from CD34 cells of HIV-1-infected patients with active viral replication. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1713-1720 [PMID: 16931935 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000242817.88086.8c]

18 **Louache F**, Debili N, Marandin A, Coulombel L, Vainchenker W. Expression of CD4 by human hematopoietic progenitors. *Blood* 1994; **84**: 3344-3355 [PMID: 7524737]

19 **Zauli G**, Furlini G, Vitale M, Re MC, Gibellini D, Zamai L, Visani G, Borgatti P, Capitani S, La Placa M. A subset of human CD34+ hematopoietic progenitors express low levels of CD4, the high-affinity receptor for human immunodeficiency virus-type 1. *Blood* 1994; **84**: 1896-1905 [PMID: 7521692]

20 **Deichmann M**, Kronenwett R, Haas R. Expression of the human immunodeficiency virus type-1 coreceptors CXCR-4 (fusin, LESTR) and CKR-5 in CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Blood* 1997; **89**: 3522-3528 [PMID: 9160656]

21 **Carr JM**, Ramshaw HS, Li P, Burrell CJ. CD34+ cells and their derivatives contain mRNA for CD4 and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) co-receptors and are susceptible to infection with M- and T-tropic HIV. *J Gen Virol* 1998; **79** (Pt 1): 71-75 [PMID: 9460925]

22 **Aiuti A**, Turchetto L, Cota M, Cipponi A, Brambilla A, Arcelloni C, Paroni R, Vicenzi E, Bordignon C, Poli G. Human CD34(+) cells express CXCR4 and its ligand stromal cell-derived factor-1. Implications for infection by T-cell tropic human immunodeficiency virus. *Blood* 1999; **94**: 62-73 [PMID: 10381499]

23 **Shen H**, Cheng T, Preffer FI, Dombkowski D, Tomasson MH, Golan DE, Yang O, Hofmann W, Sodroski JG, Luster AD, Scadden DT. Intrinsic human immunodeficiency virus type 1 resistance of hematopoietic stem cells despite coreceptor expression. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 728-737 [PMID: 9847379]

24 **Kitano K**, Abboud CN, Ryan DH, Quan SG, Baldwin GC, Golde DW. Macrophage-active colony-stimulating factors enhance human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection in bone marrow stem cells. *Blood* 1991; **77**: 1699-1705 [PMID: 1707694]

25 **Steinberg HN**, Crumpacker CS, Chatis PA. In vitro suppression of normal human bone marrow progenitor cells by human immunodeficiency virus. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 1765-1769 [PMID: 2002542]

26 **Molina JM**, Scadden DT, Sakaguchi M, Fuller B, Woon A, Groopman JE. Lack of evidence for infection of or effect on growth of hematopoietic progenitor cells after in vivo or in vitro exposure to human immunodeficiency virus. *Blood* 1990; **76**: 2476-2482 [PMID: 2265244]

27 **Cen D**, Zauli G, Szarnicki R, Davis BR. Effect of different human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1) isolates on long-term bone marrow haemopoiesis. *Br J Haematol* 1993;

85: 596-602 [PMID: 7510992 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1993.tb03353.x]
28 **Zauli G**, Vitale M, Gibellini D, Capitani S. Inhibition of purified CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells by human immunodeficiency virus 1 or gp120 mediated by endogenous transforming growth factor beta 1. *J Exp Med* 1996; **183**: 99-108 [PMID: 8551249 DOI: 10.1084/jem.183.1.99]
29 **Kaushal S**, La Russa VF, Gartner S, Kessler S, Perfetto S, Yu Z, Ritchey DW, Xu J, Perera P, Kim J, Reid T, Mayers DL, St Louis D, Mosca JD. Exposure of human CD34+ cells to human immunodeficiency virus type 1 does not influence their expansion and proliferation of hematopoietic progenitors in vitro. *Blood* 1996; **88**: 130-137 [PMID: 8704167]
30 **Chelucci C**, Hassan HJ, Locardi C, Bulgarini D, Pelosi E, Mariani G, Testa U, Federico M, Valtieri M, Peschle C. In vitro human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection of purified hematopoietic progenitors in single-cell culture. *Blood* 1995; **85**: 1181-1187 [PMID: 7532032]
31 **Weichold FF**, Zella D, Barabitskaja O, Maciejewski JP, Dunn DE, Sloand EM, Young NS. Neither human immunodeficiency virus-1 (HIV-1) nor HIV-2 infects most-primitive human hematopoietic stem cells as assessed in long-term bone marrow cultures. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 907-915 [PMID: 9446651]
32 **Hariharan D**, Li Y, Campbell DE, Douglas SD, Starr SE, Ho W. Human immunodeficiency virus infection of human placental cord blood CD34+AC133+ stem cells and their progeny. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 1999; **15**: 1545-1552 [PMID: 10580405 DOI: 10.1089/088922299309838]
33 **von Laer D**, Hufert FT, Fenner TE, Schwander S, Dietrich M, Schmitz H, Kern P. CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells are not a major reservoir of the human immunodeficiency virus. *Blood* 1990; **76**: 1281-1286 [PMID: 1698476]
34 **Davis BR**, Schwartz DH, Marx JC, Johnson CE, Berry JM, Lyding J, Merigan TC, Zander A. Absent or rare human immunodeficiency virus infection of bone marrow stem/progenitor cells in vivo. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 1985-1990 [PMID: 2002553]
35 **Neal TF**, Holland HK, Baum CM, Villinger F, Ansari AA, Saral R, Wingard JR, Fleming WH. CD34+ progenitor cells from asymptomatic patients are not a major reservoir for human immunodeficiency virus-1. *Blood* 1995; **86**: 1749-1756 [PMID: 7544640]
36 **Stanley SK**, Kessler SW, Justement JS, Schnittman SM, Greenhouse JJ, Brown CC, Musongela L, Musey K, Kapita B, Fauci AS. CD34+ bone marrow cells are infected with HIV in a subset of seropositive individuals. *J Immunol* 1992; **149**: 689-697 [PMID: 1378076]
37 **Majka M**, Rozmyslowicz T, Lee B, Murphy SL, Pietrzkowski Z, Gaulton GN, Silberstein L, Ratajczak MZ. Bone marrow CD34(+) cells and megakaryoblasts secrete beta-chemokines that block infection of hematopoietic cells by M-tropic R5 HIV. *J Clin Invest* 1999; **104**: 1739-1749 [PMID: 10606628 DOI: 10.1172/JCI7779]
38 **Majka M**, Rozmyslowicz T, Ratajczak J, Dobrowsky A, Pietrzkowski Z, Gaulton GN, Janowska-Wieczorek A, Ratajczak MZ. The limited infectability by R5 HIV of CD34(+) cells from thymus, cord, and peripheral blood and bone marrow is explained by their ability to produce beta-chemokines. *Exp Hematol* 2000; **28**: 1334-1342 [PMID: 11146155 DOI: 10.1016/S0301-472X(00)00541-5]
39 **Zhang J**, Scadden DT, Crumpacker CS. Primitive hematopoietic cells resist HIV-1 infection via p21. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 473-481 [PMID: 17273559 DOI: 10.1172/JCI28971]
40 **Redd AD**, Avalos A, Essex M. Infection of hematopoietic progenitor cells by HIV-1 subtype C, and its association with anemia in southern Africa. *Blood* 2007; **110**: 3143-3149 [PMID: 17693583 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2007-04-086314]
41 **Carter CC**, Onafuwa-Nuga A, McNamara LA, Riddell J, Bixby D, Savona MR, Collins KL. HIV-1 infects multipotent progenitor cells causing cell death and establishing latent cellular reservoirs. *Nat Med* 2010; **16**: 446-451 [PMID: 20208541 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2109]
42 **Carter CC**, McNamara LA, Onafuwa-Nuga A, Shackleton M, Riddell J, Bixby D, Savona MR, Morrison SJ, Collins KL. HIV-1 utilizes the CXCR4 chemokine receptor to infect multipotent hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. *Cell Host Microbe* 2011; **9**: 223-234 [PMID: 21402361 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2011.02.005]
43 **McNamara LA**, Ganesh JA, Collins KL. Latent HIV-1 infection occurs in multiple subsets of hematopoietic progenitor cells and is reversed by NF-κB activation. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 9337-9350 [PMID: 22718820 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00895-12]
44 **Li L**, Qiu C, Li L, Liu A, Zhou M, Han Z, Qiu C, Zhang X, Xu J, Zhu H. In vitro infection of human umbilical cord blood CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells by HIV-1 CRF07_BC enveloped pseudovirus. *Curr HIV Res* 2012; **10**: 572-577 [PMID: 22934658]
45 **Zhang J**, Crumpacker CS. Hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells in HIV/AIDS and immune reconstitution. *Cell Res* 2010; **20**: 745-747 [PMID: 20567263 DOI: 10.1038/cr.2010.85]
46 **Durand CM**, Ghiaur G, Siliciano JD, Rabi SA, Eisele EE, Salgado M, Shan L, Lai JF, Zhang H, Margolick J, Jones RJ, Gallant JE, Ambinder RF, Siliciano RF. HIV-1 DNA is detected in bone marrow populations containing CD4+ T cells but is not found in purified CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells in most patients on antiretroviral therapy. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **205**: 1014-1018 [PMID: 22275402 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jir884]
47 **Josefsson L**, Eriksson S, Sinclair E, Ho T, Killian M, Epling L, Shao W, Lewis B, Bacchetti P, Loeb L, Custer J, Poole L, Hecht FM, Palmer S. Hematopoietic precursor cells isolated from patients on long-term suppressive HIV therapy did not contain HIV-1 DNA. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **206**: 28-34 [PMID: 22536001 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis301]
48 **Maciejewski JP**, Weichold FF, Young NS. HIV-1 suppression of hematopoiesis in vitro mediated by envelope glycoprotein and TNF-alpha. *J Immunol* 1994; **153**: 4303-4310 [PMID: 7523521]
49 **Schwartz GN**, Kessler SW, Szabo JM, Burrell LM, Francis ML. Negative regulators may mediate some of the inhibitory effects of HIV-1 infected stromal cell layers on erythropoiesis and myelopoiesis in human bone marrow long term cultures. *J Leukoc Biol* 1995; **57**: 948-955 [PMID: 7540643]
50 **Marandin A**, Canque B, Coulombel L, Gluckman JC, Vainchenker W, Louache F. In vitro infection of bone marrow-adherent cells by human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) does not alter their ability to support hematopoiesis. *Virology* 1995; **213**: 245-248 [PMID: 7483269 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.1565]
51 **Kojouharoff G**, Ottmann OG, von Briesen H, Geissler G, Rübsamen-Waigmann H, Hoelzer D, Ganser A. Infection of granulocyte/monocyte progenitor cells with HIV1. *Res Virol* 1991; **142**: 151-157 [PMID: 1896640 DOI: 10.1016/0923-2516(91)90052-5]
52 **Kanmogne GD**, Primeaux C, Grammas P. Induction of apoptosis and endothelin-1 secretion in primary human lung endothelial cells by HIV-1 gp120 proteins. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2005; **333**: 1107-1115 [PMID: 15979050 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2005.05.198]
53 **Gibellini D**, De Crignis E, Ponti C, Cimatti L, Borderi M, Tschon M, Giardino R, Re MC. HIV-1 triggers apoptosis in primary osteoblasts and HOBIT cells through TNFalpha activation. *J Med Virol* 2008; **80**: 1507-1514 [PMID: 18649336 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.21266]
54 **Chen L**, Liu J, Xu C, Keblesh J, Zang W, Xiong H. HIV-1gp120 induces neuronal apoptosis through enhancement of 4-aminopyridine-senstive outward K+ currents. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e25994 [PMID: 22016798 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0025994]
55 **MacEneaney OJ**, Connick E, DeSouza CA. Effects of HIV-1 gp120 and protease inhibitors on apoptotic susceptibility

of CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2011; **56**: e49-e50 [PMID: 21233630 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181fb1cb3]

56 **Banda NK**, Tomczak JA, Shpall EJ, Sipple J, Akkina RK, Steimer KS, Hami L, Curiel TJ, Singer Harrison G. HIV-gp120 induced cell death in hematopoietic progenitor CD34+ cells. *Apoptosis* 1997; **2**: 61-68 [PMID: 14646565 DOI: 10.1023/A:1026439726053]

57 **Gibellini D**, Vitone F, Buzzi M, Schiavone P, De Crignis E, Cicola R, Conte R, Ponti C, Re MC. HIV-1 negatively affects the survival/maturation of cord blood CD34(+) hematopoietic progenitor cells differentiated towards megakaryocytic lineage by HIV-1 gp120/CD4 membrane interaction. *J Cell Physiol* 2007; **210**: 315-324 [PMID: 17111363 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.20815]

58 **Zauli G**, Re MC, Visani G, Furlini G, La Placa M. Inhibitory effect of HIV-1 envelope glycoproteins gp120 and gp160 on the in vitro growth of enriched (CD34+) hematopoietic progenitor cells. *Arch Virol* 1992; **122**: 271-280 [PMID: 1370604 DOI: 10.1007/BF01317189]

59 **Zauli G**, Re MC, Visani G, Furlini G, Mazza P, Vignoli M, La Placa M. Evidence for a human immunodeficiency virus type 1-mediated suppression of uninfected hematopoietic (CD34+) cells in AIDS patients. *J Infect Dis* 1992; **166**: 710-716 [PMID: 1382106 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/166.4.710]

60 **Stella CC**, Ganser A, Hoelzer D. Defective in vitro growth of the hemopoietic progenitor cells in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *J Clin Invest* 1987; **80**: 286-293 [PMID: 3497175 DOI: 10.1172/JCI113071]

61 **Lunardi-Iskandar Y**, Georgoulias V, Bertoli AM, Augery-Bourget Y, Ammar A, Vittecoq D, Rosenbaum W, Meyer P, Jasmin C. Impaired in-vitro proliferation of hemopoietic precursors in HIV-1-infected subjects. *Leuk Res* 1989; **13**: 573-581 [PMID: 2668646 DOI: 10.1016/0145-2126(89)90124-0]

62 **Donahue RE**, Johnson MM, Zon LI, Clark SC, Groopman JE. Suppression of in vitro haematopoiesis following human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Nature* 1987; **326**: 200-203 [PMID: 2434864 DOI: 10.1038/326200a0]

63 **Bahner I**, Kearns K, Coutinho S, Leonard EH, Kohn DB. Infection of human marrow stroma by human immunodeficiency virus-1 (HIV-1) is both required and sufficient for HIV-1-induced hematopoietic suppression in vitro: demonstration by gene modification of primary human stroma. *Blood* 1997; **90**: 1787-1798 [PMID: 9292511]

64 **Gill V**, Shattock RJ, Scopes J, Hayes P, Freedman AR, Griffin GE, Gordon-Smith EC, Gibson FM. Human immunodeficiency virus infection impairs hemopoiesis in long-term bone marrow cultures: nonreversal by nucleoside analogues. *J Infect Dis* 1997; **176**: 1510-1516 [PMID: 9395362 DOI: 10.1086/514149]

65 **Isgrò A**, Aiuti A, Mezzaroma I, Addesso M, Riva E, Giovannetti A, Mazzetta F, Alario C, Mazzone A, Ruco L, Aiuti F. Improvement of interleukin 2 production, clonogenic capability and restoration of stromal cell function in human immunodeficiency virus-type-1 patients after highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Br J Haematol* 2002; **118**: 864-874 [PMID: 12181060 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2141.2002.03680.x]

66 **Cotter EJ**, Chew N, Powderly WG, Doran PP. HIV type 1 alters mesenchymal stem cell differentiation potential and cell phenotype ex vivo. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 2011; **27**: 187-199 [PMID: 20929345 DOI: 10.1089/aid.2010.0114]

67 **Gibellini D**, Alviano F, Miserocchi A, Tazzari PL, Ricci F, Clò A, Morini S, Borderi M, Viale P, Pasquinelli G, Pagliaro P, Bagnara GP, Re MC. HIV-1 and recombinant gp120 affect the survival and differentiation of human vessel wall-derived mesenchymal stem cells. *Retrovirology* 2011; **8**: 40 [PMID: 21612582 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4690-8-40]

68 **Gibellini D**, Miserocchi A, Tazzari PL, Ricci F, Clò A, Morini S, Ponti C, Pasquinelli G, Bon I, Pagliaro P, Borderi M, Re MC. Analysis of the effects of HIV-1 Tat on the survival and differentiation of vessel wall-derived mesenchymal stem cells. *J Cell Biochem* 2012; **113**: 1132-1141 [PMID: 22095559 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.23446]

69 **Moses AV**, Williams S, Heneveld ML, Strussenberg J, Rarick M, Loveless M, Bagby G, Nelson JA. Human immunodeficiency virus infection of bone marrow endothelium reduces induction of stromal hematopoietic growth factors. *Blood* 1996; **87**: 919-925 [PMID: 8562963]

70 **Birx DL**, Redfield RR, Tencer K, Fowler A, Burke DS, Tosato G. Induction of interleukin-6 during human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Blood* 1990; **76**: 2303-2310 [PMID: 2257304]

71 **Buonaguro L**, Barillari G, Chang HK, Bohan CA, Kao V, Morgan R, Gallo RC, Ensoli B. Effects of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Tat protein on the expression of inflammatory cytokines. *J Virol* 1992; **66**: 7159-7167 [PMID: 1279199]

72 **Gibellini D**, Zauli G, Re MC, Milani D, Furlini G, Caramelli E, Capitani S, La Placa M. Recombinant human immunodeficiency virus type-1 (HIV-1) Tat protein sequentially upregulates IL-6 and TGF-beta 1 mRNA expression and protein synthesis in peripheral blood monocytes. *Br J Haematol* 1994; **88**: 261-267 [PMID: 7803268 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1994.tb05016.x]

73 **Oyaizu N**, McCloskey TW, Than S, Hu R, Kalyanaraman VS, Pahwa S. Cross-linking of CD4 molecules upregulates Fas antigen expression in lymphocytes by inducing interferon-gamma and tumor necrosis factor-alpha secretion. *Blood* 1994; **84**: 2622-2631 [PMID: 7522637]

74 **Scala G**, Ruocco MR, Ambrosino C, Mallardo M, Giordano V, Baldassarre F, Dragonetti E, Quinto I, Venuta S. The expression of the interleukin 6 gene is induced by the human immunodeficiency virus 1 TAT protein. *J Exp Med* 1994; **179**: 961-971 [PMID: 8113688 DOI: 10.1084/jem.179.3.961]

75 **Barqasho B**, Nowak P, Tjernlund A, Kinloch S, Goh LE, Lampe F, Fisher M, Andersson J, Sönnerborg A. Kinetics of plasma cytokines and chemokines during primary HIV-1 infection and after analytical treatment interruption. *HIV Med* 2009; **10**: 94-102 [PMID: 19200172 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1293.2008.00657.x]

76 **Weiss L**, Haeffner-Cavaillon N, Laude M, Gilquin J, Kazatchkine MD. HIV infection is associated with the spontaneous production of interleukin-1 (IL-1) in vivo and with an abnormal release of IL-1 alpha in vitro. *AIDS* 1989; **3**: 695-699 [PMID: 2515876 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-198911000-00002]

77 **Lafeuillade A**, Poizot-Martin I, Quilichini R, Gastaut JA, Kaplanski S, Farnarier C, Mege JL, Bongrand P. Increased interleukin-6 production is associated with disease progression in HIV infection. *AIDS* 1991; **5**: 1139-1140 [PMID: 1930778 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199109000-00014]

78 **Kedzierska K**, Crowe SM. Cytokines and HIV-1: interactions and clinical implications. *Antivir Chem Chemother* 2001; **12**: 133-150 [PMID: 12959322]

79 **Ahmad R**, Sindhu ST, Toma E, Morisset R, Ahmad A. Elevated levels of circulating interleukin-18 in human immunodeficiency virus-infected individuals: role of peripheral blood mononuclear cells and implications for AIDS pathogenesis. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 12448-12456 [PMID: 12438570 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.24.12448-12456.2002]

80 **Torre D**, Pugliese A. Interleukin 18 and cardiovascular disease in HIV-1 infection: a partner in crime? *AIDS Rev* 2010; **12**: 31-39 [PMID: 20216908 DOI: 10.2174/157016206778559993]

81 **Cheung R**, Ravyn V, Wang L, Ptasznik A, Collman RG. Signaling mechanism of HIV-1 gp120 and virion-induced IL-1beta release in primary human macrophages. *J Immunol* 2008; **180**: 6675-6684 [PMID: 18453587]

82 **Stone SF**, Price P, Keane NM, Murray RJ, French MA. Levels of IL-6 and soluble IL-6 receptor are increased in HIV patients with a history of immune restoration disease after HAART. *HIV Med* 2002; **3**: 21-27 [PMID: 12059947 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-2662.2001.00096.x]

83 **Ostrowski SR**, Katzenstein TL, Pedersen BK, Gerstoft J, Ullum H. Residual viraemia in HIV-1-infected patients with plasma viral load & lt; or=20 copies/ml is associated with

increased blood levels of soluble immune activation markers. *Scand J Immunol* 2008; **68**: 652-660 [PMID: 19055701 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3083.2008.02184.x]
84 **Tebas P**, Henry WK, Matining R, Weng-Cherng D, Schmitz J, Valdez H, Jahed N, Myers L, Powderly WG, Katzenstein D. Metabolic and immune activation effects of treatment interruption in chronic HIV-1 infection: implications for cardiovascular risk. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e2021 [PMID: 18431498 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0002021]
85 **Bastard JP**, Soulié C, Fellahi S, Haïm-Boukobza S, Simon A, Katlama C, Calvez V, Marcelin AG, Capeau J. Circulating interleukin-6 levels correlate with residual HIV viraemia and markers of immune dysfunction in treatment-controlled HIV-infected patients. *Antivir Ther* 2012; **17**: 915-919 [PMID: 22436412 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2093]
86 **Wang H**, English NJ, Reid CD, Merson JE, Knight SC. Role of beta-chemokines in HIV-1 infection of dendritic cells maturing from CD34+ stem cells. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 1999; **21**: 179-188 [PMID: 10421240 DOI: 10.1097/00126334-199907010-00001]
87 **Yurasov SV**, Pettoello-Mantovani M, Raker CA, Goldstein H. HIV type 1 infection of human fetal bone marrow cells induces apoptotic changes in hematopoietic precursor cells and suppresses their in vitro differentiation and capacity to engraft SCID mice. *AIDS Res Hum Retroviruses* 1999; **15**: 1639-1652 [PMID: 10606087 DOI: 10.1089/088922299309685]
88 **Zauli G**, Davis BR, Re MC, Visani G, Furlini G, La Placa M. tat protein stimulates production of transforming growth factor-beta 1 by marrow macrophages: a potential mechanism for human immunodeficiency virus-1-induced hematopoietic suppression. *Blood* 1992; **80**: 3036-3043 [PMID: 1281686]
89 **Bierling P**, Bettaieb A, Oksenhendler E. Human immunodeficiency virus-related immune thrombocytopenia. *Semin Thromb Hemost* 1995; **21**: 68-75 [PMID: 7604293 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1000380]
90 **Najean Y**, Rain JD. The mechanism of thrombocytopenia in patients with HIV infection. *J Lab Clin Med* 1994; **123**: 415-420 [PMID: 8133154]
91 **Scaradavou A**. HIV-related thrombocytopenia. *Blood Rev* 2002; **16**: 73-76 [PMID: 11914001 DOI: 10.1054/blre.2001.0188]
92 **Vannappagari V**, Nkhoma ET, Atashili J, Laurent SS, Zhao H. Prevalence, severity, and duration of thrombocytopenia among HIV patients in the era of highly active antiretroviral therapy. *Platelets* 2011; **22**: 611-618 [PMID: 21612330 DOI: 10.3109/09537104.2011.582526]
93 **Zauli G**, Catani L, Gibellini D, Re MC, Milani D, Borgatti P, Bassini A, La Placa M, Capitani S. The CD4 receptor plays essential but distinct roles in HIV-1 infection and induction of apoptosis in primary bone marrow GPIIb/IIIa+ megakaryocytes and the HEL cell line. *Br J Haematol* 1995; **91**: 290-298 [PMID: 8547064 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1995.tb05292.x]
94 **Zauli G**, Catani L, Gibellini D, Re MC, Vianelli N, Colangeli V, Celeghini C, Capitani S, La Placa M. Impaired survival of bone marrow GPIIb/IIa+ megakaryocytic cells as an additional pathogenetic mechanism of HIV-1-related thrombocytopenia. *Br J Haematol* 1996; **92**: 711-717 [PMID: 8616042 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2141.1996.367904.x]
95 **Gibellini D**, Re MC, Bassini A, Guidotti L, Catani L, La Placa M, Zauli G. HIV-1 gp120 induces the activation of both c-fos and c-jun immediate-early genes in HEL megakaryocytic cells. *Br J Haematol* 1999; **104**: 81-86 [PMID: 10027715 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2141.1999.01141.x]
96 **Zhang M**, Evans S, Yuan J, Ratner L, Koka PS. HIV-1 determinants of thrombocytopenia at the stage of CD34+ progenitor cell differentiation in vivo lie in the viral envelope gp120 V3 loop region. *Virology* 2010; **401**: 131-136 [PMID: 20338611 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.03.005]
97 **Zucker-Franklin D**, Cao YZ. Megakaryocytes of human immunodeficiency virus-infected individuals express viral RNA. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1989; **86**: 5595-5599 [PMID: 2748605 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.86.14.5595]
98 **Chelucci C**, Federico M, Guerriero R, Mattia G, Casella I, Pelosi E, Testa U, Mariani G, Hassan HJ, Peschle C. Productive human immunodeficiency virus-1 infection of purified megakaryocytic progenitors/precursors and maturing megakaryocytes. *Blood* 1998; **91**: 1225-1234 [PMID: 9454752]
99 **Voulgaropoulou F**, Pontow SE, Ratner L. Productive infection of CD34+-cell-derived megakaryocytes by X4 and R5 HIV-1 isolates. *Virology* 2000; **269**: 78-85 [PMID: 10725200 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2000.0193]
100 **Sakaguchi M**, Sato T, Groopman JE. Human immunodeficiency virus infection of megakaryocytic cells. *Blood* 1991; **77**: 481-485 [PMID: 1991165]
101 **Basch RS**, Kouri YH, Karpatkin S. Expression of CD4 by human megakaryocytes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1990; **87**: 8085-8089 [PMID: 2236021 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.87.20.8085]
102 **Kouri YH**, Borkowsky W, Nardi M, Karpatkin S, Basch RS. Human megakaryocytes have a CD4 molecule capable of binding human immunodeficiency virus-1. *Blood* 1993; **81**: 2664-2670 [PMID: 8490176]
103 **Zucker-Franklin D**, Termin CS, Cooper MC. Structural changes in the megakaryocytes of patients infected with the human immune deficiency virus (HIV-1). *Am J Pathol* 1989; **134**: 1295-1303 [PMID: 2757119]
104 **Murphy MF**, Metcalfe P, Waters AH, Carne CA, Weller IV, Linch DC, Smith A. Incidence and mechanism of neutropenia and thrombocytopenia in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Br J Haematol* 1987; **66**: 337-340 [PMID: 3620353 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1987.tb06920.x]
105 **Cines DB**, Liebman H, Stasi R. Pathobiology of secondary immune thrombocytopenia. *Semin Hematol* 2009; **46**: S2-14 [PMID: 19245930 DOI: 10.1053/j.seminhematol.2008.12.005]
106 **Karpatkin S**, Nardi M, Lennette ET, Byrne B, Poiesz B. Anti-human immunodeficiency virus type 1 antibody complexes on platelets of seropositive thrombocytopenic homosexuals and narcotic addicts. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1988; **85**: 9763-9767 [PMID: 3200854 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.85.24.9763]
107 **Bettaieb A**, Fromont P, Louache F, Oksenhendler E, Vainchenker W, Duédari N, Bierling P. Presence of cross-reactive antibody between human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and platelet glycoproteins in HIV-related immune thrombocytopenic purpura. *Blood* 1992; **80**: 162-169 [PMID: 1611083]
108 **Hohmann AW**, Booth K, Peters V, Gordon DL, Comacchio RM. Common epitope on HIV p24 and human platelets. *Lancet* 1993; **342**: 1274-1275 [PMID: 7694021 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93)92363-X]
109 **Karpatkin S**, Nardi MA, Hymes KB. Sequestration of antiplatelet GPIIIa antibody in rheumatoid factor immune complexes of human immunodeficiency virus 1 thrombocytopenic patients. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 2263-2267 [PMID: 7892259 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.92.6.2263]
110 **Nardi M**, Tomlinson S, Greco MA, Karpatkin S. Complement-independent, peroxide-induced antibody lysis of platelets in HIV-1-related immune thrombocytopenia. *Cell* 2001; **106**: 551-561 [PMID: 11551503 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(01)00477-9]
111 **Li Z**, Nardi MA, Karpatkin S. Role of molecular mimicry to HIV-1 peptides in HIV-1-related immunologic thrombocytopenia. *Blood* 2005; **106**: 572-576 [PMID: 15774614 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2005-01-0243]
112 **Pan R**, Wang J, Nardi MA, Li Z. The inhibition effect of anti-GPIIIa49-66 antibody on megakaryocyte differentiation. *Thromb Haemost* 2011; **106**: 484-490 [PMID: 21713325 DOI: 10.1160/TH11-03-0153]
113 **Pugliese A**, Savarino A, Cantamessa C, Torre D. Influence of fibronectin on HIV-1 infection and capability of binding to platelets. *Cell Biochem Funct* 1996; **14**: 291-296 [PMID: 8952048 DOI: 10.1002/cbf.693]

114 **Gresele P**, Falcinelli E, Momi S. Potentiation and priming of platelet activation: a potential target for antiplatelet therapy. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2008; **29**: 352-360 [PMID: 18539343 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2008.05.002]

115 **Holme PA**, Müller F, Solum NO, Brosstad F, Frøland SS, Aukrust P. Enhanced activation of platelets with abnormal release of RANTES in human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection. *FASEB J* 1998; **12**: 79-89 [PMID: 9438413]

116 **Ahmad R**, Iannello A, Samarani S, Morisset R, Toma E, Grosley M, Ahmad A. Contribution of platelet activation to plasma IL-18 concentrations in HIV-infected AIDS patients. *AIDS* 2006; **20**: 1907-1909 [PMID: 16954739 DOI: 10.1097/01.aids.0000244217.46445.45]

117 **Kreuzer KA**, Rockstroh JK. Pathogenesis and pathophysiology of anemia in HIV infection. *Ann Hematol* 1997; **75**: 179-187 [PMID: 9433373 DOI: 10.1007/s002770050340]

118 **Mocroft A**, Kirk O, Barton SE, Dietrich M, Proenca R, Colebunders R, Pradier C, dArminio Monforte A, Ledergerber B, Lundgren JD. Anaemia is an independent predictive marker for clinical prognosis in HIV-infected patients from across Europe. EuroSIDA study group. *AIDS* 1999; **13**: 943-950 [PMID: 10371175 DOI: 10.1097/00002030-199905280-00010]

119 **Forsyth BW**, Andiman WA, O'Connor T. Development of a prognosis-based clinical staging system for infants infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *J Pediatr* 1996; **129**: 648-655 [PMID: 8917228 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3476(96)70144-0]

120 **Volberding PA**, Levine AM, Dieterich D, Mildvan D, Mitsuyasu R, Saag M. Anemia in HIV infection: clinical impact and evidence-based management strategies. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **38**: 1454-1463 [PMID: 15156485 DOI: 10.1086/383031]

121 **Spivak JL**, Bender BS, Quinn TC. Hematologic abnormalities in the acquired immune deficiency syndrome. *Am J Med* 1984; **77**: 224-228 [PMID: 6465173 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(84)90695-8]

122 **Levine AM**, Berhane K, Masri-Lavine L, Sanchez M, Young M, Augenbraun M, Cohen M, Anastos K, Newman M, Gange SJ, Watts H. Prevalence and correlates of anemia in a large cohort of HIV-infected women: Women's Interagency HIV Study. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2001; **26**: 28-35 [PMID: 11176266]

123 **Semba RD**, Shah N, Klein RS, Mayer KH, Schuman P, Vlahov D. Prevalence and cumulative incidence of and risk factors for anemia in a multicenter cohort study of human immunodeficiency virus-infected and -uninfected women. *Clin Infect Dis* 2002; **34**: 260-266 [PMID: 11740716 DOI: 10.1086/338151]

124 **Castella A**, Croxson TS, Mildvan D, Witt DH, Zalusky R. The bone marrow in AIDS. A histologic, hematologic, and microbiologic study. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1985; **84**: 425-432 [PMID: 4036875]

125 **Cleveland RP**, Liu YC. CD4 Expression by erythroid precursor cells in human bone marrow. *Blood* 1996; **87**: 2275-2282 [PMID: 8630388]

126 **Gibellini D**, Re MC, Vitone F, Rizzo N, Maldini C, La Placa M, Zauli G. Selective up-regulation of functional CXCR4 expression in erythroid cells by HIV-1 Tat protein. *Clin Exp Immunol* 2003; **131**: 428-435 [PMID: 12605695 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2249.2003.02095.x]

127 **Watanabe D**, Uehira T, Yonemoto H, Bando H, Ogawa Y, Yajima K, Taniguchi T, Kasai D, Nishida Y, Shirasaka T. Sustained high levels of serum interferon-γ during HIV-1 infection: a specific trend different from other cytokines. *Viral Immunol* 2010; **23**: 619-625 [PMID: 21142447 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2010.0065]

128 **Camacho J**, Poveda F, Zamorano AF, Valencia ME, Vázquez JJ, Arnalich F. Serum erythropoietin levels in anaemic patients with advanced human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Br J Haematol* 1992; **82**: 608-614 [PMID: 1486042 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.1992.tb06475.x]

129 **Kreuzer KA**, Rockstroh JK, Jelkmann W, Theisen A, Spengler U, Sauerbruch T. Inadequate erythropoietin response to anaemia in HIV patients: relationship to serum levels of tumour necrosis factor-alpha, interleukin-6 and their soluble receptors. *Br J Haematol* 1997; **96**: 235-239 [PMID: 9029005 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2141.1997.d01-2031.x]

130 **Wang Z**, Goldberg MA, Scadden DT. HIV-1 suppresses erythropoietin production in vitro. *Exp Hematol* 1993; **21**: 683-688 [PMID: 8390370]

131 **Weiss G**, Goodnough LT. Anemia of chronic disease. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 1011-1023 [PMID: 15758012 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra041809]

132 **Sipsas NV**, Kokori SI, Ioannidis JP, Kyriaki D, Tzioufas AG, Kordossis T. Circulating autoantibodies to erythropoietin are associated with human immunodeficiency virus type 1-related anemia. *J Infect Dis* 1999; **180**: 2044-2047 [PMID: 10558967 DOI: 10.1086/315156]

133 **Tsiakalos A**, Kordossis T, Ziakas PD, Kontos AN, Kyriaki D, Sipsas NV. Circulating antibodies to endogenous erythropoietin and risk for HIV-1-related anemia. *J Infect* 2010; **60**: 238-243 [PMID: 20036688 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2009.12.013]

134 **Tsiakalos A**, Routsias JG, Kordossis T, Moutsopoulos HM, Tzioufas AG, Sipsas NV. Fine epitope specificity of anti-erythropoietin antibodies reveals molecular mimicry with HIV-1 p17 protein: a pathogenetic mechanism for HIV-1-related anemia. *J Infect Dis* 2011; **204**: 902-911 [PMID: 21849287 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jir433]

135 **McGinniss MH**, Macher AM, Rook AH, Alter HJ. Red cell autoantibodies in patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome. *Transfusion* 1986; **26**: 405-409 [PMID: 3765030 DOI: 10.1046/j.1537-2995.1986.26587020112.x]

136 **Rarick MU**, Espina B, Mocharnuk R, Trilling Y, Levine AM. Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection: a report of three cases and review of the literature. *Am J Hematol* 1992; **40**: 103-109 [PMID: 1585907 DOI: 10.1002/ajh.2830400206]

137 **Sasadeusz J**, Buchanan M, Speed B. Reactive haemophagocytic syndrome in human immunodeficiency virus infection. *J Infect* 1990; **20**: 65-68 [PMID: 2299185 DOI: 10.1016/S0163-4453(90)92390-7]

P- Reviewer Giannecchini S **S- Editor** Gou SX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.102

World J Virol 2013 May 12; 2(2): 102-109
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Gualtiero Alvisi, PhD, Assistant Professor, *Series Editor*

How virus persistence can initiate the tumorigenesis process

Simone Avanzi, Gualtiero Alvisi, Alessandro Ripalti

Simone Avanzi, Alessandro Ripalti, Department of Oncology, Hematology and Laboratory Medicine, Operative Unit of Microbiology, A.O-U. di Bologna Policlinico S. Orsola-Malpighi, 40138 Bologna, Italy
Gualtiero Alvisi, Department of Molecular Medicine, Microbiology Section University of Padua, 35100 Padua, Italy
Author contributions: Ripalti A formulated the hypothesis; Avanzi S and Alvisi G criticized and revised the hypothesis; Avanzi S, Alvisi G and Ripalti A wrote the article.
Correspondence to: Dr. Alessandro Ripalti, Department of Oncology, Hematology and Laboratory Medicine, Operative Unit of Microbiology, A.O-U. di Bologna Policlinico S. Orsola-Malpighi, via Massarenti 9, 40138 Bologna, Italy. alessandro.ripalti@unibo.it
Telephone: +39-51-4290921 Fax: +39-51-307397
Received: December 5, 2012 Revised: April 4, 2013
Accepted: April 10, 2013
Published online: May 12, 2013

Abstract

Human oncogenic viruses are defined as necessary but not sufficient to initiate cancer. Experimental evidence suggests that the oncogenic potential of a virus is effective in cells that have already accumulated a number of genetic mutations leading to cell cycle deregulation. Current models for viral driven oncogenesis cannot explain why tumor development in carriers of tumorigenic viruses is a very rare event, occurring decades after virus infection. Considering that viruses are mutagenic agents *per se* and human oncogenic viruses additionally establish latent and persistent infections, we attempt here to provide a general mechanism of tumor initiation both for RNA and DNA viruses, suggesting viruses could be both necessary and sufficient in triggering human tumorigenesis initiation. Upon reviewing emerging evidence on the ability of viruses to induce DNA damage while subverting the DNA damage response and inducing epigenetic disturbance in the infected cell, we hypothesize a general, albeit inefficient hit and rest mechanism by which viruses may produce a limited reservoir of cells harboring permanent damage that would be initiated when the virus first hits the cell, before latency is established. Cells surviving virus generated damage would consequently become more sensitive to further damage mediated by the otherwise insufficient transforming activity of virus products expressed in latency, or upon episodic reactivations (viral persistence). Cells with a combination of genetic and epigenetic damage leading to a cancerous phenotype would emerge very rarely, as the probability of such an occurrence would be dependent on severity and frequency of consecutive hit and rest cycles due to viral reinfections and reactivations.

Key words: Virus; Carcinogenesis; Tumor; Oncogene; Latency; Viral persistence

Core tip: Current models for viral driven oncogenesis cannot explain why tumor development in carriers of tumorigenic viruses is a very rare event, occurring decades after virus infection. Considering that viruses are mutagenic agents *per se* and human oncogenic viruses additionally establish latent and persistent infections, we attempt here to provide a general mechanism of tumor initiation both for RNA and DNA viruses, suggesting viruses could be both necessary and sufficient in triggering human tumorigenesis initiation.

Avanzi S, Alvisi G, Ripalti A. How virus persistence can initiate the tumorigenesis process. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(2): 102-109 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i2/102.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i2.102

TUMORS AND VIRUSES

According to currently accepted estimates, viruses are etiologically linked to 15%-20% of all cancer cases worldwide[1-3]. Although many animal and human viruses can transform cells upon infection, only six human viruses are consistently associated with the onset of tumors in man,

Table 1 Oncogenic viruses are latent/persistent viruses

Virus	EBV	HHV-8	HPV	HBV	HCV	HTLV-1
Associated tumor(s): viral protein(s) expressed	BL: EBNA-1 NPC, TCL: EBNA1 + LMP1 HL: EBNA1 + LMP1-2 PTLD: EBNA1-6 + LMP1-2	KS: vFLIP, vCYC, LANA-1 PEL, MCD: vFLIP, vCYC, LANA-1, LANA-2, vIL-6	Anogenital, oral, skin and laryngeal cancers: E6, E7	HCC: HBx	HCC: CP10, NS3, NS5	ATL: tax
Persistency	Always	Always	20% infected subjects	90%-95% infected newborns 5% infected adults	70%-85% infected subjects	Always
Period between infection and tumor onset	10-20 yr	10-20 yr	5-20 yr	10-30 yr	10-30 yr	20-30 yr

EBV: Epstein-Barr virus; HHV-8: Human herpesvirus 8, also named Kaposi sarcoma virus; HPV: Human papillomavirus; HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HTLV-1: Human T-cell leukemia virus 1; BL: Burkitt lymphoma; NPC: Nasopharyngeal carcinoma; TCL: T cell lymphoma; HL: Hodgkin lymphoma; PTLD: Posttransplant lymphoproliferative disorder; KS: Kaposi sarcoma; PEL: Primary effusion lymphoma; MCD: Multicentric Castleman's disease; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; ATL: Adult T-cell leukemia.

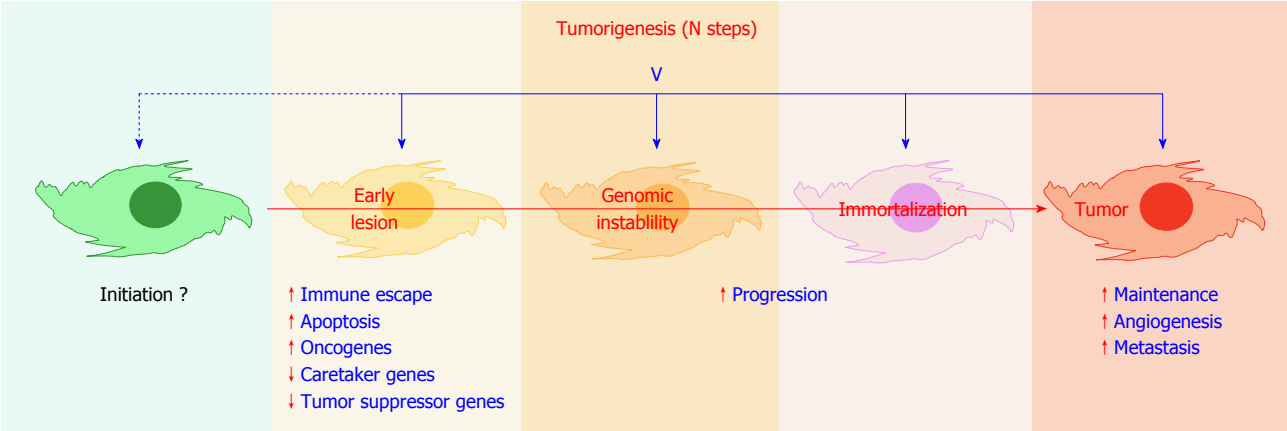


Figure 1 Viral infection and tumorigenesis. Viruses have been shown to encode functions that can modulate all crucial steps towards tumor development, with the exception of the initiation step(s). Recognized contributions of viral infection are mentioned in blue letters. V: Virus. Red arrowheads up, stimulation; down, inhibition.

namely human papillomavirus (HPV), human T-cell lymphotropic virus 1 (HTLV-1), Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8), hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) (Table 1). A large share of what is known about the molecular mechanisms of oncogenesis is due to studies of tumor viruses, defined thereof as viruses carrying in their genome one copy of an oncogene or of an anti-oncogene or viruses that can alter the expression of the cellular version of one such gene[4]. Viruses have been shown to influence tumor sustainment and progression and induce escape pathways from apoptosis and immune surveillance[1,4], however in no case has it been proven that a virus can be the initiator, the primum movens, and not merely an "influential passenger" of a tumor (Figure 1).

TUMORS AND GENES

Tumor development is believed to be a multistep process leading to the accumulation of permanent genetic damage[5], affecting either oncogenes, tumor suppressor genes, or stability genes[6,7]. Cancer is therefore essentially a genetic disease, and a crucial observation in understanding multistep carcinogenesis is that the vast number and the coarse/crude nature of chromosomal defects that are present in the majority of tumor cells[8], are not amenable to an altered mutation rate in these cells[9,10]. In fact, most human solid tumors are characterized by an abnormal chromosome content, aneuploidy, which can be caused by genetic instability[8,11,12]. In addition, distinct and inheritable gene expression and phenotypic states that arise independently from changes in DNA sequence, known as epigenetic modifications, are also linked to tumor formation and progression[13,14]. On the whole, mechanisms for the initiation of tumorigenesis leading to genetic instability are on the whole poorly understood, both for virus induced and virus unrelated tumors[6].

CAN VIRUSES INITIATE GENETIC INSTABILITY?

It has been known for more than four decades that

Table 2 Viral proteins inducing genetic damage

Virus	EBV	HHV-8	HPV	HBV	HCV	HTLV-1
Latent proteins	EBNA-1 EBNA-3C LMP-1[63]	LANA-1[64] v-CYC[65]	E6, E7[66,67]	Naturally occurring pre-S mutants[68]	-	-
Lytic proteins	BZLF-1[69] BGLF-5[70]	-	E1, E2[71,72]	HBx[73,74]	Core NS3[23,62] NS5[75]	Tax[76,77]

EBV: Epstein-Barr virus; HHV-8: Human herpesvirus 8, also named Kaposi sarcoma virus; HPV: Human papillomavirus; HBV: Hepatatis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HTLV-1: Human T-cell leukemia virus 1.

Table 3 Virus products controlling cellular epigenetic modifications

Virus	EBV	HHV-8	HPV	HBV	HCV	HTLV-1
	EBNA-3A, EBNA-3C[78] LMP-1[79] LMP-2[80]	LANA-1[81] microRNA[82]	E6[83] E7[84]	HBx[85,86]	Core[87]	Tax[88]

EBV: Epstein-Barr virus; HHV-8: Human herpesvirus 8, also named Kaposi sarcoma virus; HPV: Human papillomavirus; HBV: Hepatatis B virus; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; HTLV-1: Human T-cell leukemia virus 1.

members of different virus families can induce chromosome damage in infected cells *in vitro*[15], and chromosome breakages have been observed in leukocytes isolated from patients experiencing systemic viral active infections[16,17]. In recent years evidence has accumulated indicating the ability of different viruses to induce aberrant mitosis, genetic instability and interfere with cellular DNA repair pathways, which has confirmed early reports[18-21]. Recent data suggest that viruses induce permanent damage in the genome of infected cells in the context of their natural infection[22,23], and are capable of chromatin manipulation and epigenetic reprogramming of host expression patterns[24,25]; it remains to be seen whether this could stimulate tumor initiation.

It is well known that viruses can transform non-permissive cells and several human viruses cause tumors if introduced in experimental animals. Interestingly all of the six human oncogenic viruses are able to establish latent and persistent infections (Table 1). Chronic HBV, HCV and EBV infections, persistent infection with HTLV-1, prolonged exposures or frequent reactivations of HPV and HHV-8 associated with clinical conditions, are all epidemiologically linked to increased risk of developing virus related malignancies[26-32]. Failure to eliminate emerging tumor cells because of impaired immune function alone cannot account for this increased risk, since tumors develop in a minority of immune depressed patients. Furthermore tumor cells emerge very rarely from *in vitro* virally transformed cell lines, growing in the absence of immune selective pressure[33]. When they do, these tumors are not associated with genetic instability[34]. Therefore there is a missing causative factor acting in the setting of persistent infections, generally thought of as non viral carcinogens or host responses[35]. We propose that reiteration and severity of infections/reactivations is a key factor that possibly generates primary genetic and epigenetic damage on which viral oncogenes may add up their own oncogenic activities.

A MECHANISM FOR TUMOR INITIATION IN VIRAL PERSISTENCE

Viral persistence can be achieved by continuous replication, latency or both. Several virus-encoded products have been associated with transforming and/or oncomodulatory activities[4], and with the ability to induce chromosome damage, abnormal mitosis and genetic instability when expressed in cell cultures (Table 2)[18,36-38]. Recent findings point to viral proteins interfering with the epigenetic milieu of the infected cells, leading to the transcriptional repression of tumor suppressor genes, and interference with cell cycling control[39] (Table 3). However *in vivo* these activities must be particularly inefficient if one considers that the majority of the human population carries a number of resident viruses, but only a minority among infected individuals will develop tumors that can be correlated with persistent viral infections, and generally after very long latency periods (years to decades)[4,35]. It should be noted that latency is characterized by a relatively low viral transcriptional rate[40,41], that one can define as "a virus at rest": this could explain why damaging and/or destabilizing activities of latent gene products have little chance to induce permanent effects in cells equipped with an intact set of caretaker genes, antioncogenes, and non activated oncogenes. Consistently, subjects with Fanconi's anemia, an inherited disease with defective DNA repair, have up to 4000 times increased risk of developing solid papillomavirus-associated tumors[4]. In fact cell immortalization has been achieved experimentally only following expression of latent genes in the context of previously accumulated mutations in the cellular genome[18,20]. On the other hand, lytically infected cells are typically characterized by massive transcription of the viral genome, a "hit". These cells develop virus induced chromosome damage and can undergo abnormal mitosis (Table 2), both *in vitro* and

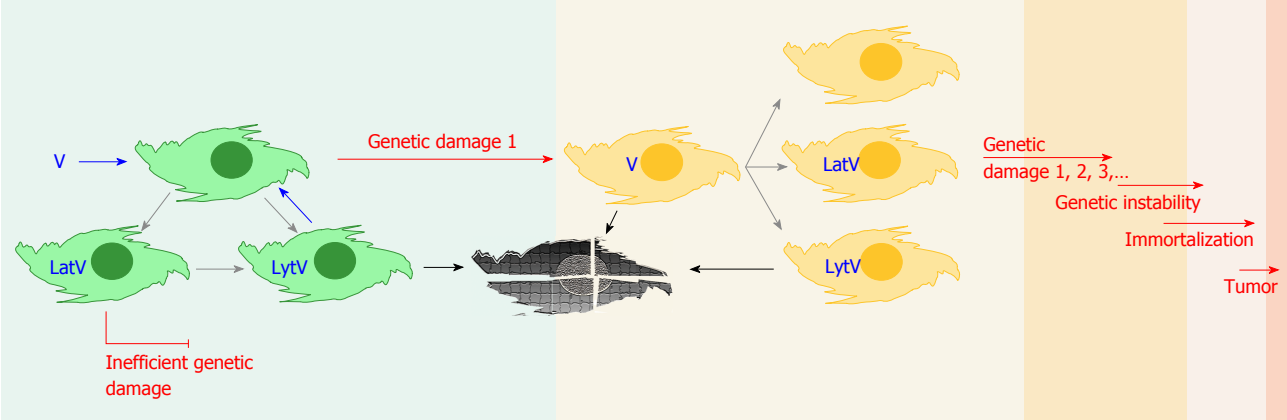


Figure 2 Tumor initiation events mediated by virus induced genetic damage. Virus entry into permissive genetically intact cells (green cells), can result in lytic replication or latency. In the latter setting the oncogenic potential of latent genes appears ineffective *in vivo*. Before silencing of most virus specific transcription is achieved, various viral functions are expressed which could induce genetic/epigenetic damage in a fraction of the infected population (red arrows, genetic damage 1). Cells surviving to sustainable damage (orange cells) could experience reactivation of the virus, host the virus genome in a latent state, or lose it after uneven segregation of their genetic material. In damaged cells latent gene products could now represent an effective oncogenic threat if cellular caretaker genes have been affected (red arrow, genetic damage 1, 2, 3…). Reinfection or reactivation of latent virus in damaged cells could result in further genetic offense, eventually leading to genetic instability, immortalization and tumor development. V: Virus; Lat: Latent; Lyt: Lytic. Blue arrows: Infection; Grey arrows: Consequences of infections; Black arrows: Death.

in vivo[16]. So here we have two observations where there is apparently little if any effect on the genetic stability of healthy cells *in vivo*: (1) latency functions can transform cells but cause genetic instability only in already genetically damaged cells; and (2) lytic functions may induce genetic instability but kill the cells. Is there a setting in which these two phenomena may lead to an outcome that has been overlooked? The phase immediately following virus entry into a permissive cell, before the fate of the infection (lytic or latent) is set (green cells in Figure 2), may be crucial in this regard.

Latency is defined as an infection where the production of infectious virus does not occur immediately but the virus retains the potential to initiate productive infection at a later time, and is characterized by a unique transcriptional and translational state of the virus, the latency expression program, in which the productive replication cycle is not operative[4]. Hence latency can be regarded as a transitory state of resistance of the infected cell to a virus, and the latency program as the result of a negotiation between virus and host, after a battle between cellular functions reacting to the incoming virus and virus encoded functions, expressed at early stages following virus entry into the host cell. The first consequence of this definition is that latency is not a default life program for a virus, but a survival condition that a virus is forced to opt for when the infected cell does not allow progression of the lytic cycle. A second consequence is that there is not one strictly planned latency program for any given virus, but the latency program is defined depending on the context of host cell gene expression, after the cell succeeds converting a viral hit into a virus at rest by resisting to the initial round of lytic cycle gene transcription, and forces the virus into the latency state, for some time. This state of resistance can last for very different periods of time, depending on the moment viral reactivation will be allowed by the infected cell, and can be long lasting, when reactivation occurs upon transition into a new cell differentiation state, or last an unpredictable period of time, as in cells entering a particular metabolic state triggered by an infrequent external signal (ultraviolet radiations, stress, *etc.*), or cells being in a particular phase of the cell cycle[42], which could be a frequent event for rapidly replicating cells or a very infrequent event for slowly replicating cells, as for liver cells. Recent evidence reveals that in an EBV latency model lytic genes can be transcribed to considerable levels[43], contrary to what had been thought previously. Similarly in Kaposi sarcoma virus associated tumors, subpopulations of cells express lytic gene products within a general latency setting[44], suggesting the distinction between latency and lytic transcription is less clear cut than expected. But what happens between viral entry into a cell and the establishment of latency in that cell? Very few studies have addressed this issue, but available data indicate that during this time lapse the majority of the viral genome is transcriptionally active, with many lytic genes being expressed in very much the same way as during early phases of lytic infection, before transcriptions are silenced by the host cell[45,46]. This delicate, vastly unexplored resistant period may represent a particularly vulnerable setting for the infected host, acting as a non-permissive cell, a well known target for virus transformation[1,47]. Therefore the actual phase between virus entry and the establishment of latency is a stage where some viral genes, whether belonging to the latent or the lytic expression program, can be expressed to various levels. Additionally, this is a time where the structure of the incoming virus disaggregates within the cell, releasing dozens of structural proteins and enzymes, genomic nucleic acids, coding and non coding RNAs, encapsidated in infectious particles. In fact it is now clear that the presence of incoming viral genomes relocates DNA repair proteins at sites of viral genome deposition[48]. Several virus products are able to induce genetic damage (Table 2), and examples

of encapsidated DNA nicking activities with a potential role in chromosomal damage have been reported[49,50]. Other viral proteins can interfere with the cellular DNA repair machinery (see[51] for a detailed review) or introduce transcriptional-silencing marks[39]. All these activities could in this context generate primary damage events, leaving the cell with permanent genetic and epigenetic damage before entering into latency. The ensuing latency program would now run in a cell bearing a modified genome.

Although it would be reasonable to expect that the majority of damaged cells could not survive the insult, it would be equally reasonable to expect that cells with sustainable damage may survive, as it is documented *in vitro* in non-permissive cells[19,52] and in cells undergoing chemically induced DNA breaks and chromosome pulverization[53].

A surviving cell could be imagined as acquiring a genotype with no phenotypic consequences on the virus, in which case the virus would either proceed with the lytic cycle and kill the cell or enter a latent state (rest), according to the virus and the type of infected cell (Figure 2). Alternatively genetic/epigenetic damage could modify the permissivity of the cell to the infecting virus, either further supporting viral expression programs or restricting them. The consequences on lytic infections would be either more productive lytic cycles or their inhibition with possible elimination of the virus, respectively. On latent infections the expression profile of the genome could be affected, either positively, as observed in EBV positive NK/T-cell lymphoma[54], or negatively as it is observed when EBV latently infected B cells switch from the latency Ⅲ (whole set of latency products expressed) to latency I (EBNA-1 only) following transformation into lymphoblastoid cells. Viral gene expression would now take place in the context of a genetically modified cell, and in some instances this combination could provide damaged cells with a selective advantage in their environment, making them fitter to survive such damage and ready for the accumulation of future genetic modifications, in other words placing them on the road to malignancy.

IS THE VIRUS LATENCY/REACTIVATION CYCLE AN ONCOGENIC THREAT?

While a single hit and rest event has little chance to set the stage for cancer initiation, repeated cycles of viral infection or reactivation and latency would increase the number of possibly genetically damaged cells in the host and eventually produce cells accumulating a number of chromosomal abnormalities, as recently observed in an *in vitro* model by Fang *et al*[55]. If the damage has modified or abolished the activity of caretaker genes, oncogenes or anti-oncogenes, then the genome damaging and/or destabilizing activities of viral latent gene products could now meet the requirements for the introduction of additional permanent damage, eventually leading to genetic instability. When the combination of hit and rest related damage reached a critical point, let's say telomerase activation, the cell could become immortal and virus functions may become dispensable. Further damage due to genetic instability could lead finally to the emergence of a tumor cell (Figure 2). If the present hypothesis was confirmed, one consequence would be that the number of viruses with potential for tumor initiation would be larger than that currently accepted. A further consequence of the present hypothesis is that preventing virus reactivations, where possible by pharmacologic prophylaxis or medical modulation of the immune response, should counteract cancer development.

TESTING THE HYPOTHESIS

The demonstration that genetic and epigenetic damage occurs in latently infected cells and that some damaged cells survive in the setting of natural infections is crucial in validating our hypothesis. It would therefore be important to investigate the process whilst it is occurring. It is conceivable to plan prospective studies of patient populations at risk for recurrent or persistent viral infections. The genetic integrity of cells latently or persistently infected by a given virus could be studied using methods applicable to a large number of samples and correlated with virus shed at the site of sampling. For example the analysis of DNA damage could be associated with HPV isolation at the time of pap test screening, or with EBV viral load determination in the follow-up of transplant patients[28]. Retrospective and prospective studies could be implemented, analyzing possible correlation between frequency of different virus reactivations, severity of these reactivations, evidence of genetic damage in cells that harbor latent viruses and development of malignancies, in order to better define the importance of evocative findings[56]: ideal candidates for these studies would be populations of immunocompromised patients such as those in post-transplant settings[57]. Chronic infections, clinically manifest or subclinical, are an additional interesting condition for virus related DNA damage investigation[37]. In this setting the measurement of chromosomal abnormalities in peripheral blood lymphocytes should result particularly fruitful, if one considers that circulating cells are exposed to infectious agents even in localized infections during tissue perfusion[23,58,59].

Precious information would be generated through the analysis of pre-tumoral and tumoral banked samples, where the observation of abnormal mitosis and genetic abnormalities can be associated with the identification of virus related antigens or nucleic acids[60], while prospective studies could include virus isolation. As an example, hepatic biopsies from non-responders to anti-HCV treatment could be analyzed for the presence of genetic abnormalities and the findings would be compared to responders in relation to incidence of hepatocarcinoma development over time. *In vitro* studies should be devised choosing experimental settings that guarantee the closest simulation of authentic *in vivo* situations, cautiously choos-

ing animal models and transformed cell lines, avoiding non human cell cultures, and laboratory strains of viruses[61]. Ideally fresh clinical virus isolates should be used to infect cells that are the authentic sites of latency *in vivo*, looking for consequences of virus infection on mitosis, chromosome integrity and the epigenetic stage.

REFERENCES

1 **Carbone M**, Klein G, Gruber J, Wong M. Modern criteria to establish human cancer etiology. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 5518-5524 [PMID: 15289363 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-0255]
2 **Duelli DM**, Padilla-Nash HM, Berman D, Murphy KM, Ried T, Lazebnik Y. A virus causes cancer by inducing massive chromosomal instability through cell fusion. *Curr Biol* 2007; **17**: 431-437 [PMID: 17320392 DOI: 10.1016/j.cub.2007.01.049]
3 **de Martel C**, Ferlay J, Franceschi S, Vignat J, Bray F, Forman D, Plummer M. Global burden of cancers attributable to infections in 2008: a review and synthetic analysis. *Lancet Oncol* 2012; **13**: 607-615 [PMID: 22575588 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70137-7]
4 **Knipe DM**, Howley PM. Fields virology. 5th ed. 2 Vols. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2007
5 **Armitage P**, Doll R. The age distribution of cancer and a multi-stage theory of carcinogenesis. *Br J Cancer* 1954; **8**: 1-12 [PMID: 13172380 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.1954.1]
6 **Vogelstein B**, Kinzler KW. Cancer genes and the pathways they control. *Nat Med* 2004; **10**: 789-799 [PMID: 15286780 DOI: 10.1038/nm1087]
7 **Gasser S**, Raulet D. The DNA damage response, immunity and cancer. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2006; **16**: 344-347 [PMID: 16914325 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcancer.2006.07.004]
8 **Lengauer C**, Kinzler KW, Vogelstein B. Genetic instabilities in human cancers. *Nature* 1998; **396**: 643-649 [PMID: 9872311 DOI: 10.1038/25292]
9 **Tomlinson IP**, Novelli MR, Bodmer WF. The mutation rate and cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 14800-14803 [PMID: 8962135 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.25.14800]
10 **Loeb LA**, Loeb KR, Anderson JP. Multiple mutations and cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 776-781 [PMID: 12552134 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0334858100]
11 **Sieber OM**, Heinimann K, Tomlinson IP. Genomic instability--the engine of tumorigenesis? *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 701-708 [PMID: 12951589 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1170]
12 **Loeb LA**. A mutator phenotype in cancer. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 3230-3239 [PMID: 11309271]
13 **Baylin SB**, Ohm JE. Epigenetic gene silencing in cancer - a mechanism for early oncogenic pathway addiction? *Nat Rev Cancer* 2006; **6**: 107-116 [PMID: 16491070 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1799]
14 **Sandoval J**, Esteller M. Cancer epigenomics: beyond genomics. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2012; **22**: 50-55 [PMID: 22402447 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2012.02.008]
15 **Fortunato EA**, Spector DH. Viral induction of site-specific chromosome damage. *Rev Med Virol* 2003; **13**: 21-37 [PMID: 12516060 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.368]
16 **Nichols WW**. Virus-induced chromosome abnormalities. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1970; **24**: 479-500 [PMID: 4929655 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.mi.24.100170.002403]
17 **Grossi S**, Sumberaz A, Gosmar M, Mattioli F, Testino G, Martelli A. DNA damage in peripheral blood lymphocytes of patients with cirrhosis related to alcohol abuse or to hepatitis B and C viruses. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **20**: 22-25 [PMID: 18090985 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0b013e3282f163fe]
18 **Gatza ML**, Chandhasin C, Ducu RI, Marriott SJ. Impact of transforming viruses on cellular mutagenesis, genome stability, and cellular transformation. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 2005; **45**: 304-325 [PMID: 15645440 DOI: 10.1002/em.20088]
19 **Duelli DM**, Hearn S, Myers MP, Lazebnik Y. A primate virus generates transformed human cells by fusion. *J Cell Biol* 2005; **171**: 493-503 [PMID: 16275753 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200507069]
20 **Münger K**, Hayakawa H, Nguyen CL, Melquiot NV, Duensing A, Duensing S. Viral carcinogenesis and genomic instability. *EXS* 2006; 179-199 [PMID: 16383019 DOI: 10.1007/3-7643-7378-4_8]
21 **Weitzman MD**, Lilley CE, Chaurushiya MS. Changing the ubiquitin landscape during viral manipulation of the DNA damage response. *FEBS Lett* 2011; **585**: 2897-2906 [PMID: 21549706 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2011.04.049]
22 **Urazova OI**, Litvinova LS, Novitskii VV, Pomogaeva AP. Cytogenetic impairments of peripheral blood lymphocytes during infectious mononucleosis. *Bull Exp Biol Med* 2001; **131**: 392-393 [PMID: 11550035 DOI: 10.1023/A:1017976808339]
23 **Machida K**, McNamara G, Cheng KT, Huang J, Wang CH, Comai L, Ou JH, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus inhibits DNA damage repair through reactive oxygen and nitrogen species and by interfering with the ATM-NBS1/Mre11/Rad50 DNA repair pathway in monocytes and hepatocytes. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 6985-6998 [PMID: 20974981 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1000618]
24 **Flanagan JM**. Host epigenetic modifications by oncogenic viruses. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **96**: 183-188 [PMID: 17179991 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603516]
25 **Stein RA**. Epigenetics--the link between infectious diseases and cancer. *JAMA* 2011; **305**: 1484-1485 [PMID: 21486982 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.446]
26 **Guidotti LG**, Chisari FV. Immunobiology and pathogenesis of viral hepatitis. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2006; **1**: 23-61 [PMID: 18039107 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathol.1.110304.100230]
27 **Chakrabarty SP**, Murray JM. Modelling hepatitis C virus infection and the development of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Theor Biol* 2012; **305**: 24-29 [PMID: 22575547 DOI: 10.1016/j.jtbi.2012.03.030]
28 **Bierkens M**, Wilting SM, van Wieringen WN, van Kemenade FJ, Bleeker MC, Jordanova ES, Bekker-Lettink M, van de Wiel MA, Ylstra B, Meijer CJ, Snijders PJ, Steenbergen RD. Chromosomal profiles of high-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia relate to duration of preceding high-risk human papillomavirus infection. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **131**: E579-E585 [PMID: 22020762 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26496]
29 **Isobe Y**, Aritaka N, Setoguchi Y, Ito Y, Kimura H, Hamano Y, Sugimoto K, Komatsu N. T/NK cell type chronic active Epstein-Barr virus disease in adults: an underlying condition for Epstein-Barr virus-associated T/NK-cell lymphoma. *J Clin Pathol* 2012; **65**: 278-282 [PMID: 22247563 DOI: 10.1136/jclinpath-2011-200523]
30 **Okano M**, Gross TG. Acute or chronic life-threatening diseases associated with Epstein-Barr virus infection. *Am J Med Sci* 2012; **343**: 483-489 [PMID: 22104426 DOI: 10.1097/MAJ.0b013e318236e02d]
31 **Matsuoka M**, Jeang KT. Human T-cell leukemia virus type 1 (HTLV-1) and leukemic transformation: viral infectivity, Tax, HBZ and therapy. *Oncogene* 2011; **30**: 1379-1389 [PMID: 21119600 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2010.537]
32 **Ganem D**. KSHV infection and the pathogenesis of Kaposi's sarcoma. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2006; **1**: 273-296 [PMID: 18039116 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathol.1.110304.100133]
33 **Sugimoto M**, Tahara H, Ide T, Furuichi Y. Steps involved in immortalization and tumorigenesis in human B-lymphoblastoid cell lines transformed by Epstein-Barr virus. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 3361-3364 [PMID: 15150084 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-0079]
34 **Zimonjic D**, Brooks MW, Popescu N, Weinberg RA, Hahn WC. Derivation of human tumor cells in vitro without widespread genomic instability. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 8838-8844 [PMID: 11751406]
35 **McLaughlin-Drubin ME**, Munger K. Viruses associated with human cancer. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008; **1782**: 127-150 [PMID: 18201576 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2007.12.005]

36 **Duensing S**, Münger K. Mechanisms of genomic instability in human cancer: insights from studies with human papillomavirus oncoproteins. *Int J Cancer* 2004; **109**: 157-162 [PMID: 14750163 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.11691]

37 **McGivern DR**, Lemon SM. Virus-specific mechanisms of carcinogenesis in hepatitis C virus associated liver cancer. *Oncogene* 2011; **30**: 1969-1983 [PMID: 21258404 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2010.594]

38 **Chaurushiya MS**, Weitzman MD. Viral manipulation of DNA repair and cell cycle checkpoints. *DNA Repair* (Amst) 2009; **8**: 1166-1176 [PMID: 19473887 DOI: 10.1016/j.dnarep.2009.04.016]

39 **Paschos K**, Allday MJ. Epigenetic reprogramming of host genes in viral and microbial pathogenesis. *Trends Microbiol* 2010; **18**: 439-447 [PMID: 20724161 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2010.07.003]

40 **Kirchner EA**, Bornkamm GW, Polack A. Transcriptional activity across the Epstein-Barr virus genome in Raji cells during latency and after induction of an abortive lytic cycle. *J Gen Virol* 1991; **72** (Pt 10): 2391-2398 [PMID: 1655954 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-72-10-2391]

41 **Maran A**, Amella CA, Di Lorenzo TP, Auborn KJ, Taichman LB, Steinberg BM. Human papillomavirus type 11 transcripts are present at low abundance in latently infected respiratory tissues. *Virology* 1995; **212**: 285-294 [PMID: 7571398 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.1486]

42 **Sarid R**, Wiezorek JS, Moore PS, Chang Y. Characterization and cell cycle regulation of the major Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (human herpesvirus 8) latent genes and their promoter. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 1438-1446 [PMID: 9882349]

43 **Arvey A**, Tempera I, Tsai K, Chen HS, Tikhmyanova N, Klichinsky M, Leslie C, Lieberman PM. An atlas of the Epstein-Barr virus transcriptome and epigenome reveals host-virus regulatory interactions. *Cell Host Microbe* 2012; **12**: 233-245 [PMID: 22901543 DOI: 10.1016/j.chom.2012.06.008]

44 **Nador RG**, Milligan LL, Flore O, Wang X, Arvanitakis L, Knowles DM, Cesarman E. Expression of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus G protein-coupled receptor monocistronic and bicistronic transcripts in primary effusion lymphomas. *Virology* 2001; **287**: 62-70 [PMID: 11504542 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2001.1016]

45 **Krishnan HH**, Naranatt PP, Smith MS, Zeng L, Bloomer C, Chandran B. Concurrent expression of latent and a limited number of lytic genes with immune modulation and anti-apoptotic function by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus early during infection of primary endothelial and fibroblast cells and subsequent decline of lytic gene expression. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 3601-3620 [PMID: 15016882 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.7.3601-3620.2004]

46 **Ciufo DM**, Cannon JS, Poole LJ, Wu FY, Murray P, Ambinder RF, Hayward GS. Spindle cell conversion by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus: formation of colonies and plaques with mixed lytic and latent gene expression in infected primary dermal microvascular endothelial cell cultures. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 5614-5626 [PMID: 11356969 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.12.5614-5626.2001]

47 **zur Hausen H**. Proliferation-inducing viruses in non-permissive systems as possible causes of human cancers. *Lancet* 2001; **357**: 381-384 [PMID: 11211014 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(00)03652-7]

48 **Lilley CE**, Chaurushiya MS, Boutell C, Everett RD, Weitzman MD. The intrinsic antiviral defense to incoming HSV-1 genomes includes specific DNA repair proteins and is counteracted by the viral protein ICP0. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002084 [PMID: 21698222 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002084]

49 **Landini MP**, Ripalti A. A DNA-nicking activity associated with the nucleocapsid of human cytomegalovirus. *Arch Virol* 1982; **73**: 351-356 [PMID: 6293419 DOI: 10.1007/BF01318089]

50 **Berthet C**, Raj K, Saudan P, Beard P. How adeno-associated virus Rep78 protein arrests cells completely in S phase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 13634-13639 [PMID: 16157891 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0504583102]

51 **Weitzman MD**, Lilley CE, Chaurushiya MS. Genomes in conflict: maintaining genome integrity during virus infection. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 2010; **64**: 61-81 [PMID: 20690823 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.micro.112408.134016]

52 **Bystrevskaya VB**, Lobova TV, Smirnov VN, Makarova NE, Kushch AA. Centrosome injury in cells infected with human cytomegalovirus. *J Struct Biol* 1997; **120**: 52-60 [PMID: 9356291 DOI: 10.1006/jsbi.1997.3897]

53 **Crasta K**, Ganem NJ, Dagher R, Lantermann AB, Ivanova EV, Pan Y, Nezi L, Protopopov A, Chowdhury D, Pellman D. DNA breaks and chromosome pulverization from errors in mitosis. *Nature* 2012; **482**: 53-58 [PMID: 22258507 DOI: 10.1038/nature10802]

54 **Zhang Y**, Ohyashiki JH, Takaku T, Shimizu N, Ohyashiki K. Transcriptional profiling of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) genes and host cellular genes in nasal NK/T-cell lymphoma and chronic active EBV infection. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **94**: 599-608 [PMID: 16449999 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602968]

55 **Fang CY**, Lee CH, Wu CC, Chang YT, Yu SL, Chou SP, Huang PT, Chen CL, Hou JW, Chang Y, Tsai CH, Takada K, Chen JY. Recurrent chemical reactivations of EBV promotes genome instability and enhances tumor progression of nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **124**: 2016-2025 [PMID: 19132751 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24179]

56 **Manabe A**, Yoshimasu T, Ebihara Y, Yagasaki H, Wada M, Ishikawa K, Hara J, Koike K, Moritake H, Park YD, Tsuji K, Nakahata T. Viral infections in juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia: prevalence and clinical implications. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2004; **26**: 636-641 [PMID: 15454834 DOI: 10.1097/01.mph.0000140653.50344.5c]

57 **Adani GL**, Baccarani U, Lorenzin D, Gropuzzo M, Tulissi P, Montanaro D, Currö G, Sainz M, Risaliti A, Bresadola V, Bresadola F. De novo gastrointestinal tumours after renal transplantation: role of CMV and EBV viruses. *Clin Transplant* 2006; **20**: 457-460 [PMID: 16842521 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-0012.2006.00505.x]

58 **Bhargava A**, Raghuram GV, Pathak N, Varshney S, Jatawa SK, Jain D, Mishra PK. Occult hepatitis C virus elicits mitochondrial oxidative stress in lymphocytes and triggers PI3-kinase-mediated DNA damage response. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2011; **51**: 1806-1814 [PMID: 21893189 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2011.08.009]

59 **Bhargava A**, Khan S, Panwar H, Pathak N, Punde RP, Varshney S, Mishra PK. Occult hepatitis B virus infection with low viremia induces DNA damage, apoptosis and oxidative stress in peripheral blood lymphocytes. *Virus Res* 2010; **153**: 143-150 [PMID: 20667493 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2010.07.023]

60 **Guzmán P**, Sotelo-Regil RC, Mohar A, Gonsebatt ME. Positive correlation between the frequency of micronucleated cells and dysplasia in Papanicolaou smears. *Environ Mol Mutagen* 2003; **41**: 339-343 [PMID: 12802804 DOI: 10.1002/em.10160]

61 **Pfuhler S**, Fellows M, van Benthem J, Corvi R, Curren R, Dearfield K, Fowler P, Frötschl R, Elhajouji A, Le Hégarat L, Kasamatsu T, Kojima H, Ouédraogo G, Scott A, Speit G. In vitro genotoxicity test approaches with better predictivity: summary of an IWGT workshop. *Mutat Res* 2011; **723**: 101-107 [PMID: 21473931 DOI: 10.1016/j.mrgentox.2011.03.013]

62 **Machida K**, Cheng KT, Sung VM, Lee KJ, Levine AM, Lai MM. Hepatitis C virus infection activates the immunologic (type II) isoform of nitric oxide synthase and thereby enhances DNA damage and mutations of cellular genes. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 8835-8843 [PMID: 15280491 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.16.8835-8843.2004]

63 **Gruhne B**, Sompallae R, Masucci MG. Three Epstein-Barr virus latency proteins independently promote genomic instability by inducing DNA damage, inhibiting DNA repair and inactivating cell cycle checkpoints. *Oncogene* 2009; **28**: 3997-4008 [PMID: 19718051 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2009.258]

64 **Si H**, Robertson ES. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus-encoded latency-associated nuclear antigen induces chromosomal instability through inhibition of p53 function. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 697-709 [PMID: 16378973 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.2.697-709.2006]

65 **Verschuren EW**, Hodgson JG, Gray JW, Kogan S, Jones N, Evan GI. The role of p53 in suppression of KSHV cyclin-induced lymphomagenesis. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 581-589 [PMID: 14744772 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-03-1863]

66 **Duensing S**, Münger K. The human papillomavirus type 16 E6 and E7 oncoproteins independently induce numerical and structural chromosome instability. *Cancer Res* 2002; **62**: 7075-7082 [PMID: 12460929]

67 **Patel D**, McCance DJ. Compromised spindle assembly checkpoint due to altered expression of Ubch10 and Cdc20 in human papillomavirus type 16 E6- and E7-expressing keratinocytes. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 10956-10964 [PMID: 20739533 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00259-10]

68 **Hsieh YH**, Su IJ, Wang HC, Chang WW, Lei HY, Lai MD, Chang WT, Huang W. Pre-S mutant surface antigens in chronic hepatitis B virus infection induce oxidative stress and DNA damage. *Carcinogenesis* 2004; **25**: 2023-2032 [PMID: 15180947 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgh207]

69 **Adamson AL**. Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 protein binds to mitotic chromosomes. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 7899-7904 [PMID: 15919945 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.12.7899-7904.2005]

70 **Wu CC**, Liu MT, Chang YT, Fang CY, Chou SP, Liao HW, Kuo KL, Hsu SL, Chen YR, Wang PW, Chen YL, Chuang HY, Lee CH, Chen M, Wayne Chang WS, Chen JY. Epstein-Barr virus DNase (BGLF5) induces genomic instability in human epithelial cells. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2010; **38**: 1932-1949 [PMID: 20034954 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkp1169]

71 **Bellanger S**, Blachon S, Mechali F, Bonne-Andrea C, Thierry F. High-risk but not low-risk HPV E2 proteins bind to the APC activators Cdh1 and Cdc20 and cause genomic instability. *Cell Cycle* 2005; **4**: 1608-1615 [PMID: 16222116 DOI: 10.4161/cc.4.11.2123]

72 **Kadaja M**, Sumerina A, Verst T, Ojarand M, Ustav E, Ustav M. Genomic instability of the host cell induced by the human papillomavirus replication machinery. *EMBO J* 2007; **26**: 2180-2191 [PMID: 17396148 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7601665]

73 **Livezey KW**, Negorev D, Simon D. Increased chromosomal alterations and micronuclei formation in human hepatoma HepG2 cells transfected with the hepatitis B virus HBX gene. *Mutat Res* 2002; **505**: 63-74 [PMID: 12175906 DOI: 10.1016/S0027-5107(02)00140-9]

74 **Matsuda Y**, Ichida T. Impact of hepatitis B virus X protein on the DNA damage response during hepatocarcinogenesis. *Med Mol Morphol* 2009; **42**: 138-142 [PMID: 19784739 DOI: 10.1007/s00795-009-0457-8]

75 **Baek KH**, Park HY, Kang CM, Kim SJ, Jeong SJ, Hong EK, Park JW, Sung YC, Suzuki T, Kim CM, Lee CW. Overexpression of hepatitis C virus NS5A protein induces chromosome instability via mitotic cell cycle dysregulation. *J Mol Biol* 2006; **359**: 22-34 [PMID: 16616934 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2006.03.020]

76 **Chlichlia K**, Khazaie K. HTLV-1 Tax: Linking transformation, DNA damage and apoptotic T-cell death. *Chem Biol Interact* 2010; **188**: 359-365 [PMID: 20558150 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.R400009200]

77 **Majone F**, Jeang KT. Unstabilized DNA breaks in HTLV-1 Tax expressing cells correlate with functional targeting of Ku80, not PKcs, XRCC4, or H2AX. *Cell Biosci* 2012; **2**: 15 [PMID: 22541714 DOI: 10.1186/2045-3701-2-15]

78 **Skalska L**, White RE, Franz M, Ruhmann M, Allday MJ. Epigenetic repression of p16(INK4A) by latent Epstein-Barr virus requires the interaction of EBNA3A and EBNA3C with CtBP. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000951 [PMID: 20548956 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000951]

79 **Tsai CN**, Tsai CL, Tse KP, Chang HY, Chang YS. The Epstein-Barr virus oncogene product, latent membrane protein 1, induces the downregulation of E-cadherin gene expression via activation of DNA methyltransferases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 10084-10089 [PMID: 12110730 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.152059399]

80 **Hino R**, Uozaki H, Murakami N, Ushiku T, Shinozaki A, Ishikawa S, Morikawa T, Nakaya T, Sakatani T, Takada K, Fukayama M. Activation of DNA methyltransferase 1 by EBV latent membrane protein 2A leads to promoter hypermethylation of PTEN gene in gastric carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 2766-2774 [PMID: 19339266 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3070]

81 **Di Bartolo DL**, Cannon M, Liu YF, Renne R, Chadburn A, Boshoff C, Cesarman E. KSHV LANA inhibits TGF-beta signaling through epigenetic silencing of the TGF-beta type II receptor. *Blood* 2008; **111**: 4731-4740 [PMID: 18199825 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2007-09-110544]

82 **Lu F**, Stedman W, Yousef M, Renne R, Lieberman PM. Epigenetic regulation of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus latency by virus-encoded microRNAs that target Rta and the cellular Rbl2-DNMT pathway. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 2697-2706 [PMID: 20071580 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01997-09]

83 **Rincon-Orozco B**, Halec G, Rosenberger S, Muschik D, Nindl I, Bachmann A, Ritter TM, Dondog B, Ly R, Bosch FX, Zawatzky R, Rösl F. Epigenetic silencing of interferon-kappa in human papillomavirus type 16-positive cells. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 8718-8725 [PMID: 19887612 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-0550]

84 **Laurson J**, Khan S, Chung R, Cross K, Raj K. Epigenetic repression of E-cadherin by human papillomavirus 16 E7 protein. *Carcinogenesis* 2010; **31**: 918-926 [PMID: 20123756 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgq027]

85 **Lee JO**, Kwun HJ, Jung JK, Choi KH, Min DS, Jang KL. Hepatitis B virus X protein represses E-cadherin expression via activation of DNA methyltransferase 1. *Oncogene* 2005; **24**: 6617-6625 [PMID: 16007161 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1208827]

86 **Park IY**, Sohn BH, Yu E, Suh DJ, Chung YH, Lee JH, Surzycki SJ, Lee YI. Aberrant epigenetic modifications in hepatocarcinogenesis induced by hepatitis B virus X protein. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 1476-1494 [PMID: 17408664 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.01.034]

87 **Zeng B**, Li Z, Chen R, Guo N, Zhou J, Zhou Q, Lin Q, Cheng D, Liao Q, Zheng L, Gong Y. Epigenetic regulation of miR-124 by hepatitis C virus core protein promotes migration and invasion of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma cells by targeting SMYD3. *FEBS Lett* 2012; **586**: 3271-3278 [PMID: 22819820 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2012.06.049]

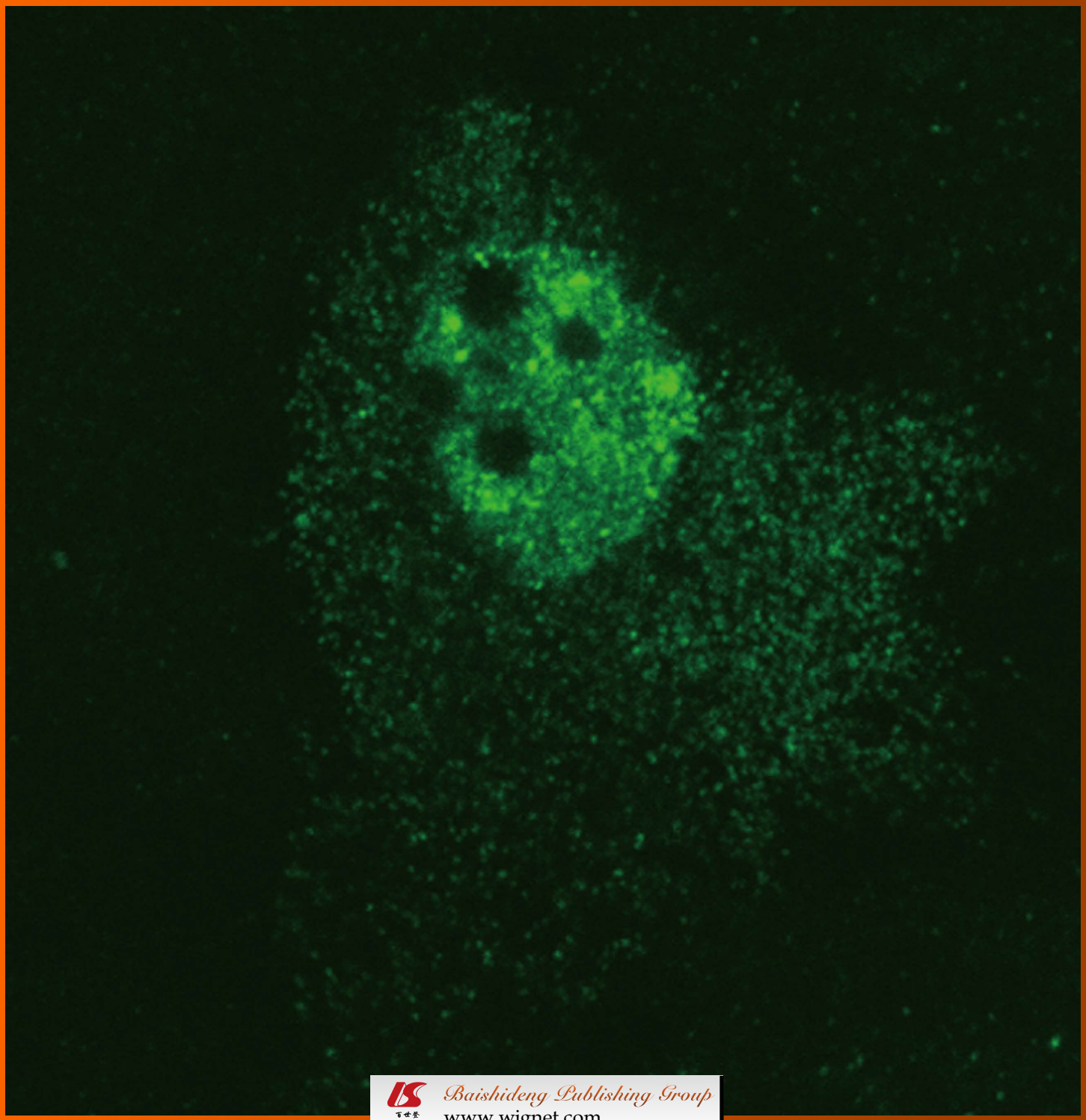
88 **Tomita M**, Tanaka Y, Mori N. MicroRNA miR-146a is induced by HTLV-1 tax and increases the growth of HTLV-1-infected T-cells. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **130**: 2300-2309 [PMID: 20017139 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25115]

P- Reviewers Denis R, Ciotti M **S- Editor** Song XX
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2013 August 12; 2(3): 110-138



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 2 Number 3 August 12, 2013

World Journal of Virology
Volume 2 Number 3 August 12, 2013

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjv@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
August 12, 2013

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.110

World J Virol 2013 August 12; 2(3): 110-122
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

REVIEW

Nuclear domain 10 of the viral aspect

Yisel A Rivera-Molina, Francisco Puerta Martínez, Qiyi Tang

Yisel A Rivera-Molina, Francisco Puerta Martínez, Qiyi Tang, Department of Microbiology/RCMI Program, Ponce School of Medicine and Health Sciences, Ponce, PR 00732-7004, United States

Author contributions: Rivera-Molina YA, Martínez FP and Tang Q contributed to this review.

Supported by A Pilot Grant from the National Center for Research Resources (G12 RR003050); and the National Institute on Minority Health and Health Disparities (8G12MD007579-27), both of the National Institutes of Health (To Tang Q), an American Cancer Society Grant (117448-RSG-09-289-01-MPC) (To Tang Q), and NIH/NCRR U54RR022762 (To Tang Q)

Correspondence to: Qiyi Tang, MD, PhD, Department of Microbiology/RCMI Program, Ponce School of Medicine and Health Sciences, PO Box 7004, Ponce, PR 00732, United States. qtang@psm.edu
Telephone: +1-787- 8402575 Fax: +1-787- 8415159

Received: January 27, 2013 Revised: May 31, 2013
Accepted: May 31, 2013
Published online: August 12, 2013

Abstract

Nuclear domain 10 (ND10) are spherical bodies distributed throughout the nucleoplasm and measuring around 0.2-1.0 μm. First observed under an electron microscope, they were originally described as dense bodies found in the nucleus. They are known by a number of other names, including Promyelocytic Leukemia bodies (PML bodies), Kremer bodies, and PML oncogenic domains. ND10 are frequently associated with Cajal bodies and cleavage bodies. It has been suggested that they play a role in regulating gene transcription. ND10 were originally characterized using human autoantisera, which recognizes Speckled Protein of 100 kDa, from patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. At the immunohistochemical level, ND10 appear as nuclear punctate structures, with 10 indicating the approximate number of dots per nucleus observed. ND10 do not co-localize with kinetochores, centromeres, sites of mRNA processing, or chromosomes. Resistance of ND10 antigens to nuclease digestion and salt extraction suggest that ND10 are associated with the nuclear matrix. They are often identified by immunofluorescent assay using specific antibodies against PML, Death domain-associated protein, nuclear dot protein (NDP55), and so on. The role of ND10 has long been the subject of investigation, with the specific connection of ND10 and viral infection having been a particular focus for almost 20 years. This review summarizes the relationship of ND10 and viral infection. Some future study directions are also discussed.

Key words: Nuclear domain 10; Promyelocytic Leukemia; Speckled protein of 100 kDa; Death domain-associated protein; Virus; Viral replication

Core tip: We, for the first time, discussed the function of nuclear domain 10 (ND10) as a nuclear structure. Although the ND10 components, especially Promyelocytic Leukemia bodies, Speckled Protein of 100 kDa and death domain-associated protein, have been widely investigated for their roles in viral gene expression and viral replication, individual virus interacts with ND10 differentially as we summarized up in this review. This review is expected to guide readers especially virologists and cell biologists to understanding the interaction of ND10 with viruses.

Rivera-Molina YA, Martínez FP, Tang Q. Nuclear domain 10 of the viral aspect. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(3): 110-122 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i3/110.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.110

ND10: GENERAL INFORMATION

Mammalian cells contain differentially functional compartments called organelles, which are separated from the cytoplasm by a lipid bilayer membrane. The nucleus is an extremely dynamic organelle and highly organized compartment with multiple functions (reviewed in Dundr

et al[1], Dundr *et al*[2], and Zhao *et al*[3]) the nucleoplasm consists of soluble and insoluble materials that keep the genomic structure intact and host the complicated process of gene transcription. Some insoluble and soluble materials congregate together to form shaped structures such as nuclear domain 10 (ND10 can also refer to nuclear dot 10)[4]. When analyzed by indirect immunofluorescence microscopy, many nuclear proteins are seen to localize in distinct structures with punctate staining patterns[5,6]. Nuclear structures, such as speckles, paraspeckles, nucleoli, Cajal bodies, polycomb bodies, and ND10, are formed primarily by protein-protein, protein-RNA, or protein-DNA interactions[1]. Each nuclear body has a matrix protein that is essential for the formation of the specific nuclear body. ND10 are subnuclear structures that gather many different SUMOylated nuclear proteins (such as Daxx and SP100). The formation of ND10 depends on Promyelocytic Leukemia (PML) protein. Past observations confirm that PML knockout cells lack ND10 and that transfecting exogenous PML into PML knockout cells results in the restoration of ND10[7,8]. Most DNA viruses replicate DNA and transcribe genes in the nucleus after their genomic DNA enters the nucleus by facilitated transport through the nuclear pore complex[9]. Once inside the nucleus, viral genomes distribute randomly, but it appears that only those at ND10 replicate and transcribe predominantly[10-13], suggesting specifically that the environment at ND10 is particularly advantageous for the virus. However, the ND10 proteins [such as PML, Speckled Protein of 100 kDa (SP100), and Daxx] are interferon-upregulated and have repressive effects on viral replication[14-25]. Moreover, most DNA viruses encode an immediate-early protein that induces the dispersion of ND10[10,26-29], and in the absence of these viral proteins, replication is severely retarded[13,29,30]. These findings have led to the hypothesis that ND10 are also part of nuclear defense mechanism[4]. At this point, the effects of ND10 on viral replication remain to be settled.

A HISTORIC OVERVIEW OF ND10

There are five hallmark events in the history of studying ND10. First, a French paper in 1960 described an unknown nuclear structure in rabbit cells with the Papillomavirus as an electron-dense body[31]. It was the earliest description of the nuclear structure, but it left everything unexplained, other than providing that observation. Second, there was not any other information that could lead to a deeper investigation of these nuclear structures until they were first identified (by immunofluorescence analysis, using specific antibodies that were later revealed to be against SP100 and NDP55) as ND10 in 1991 by Ascoli *et al*[32]. SP100 was later proved to be essential for the formation of ND10[33]; NDP55 has not been characterized so far. Ascoli *et al*[32] investigated the structure in different types of cells. A combination of immunofluorescence analysis and electronic microscopy confirmed that ND10 are the structures that were previously observed in 1960. Third, in the process of investigating the function of ND10, ND10 were found to be related to herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1) infection[26,34] in 1993 and 1994; these studies (by Maul GG, the Wistar Institute, the United States of America, and Everett RD, the MRC Virology Unit, Glasgow, United Kingdom) awakened the interest of virologists with regard to the interaction of ND10 and many different viruses. The interactions of ND10 and a variety of viruses will be discussed in this review. Fourth, it was determined that PML knockout mice lack ND10, which provided direct evidence that supported the hypothesis that the protein PML is essential to the formation of ND10. It was confirmed, as well, by the experimental results that demonstrate that the transfection of PML into PML-/- cells restores ND10[26,35]. PML-/- mice live normally, which further obscured the function of PML, though later studies were able to determine that PML-/- have a greater tendency to develop cancer than do their PML+/+ counterparts[36]. Fifth, ND10 components were identified. Even though more than 60 nuclear proteins have been shown to be more-or-less related to ND10[37,38], three components are thought to be the primary ND10 proteins (called the prototype proteins of ND10): PML, Daxx, and SP100. Other important events relating to the study of ND10 will be discussed in the following sections.

MOLECULAR ASPECT OF ND10

Promyelocytic leukemia

The molecular mechanism of the biogenesis of ND10 was a complete mystery until PML was identified as forming the matrix of ND10. PML is a tumor-suppressor protein that in both humans and mice is encoded by the PML gene. This gene was found to be involved in translocation with the retinoic acid receptor alpha (*RARalpha*) gene, causing acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL) (see the review by de Thé *et al*[39]). The protein encoded by this gene was therefore named after PML. PML is also called tripartite motif (TRIM) 19 because it is a member of the TRIM family[40]. The TRIM motif includes three zinc-binding domains, a RING, two B-boxes, and a coiled-coil region. Phosphorylation is required for the high SUMOylation of PML; SUMOylated PML localizes to ND10, where it functions as a transcription factor and tumor suppressor[41]. Its expression is cell-cycle related; therefore ND10 morphology and number in the nucleus are dependent on the cell cycle[42]. It regulates the p53 response to oncogenic signals, which might explain how the translocation of PML with RARalpha causes APL. Right after its identification, ND10 were shown to be important in cell differentiation and cell growth; this was first indicated in studies of promyelocytes from patients suffering from APL[43-45]. In the promyelocytes from these patients, ND10 cannot be detected. When cells are treated with retinoic acid (RA) or with arsenic trioxide, ND10 are restored and the APL phenotype is reversed and the patients can be cured with these agents (reviewed by Melnick and Licht[46]). PML has about 11 isoforms that are caused by the extensive

alternative splicing of this gene. PML isoforms vary in the protein's central and C-terminal regions; all variants encode the same N-terminus[47]. Some isoforms of PML are cytoplasmic, but most of the isoforms are nuclear proteins important for ND10 formation.

Speckled protein of 100 kDa

SP100 was first identified by immunofluorescence using autoantibodies from patients with primary biliary cirrhosis, and its cDNA was then isolated and cloned; it was found to encode a human nuclear antigen distributing in the nucleus as speckles[48]. SP100 is a single-copy gene sited in human chromosome 2q37 and, like PML, it is IFN upregulated. The *SP100* gene needs to be spliced and gives rise to a number of speckled protein of 100 kDa (SP100) isoforms: SP100A, -B, -C, and -HMG[48-52]. The four SP100 isoforms share a homologous 476 N-terminal amino acid, but differ in their C-terminal part. The most abundant isoform is SP100A, which has 480 amino acids and migrates to 100 kDa on SDS-PAGE[51]. SP100A most likely does not bind to DNA alone because it lacks all other domains of SP100B, -C, and -HMG. It may be recruited to DNA *via* association with DNA-binding proteins such as hHMG2/DSP1[53], the B-cell-specific transactivator Bright[54], or ETS-1[55]. SP100B contains a SAND domain (SAND stands for SP100, AIRE, NucP41/75, and DEAF1), SP100HMG contains a SAND domain and an HMG box, and newly described SP100C contains SAND, PHD, and Bromo domains[52,56]. SP100 is one of the prototypical proteins of ND10, and it colocalizes with Daxx and PML in ND10. SP100B, -C, and -HMG isoforms contain SAND, PHD, Bromo, and HMG domains and are highly SUMOylated. All the domains are suggestive of a role in chromatin-mediated gene regulation. The three minor isoforms contain a SAND domain that binds to DNA and is required if SP100 is to have transcriptional regulating activity.

Death domain-associated protein

Upon its discovery, death domain-associated protein (Daxx beta) was found to be a protein of the classical death receptor[57]. It was found to bind specifically to the Fas death domain *via* its C-terminal portion. Overexpression of Daxx enhances Fas-mediated apoptosis through activating the Jun N-terminal kinase (JNK) pathway. It was later found that Daxx interacted with CENP-C, one of the few known intrinsic proteins of the human centromere[58]. CENP-C is thought to play structural as well as regulatory roles crucial to proper chromosome segregation and mitotic progression. The interaction between CENP-C and Daxx was then confirmed by an immunofluorescence assay that found the colocalization of these two proteins at discrete spots in the nuclei of some interphase cells[58]. The other Daxx-binding proteins include the transcription factor Pax3[59] and DNA methyltransferase I [60]. They both are related to centromeres such as CENP-C and are not related to ND10. Therefore, Daxx is a protein of centromere. However, Ishov *et al*[7] found that PML recruited Daxx to ND10. Interestingly, in PML-/- cells, Daxx totally stays in the centromere. Therefore, Daxx might travel from centromere to ND10 or from ND10 to centromere. Ishov *et al*[42] also found that Daxx and the SWI/SNF protein ATRX are both associated with two intranuclear domains: ND10 and heterochromatin. The accumulation of ATRX at ND10 was mediated by its interaction with the N-terminus of Daxx. Although ATRX was present in heterochromatin during the entire cell cycle, Daxx was actively recruited to this domain at the end of the S-phase. Daxx functions as an adapter for ATRX accumulation at ND10[42]. Daxx can be highly SUMOylated, and SUMOylation was found to be crucial for targeting Daxx to PODs and for the transrepression of several SUMOylated transcription factors, including the glucocorticoid receptors (GR)[61]. Recently, two variants of Daxx were identified. The two novel variants of Daxx were termed Daxx- and Daxx-γ, and these variants are generated by alternative splicing. They have a truncated regulatory C terminus, and Daxx- and Daxx-γ show markedly decreased affinities to PML and have a different nuclear distribution[62].

In summary, all three of the prototypical proteins (PML, SP100, and Daxx) of ND10 share some similar characteristics: (1) They colocalize with ND10. Their colocalization in ND10 depends on PML[7,8], and SP100 can also affect ND10 formation[33]. These proteins are prototypical components of ND10; (2) They can be up regulated by interferon, which provided the first evidence to support the hypothesis that ND10 are defensive against viral infection[4]; (3) The prototypical proteins of ND10 are all highly SUMOylated, SUMOylation is important for the formation of ND10, Daxx function, and the interaction of the three proteins; (4) They are all cancer gene repressors. Although PML-/- mice can still live normally, they are shown to have a higher chance of developing cancer[63]; (5) All three genes produce different isoforms *via* alternative splicing; and (6) They are all viral replication inhibitors, which will be discussed in the review below.

ND10 function

ND10 came to the forefront because it was found that t(15; 17) translocation causes the fusion of PML and RARA (generating PML/RARA) and the dysfunction of both PML and RARA (consequently resulting in APL). The oncogenic PML/RARA protein disrupts ND10 in a reversible manner upon being treated with retinoic acid and/or arsenic, either of which treatment can cure the patients with APL[64-68]. ND10 number and size are regulated in several cellular responses: viral infection[69], DNA-damage, transformation[70-72], and oxidative stress[73,74]. The transcriptions of PML, SP100, and Daxx are dramatically enhanced by interferons. However, PML-/- mice develop normally and live well without the formation of ND10, demonstrating that ND10 are not required for most basic biological functions. Nevertheless, recent data have implicated PML in the control of cellular senescence and stem

cell self-renewal, extending the fields of the investigation of PML function[75,76].

ND10 studies have been so intense in recent years that novel information about these structures is being uncovered continuously; however, the function of PML bodies is still not fully understood. Three models have been proposed: the Depot or Sequestration model; the Hotspot model, and a site of specific nuclear activities. These models are described in the following paragraphs.

Depot or sequestration model

The nuclear domains are proposed to be aggregations of excess nucleoplasmic protein[77]. This model suggests that the ND10 components in the nucleoplasm have a dynamic nature, that is, they move from ND10 to the functional sites where they are needed. In other words, the aggregated proteins in ND10 are sequestered. This sequestration is evidenced by the fact that the PML partners in ND10 vary significantly between individual partners and levels of PML expression, as well as SUMOylation. A well-studied sequestered component in ND10 is Daxx, a potent repressor that forms partitions between SUMOylated proteins, including PML and many transcription factors. Sequestration of Daxx by ND10-associated, SUMOylated PML releases transcriptional repression by DNA-bound SUMOylated transcription factors[61,78-80].

Hotspot model

This model proposes that ND10 are the sites of the post-translational modification and the degradation of proteins. It is supported by the facts that SUMO-1 molecules aggregate in ND10 and ND10 might be the hot sites for SUMOylation, that the acetylation and phosphorylation of p53 at PML bodies enhance the activity of p53[16,81,82], and that the 19S and 20S proteasome subunits localize at some PML bodies[83].

Third model

Proposes ND10 to be sites of specific nuclear activities, such as transcriptional regulation and DNA replication. This model is supported by the detection of nascent RNA around ND10[84], the association of ND10 with regions of high transcriptional activity[85], and the non-random nature of PML body assembly (based on the conservation of their size and position) following dissociation and re-formation as a result of cellular stress[86].

INTERACTIONS OF ND10 AND VIRUSES

Herpesviruses

Human herpesviruses are divided into three subfamilies: alpha, beta, and gamma. The alpha subfamily includes Herpes Simplex Virus 1 and 2 (HSV-1 and HSV-2) and the Varicella Zoster Virus (VZV). The beta subfamily has cytomegalovirus (CMV) and human herpesvirus 6 and 7 (HHV-6 and HHV-7). Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpes virus (KSHV) and the Epstein-Bar virus (EBV) are in the gamma subfamily. These viruses are characterized by their practice of setting up latency in the host after primary infection. After entering to the nucleus through nuclear pores, these DNA viruses replicate their DNA and transcribe their genes inside the nucleus, preferably at ND10[4]. Therefore, the interaction of ND10 and herpesviruses occurs at the very early stage of infection.

Herpes simplex

The first virus found to be connected to ND10 was herpes simplex (HSV)-1. In 1993, Maul *et al*[28] were the first to discover that Vmw110 (ICP0-infected cell protein 0) localizes to ND10. Interestingly, they also showed that the C-terminal portion of ICP0, when linked to a heterologous protein, disrupts the normal distribution of PML. These observations presented the first link between processes involved in the control of cell growth and viral infection and latency. Later, Maul and Everett[11,26,34,87] systemically collaborated on the investigation of the interaction of ND10 and HSV-1, which collaboration typically combined the views from a cell biologist (Maul) and a virologist (Everett) on the direction to revelation of the phenomenal interaction of viral molecules and ND10. This, according to the authors' opinion, could be the most important contribution to the ND10 field.

It is now known that ICP0 disrupts ND10 through mediating the loss of the SUMO-1-modified forms of PML and the subsequent proteasome-mediated degradation of the PML protein[14-15,88-90]. The results were consistent with the finding that PML residue lysine 160 is the SUMOylation site and the mutation of this residue makes PML resistant to degradation by ICP0[91]. ND10 function might not be so critical for HSV-1 lytic infection because ICP0-deleted HSV-1 can replicate well, especially at a high multiplicity of infection (MOI).

It was visualized that both parental and replicated HSV-1 amplicon genomes were in association with ND10 in live cells[92]. It is likely that the genomes situated at ND10 preferentially form viral replication compartments. Tang *et al*[12] further figured out that there exist minimal viral DNA sequences and viral proteins that are essential and sufficient for the replication of DNA and the transcription of RNA at ND10 by the virus. For HSV-1 we found that a specific viral DNA sequence, OriS, and the viral immediate-early proteins ICP4 and ICP27 are sufficient for a reporter gene placed in cis at the OriS sequence to transcribe RNA at ND10[12]. HSV-1 DNA replication results in formation of compartments in the nucleus; it has been shown that some, but not all, PML isoforms are recruited to the replication compartments[93]. Viral DNA replication compartments also contain many other viral and cellular proteins that have different functions, many of which are required for DNA replication, DNA repair, and DNA stabilization[94]. However, the function of ND10 proteins in the DNA replication compartments is not fully understood.

HSV-1 with deleted ICP0 has an obvious defect in viral gene expression and plaque formation in limited-pas-

sage human fibroblasts (though not in mouse fibroblast cells)[95,96]. This suggests both that ND10 have defensive effect on HSV-1 infection and that ICP0 can abolish the defensive effect of ND10 in human fibroblasts. ICP0 is a RING finger E3 ubiquitin ligase that induces the degradation of PML. Depletion of PML from human fibroblasts increases ICP0-null mutant *HSV-1* gene expression but not to wild-type levels[96]. Another major ND10 protein, SP100, has a similar effect on ICP0-deleted HSV-1 gene expression[96]. It has been shown that all four SP100 isoforms stabilize ND10 and protect PML from ICP0-based hydrolysis[18]. Depletion of either all PML isoforms or all SP100 isoforms reduces the other constituent ND10 protein, suggesting that different ND10 proteins use different mechanisms to inhibit virus infection at the immediate-early stage of HSV-1 infection[18]. Simultaneous depletion of both PML and SP100 proteins complements the mutant virus to a greater degree, implying that PML and SP100 could have additive or synergistic effects on viral replication[96].

HSV-1 ICP0 might be important for the activation of lytic infection and the countering of the cell-mediated repression of viral gene expression by HSV-1. This repression is defended by preexisting cellular proteins, and those proteins function as intrinsic antiviral resistance or intrinsic defense. PML and SP100, as we discussed above, are two of the core components of ND10 and contribute to intrinsic resistance. But how about other ND10 proteins, such as, ATRX and Daxx? ATRX and Daxx are known to comprise components of a repressive chromatin-remodeling complex. It has been shown that the infection of ICP0-deleted HSV-1 (not wild-type HSV-1) can replicate at a greater level in both ATRX- and hDaxx-depleted cells than it can in normal cells[97], suggesting that ATRX and hDaxx act as a complex to play intrinsic antiviral resistance to HSV-1 infection, which is counteracted by ICP0.

Cytomegalovirus

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection differs from that of HSV-1 in host range and replication. HCMV can infect only human cells productively and causes diseases in humans only, and it replicates slowly in cell culture. HCMV is similar to HSV-1 in many ways: (1) setting up latency after primary infection in host; (2) sequential viral gene expression; and (3) viral DNA replication at ND10, preferentially. Following the studies of ND10 and HSV-1 interaction, many ND10 components have been demonstrated to have a repressive effect on CMV gene expression and viral replication (reviewed by Saffert and Kalejta[98]). The first ND10 protein investigated for its role in *HCMV* gene expression and viral replication was Daxx. In that study, Daxx was found to interact functionally with HCMV tegument protein pp71[16]. The Stamminger group[99] also investigated PML to see whether PML could have any effects on viral gene expression or on viral replication. After comparing HCMV replication in PML-kd or hDaxx-kd cells with that in normal cells, they revealed that immediate-early (IE) gene expression increased to a similar extent, regardless of whether PML or Daxx was depleted[98]. Their experimental results suggest that PML and Daxx might function using different mechanisms to suppress HCMV replication; double-knockdown cells depleted of both PML and hDaxx support the additive enhancement of HCMV infection in the replication efficacy of HCMV compared to that of single-knockdown cells[99]. Finally, they also found that the infection of SP100 knockdown (kd) cells with HCMV resulted in a significantly increased plaque-forming ability[99,100].

Like HSV-1, HCMV infection can also disrupt ND10, but the mechanisms of dispersing ND10 might be different. HSV-1 ICP0 induces the loss of the SUMO-1-modified forms of PML and the proteasome-mediated degradation of the PML protein[14,15,88-90]. However, in CMV-infected cells, PML is not degraded[13,101]. For cytomegaloviruses (including MCMV and HCMV), IE1 has been identified to disperse ND10 by an as yet unknown mechanism, but it is not able to degrade PML[27,101-104]. HCMV IE1's induction of PML deSUMOylation, reported by Lee *et al*[101], needs to be investigated for MCMV IE1.

Species-specificity is one of the major characteristics of cytomegaloviruses (CMVs) and is the primary reason for the lack of a mouse model for the direct infection of human CMV (HCMV). It has been determined that CMV cross-species infections are blocked at the post-entry level by intrinsic cellular defense mechanisms[105,106], but few details are known. We discovered that ND10 of human cells is not disrupted by murine CMV (MCMV) and that the ND10 of mouse cells is not disrupted by HCMV[107], although the ND10-disrupting protein, immediate-early protein 1 (IE1), also colocalize with ND10 in cross-species infections[107]. In addition, we found that the UL131-repaired HCMV strain AD169 (vDW215-BADrUL131) can infect mouse cells to produce immediate-early (IE) and early (E) proteins but that neither DNA replication nor viral particles are detectable in mouse cells. Unrepaired AD169 can express only IE1 in mouse cells. In both HCMV-infected mouse cells and MCMV-infected human cells, the knocking-down of ND10 components (PML, Daxx, and SP100) resulted in significantly increased viral-protein production. Our observations provide evidence to support our hypothesis that ND10 and ND10 components might be important defensive factors against CMV cross-species infection.

EPSTEIN-BARR VIRUS AND KAPOSI'S SARCOMA-ASSOCIATED HERPESVIRUS

The relationship of Epstein-Barr Virus (EBV) or Kaposi' s sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (KSHV) with ND10 has been less investigated than has that of HSV-1 or CMV (with ND10). The first study of the interaction of EBV and ND10 also came from the Maul group. Bell *et al*[108] studied the effect of the EBV on ND10, and its (EBV's) spatial distribution in the nucleus of cells during latency and lytic reactivation. In EBV, latently-infected Burkitt's lymphoma,

lymphoblastoid, and D98/HR1 cells, ND10 were intact. Fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH) revealed no association between viral episomes and ND10 during latency, implying that the maintenance replication of EBV, which depends on host cell proliferation, occurs independently of ND10. Upon lytic activation, ND10 become dispersed in cells expressing lytic proteins. Thus, latency does not require or induce the interaction of EBV and ND10 for transcription or replication, whereas lytic replication triggers the dispersion of ND10 proteins and occurs in close association with PML aggregates. The required movement of chromosome-attached latent EBV episomes to ND10 after reactivation from latency might include the physical release of chromosome-bound episomes. Only episomes that come in contact with ND10 after such a release might be able to begin the process of lytic replication[108]. The dispersion of ND10 by EBV in lytic infection might be through molecular and functional interactions between the EBV BZLF1 protein and the PML[109].

There are many fewer functional studies of ND10 proteins in EBV infection or reactivation than there are of those proteins in HSV-1 or CMV. So far, SP100 appears to be an effective ND10 protein that is related to *EBV* gene expression and viral reactivation. The EBV EBNA-LP protein is a potent gene-specific coactivator of the viral transcriptional activator, EBNA2. Ling *et al*[17] found that EBNA-LP interacts with ND10 protein SP100 and displaces SP100 and heterochromatin protein 1alpha (HP1alpha) from ND10. Their experimental results suggest that SP100 is a major mediator of EBNA-LP coactivation[17]. Recently, Tsai *et al*[110] showed that the EBV major tegument protein BNRF1 interacts with host-cell ND10 proteins and promotes viral early gene activation. Specifically, they demonstrated that BNRF1 interacts with the Daxx at ND10 and interferes with the formation of the Daxx-ATRX chromatin remodeling complex. Furthermore, the knockdown of Daxx and ATRX induces the reactivation of EBV from latency in infected lymphoblastoid cell lines, suggesting that Daxx and ATRX play a role in the regulation of viral gene expression and viral replication.

KSHV interacts with ND10 at the very early stage after reactivation. Although EBV and KSHV are so similar in many aspects that they are classified into the gama-herpesviral subfamily, they are different in many other characteristics. For example, KSHV might not be able to disrupt ND10, even though that particular claim is arguable. Wu *et al*[111] first studied the interaction of ND10 and KSHV and found that the KSHV protein, K8, interacted with PML; nevertheless, they clearly demonstrated that KSHV infection (latent or lytic) cannot disrupt ND10[111,112]. Our unpublished data also support their conclusion that ND10 are not dispersed by KSHV infection. However, this has been recently challenged by other studies[111,112]. In one such study, Marcos-Villar *et al*[113] stated that the KSHV protein LANA2 increased the levels of SUMOylated PML and induced the disruption of ND10 by a proteasome-mediated mechanism. They also reported that ND10 disruption needs both the integrity of a SUMO interaction motif (SIM) in LANA2 and the lysine 160 from PML. Moreover, they showed that the depletion of LANA2 in PEL cells led to an increase in the PML levels[111,112]. Arguably, KSHV's dispersion of ND10 was not clearly shown in the published pictures. Interestingly, the authors didn't cite the paper by Wu *et al*[111] that is intimately related to the subject.

As for the molecular and functional interaction of KSHV and ND10 proteins, only a few publications have been presented. First, Murakami *et al*[114] reported that Daxx is a LANA-binding protein and that interaction made LANA inhibit the repressive effect of Daxx on VEGF expression. Their results suggest that LANA contributes to the high expression of the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) receptors in KS lesions by interfering with the interaction of Daxx and Ets-1[114]. Other studies showed the existence of an interaction between PML and KSHV proteins (including K8 and LANA2)[111,115]. The biological significance of this interaction is still unclear.

OTHER DNA VIRUSES

Adenovirus

Adenovirus (Adv) is another virus that interacts with ND10. It was found that Adv infection changed the morphology of ND10 from being spherical punctate structures to being fibrous ones. This morphological change is caused by the molecular interaction of the Adv protein, E4 ORF3, and PML[116]. The other Adv protein found to interact with PML was E1A, which is an oncoprotein[116]. This study suggests that PML in ND10 might be involved in the cancerous consequence of Adv infection. More recently, a study by Hoppe *et al*[117] showed the PML isoform interacting directly and specifically with Adv E4 Orf3 *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Moreover, Hoppe *et al*[117] reconstructed ND10 in PML-null cells by inducing the transient transfection of different PML isoforms. They observed that only those ND10 formed from PML isoform Ⅱ were morphologically changed by E4 Orf3. Their data suggest that the interaction of E4 Orf3 and PML isoform Ⅱ is required for ND10 rearrangement[117].

The E4 ORF3 protein is required for Adv DNA replication when the cells are in the interferon (IFN)-induced antiviral state. ND10 prone proteins are all IFN-upregulated. This may reflect the fact that PML, Daxx, and SP100 are encoded by an interferon-stimulated gene. If so, can the interaction of E4 ORF3 and ND10 have any effect on Adv replication or viral gene expression? Ullman *et al*[118] demonstrate that the interaction of E4 ORF3 and ND10 antagonizes an innate antiviral response mediated by both PML and Daxx. Depleting any one of these proteins makes it possible to restore the replicative capacity of the virus using the E4 ORF3 protein deleted in the IFN-induced antiviral state. The interaction of Adv and ND10 has been also investigated with respect to SP100. Obviously, SP100 SUMOylation

is also affected by E4 ORF3, which in part contributes to the morphological change of ND10[89]. We think that it is critical to investigate whether E4 ORF3's interaction with ND10 plays a role in the oncogenesis of Adv. The interaction of E1A (an oncoprotein of Adv) and ND10 might be more important in the field of ND10 and viruses.

Human papillomavirus

Using indirect immunofluorescence in combination with fluorescence in situ hybridization, Swindle *et al*[119] found that human papillomavirus (HPV) DNA replication is targeted to host nuclear domains that are active during the late S phase, when such domains are limited in number. It was also observed that E1 and E2 partially or completely colocalize with ND10. The observation suggests that HPV DNA amplification might be partially coupled to virion assembly[119]. Interestingly, Florin *et al*[120] showed that the minor capsid protein L2 of HPV interacted with ND10-associated proteins. They observed that (1) the PML was unaffected by L2; (2) SP100 was released from ND10 upon L2 expression; and (3) In contrast to SP100, Daxx was recruited to ND10 by L2 expression. These studies suggested that ND10 might be involved in HPV capsidation.

Simian virus 40

Simian virus 40 (SV40) is a small DNA virus. Like other DNA viruses, SV40 starts transcription and replication adjacent to ND10. In an early study, we identified a specific viral DNA sequence and its binding protein that determine the location of these synthetic activities at such restricted nuclear sites[121]. A beta-galactosidase gene was introduced into an expression vector that contains partial and overlapping SV40 sequences. Transcripts derived from control plasmids were found throughout the nucleus and at highly concentrated sites but not at ND10. SV40 genomic segments supported ND10-associated transcription only when the origin and the coding sequence for the large T antigen were present. When the large T-antigen coding sequence was eliminated but the T antigen was constitutively expressed in COS-7 cells, the viral origin was sufficient to localize transcription and replication to ND10. Large T antigen expressed from plasmids without the viral core origin did not bind or localize to ND10. Blocking of DNA replication prevented the accumulation of transcripts at ND10, indicating that only sites with replicating templates accumulated transcripts. Transcription at ND10 did not enhance total protein synthesis of plasmid transcripts. These findings suggest that viral transcription at ND10 may only be a consequence of viral genomes directed to ND10 for replication. Although plasmid transcription can take place anywhere in the nucleus, T-antigen-directed replication is apparently restricted to ND10[121].

RNA VIRUSES

The first RNA virus studied for its interaction with ND10 was the lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus (LCMV), a single strand RNA virus, but interestingly, the interaction occurs in the cytoplasm. In cells infected with LCMV, the viral zinc-finger (Z) protein forms large bodies primarily in the cytoplasm. Z protein can redistribute PML from the nucleus to the cytoplasm, and PML and Z protein colocalize in the cytoplasm[35,122]. The similar function of Z protein was also found in other viruses of Arenaviridae[35,122]. The interaction of PML and Z proteins may influence certain unique characteristics of arenavirus infection.

Another RNA virus is hepatitis delta virus (HDV). HDV is a single-stranded RNA virus and has only one coding region producing the hepatitis delta antigen (HDAg). HDAg is expressed in two isoforms, small (S-HDAg) and large (L-HDAg). S-HDAg is required for the replication of HDV, while L-HDAg inhibits viral replication and is required for the envelopment of the HDV genomic RNA by hepatitis B virus proteins[123]. Bell *et al*[124] found that over half of the L-HDAg domains were localized beside ND10. At later times, ND10-associated proteins such as PML were found in larger HDAg complexes, in which PML was found chiefly in the rims of the spheres. Other ND10 components (SP100, Daxx, and NDP55) were found in the centers of the spheres. HDV genomic RNA was distributed more uniformly throughout the nucleus, but nascent viral RNA colocalizes with L-HDAg and the transcriptional repressor PML. These results suggest that this RNA virus, like DNA viruses, can alter the distribution of ND10-associated proteins and preferably transcribe mRNA at ND10. It is not clear whether the ND10-associated proteins (PML) play a role in the regulation of HDV RNA synthesis.

As for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the results have been controversial. Bell *et al*[125] reported that no significant relationship was observed between ND10 or any of the following: HIV-1 DNA, transcription foci, and integrated DNA. Their results showed that HIV-1 did not modify ND10 at early or late times of infection[125]. However, Turelli *et al*[126] reported that incoming retroviral preintegration complexes trigger the exporting-mediated cytoplasmic export of PML. They further described how the HIV genome associates with PML before nuclear migration. Further experiments are needed to reveal the detailed interaction of HIV and ND10.

VIRAL DISPERSION OF ND10

During viral infection, viruses and ND10 interact differently. The modification of ND10 structure can include (1) an increase in the size and number of ND10 per nucleus by double strand RNA viruses because their infection can induce IFN; (2) a change to the shape of ND10; (3) a decrease in the size or the number (of ND10) per nucleus; and (4) a total dispersal of ND10. Only CMV, EBV, and HSV have been clearly shown to disperse ND10. Here we take the MCMV infection as an example to show the real dispersing of ND10 (Figure 1). As we stated above,

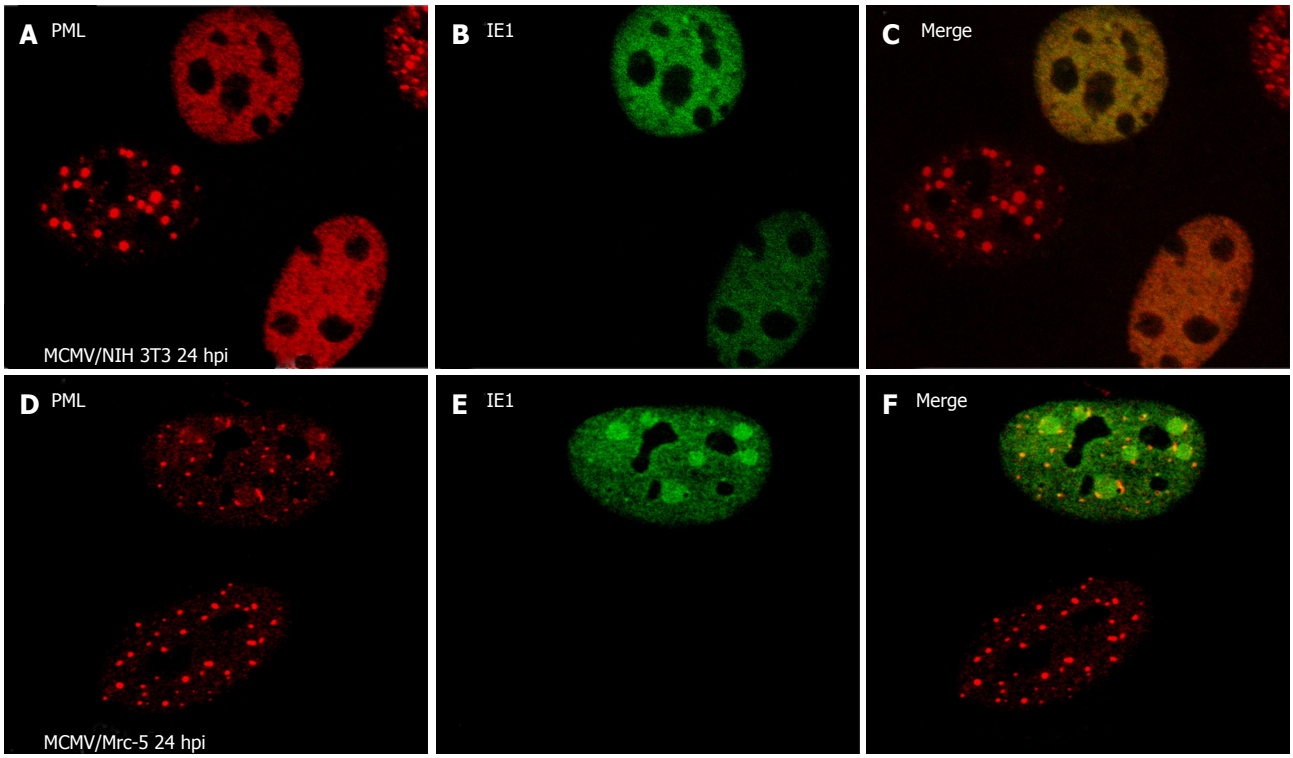


Figure 1 Immunofluorescent assay to show cytomegalovirus infection and nuclear domain 10. A: After murine cytomegalovirus (MCMV) infection in NIH3T3 cells for 24 h, cells were stained with anti-Promyelocytic Leukemia bodies (PML) antibody (rabbit) to show nuclear domain 10 (ND10) (in red); B: Anti-IE1 antibody (mouse) was used to show IE1 (in green); C: The merged picture is shown in; D: After MCMV infection in Mrc-5 cells for 24 h, cells were stained with anti-PML antibody (rabbit) to show ND10 (in red); E: Anti-IE1 antibody (mouse) was used to show IE1 (in green); F: The merged picture is shown.

CMV infection is species-specific. Interestingly, we discovered that murine CMV (MCMV) infection in human cells cannot disperse ND10[107], suggesting the involvement of ND10 in species-specificity. We performed comparative IFA to analyze the ability of IE1 to disperse ND10 in cross-species-infected cells as opposed to in natively infected (mouse) cells. We infected wt-MCMV into both Mrc-5 cells and NIH3T3 cells for 24 h. Cells were fixed and permeabilized and stained with anti-PML to show ND10 (red, Figure 1A, D) and with anti-IE1 to show the distribution of IE1 (green, Figure 1B, E). As can be seen in the MCMV-infected mouse cells, IE1 was diffusely distributed in the nucleus at 24 hpi. Interestingly, the IE1 of MCMV formed domains (Figure 1E) in human cells and lost the ability to disperse ND10, their distribution being different from that found in MCMV-infected mouse cells (Figure 1A-C). There is no standard for judging the level of viral effect on ND10 structure because ND10 number or size can vary in different cell cycles. Therefore, one has to be careful to make conclusions of dispersing or disrupting ND10 by any viral infection or transient transfection.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS FOR INVESTIGATIONS INTO THE VIRAL ASPECT OF ND10

A great deal of progress regarding the interaction of ND10 and viruses has been made in the past decades. A lot of questions are still left behind us, which makes the future direction of studies in the ND10-viruses field: (1) ND10 structure and ND10 protein are clearly related to cancer development (at least to some types of cancers). Therefore, the interaction of tumor viruses and ND10 should be the future focus of research in this field; (2) ND10 aggregate a lot of nuclear proteins that have different functions; we already know that SUMOylation is important for the formation of ND10. Are there any other nuclear functions needed for ND10 formation? Why do so many nuclear proteins meet in this place? (3) ND10 have been shown to be positioned beside SC35; SC35 is also related to transcribed RNA. What is the functional connection between ND10 and RNA? and (4) HIV DNA locates at SC35, not at ND10. HIV DNA is replicated and not integrated DNA (leftover). Given the fact that ND10 are located next to SC35, is it possible that they have any role with regard to HIV DNA?

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This review is dedicated to the memory of Gerd Maul who was named the Father of ND10 in the international herpesvirus workshop. Dr. Maul was a talented, energetic, and creative cell biologist from the Wistar Institute (Philadelphia, PA) who passed away in August 2010, after devoting over 20 years of his life to ND10.

We apologize to those friends and colleagues whose pri-

mary work could not be cited because of space restrictions.

We thank Bob Ritchie of the Ponce School of Medicine and Health Sciences/RCMI Publications Office for his help with manuscript preparation.

REFERENCES

1 **Dundr M**, Misteli T. Functional architecture in the cell nucleus. *Biochem J* 2001; **356**: 297-310 [PMID: 11368755 DOI: 10.1042/0264-6021:3560297]
2 **Dundr M**, Misteli T. Biogenesis of nuclear bodies. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* 2010; **2**: a000711 [PMID: 21068152 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a000711]
3 **Zhao R**, Bodnar MS, Spector DL. Nuclear neighborhoods and gene expression. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2009; **19**: 172-179 [PMID: 19339170 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2009.02.007]
4 **Maul GG**. Nuclear domain 10, the site of DNA virus transcription and replication. *Bioessays* 1998; **20**: 660-667 [PMID: 9780840]
5 **Lamond AI**, Earnshaw WC. Structure and function in the nucleus. *Science* 1998; **280**: 547-553 [PMID: 9554838 DOI: 10.1126/science.280.5363.547]
6 **Spector DL**. SnapShot: Cellular bodies. *Cell* 2006; **127**: 1071 [PMID: 17129789 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.11.026]
7 **Ishov AM**, Sotnikov AG, Negorev D, Vladimirova OV, Neff N, Kamitani T, Yeh ET, Strauss JF, Maul GG. PML is critical for ND10 formation and recruits the PML-interacting protein daxx to this nuclear structure when modified by SUMO-1. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **147**: 221-234 [PMID: 10525530 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.147.2.221]
8 **Wang ZG**, Ruggero D, Ronchetti S, Zhong S, Gaboli M, Rivi R, Pandolfi PP. PML is essential for multiple apoptotic pathways. *Nat Genet* 1998; **20**: 266-272 [PMID: 9806545 DOI: 10.1038/3073]
9 **Trotman LC**, Mosberger N, Fornerod M, Stidwill RP, Greber UF. Import of adenovirus DNA involves the nuclear pore complex receptor CAN/Nup214 and histone H1. *Nat Cell Biol* 2001; **3**: 1092-1100 [PMID: 11781571 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1201-1092]
10 **Ishov AM**, Maul GG. The periphery of nuclear domain 10 (ND10) as site of DNA virus deposition. *J Cell Biol* 1996; **134**: 815-826 [PMID: 8769408]
11 **Maul GG**, Ishov AM, Everett RD. Nuclear domain 10 as preexisting potential replication start sites of herpes simplex virus type-1. *Virology* 1996; **217**: 67-75 [PMID: 8599237 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1996.0094]
12 **Tang Q**, Li L, Ishov AM, Revol V, Epstein AL, Maul GG. Determination of minimum herpes simplex virus type 1 components necessary to localize transcriptionally active DNA to ND10. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 5821-5828 [PMID: 12719575 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.10.5821-5828.2003]
13 **Tang Q**, Maul GG. Mouse cytomegalovirus immediate-early protein 1 binds with host cell repressors to relieve suppressive effects on viral transcription and replication during lytic infection. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 1357-1367 [PMID: 12502852 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.2.1357-1367.2003]
14 **Chelbi-Alix MK**, de Thé H. Herpes virus induced proteasome-dependent degradation of the nuclear bodies-associated PML and Sp100 proteins. *Oncogene* 1999; **18**: 935-941 [PMID: 10023669 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1202366]
15 **Gu H**, Roizman B. The degradation of promyelocytic leukemia and Sp100 proteins by herpes simplex virus 1 is mediated by the ubiquitin-conjugating enzyme UbcH5a. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8963-8968 [PMID: 12855769 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1533420100]
16 **Hofmann H**, Sindre H, Stamminger T. Functional interaction between the pp71 protein of human cytomegalovirus and the PML-interacting protein human Daxx. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 5769-5783 [PMID: 11992005 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.11.5769-5783.2002]
17 **Ling PD**, Peng RS, Nakajima A, Yu JH, Tan J, Moses SM, Yang WH, Zhao B, Kieff E, Bloch KD, Bloch DB. Mediation of Epstein-Barr virus EBNA-LP transcriptional coactivation by Sp100. *EMBO J* 2005; **24**: 3565-3575 [PMID: 16177824 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600820]
18 **Negorev DG**, Vladimirova OV, Maul GG. Differential functions of interferon-upregulated Sp100 isoforms: herpes simplex virus type 1 promoter-based immediate-early gene suppression and PML protection from ICP0-mediated degradation. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 5168-5180 [PMID: 19279115 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02083-08]
19 **Puvion-Dutilleul F**, Venturini L, Guillemin MC, de Thé H, Puvion E. Sequestration of PML and Sp100 proteins in an intranuclear viral structure during herpes simplex virus type 1 infection. *Exp Cell Res* 1995; **221**: 448-461 [PMID: 7493645 DOI: 10.1006/excr.1995.1396]
20 **Roberts S**, Hillman ML, Knight GL, Gallimore PH. The ND10 component promyelocytic leukemia protein relocates to human papillomavirus type 1 E4 intranuclear inclusion bodies in cultured keratinocytes and in warts. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 673-684 [PMID: 12477870 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.1.673-684.2003]
21 **Saffert RT**, Kalejta RF. Human cytomegalovirus gene expression is silenced by Daxx-mediated intrinsic immune defense in model latent infections established in vitro. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 9109-9120 [PMID: 17596307 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00827-07]
22 **Saffert RT**, Kalejta RF. Inactivating a cellular intrinsic immune defense mediated by Daxx is the mechanism through which the human cytomegalovirus pp71 protein stimulates viral immediate-early gene expression. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 3863-3871 [PMID: 16571803 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.8.3863-3871.2006]
23 **Tavalai N**, Papior P, Rechter S, Leis M, Stamminger T. Evidence for a role of the cellular ND10 protein PML in mediating intrinsic immunity against human cytomegalovirus infections. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 8006-8018 [PMID: 16873257 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00743-06]
24 **Tavalai N**, Stamminger T. New insights into the role of the subnuclear structure ND10 for viral infection. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2008; **1783**: 2207-2221 [PMID: 18775455 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbamcr.2008.08.004]
25 **Woodhall DL**, Groves IJ, Reeves MB, Wilkinson G, Sinclair JH. Human Daxx-mediated repression of human cytomegalovirus gene expression correlates with a repressive chromatin structure around the major immediate early promoter. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 37652-37660 [PMID: 17035242 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M604273200]
26 **Everett RD**, Maul GG. HSV-1 IE protein Vmw110 causes redistribution of PML. *EMBO J* 1994; **13**: 5062-5069 [PMID: 7957072]
27 **Korioth F**, Maul GG, Plachter B, Stamminger T, Frey J. The nuclear domain 10 (ND10) is disrupted by the human cytomegalovirus gene product IE1. *Exp Cell Res* 1996; **229**: 155-158 [PMID: 8940259 DOI: 10.1006/excr.1996.0353]
28 **Maul GG**, Guldner HH, Spivack JG. Modification of discrete nuclear domains induced by herpes simplex virus type 1 immediate early gene 1 product (ICP0). *J Gen Virol* 1993; **74** (Pt 12): 2679-2690 [PMID: 8277273 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-74-12-2679]
29 **Mocarski ES**, Kemble GW, Lyle JM, Greaves RF. A deletion mutant in the human cytomegalovirus gene encoding IE1(491aa) is replication defective due to a failure in autoregulation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 11321-11326 [PMID: 8876134 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.21.11321]
30 **Stow ND**, Stow EC. Isolation and characterization of a herpes simplex virus type 1 mutant containing a deletion within the gene encoding the immediate early polypeptide Vmw110. *J Gen Virol* 1986; **67** (Pt 12): 2571-2585 [PMID: 3025339

DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-67-12-2571]
31 **de THE M**, BERNHARD W. [Examination by electron microscope of the VX2 tumor of the domestic rabbit derived from the Shope papilloma]. *Bull Assoc Fr Etud Cancer* 1960; **47**: 570-584 [PMID: 13776183]
32 **Ascoli CA**, Maul GG. Identification of a novel nuclear domain. *J Cell Biol* 1991; **112**: 785-795 [PMID: 1999457 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.112.5.785]
33 **Negorev DG**, Vladimirova OV, Kossenkov AV, Nikonova EV, Demarest RM, Capobianco AJ, Showe MK, Rauscher FJ, Showe LC, Maul GG. Sp100 as a potent tumor suppressor: accelerated senescence and rapid malignant transformation of human fibroblasts through modulation of an embryonic stem cell program. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 9991-10001 [PMID: 21118961 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-1483]
34 **Maul GG**, Everett RD. The nuclear location of PML, a cellular member of the C3HC4 zinc-binding domain protein family, is rearranged during herpes simplex virus infection by the C3HC4 viral protein ICP0. *J Gen Virol* 1994; **75** (Pt 6): 1223-1233 [PMID: 8207389 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-75-6-122]
35 **Borden KL**, Campbelldwyer EJ, Carlile GW, Djavani M, Salvato MS. Two RING finger proteins, the oncoprotein PML and the arenavirus Z protein, colocalize with the nuclear fraction of the ribosomal P proteins. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 3819-3826 [PMID: 9557665]
36 **Bernardi R**, Papa A, Pandolfi PP. Regulation of apoptosis by PML and the PML-NBs. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 6299-6312 [PMID: 18931695 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.305]
37 **Ching RW**, Dellaire G, Eskiw CH, Bazett-Jones DP. PML bodies: a meeting place for genomic loci? *J Cell Sci* 2005; **118**: 847-854 [PMID: 15731002 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.01700]
38 **Dellaire G**, Bazett-Jones DP. PML nuclear bodies: dynamic sensors of DNA damage and cellular stress. *Bioessays* 2004; **26**: 963-977 [PMID: 15351967 DOI: 10.1002/bies.20089]
39 **de Thé H**, Le Bras M, Lallemand-Breitenbach V. The cell biology of disease: Acute promyelocytic leukemia, arsenic, and PML bodies. *J Cell Biol* 2012; **198**: 11-21 [PMID: 22778276 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.201112044]
40 **Jensen K**, Shiels C, Freemont PS. PML protein isoforms and the RBCC/TRIM motif. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 7223-7233 [PMID: 11704850 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1204765]
41 **Lallemand-Breitenbach V**, Zhu J, Puvion F, Koken M, Honoré N, Doubeikovsky A, Duprez E, Pandolfi PP, Puvion E, Freemont P, de Thé H. Role of promyelocytic leukemia (PML) sumolation in nuclear body formation, 11S proteasome recruitment, and As2O3-induced PML or PML/retinoic acid receptor alpha degradation. *J Exp Med* 2001; **193**: 1361-1371 [PMID: 11413191 DOI: 10.1084/jem.193.12.1361]
42 **Ishov AM**, Vladimirova OV, Maul GG. Heterochromatin and ND10 are cell-cycle regulated and phosphorylation-dependent alternate nuclear sites of the transcription repressor Daxx and SWI/SNF protein ATRX. *J Cell Sci* 2004; **117**: 3807-3820 [PMID: 15252119 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.01230]
43 **de Thé H**, Lavau C, Marchio A, Chomienne C, Degos L, Dejean A. The PML-RAR alpha fusion mRNA generated by the t(15; 17) translocation in acute promyelocytic leukemia encodes a functionally altered RAR. *Cell* 1991; **66**: 675-684 [PMID: 1652369 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(91)90113-D]
44 **Goddard AD**, Borrow J, Freemont PS, Solomon E. Characterization of a zinc finger gene disrupted by the t(15; 17) in acute promyelocytic leukemia. *Science* 1991; **254**: 1371-1374 [PMID: 1720570 DOI: 10.1126/science.1720570]
45 **Kakizuka A**, Miller WH, Umesono K, Warrell RP, Frankel SR, Murty VV, Dmitrovsky E, Evans RM. Chromosomal translocation t(15; 17) in human acute promyelocytic leukemia fuses RAR alpha with a novel putative transcription factor, PML. *Cell* 1991; **66**: 663-674 [PMID: 1652368 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(91)90112-C]
46 **Melnick A**, Licht JD. Deconstructing a disease: RARalpha, its fusion partners, and their roles in the pathogenesis of acute promyelocytic leukemia. *Blood* 1999; **93**: 3167-3215 [PMID: 10233871]
47 **Geng Y**, Monajembashi S, Shao A, Cui D, He W, Chen Z, Hemmerich P, Tang J. Contribution of the C-terminal regions of promyelocytic leukemia protein (PML) isoforms II and V to PML nuclear body formation. *J Biol Chem* 2012; **287**: 30729-30742 [PMID: 22773875 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M112.374769]
48 **Szostecki C**, Guldner HH, Netter HJ, Will H. Isolation and characterization of cDNA encoding a human nuclear antigen predominantly recognized by autoantibodies from patients with primary biliary cirrhosis. *J Immunol* 1990; **145**: 4338-4347 [PMID: 2258622]
49 **Andreoni M**, Faircloth M, Vugler L, Britt WJ. A rapid microneutralization assay for the measurement of neutralizing antibody reactive with human cytomegalovirus. *J Virol Methods* 1989; **23**: 157-167 [PMID: 2542350 DOI: 10.1016/0166-0934(89)90129-8]
50 **Dent AL**, Yewdell J, Puvion-Dutilleul F, Koken MH, de The H, Staudt LM. LYSP100-associated nuclear domains (LANDs): description of a new class of subnuclear structures and their relationship to PML nuclear bodies. *Blood* 1996; **88**: 1423-1426 [PMID: 8695863]
51 **Guldner HH**, Szostecki C, Schröder P, Matschl U, Jensen K, Lüders C, Will H, Sternsdorf T. Splice variants of the nuclear dot-associated Sp100 protein contain homologies to HMG-1 and a human nuclear phosphoprotein-box motif. *J Cell Sci* 1999; **112** (Pt 5): 733-747 [PMID: 9973607]
52 **Seeler JS**, Marchio A, Losson R, Desterro JM, Hay RT, Chambon P, Dejean A. Common properties of nuclear body protein SP100 and TIF1alpha chromatin factor: role of SUMO modification. *Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **21**: 3314-3324 [PMID: 11313457 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.21.10.3314-3324.2001]
53 **Lehming N**, Le Saux A, Schüller J, Ptashne M. Chromatin components as part of a putative transcriptional repressing complex. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1998; **95**: 7322-7326 [PMID: 9636147]
54 **Zong RT**, Das C, Tucker PW. Regulation of matrix attachment region-dependent, lymphocyte-restricted transcription through differential localization within promyelocytic leukemia nuclear bodies. *EMBO J* 2000; **19**: 4123-4133 [PMID: 10921892 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/19.15.4123]
55 **Wasylyk C**, Schlumberger SE, Criqui-Filipe P, Wasylyk B. Sp100 interacts with ETS-1 and stimulates its transcriptional activity. *Mol Cell Biol* 2002; **22**: 2687-2702 [PMID: 11909962 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.22.8.2687-2702.2002]
56 **Grötzinger T**, Jensen K, Guldner HH, Sternsdorf T, Szostecki C, Schwab M, Savelyeva L, Reich B, Will H. A highly amplified mouse gene is homologous to the human interferon-responsive Sp100 gene encoding an autoantigen associated with nuclear dots. *Mol Cell Biol* 1996; **16**: 1150-1156 [PMID: 8622659]
57 **Yang X**, Khosravi-Far R, Chang HY, Baltimore D. Daxx, a novel Fas-binding protein that activates JNK and apoptosis. *Cell* 1997; **89**: 1067-1076 [PMID: 9215629 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80294-9]
58 **Pluta AF**, Earnshaw WC, Goldberg IG. Interphase-specific association of intrinsic centromere protein CENP-C with HDaxx, a death domain-binding protein implicated in Fas-mediated cell death. *J Cell Sci* 1998; **111** (Pt 14): 2029-2041 [PMID: 9645950]
59 **Hollenbach AD**, Sublett JE, McPherson CJ, Grosveld G. The Pax3-FKHR oncoprotein is unresponsive to the Pax3-associated repressor hDaxx. *EMBO J* 1999; **18**: 3702-3711 [PMID: 10393185 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/18.13.3702]
60 **Michaelson JS**, Bader D, Kuo F, Kozak C, Leder P. Loss of Daxx, a promiscuously interacting protein, results in extensive apoptosis in early mouse development. *Genes Dev* 1999; **13**: 1918-1923 [PMID: 10444590 DOI: 10.1101/gad.13.15.1918]
61 **Lin DY**, Huang YS, Jeng JC, Kuo HY, Chang CC, Chao TT, Ho CC, Chen YC, Lin TP, Fang HI, Hung CC, Suen CS,

Hwang MJ, Chang KS, Maul GG, Shih HM. Role of SUMO-interacting motif in Daxx SUMO modification, subnuclear localization, and repression of sumoylated transcription factors. *Mol Cell* 2006; **24**: 341-354 [PMID: 17081986 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2006.10.019]

62 **Wethkamp N**, Hanenberg H, Funke S, Suschek CV, Wetzel W, Heikaus S, Grinstein E, Ramp U, Engers R, Gabbert HE, Mahotka C. Daxx-beta and Daxx-gamma, two novel splice variants of the transcriptional co-repressor Daxx. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 19576-19588 [PMID: 21482821 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M110.196311]

63 **Salomoni P**, Guernah I, Pandolfi PP. The PML-nuclear body associated protein Daxx regulates the cellular response to CD40. *Cell Death Differ* 2006; **13**: 672-675 [PMID: 16311507 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cdd.4401820]

64 **Daniel MT**, Koken M, Romagné O, Barbey S, Bazarbachi A, Stadler M, Guillemin MC, Degos L, Chomienne C, de Thé H. PML protein expression in hematopoietic and acute promyelocytic leukemia cells. *Blood* 1993; **82**: 1858-1867 [PMID: 8400236]

65 **Dyck JA**, Maul GG, Miller WH, Chen JD, Kakizuka A, Evans RM. A novel macromolecular structure is a target of the promyelocyte-retinoic acid receptor oncoprotein. *Cell* 1994; **76**: 333-343 [PMID: 8293467 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(94)90340-9]

66 **Koken MH**, Puvion-Dutilleul F, Guillemin MC, Viron A, Linares-Cruz G, Stuurman N, de Jong L, Szostecki C, Calvo F, Chomienne C. The t(15; 17) translocation alters a nuclear body in a retinoic acid-reversible fashion. *EMBO J* 1994; **13**: 1073-1083 [PMID: 8131741]

67 **Weis K**, Rambaud S, Lavau C, Jansen J, Carvalho T, Carmo-Fonseca M, Lamond A, Dejean A. Retinoic acid regulates aberrant nuclear localization of PML-RAR alpha in acute promyelocytic leukemia cells. *Cell* 1994; **76**: 345-356 [PMID: 8293468 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(94)90341-7]

68 **Zhu J**, Koken MH, Quignon F, Chelbi-Alix MK, Degos L, Wang ZY, Chen Z, de Thé H. Arsenic-induced PML targeting onto nuclear bodies: implications for the treatment of acute promyelocytic leukemia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 3978-3983 [PMID: 9108090 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.8.3978]

69 **Everett RD**. Interactions between DNA viruses, ND10 and the DNA damage response. *Cell Microbiol* 2006; **8**: 365-374 [PMID: 16469050 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-5822.2005.00677.x]

70 **Gurrieri C**, Capodieci P, Bernardi R, Scaglioni PP, Nafa K, Rush LJ, Verbel DA, Cordon-Cardo C, Pandolfi PP. Loss of the tumor suppressor PML in human cancers of multiple histologic origins. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2004; **96**: 269-279 [PMID: 14970276 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djh043]

71 **Koken MH**, Linares-Cruz G, Quignon F, Viron A, Chelbi-Alix MK, Sobczak-Thépot J, Juhlin L, Degos L, Calvo F, de Thé H. The PML growth-suppressor has an altered expression in human oncogenesis. *Oncogene* 1995; **10**: 1315-1324 [PMID: 7731682]

72 **Terris B**, Baldin V, Dubois S, Degott C, Flejou JF, Hénin D, Dejean A. PML nuclear bodies are general targets for inflammation and cell proliferation. *Cancer Res* 1995; **55**: 1590-1597 [PMID: 7882370]

73 **Villagra NT**, Navascues J, Casafont I, Val-Bernal JF, Lafarga M, Berciano MT. The PML-nuclear inclusion of human supraoptic neurons: a new compartment with SUMO-1- and ubiquitin-proteasome-associated domains. *Neurobiol Dis* 2006; **21**: 181-193 [PMID: 16125395 DOI: 10.1016/j.nbd.2005.07.003]

74 **Yamada M**, Sato T, Shimohata T, Hayashi S, Igarashi S, Tsuji S, Takahashi H. Interaction between neuronal intranuclear inclusions and promyelocytic leukemia protein nuclear and coiled bodies in CAG repeat diseases. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **159**: 1785-1795 [PMID: 11696439 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63025-8]

75 **Ito K**, Bernardi R, Morotti A, Matsuoka S, Saglio G, Ikeda Y, Rosenblatt J, Avigan DE, Teruya-Feldstein J, Pandolfi PP. PML targeting eradicates quiescent leukaemia-initiating cells. *Nature* 2008; **453**: 1072-1078 [PMID: 18469801 DOI: 10.1038/nature07016]

76 **Salomoni P**, Pandolfi PP. The role of PML in tumor suppression. *Cell* 2002; **108**: 165-170 [PMID: 11832207 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(02)00626-8]

77 **Negorev D**, Maul GG. Cellular proteins localized at and interacting within ND10/PML nuclear bodies/PODs suggest functions of a nuclear depot. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 7234-7242 [PMID: 11704851 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1204764]

78 **Lehembre F**, Müller S, Pandolfi PP, Dejean A. Regulation of Pax3 transcriptional activity by SUMO-1-modified PML. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 1-9 [PMID: 11244500]

79 **Li H**, Leo C, Zhu J, Wu X, O'Neil J, Park EJ, Chen JD. Sequestration and inhibition of Daxx-mediated transcriptional repression by PML. *Mol Cell Biol* 2000; **20**: 1784-1796 [PMID: 10669754 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.20.5.1784-1796.2000]

80 **Lin DY**, Lai MZ, Ann DK, Shih HM. Promyelocytic leukemia protein (PML) functions as a glucocorticoid receptor co-activator by sequestering Daxx to the PML oncogenic domains (PODs) to enhance its transactivation potential. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 15958-15965 [PMID: 12595526 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M300387200]

81 **D'Orazi G**, Cecchinelli B, Bruno T, Manni I, Higashimoto Y, Saito S, Gostissa M, Coen S, Marchetti A, Del Sal G, Piaggio G, Fanciulli M, Appella E, Soddu S. Homeodomain-interacting protein kinase-2 phosphorylates p53 at Ser 46 and mediates apoptosis. *Nat Cell Biol* 2002; **4**: 11-19 [PMID: 11780126 DOI: 10.1038/ncb714]

82 **Pearson M**, Carbone R, Sebastiani C, Cioce M, Fagioli M, Saito S, Higashimoto Y, Appella E, Minucci S, Pandolfi PP, Pelicci PG. PML regulates p53 acetylation and premature senescence induced by oncogenic Ras. *Nature* 2000; **406**: 207-210 [PMID: 10910364 DOI: 10.1038/35018127]

83 **Lafarga M**, Berciano MT, Pena E, Mayo I, Castaño JG, Bohmann D, Rodrigues JP, Tavanez JP, Carmo-Fonseca M. Clastosome: a subtype of nuclear body enriched in 19S and 20S proteasomes, ubiquitin, and protein substrates of proteasome. *Mol Biol Cell* 2002; **13**: 2771-2782 [PMID: 12181345 DOI: 10.1091/mbc.E02-03-0122]

84 **Boisvert FM**, Hendzel MJ, Bazett-Jones DP. Promyelocytic leukemia (PML) nuclear bodies are protein structures that do not accumulate RNA. *J Cell Biol* 2000; **148**: 283-292 [PMID: 10648561 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.148.2.283]

85 **Wang J**, Shiels C, Sasieni P, Wu PJ, Islam SA, Freemont PS, Sheer D. Promyelocytic leukemia nuclear bodies associate with transcriptionally active genomic regions. *J Cell Biol* 2004; **164**: 515-526 [PMID: 14970191 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200305142]

86 **Eskiw CH**, Dellaire G, Mymryk JS, Bazett-Jones DP. Size, position and dynamic behavior of PML nuclear bodies following cell stress as a paradigm for supramolecular trafficking and assembly. *J Cell Sci* 2003; **116**: 4455-4466 [PMID: 13130097 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.00758]

87 **Everett RD**, Maul GG, Orr A, Elliott M. The cellular RING finger protein PML is not a functional counterpart of the herpes simplex virus type 1 RING finger protein Vmw110. *J Gen Virol* 1995; **76** (Pt 4): 791-798 [PMID: 9049324 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-76-4-791]

88 **Everett RD**, Freemont P, Saitoh H, Dasso M, Orr A, Kathoria M, Parkinson J. The disruption of ND10 during herpes simplex virus infection correlates with the Vmw110- and proteasome-dependent loss of several PML isoforms. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 6581-6591 [PMID: 9658103]

89 **Müller S**, Dejean A. Viral immediate-early proteins abrogate the modification by SUMO-1 of PML and Sp100 proteins, correlating with nuclear body disruption. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 5137-5143 [PMID: 10233977]

90 **Parkinson J**, Everett RD. Alphaherpesvirus proteins related to herpes simplex virus type 1 ICP0 affect cellular structures and proteins. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 10006-10017 [PMID: 11024129

DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.21.10006-10017.2000]
91 **Boutell C**, Orr A, Everett RD. PML residue lysine 160 is required for the degradation of PML induced by herpes simplex virus type 1 regulatory protein ICP0. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 8686-8694 [PMID: 12885887 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.16.8686-8694.2003]
92 **Sourvinos G**, Everett RD. Visualization of parental HSV-1 genomes and replication compartments in association with ND10 in live infected cells. *EMBO J* 2002; **21**: 4989-4997 [PMID: 12234938 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/cdf458]
93 **Burkham J**, Coen DM, Hwang CB, Weller SK. Interactions of herpes simplex virus type 1 with ND10 and recruitment of PML to replication compartments. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 2353-2367 [PMID: 11160739 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.5.2353-2367.2001]
94 **Wilkinson DE**, Weller SK. Recruitment of cellular recombination and repair proteins to sites of herpes simplex virus type 1 DNA replication is dependent on the composition of viral proteins within prereplicative sites and correlates with the induction of the DNA damage response. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 4783-4796 [PMID: 15078960 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.9.4783-4796.2004]
95 **Chee AV**, Lopez P, Pandolfi PP, Roizman B. Promyelocytic leukemia protein mediates interferon-based anti-herpes simplex virus 1 effects. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 7101-7105 [PMID: 12768029 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.77.12.7101-7105.2003]
96 **Everett RD**, Parada C, Gripon P, Sirma H, Orr A. Replication of ICP0-null mutant herpes simplex virus type 1 is restricted by both PML and Sp100. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 2661-2672 [PMID: 18160441 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02308-07]
97 **Lukashchuk V**, Everett RD. Regulation of ICP0-null mutant herpes simplex virus type 1 infection by ND10 components ATRX and hDaxx. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 4026-4040 [PMID: 20147399 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02597-09]
98 **Saffert RT**, Kalejta RF. Promyelocytic leukemia-nuclear body proteins: herpesvirus enemies, accomplices, or both? *Future Virol* 2008; **3**: 265-277 [PMID: 19763230 DOI: 10.2217/17460794.3.3.265]
99 **Tavalai N**, Papior P, Rechter S, Stamminger T. Nuclear domain 10 components promyelocytic leukemia protein and hDaxx independently contribute to an intrinsic antiviral defense against human cytomegalovirus infection. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 126-137 [PMID: 17942542 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01685-07]
100 **Adler M**, Tavalai N, Müller R, Stamminger T. Human cytomegalovirus immediate-early gene expression is restricted by the nuclear domain 10 component Sp100. *J Gen Virol* 2011; **92**: 1532-1538 [PMID: 21471311 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.030981-0]
101 **Lee HR**, Kim DJ, Lee JM, Choi CY, Ahn BY, Hayward GS, Ahn JH. Ability of the human cytomegalovirus IE1 protein to modulate sumoylation of PML correlates with its functional activities in transcriptional regulation and infectivity in cultured fibroblast cells. *J Virol* 2004; **78**: 6527-6542 [PMID: 15163746 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.78.12.6527-6542.2004]
102 **Ahn JH**, Hayward GS. The major immediate-early proteins IE1 and IE2 of human cytomegalovirus colocalize with and disrupt PML-associated nuclear bodies at very early times in infected permissive cells. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 4599-4613 [PMID: 9151854]
103 **Kang H**, Kim ET, Lee HR, Park JJ, Go YY, Choi CY, Ahn JH. Inhibition of SUMO-independent PML oligomerization by the human cytomegalovirus IE1 protein. *J Gen Virol* 2006; **87**: 2181-2190 [PMID: 16847114 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.81787-0]
104 **Kelly C**, Van Driel R, Wilkinson GW. Disruption of PML-associated nuclear bodies during human cytomegalovirus infection. *J Gen Virol* 1995; **76** (Pt 11): 2887-2893 [PMID: 7595400 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-76-11-2887]
105 **Lafemina RL**, Hayward GS. Differences in cell-type-specific blocks to immediate early gene expression and DNA replication of human, simian and murine cytomegalovirus. *J Gen Virol* 1988; **69** (Pt 2): 355-374 [PMID: 2828515 DOI: 10.1099/0022-1317-69-2-355]
106 **Tang Q**, Maul GG. Mouse cytomegalovirus crosses the species barrier with help from a few human cytomegalovirus proteins. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 7510-7521 [PMID: 16840331 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00684-06]
107 **Cosme RC**, Martínez FP, Tang Q. Functional interaction of nuclear domain 10 and its components with cytomegalovirus after infections: cross-species host cells versus native cells. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e19187 [PMID: 21552525 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0019187]
108 **Bell P**, Lieberman PM, Maul GG. Lytic but not latent replication of epstein-barr virus is associated with PML and induces sequential release of nuclear domain 10 proteins. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 11800-11810 [PMID: 11090180 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.24.11800-11810.2000]
109 **Bowling BL**, Adamson AL. Functional interactions between the Epstein-Barr virus BZLF1 protein and the promyelocytic leukemia protein. *Virus Res* 2006; **117**: 244-253 [PMID: 16307818 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2005.10.018]
110 **Tsai K**, Thikmyanova N, Wojcechowskyj JA, Delecluse HJ, Lieberman PM. EBV tegument protein BNRF1 disrupts DAXX-ATRX to activate viral early gene transcription. *PLoS Pathog* 2011; **7**: e1002376 [PMID: 22102817 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002376]
111 **Wu FY**, Ahn JH, Alcendor DJ, Jang WJ, Xiao J, Hayward SD, Hayward GS. Origin-independent assembly of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus DNA replication compartments in transient cotransfection assays and association with the ORF-K8 protein and cellular PML. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 1487-1506 [PMID: 11152521 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.3.1487-1506.2001]
112 **Katano H**, Ogawa-Goto K, Hasegawa H, Kurata T, Sata T. Human-herpesvirus-8-encoded K8 protein colocalizes with the promyelocytic leukemia protein (PML) bodies and recruits p53 to the PML bodies. *Virology* 2001; **286**: 446-455 [PMID: 11485412 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2001.1005]
113 **Marcos-Villar L**, Campagna M, Lopitz-Otsoa F, Gallego P, González-Santamaría J, González D, Rodriguez MS, Rivas C. Covalent modification by SUMO is required for efficient disruption of PML oncogenic domains by Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus latent protein LANA2. *J Gen Virol* 2011; **92**: 188-194 [PMID: 20881090 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.024984-0]
114 **Murakami Y**, Yamagoe S, Noguchi K, Takebe Y, Takahashi N, Uehara Y, Fukazawa H. Ets-1-dependent expression of vascular endothelial growth factor receptors is activated by latency-associated nuclear antigen of Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus through interaction with Daxx. *J Biol Chem* 2006; **281**: 28113-28121 [PMID: 16861237 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M602026200]
115 **Marcos-Villar L**, Lopitz-Otsoa F, Gallego P, Muñoz-Fontela C, González-Santamaría J, Campagna M, Shou-Jiang G, Rodriguez MS, Rivas C. Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus protein LANA2 disrupts PML oncogenic domains and inhibits PML-mediated transcriptional repression of the survivin gene. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 8849-8858 [PMID: 19553342 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00339-09]
116 **Carvalho T**, Seeler JS, Ohman K, Jordan P, Pettersson U, Akusjärvi G, Carmo-Fonseca M, Dejean A. Targeting of adenovirus E1A and E4-ORF3 proteins to nuclear matrix-associated PML bodies. *J Cell Biol* 1995; **131**: 45-56 [PMID: 7559785 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.131.1.45]
117 **Hoppe A**, Beech SJ, Dimmock J, Leppard KN. Interaction of the adenovirus type 5 E4 Orf3 protein with promyelocytic leukemia protein isoform II is required for ND10 disruption. *J Virol* 2006; **80**: 3042-3049 [PMID: 16501113 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.80.6.3042-3049.2006]
118 **Ullman AJ**, Hearing P. Cellular proteins PML and Daxx mediate an innate antiviral defense antagonized by the adenovirus E4 ORF3 protein. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 7325-7335 [PMID: 18480450 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00723-08]
119 **Swindle CS**, Zou N, Van Tine BA, Shaw GM, Engler JA, Chow LT. Human papillomavirus DNA replication compart-

ments in a transient DNA replication system. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 1001-1009 [PMID: 9882301]
120 **Florin L**, Schäfer F, Sotlar K, Streeck RE, Sapp M. Reorganization of nuclear domain 10 induced by papillomavirus capsid protein l2. *Virology* 2002; **295**: 97-107 [PMID: 12033769 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2002.1360]
121 **Tang Q**, Bell P, Tegtmeyer P, Maul GG. Replication but not transcription of simian virus 40 DNA is dependent on nuclear domain 10. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 9694-9700 [PMID: 11000241 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.20.9694-9700.2000]
122 **Borden KL**, Campbell Dwyer EJ, Salvato MS. An arenavirus RING (zinc-binding) protein binds the oncoprotein promyelocyte leukemia protein (PML) and relocates PML nuclear bodies to the cytoplasm. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 758-766 [PMID: 9420283]
123 **Chen R**, Linnstaedt SD, Casey JL. RNA editing and its control in hepatitis delta virus replication. *Viruses* 2010; **2**: 131-146 [PMID: 21994604 DOI: 10.3390/v2010131]
124 **Bell P**, Brazas R, Ganem D, Maul GG. Hepatitis delta virus replication generates complexes of large hepatitis delta antigen and antigenomic RNA that affiliate with and alter nuclear domain 10. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 5329-5336 [PMID: 10799610 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.11.5329-5336.2000]
125 **Bell P**, Montaner LJ, Maul GG. Accumulation and intranuclear distribution of unintegrated human immunodeficiency virus type 1 DNA. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 7683-7691 [PMID: 11462040 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.16.7683-7691.2001]
126 **Turelli P**, Doucas V, Craig E, Mangeat B, Klages N, Evans R, Kalpana G, Trono D. Cytoplasmic recruitment of INI1 and PML on incoming HIV preintegration complexes: interference with early steps of viral replication. *Mol Cell* 2001; **7**: 1245-1254 [PMID: 11430827 DOI: 10.1016/S1097-2765(01)00255-6]

P- Reviewers Berardinis PD, Devaux CA, Laassri M, Kawasaki H
S- Editor Wen LL **L- Editor** A **E- Editor** Lu YJ

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.123

World J Virol 2013 August 12; 2(3): 123-135
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Searching for nuclear export elements in hepatitis D virus RNA

Natália Freitas, Celso Cunha

Natália Freitas, Department of Microbiology, Molecular Genetics, and Immunology, Kansas University Medical Center, Rainbow Boulevard, Kansa, KS 66160, United States
Celso Cunha, Medical Microbiology Unit, Center for Malaria and Tropical Diseases, Institute of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, Nova University of Lisbon, 1349-008 Lisbon, Portugal
Author contributions: Freitas N designed and performed experiments, interpreted the results and helped draft the manuscript; Cunha C designed the experiments, interpreted the results and wrote the manuscript.
Supported by A grant from Fundação para a Ciência e Tecnologia, Portugal to Freitas N
Correspondence to: Celso Cunha, PhD, Medical Microbiology Unit, Center for Malaria and Tropical Diseases, Institute of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, Nova University of Lisbon, Rua da Junqueira, 100, 1349-008 Lisbon, Portugal. ccunha@ihmt.unl.pt
Telephone: +35-121-3652620 Fax: +35-121-3632105
Received: May 7, 2013 Revised: July 26, 2013
Accepted: August 8, 2013
Published online: August 12, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To search for the presence of cis elements in hepatitis D virus (HDV) genomic and antigenomic RNA capable of promoting nuclear export.

METHODS: We made use of a well characterized chloramphenicol acetyl-transferase reporter system based on plasmid pDM138. Twenty cDNA fragments corresponding to different HDV genomic and antigenomic RNA sequences were inserted in plasmid pDM138, and used in transfection experiments in Huh7 cells. The relative amounts of HDV RNA in nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions were then determined by real-time polymerase chain reaction and Northern blotting. The secondary structure of the RNA sequences that displayed nuclear export ability was further predicted using a web interface. Finally, the sensitivity to leptomycin B was assessed in order to investigate possible cellular pathways involved in HDV RNA nuclear export.

RESULTS: Analysis of genomic RNA sequences did not allow identifying an unequivocal nuclear export element. However, two regions were found to promote the export of reporter mRNAs with efficiency higher than the negative controls albeit lower than the positive control. These regions correspond to nucleotides 266-489 and 584-920, respectively. In addition, when analyzing antigenomic RNA sequences a nuclear export element was found in positions 214-417. Export mediated by the nuclear export element of HDV antigenomic RNA is sensitive to leptomycin B suggesting a possible role of CRM1 in this transport pathway.

CONCLUSION: A cis-acting nuclear export element is present in nucleotides 214-417 of HDV antigenomic RNA.

Key words: Hepatitis D virus; Genomic RNA; Antigenomic RNA; Nuclear export; Nuclear export element

Core tip: Hepatitis D virus (HDV) replicates in the nucleus and export of HDV RNPs to the cytoplasm is thought to be mediated by cis-elements present in virus RNA. We used a chloramphenicol acetyl-transferase reporter system in an attempt to identify the RNA sequences that mediate export to the cytoplasm. Several cDNA constructs coding for different HDV RNA (genomic and antigenomic) sequences were tested. Our results show that a cis-acting nuclear export element is present in positions 214-417 of antigenomic RNA. Two regions in genomic RNA were found to promote nuclear export with efficiency higher than the negative control although lower that the positive control.

Freitas N, Cunha C. Searching for nuclear export elements in hepatitis D virus RNA. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(3): 123-135 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i3/123.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.123

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis D virus (HDV) is the only member of the Deltavirus genus and is considered to be a satellite virus of the hepatitis B virus (HBV)[1]. When compared with HBV alone, infection of human hepatocytes with both viruses increases liver damage and the risk of cirrhosis and fulminant disease[2,3]. The two viruses are associated due to the fact that the outer envelope of HDV consists of HBV surface antigens (HBsAgs) which are necessary for virus packaging and propagation of infection[4].

The HDV genome consists of a circular, closed ssRNA molecule of approximately 1.7 kb and negative polarity. It is estimated that about 70% of this RNA molecule is internally base-paired resulting in the formation of a rod-like structure similar to plant viroids[5]. There is still a considerable lack of information, and even some controversy, concerning the mechanisms and host factors involved in HDV RNA replication. It seems to be generally accepted that replication occurs through a double rolling-circle mechanism involving the participation of at least host RNA polymerase Ⅱ, and resulting in the synthesis of multimeric antigenomic molecules[6,7]. Subsequently, these multimeric antigenomic molecules are self-cleaved and ligated at precise monomeric intervals by the HDV RNA ribozyme activity[8]. The monomeric antigenomes serve as templates for a second round of replication, by a similar mechanism, thus resulting in the synthesis of monomeric genomic RNA molecules. The HDV genome contains a single ORF that codes for a 24 kDa protein, the so-called small delta antigen (S-HDAg)[9]. As a consequence of an editing mechanism that converts an amber stop codon UAG into a tryptophan codon UGG in the antigenome, the ORF is extended by 19 additional aminoacids[10]. As a result, a 27 kDa protein, the large delta antigen (L-HDAg) is produced. These two proteins are thought to play different roles in the HDV replication cycle. S-HDAg is necessary for accumulation of virus RNA[11] and positively regulates ribozyme activity[12], and L-HDAg inhibits replication and interacts with HBsAgs to promote virus packaging[13,14]. HDV packaging occurs in the cytoplasm where the newly synthesized RNPs meet the HBsAgs to assemble mature virions. It has been previously shown that HDV RNPs shuttle continuously between the nucleus and the cytoplasm[15]. While nuclear import of virus RNPs is mediated by a nuclear localization signal in HDAgs[16], the export to the cytoplasm is believed to be mediated by a cis element present in the RNA molecule. This is supported by the fact that export of both genomic and antigenomic HDV RNAs was found to be independent of the presence of HDAgs[15]. Furthermore, Macnaughton and Lai reported that both genomic and antigenomic RNAs (gRNA and agRNA, respectively) are exported with similar efficiency at early times during replication[17]. Although cells expressing L-HDAg, HBsAgs, and agRNA were found to secret virus-like particles containing HDV agRNA[18], it is widely accepted that only gRNA molecules are packaged into newly synthesized virions. This observation led to the hypothesis that packaging is restricted to gRNA molecules due to the nuclear retention, and eventual further degradation, of HDV antigenomes. However, to our knowledge, no experimental evidences were obtained supporting this idea.

Simple retroviruses such as simian type D retroviruses have evolved mechanisms of RNA export based on the direct interaction of a cis-acting transport element [constitutive transport element (CTE)] with cellular transport receptors. The TAP protein, the human homologue of yeast Mex67p, is one of best studied host factors shown to interact with the CTE to promote nuclear export of unspliced simian retrovirus type D mRNAs[19]. TAP was also identified as one of the proteins responsible for export of cellular mRNAs[20]. On the other hand, complex retroviruses were shown to use a different pathway for export of intron-containing mRNAs. This pathway involves the participation of the cellular protein CRM1[21]. In the case of human immunodeficiency virus-1 (HIV-1), the association of CRM1 with intron-containing mRNAs is mediated by the virus protein Rev which recognizes a specific sequence named rev-responsive element (RRE)[22]. Additionally, the HBV posttranscriptional regulatory element (PRE), which was reported to play a crucial role in export of virus mRNAs to the cytoplasm, seems to use a distinct, not yet identified nuclear export pathway[23].

In an attempt to clarify whether HDV gRNA and agRNA contain cis elements capable of promoting the export to the cytoplasm, we made use of a chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase (CAT) reporter system, in transfection experiments, to identify and characterize putative nuclear export elements.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell culture and transfection

HuH-7 cells were cultured in RPMI 1640 medium (Sigma) supplemented with 10%FBS (Invitrogen). Cells were grown as monolayers at 37 ℃, in a humidified atmosphere containing 5%CO_2. Transfection assays were performed using the Fugene6 Transfection Reagent (Roche) and 1 μg plasmid DNA per 35-mm well, according to the manufacturer's instructions. To control for transfection effiency in CAT assays, 20 ng of plasmid pSV-β-galactosidase (Promega) were cotransfected with 100 ng of reporter CAT constructs, and 1.88 μg pUC19. Cells were analysed 24 h post-transfection. In some experiments, 10 nmol/L leptomycin B was added to the medium 18 h after transfection and cells were subsequently incubated for 6 h before analysis as earlier described[24].

Plasmid constructs

Plasmid pDM138[25,26] was a kind gift of Tristram Parslow (Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, United States). Plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-) were generously provided by Benedict Yen (University of California, San Francisco, United States). Plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-) contain a DNA fragment of approximately 570 bp that codes for the

Table 1 Primers used to amplify hepatitis delta virus cDNA fragments

HDV cDNA fragments	*Forward primer* 5'→3'	*Reverse primer* 5'→3'	Fragment length (bp)	Genome location (Sense)	Antigenome location (Antisense)
A1	CGCATCGATACTCCCTGCAGATTGGGGA	CGCATCGATATTCACCGACAAGGAGAGGC	243	360-602	1078-1320
A2	CGCATCGATGCCTCTCCTTGTCGGTGAAT	CGCATCGATGAGACCTCCGGAAGACAAAGA	204	176-379	1301-1504
A3	CGCATCGATTTCCGGAGGTCTCTCTCGAGT	CGCATCGATTCTCCTCGCTCGGAACTTG	214	1654-679/188	1492-1679/26
A4	CGCATCGATTTCCTCGGTCAACCTCCTGA	CGCATCGATATAAGGATGGAGAGGGGGCT	224	266-489	1191-1414
A5	CGCATCGATCCCCTCTCCATCCTTATCCT	CGCATCGATAGGGAGAGAAGAGATCCTCGA	172	114-285	1395-1566
A6	CGCATCGATCGAATGGGACCCACAAATCT	CGCATCGATTCCCCAATCTGCAGGGAGT	337	584-920	760-1096
A7	CGCATCGATCCCAATCCCAGATCTGGAGA	CGCATCGATTTTGCTTTCCTCCTCGCTTC	204	1263-1466	214-417
A8	CGCATCGATAAAGAAAGCAACGGGGCTAG	CGCATCGATGGGAGTCGGAATCGAGCAT	199	1067-1265	415-613
A9	CGCATCGATATGCTCGATTCCGACTCCC	CGCATCGATCCTAGAGAGATTTGTGGGTCCC	191	895-1085	595-785
A10	CGCATCGATCAAGTTCCGAGCGAGGAGAC	CGCATCGATTCTCCAGATCTGGGATTGGG	227	1446-1672	8-234

Nucleotide sequence of the primers used in PCR reactions to amplify hepatitis delta virus (HDV) cDNA fragments. The *Cla* I restriction site is underlined. The size of the amplicon and the corresponding location in the genome, when cloned in sense and antisense orientations, are indicated.

Table 2 Primers used to amplify truncated forms of the A7AS agRNA sequence

HDV cDNA fragments	*Forward primer* 5'→3'	*Reverse primer* 5'→3'	Fragment length (bp)
269-417	CGCATCGATGGGAGGAATCCACTCGGAGA	CGCATCGATTTTGCTTTCCTCCTCGCTTC	149
214-379	CGCATCGATCCCAATCCCAGATCTGGAGA	CGCATCGATGCATCTCCTCCTATCGCTATGG	166
214-403	CGCATCGATCCCAATCCCAGATCTGGAGA	CGCATCGATGCTTCGGTCTCCCCCTACTC	190
244-417	CGCATCGATCCCGAAGGGTTGAGTAGCAC	CGCATCGATTTTGCTTTCCTCCTCGCTTC	174
244-403	CGCATCGATCCCGAAGGGTTGAGTAGCAC	CGCATCGATGCTTCGGTCTCCCCCTACTC	160
314-417	CGCATCGATACCCCTTCAGCGAACAAGAG	CGCATCGATTTTGCTTTCCTCCTCGCTTC	104
214-322	CGCATCGATCCCAATCCCAGATCTGGAGA	CGCATCGATTGAAGGGGTCCTCGGAGGT	109
269-379	CGCATCGATGGGAGGAATCCACTCGGAGA	CGCATCGATGCATCTCCTCCTATCGCTATGG	111

Nucleotide sequence of the primers used to amplify eight truncated forms of the A7AS sequence localized in position 214-417 in the hepatitis delta virus (HDV) antigenomic cDNA. The underlined sequence corresponds to a *Cla* I restriction site.

HBV post-transcriptional regulatory element (PRE). This fragment was inserted in the unique *Cla* I site of pDM138 in both sense and antisense orientations, originating plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-), respectively[27].

Twenty vectors containing cDNA inserts corresponding to 10 different regions of the HDV agRNA cloned, in both orientations, in the unique *Cla* I site of pDM138 were generated by polymerase chain reaction (PCR), using the primers listed in Table 1, and plasmid pDL481[18] as template. This plasmid was designed to code for full-length HDV antigenomic RNA and was a kind gift of John Taylor (Fox Chase Cancer Center, Philadelphia, United States). The primers were designed in order to include a *Cla* I site in the 5' end. The obtained PCR fragments were purified using the GFX PCR and Gel Band kit (GE Healthcare) and ligated with *Cla* I digested pDM138 using the Rapid DNA Ligation kit (Roche) according with the instructions of the manufacturer. The correct insertion in sense or antisense orientations of the fragments was first monitored by restriction endonuclease analysis with *Ban* Ⅱ, *Eco*R Ⅰ, *Ban* Ⅱ and *Nhe* Ⅰ, *Pst* Ⅰ, *Xho* Ⅰ, *Bgl* Ⅱ, and *Bam*HI (Fermentas) followed by DNA sequencing.

Additionally, we constructed eight pDM138 derived vectors containing different portions of the cDNA complementary to the HDV agRNA sequence comprised between nt 214 and 417. The strategy was similar to the one described above and the primers used in PCR reactions are listed in Table 2.

Plasmid pDL481ΔNEE, containing full-length HDV agRNA from which the sequence corresponding to the putative nuclear export element (NEE) was removed (nt 2473-2696), was constructed as follows: first we digested plasmid pDL481 with *Apa* Ⅰ (Invitrogen) which cuts at positions 2696 and 3208. The two resulting 5762 bp and 512 bp fragments were separated by electrophoresis, and the 5762 bp fragment was recovered and purified using the GFX PCR DNA kit (GE Healthcare). Subsequently, this fragment was further digested with *Nhe* Ⅰ (GE Healthcare). Two fragments were obtained with 5539 bp and 223 bp, respectively. The 5539 bp fragment was purified as above. The next step consisted of the amplification of the 2696-3208 nt region of plasmid pDL481. To do this, we used the following primers: Fwd 5'GGGCCCGCTTAGCGCCCCTTTTTCTTCCACCTT 3' in which a *Apa* Ⅰ and a *Nhe* Ⅰ restriction sites were included in the 5' end, and Rev 5' GGGCCCACCG-GTGCCCCCTCTCCATCCTTAT 3' in which a *Apa* Ⅰ (underlined) and a *Age* Ⅰ (grey box) restriction sites were also added at the 5' end. The amplified 512 bp fragment was purified as above, and the two 512 bp and 5539 bp

fragments were then ligated using the Rapid DNA Ligation kit (Roche) according to the specifications of the manufacturer. The correct construction of the recombinant vector was tested by digestion with *Xho* I followed by DNA sequencing.

Plasmid pDL481Δδ was constructed by removing a 189 bp sequence, comprised between nucleotides 3208 and 3397 in pDL481. This sequence is complementary to the putative NEE in the HDV antigenome. To do this we first digested plasmid pDL481 with *Bpi* I (Fermentas) which cuts at positions 3098 and 3397 generating two 5975 bp and 299 bp fragments, respectively. Next, the two fragments were purified and incubated with 5 U Klenow enzyme (Fermentas), 0.05 mmol/L dNTPs, and Klenow buffer (Fermentas), for 10 min at 37 ℃ to generate blunt ends. The resulting blunt-ended fragments were digested with *Apa* I (Fermentas) and 4 fragments were obtained with 110, 189, 402 and 5573 bp, respectively. The 5573 bp fragment was purified as above and used in ligation reactions with the 512 bp fragment of pDL481 (nt 2696-3208) which was amplified by PCR as described before. Prior to ligation, compatible ends were generated in the 512 bp amplified DNA fragment. To do this, we first digested this fragment with *Age* I . Following incubation with Klenow and dNTPs to generate blunt ends, as above described, this fragment was next digested with *Apa* I . After digestion, the DNA was purified using the GFX PCR DNA kit (GE Healthcare), and subsequently used in ligation reactions with the 5573 bp fragment. Ligations were performed using the Rapid DNA Ligation kit (Roche) following the instructions of the manufacturer. The correct construction of the recombinant vector was monitored by restriction endonuclease analysis with *Xho* I followed by DNA sequencing.

Plasmid pDL481ΔNEEδ, from which the putative NEE and the corresponding complementary sequence in the HDV antigenome were deleted, was generated by removing a 223 bp sequence between positions 2473 and 2696 and a 189 bp sequence comprised between nucleotides 3208 and 3397 in plasmid pDL481. The first approach consisted of digesting plasmid pDL481 with *Bpi* I followed by generation of blunt ends with Klenow enzyme, as above described for plasmid pDL481Δδ. Next, we digested the two resulting fragments with *Nhe* I . Three fragments of 299, 625 and 5350 bp, respectively, were obtained and separated by agarose gel electrophoresis. The 5350 bp fragment was purified from the gel using the GFX PCR DNA kit (GE Healthcare) and used in subsequent ligation reactions. Before ligation with the 512 bp fragment of pDL481 (nt 2696-3208) obtained by PCR, compatible ends were generated. This was performed by digesting the 512 bp fragment with *Age* I . After filling the resulting cohesive ends with dNTPs, as above described, the obtained blunt fragment was further digested with *Nhe* I . After purification, this DNA fragment was finally ligated with the previously obtained 5350 bp DNA fragment, as described. Finally, we tested the correct construction of the recombinant plasmid by digestion with *Xho* I followed by DNA sequencing.

In situ hybridization

In situ hybridization was performed on pDL481 and pDL542 transfected HuH-7 cells essentially as described[15]. After transfection, cells were incubated at 37 ℃ for 24 h. All fixation, permeabilization, and denaturation steps were exactly as described[15]. Plasmid pSVL(D3) was labeled by nick-translation with digoxigenin-11-dUTP and used as a probe. This plasmid contains a trimer of full-length HDV cDNA cloned in pSVL (GE Healthcare). Hybridization was performed overnight at 37 ℃ and the probe was detected using a monoclonal anti-digoxigenin antibody conjugated with FITC (Roche) and a secondary anti-FITC antibody conjugated with Alexa-488 (Jackson ImmunoResearch Laboratories). Samples were analyzed under a Zeiss META LSM 510 microscope calibrated with multicolor fluorescent beads (Molecular probes). Green fluorescence was detected using a 488 nm Argon laser.

Northern blotting

For Northern blotting, cytoplasmic mRNA was extracted from HuH-7 cells using the Oligotex Direct mRNA Mini kit (Qiagen). For each obtained sample, 10 μg mRNA was separated by formaldehyde agarose gel electrophoresis and transferred to Nylon membranes (Hybond-N, GE Healthcare) using standard protocols[28]. Hybridization was performed using a digoxigenin-11-dUTP (dig-11-dUTP) labeled DNA probe. Plasmid pDM138 was used as template to amplify and label, by asymmetric PCR, a 481 bp region in the ORF of the CAT protein (nucleotide position 109-590). The primers used in PCR reactions were: Fwd 5' GTTCAGCTGGATATTACGGCC 3' and Rev 5' TCACAGACGGCATGATGAAC 3'. Typically, reaction mixtures contained 2 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 0.2 mmol/L dATP, dCTP and dGTP, 0.13 mmol/L dTTP, 0.07 mmol/L dig-11-dUTP (Roche), 0.1 μmol/L forward primer, 1 μmol/L reverse primer, 10 ng template DNA, 2.5 U Taq DNA polymerase (Fermentas), in PCR buffer for a final volume of 50 μL. After amplification and labeling, probes were purified using the GFX PCR DNA kit (GE Healthcare), and used for hybridization.

Hybridization was performed according to standard protocols[28] and the hybridized probe was detected with a monoclonal anti-digoxigenin antibody conjugated with peroxidase (Roche). Membrane development was achieved with the Lumi-light^{PLUS} Western Blotting Kit, Mouse/Rabbit (Roche) under the conditions indicated by the manufacturer.

Real-time PCR

Nuclear and cytoplasmic HuH-7 cell fractions were obtained according to a previously described method[29], and used for isolation of RNA with the NucleoSpin® RNA/protein kit (Macherey-Nagel) following the manufacturer's specifications. The RNA samples were then treated with DNase I using the DNA-free™ kit (Ambion), also ac-

cording to the instructions of the manufacturer, and used as templates for synthesis of cDNA. cDNA synthesis reactions typically contained approximately 5 μg total RNA, 0.2 μg random primers, 2 mmol/L dNTPs, 200 U Revert Aid™ M-MuLV Reverse Transcriptase (Fermentas), and 20 U RNase inhibitor (Fermentas) in a final volume of 20 μL. Reactions were performed at 42 ℃, for 1 h, and the obtained cDNA was finally purified using the GFX PCR DNA and Gel Band purification kit (GE Healthcare).

Real-time PCR experiments were performed essentially as described[30]. The qPCR Core kit for SYBR® Green I (Eurogentec) was used following the specifications of the manufacturer. Reaction mixtures typically contained 3.5 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 200 μmol/L each dNTP, 300 nmol/L each primer, 0.025 U/μL HotGoldStar enzyme, and reaction buffer in a final volume of 20 μL. Reactions were performed in 96-well plates with optical caps in a GeneAmp® 5700 Sequence Detector System (all from Applied Biosystems). The PCR program used for amplification was: 10 min at 95 ℃, 40 cycles with 15 s at 95 ℃ and 1 min at 60 ℃. Each sample was assayed in triplicate and analysed with the GeneAmp® 5700 SDS v1.1 software and Microsoft Excel.

The relative quantification of RNA was performed according to the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method earlier described[31]. The β-2-microglobulin gene (*β2MG*; GenBank accession number NM_004048) was used as reference gene to which all the samples were compared with. The program Primer Express™ (Applied Biosystems) and the bioinformatics tool Oligonucleotide Properties Calculator (http://www.basic.northwestern.edu/biotools/oligocalc.html) were used to design primers for the reference gene and target HDV cDNA sequence (GenBank accession number M21012). Melting temperature, GC content, length, and secondary structure were taken in consideration for primer design. The cDNA sequences were obtained from GenBank database from NCBI. The primers used in these experiments were, respectively: HDV Fwd 5' CAGAGATTCTCCGGCGTTGT 3', Rev 5' CGGTAAAGAGCATTGGAACG 3'; β2MG Fwd 5' GGCTATCCAGCGTACTCCAA 3', Rev 5' TCACACGGCAGGCATACTC 3'.

Western blotting

For western blot, protein extracts were prepared using with the NucleoSpin® RNA/protein kit (Macherey-Nagel) according to the manufacturer's instructions and dissolved in sample buffer. Proteins were separated by electrophoresis on 12%SDS-polyacrylamide gels, and subsequently electroblotted onto nitrocellulose membranes (Schleicher and Schuell) as previously described[32]. Membranes were blocked with 5% low fat milk powder in PBS, and incubated for 1 h with 1 μg/mL of a primary mouse monoclonal antibody anti-GAPDH (Ambion). After washing with 2% low fat milk powder in PBS, membranes were further incubated with a secondary anti-mouse IgG antibody conjugated with horseradish peroxidase (BioRad). After washing, membranes were rinsed with PBS and subsequently developed using the ECL™ Western blotting analysis system (GE Healthcare).

CAT assay

Determination of CAT expression was performed using a commercial enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) kit (Roche). Briefly, 24 h post-transfection HuH-7 cells were washed with ice-cold PBS and incubated with 500 μL lysis buffer for 30 min, at room temperature. After centrifugation, the supernatants were collected, and 200 μL were added to individual wells of the ELISA plate. CAT detection was performed with a polyclonal anti-CAT antibody conjugated with digoxigenin followed by incubation with a monoclonal anti-digoxigenin antibody conjugated with peroxidase (Roche), as indicated by the manufacturer. The concentration of unknown samples was determined from a standard curve constructed from 1:2 serial dilutions of the standards.

To normalize for transfection efficiencies HuH-7 cells were cotransfected with plasmid pSV-β-galactosidase (Promega) and β-galactosidase (β-Gal) expression was monitored using a commercial ELISA kit (Roche). Briefly, 200 μL of the same cell lysis supernatants obtained as above described were loaded onto individual wells of the ELISA plate. The ELISA assay was performed according to the specifications of the manufacturer and β-Gal concentrations were determined from a standard curve obtained from 1:2 serial dilutions of the standards. All assays were performed in triplicate.

RESULTS

HDV gRNA and agRNA are exported to the cytoplasm

It was earlier reported that both HDV gRNA and agRNA are exported to the cytoplasm in HuH-7 cells[15,17]. This export is independent of the presence of HDAgs, and thus it is likely to rely on the direct interaction of the virus RNA with host factors[15]. Furthermore, Northern blot analysis of HuH-7 transfected cells seemed to indicate that the relative amounts of gRNA and agRNA in the nucleus and cytoplasm remained nearly equimolar up to 28 h after transfection[17].

In order to confirm that HDV agRNA is efficiently exported to the cytoplasm of HuH-7 cells we made use of plasmid pDL481[18], which codes exclusively for HDV agRNA, in transfection experiments. Plasmid pDL542[18], which codes exclusively for gRNA, was used in parallel experiments. Preliminary *in situ* hybridization analysis confirmed that both HDV gRNA and agRNA can be detected in the nuclear and cytoplasmic compartments of HuH-7 cells (Figure 1) 24 h post-transfection.

Since this approach did not allow us to determine if gRNA and agRNA are exported to the cytoplasm with similar efficiency with decided to quantify, by Real-time PCR, the amounts of both molecules in the nuclear and cytoplasmic compartments. To do this, HuH-7 cells were transfected with plasmids pDL481 and pDL542 respectively. After 24 h incubation, RNA samples were obtained

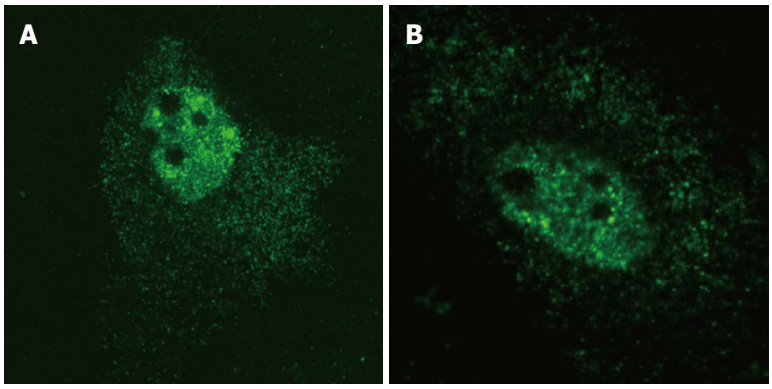


Figure 1 Intracellular localization of hepatitis delta virus gRNA (A) and agRNA (B). HuH-7 cells were transfected with plasmids pDL542 and pDL481, respectively, and virus RNA was detected by *in situ* hybridization with a dig-11-dUTP labeled probe. Both gRNA and agRNA can be observed in the nucleus and cytoplasm (green).

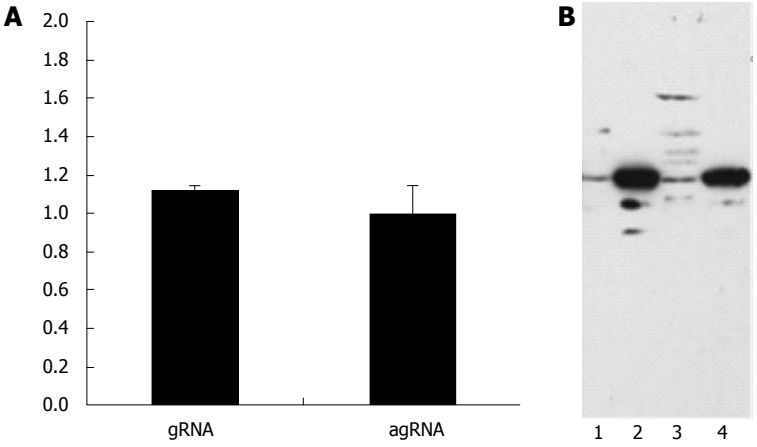


Figure 2 Nucleo-cytoplasmic distribution of hepatitis delta virus gRNA and agRNA. HuH-7 cells were trasnfected with plasmids pDL542 and pDL481, respectively. A: The relative quantification of HDV RNA was performed by real time-polymerase chain reaction using the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method. Results are presented as the cytoplasmic /nuclear ratio (C/N) and correspond to the mean of three independent experiments. Bars indicate the standard deviation; B: Western blotting analysis of nuclear and cytoplasmic HuH-7 cell protein fractions. Equivalent amounts of nuclear (lanes 1 and 3) and cytoplasmic (lanes 2 and 4) protein fractions used for quantification of gRNA (lanes 1 and 2) and agRNA (lanes 3 and 4) were separated in 12% SDS-PAGE gels. The possible contamination of nuclear fractions was monitored by using an anti-GAPDH antibody.

from nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions for subsequent use in Real-time qPCR experiments. The possible cross contamination of nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions was monitored by Western blotting using an anti-GADPH antibody (Figure 2B). The reference gene in qPCR experiments was β-2-microglobulin (Genbank accession number P61769).The obtained results are displayed, as the cytoplasm to nuclear ratio of gRNA and agRNA, respectively, in Figure 2A. The HDV agRNA was found to be distributed in equimolar amounts between the nucleus and cytoplasm of HuH-7 cells 24 h after transfection. At the same time point the HDV gRNA was found in slightly higher amounts in the cytoplasm. These results are consistent with previously reported data and clearly indicate that the virus agRNA is efficiently exported to the cytoplasm.

Identifying nuclear export elements in HDV genomic and antigenomic RNA

After establishing that HDV gRNA and agRNA are exported to the cytoplasm, in the absence of HDAgs, with similar efficiency, until at least 24 h after transfection, we decided to investigate the eventual presence of a cis-acting nuclear export element in both RNA molecules. To do this, we made use of plasmid pDM138[25,26]. This plasmid codes for the second half of the HIV-1/SF2 genome under the control of the SV40 promoter. The DNA sequence coding for the CAT gene was inserted in the HIV-1 envelope gene intron, and the RRE was substituted by a linker containing a unique *Cla* I restriction site. Nuclear export of mRNAs derived from pDM138, and subsequent expression of the reporter CAT protein, is thus dependent on the insertion of a functional transport element in the *Cla* I restriction site.

Initially, we amplified by PCR 20 cDNA fragments covering the entire HDV genome (10 fragments) and antigenome (also 10 fragments). The size of the obtained fragments ranged from 167 to 337 nt and the respective location in the genome is displayed in Table 1. Each fragment was subsequently cloned in the unique *Cla* I site of plasmid pDM138 in both sense and antisense orientations. We thus obtained 20 different constructs which, after being sequenced to confirm the correct insertion and orientation, were used to transfect HuH-7 cells. As positive and negative controls in these experiments we used plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-), respectively. These plasmids contain the HBV post-transcriptional regulatory element, cloned in sense and antisense orientations, respectively[27]. In all experiments, plasmid pSV-β-Gal (Promega) was used to cotransfect HuH-7 cells in order to normalize for transfection efficiencies. Twenty four hours after transfection, total protein extracts were prepared and the production of CAT and β-Gal was determined by ELISA. Figure 3 displays the obtained results.

When analyzing gRNA all the tested sequences were found to be unable to promote the export of CAT mRNAs with efficiency as high as that determined for the

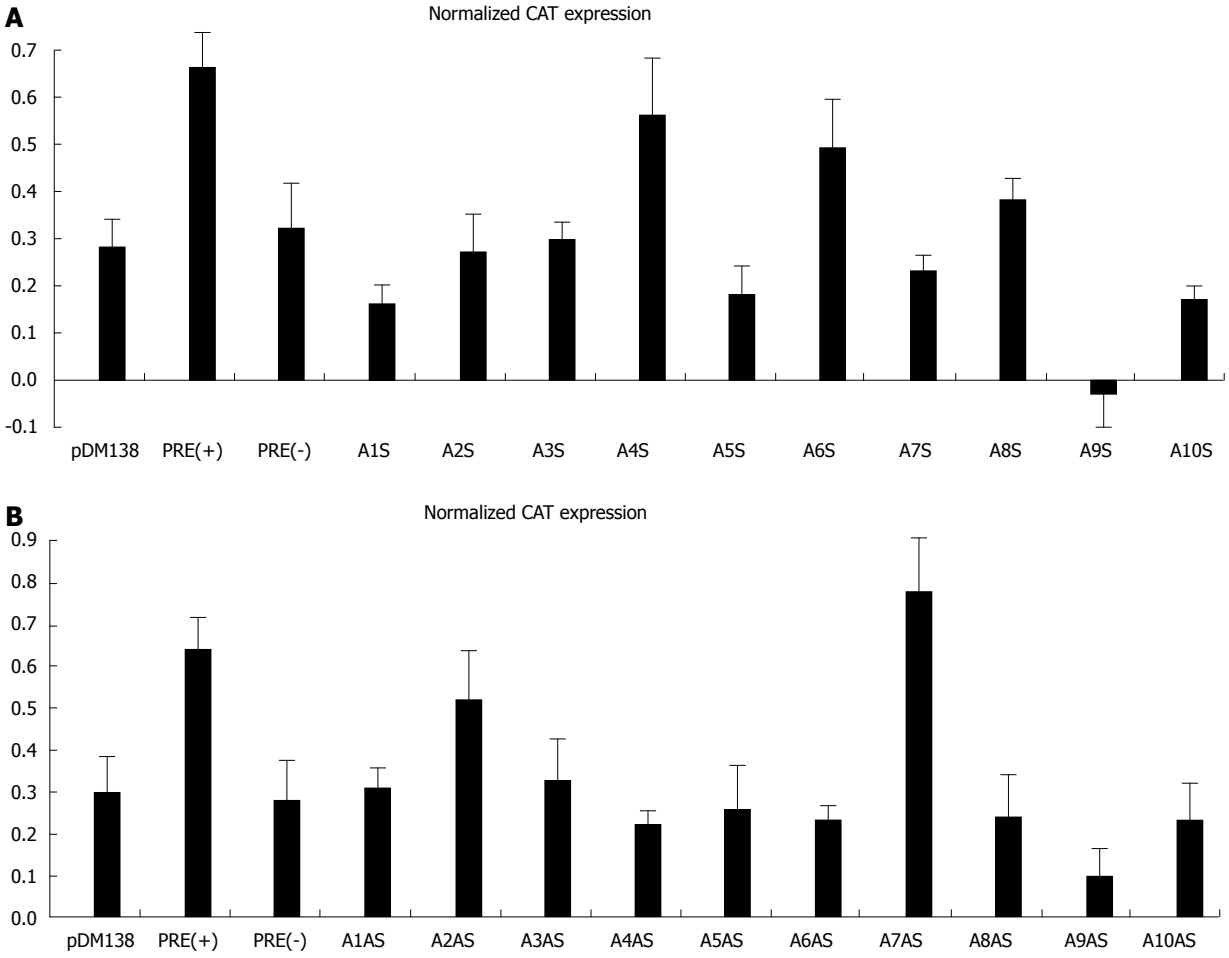


Figure 3 Analysis of chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase expression in HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmids pDM138, pDM138 (PRE+), pDM138 (PRE-), pDM138 A1S-pDM138 A10S (A), and pDM138 A1AS-pDM138 A10AS (B). In order to normalize for transfection efficiency, cells were co-transfected with plasmid pSV-β-Gal (Promega). Chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase (CAT) and β-Gal expression levels were determined by ELISA. Normalization of CAT expression levels was calculated by dividing the values obtained for the CAT protein by the values obtained for the β-Gal protein. The results correspond to the mean of three independent experiments. Bars represent the standard deviation.

positive pDM138-PRE(+) control. Nevertheless, two of the analyzed gRNA sequences, corresponding to nucleotides 266-489 and 584-920 (A4S, and A6S, respectively), showed an export-promoting ability slightly lower than the positive control albeit clearly higher than the negative control pDM138-PRE(-).

The analysis of agRNA coding sequences, however, showed that in HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmid pDM138-A7AS, which contains the HDV agRNA sequence corresponding to nucleotides 214-417, the expression levels of the reporter CAT protein are higher than those detected for the pDM138-PRE(+) positive control.

With the exception of A7AS and A2AS sequences, all the remaining tested constructs were found to be unable to promote the export of heterologous intron-containing mRNAs since the detected CAT expression levels were comparable or even lower than those observed in negative pDM138-PRE(-) transfected HuH-7 cell controls. The CAT expression values obtained for the A2AS sequence, however, were found to be intermediate between those obtained for the positive pDM138-PRE(+) and negative pDM138-PRE(-) controls.

According to what has been previously reported for the HBV PRE[27], the export promoting activity of the identified A7AS sequence in the HDV antigenome is dependent on its orientation relative to the ORF of the reporter gene. In fact, when cloned in opposite orientation (A7S), the A7AS sequence (nt 214-417) was not functional, since the observed CAT expression levels were similar to those found for the pDM138-PRE(-) negative control (data not shown).

Since the quantification of CAT expression levels by ELISA represents an indirect approach for the determination of intron-containing mRNAs accumulation in the cytoplasm, we decided to investigate the presence of CAT mRNAs in cytoplasmic fractions, after transfection, by Northern blot. To do this, HuH-7 cells were transfected with plasmid pDM138-A7AS or plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) pDM138-A9AS as positive and negative controls, respectively, and after 24 h incubation total and cytoplasmic fractions were prepared and used for further mRNA extraction. After electrophoresis, the mRNA samples were transferred to nylon membranes, and a single-stranded dig-11-dUTP labeled DNA probe,

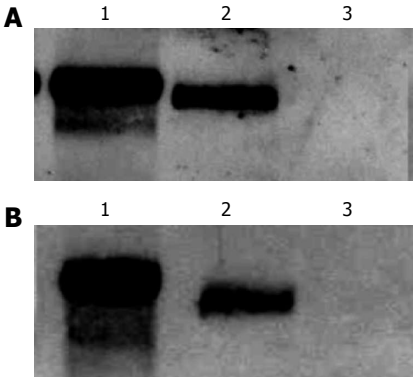


Figure 4 Northern blotting analysis of reporter chloranphenicol acetyltransferase mRNA in total (A) and cytoplasmic (B) fractions of HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmids pDM138 (PRE+), pDM138 A7AS, and pDM138 A9AS (lanes 1, 2 and 3 respectively). Hybridization was performed using a dig-11-dUTP labeled probe. A peroxidase conjugated anti-digoxigenin antibody was used to detect the hybridized probe.

which specifically hybridizes with CAT mRNA, was used in Northern blot assays. As expected, it was possible to detect the presence of CAT mRNA in cytoplasmic fractions of pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-A7AS transfected HuH-7 cells but not in pDM138-A9AS transfected cells (Figure 4).

The absence in Northern blot experiments of detected CAT mRNA in total and cytoplasmic fractions of pDM138-A9AS transfected cells is compatible with the data obtained by ELISA. The A9AS sequence includes the agRNA autocatalytic ribozyme domain. It is, thus, possible that CAT mRNAs that include the A9AS sequence are degraded in the nucleus before export to the cytoplasm. In conclusion, these results indicate that the HDV agRNA sequence located between nucleotides 214-417 can efficiently promote the export of heterologous intron-less RNAs. Moreover, the increase in CAT expression levels observed in pDM138-A7AS transfected cells is a consequence of the export and accumulation of the respective reporter mRNAs in the cytoplasm.

Analysis of the structure of the nuclear export element in agRNA

Having established that the HDV agRNA sequence corresponding to nucleotides 214-417 (A7AS) is able to promote the nuclear export of heterologous intron-containing RNAs, we next decided to analyze it in more detail. First, we generated by PCR eight truncated forms of the A7AS motif and cloned them in the unique *Cla* I site of plasmid pDM138. These truncated forms correspond to the A7AS sequence from which several nucleotides were removed from the 5' and 3' ends. The constructs were subsequently used to transfect HuH-7 cells, and after 24 h CAT expression was determined by ELISA. The obtained CAT expression values were normalized for transfection efficiency by cotransfection with plasmid pSV-β-Gal followed by determination of β-Gal expression. The obtained results allowed us to conclude that the agRNA sequences comprised between nucleotides 214-322, 214-379, 214-403, 244-403, and 244-417 induce an increase in CAT expression comparable to the observed for the HBV PRE(+) positive control (Figure 5) suggesting that these sequences are sufficient to promote export of heterologous RNAs.

Additionally, the first 30 nucleotides localized 3' in the A7AS sequence seem not to be crucial to promote nuclear export since its deletion did not significantly affect the detected amounts of CAT expression. All the remaining analyzed sequences, 269-417, 314-417, and 269-379 were found to be considerably less efficient in promoting nuclear export.

Analysis of the NEE function in the context of the full-length agRNA

The identified NEE is localized in the central region of the rod-like full-length agRNA molecule. It could be possible that the complementary RNA sequence that pairs with the NEE in the antigenome is possibly also involved in the nuclear export of the agRNA. To test this hypothesis we constructed three deletion mutants of plasmid pDL481, which codes for the complete HDV agRNA molecule: pDL481ΔNEE in which the NEE was deleted (nt 214-417), pDL481Δδ in which the complementary to the NEE sequence was deleted (nt 1179-1385), and pDL481ΔNEEδ which does not contain the NEE and the corresponding complementary sequence (nt 214-417 and 1179-1385, respectively).

Plasmids pDL542, pDL481, and the obtained deletion constructs were used to transfect HuH-7 cells. Twenty four hours post-transfection, nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions were prepared and the RNAs derived from pDL542, pDL481, pDL481ΔNEE, pDL481Δδ, and pDL481ΔNEEδ, respectively, were quantified by qRT-PCR. Possible cross contaminations of nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions were monitored by western blot using an anti-GAPDH antibody as described before. The obtained results confirmed that both gRNA and agRNA are efficiently exported to the cytoplasm 24 h post-transfection. Additionally, the RNA derived from plasmid pDL481Δδ, in which the sequence coding for the region complementary to the NEE was deleted, showed to be efficiently exported (Figure 6). In contrast, the RNAs coded by plasmids pDL481ΔNEEδ and pDL481ΔNEE were mostly retained in the nucleus. Only about 40% of the total amount of these RNAs was found in the cytoplasm of transfected cells when compared to wt pDL481. These results indicate that the complementary to the NEE sequence in the HDV antigenome (nt 1179-1385) is not involved in nuclear export since its deletion did not reduce the amounts of agRNA detected in the cytoplasm.

HDV agRNA export is sensitive to leptomycin B

Export of cellular RNAs is accomplished using different pathways which involve the participation of distinct transport receptors. Typical examples include the export of mRNAs, which is mediated by members of NXF family of proteins, namely the TAP protein, and the

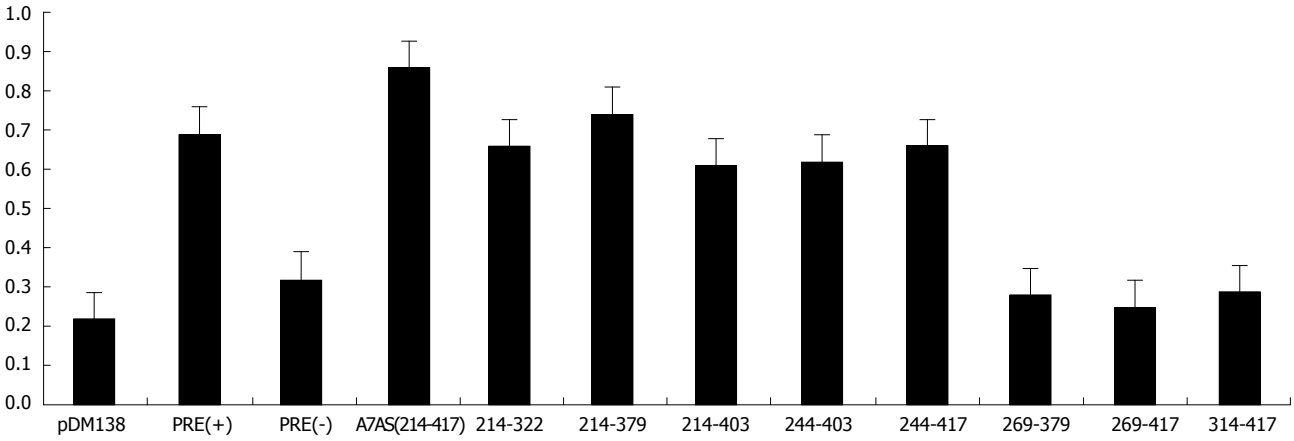


Figure 5 Analysis of chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase expression in HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmids pDM138, pDM138 (PRE+), pDM138 (PRE-), pDM138 A7AS (214-417), pDM138-314-417, pDM138-214-322, pDM138-269-379, pDM138-244-379, pDM138-269-417, pDM138-214-403, pDM138-244-403, and pDM138-244-417. Chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase (CAT) and β-Gal expression levels were determined by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. The CAT expression values were normalized for transfection efficiency by transfecting HuH-7 cells with plasmid pSV-β-Gal (Promega) followed by determination of β-Gal expression. CAT expression values were divided by the corresponding β-Gal expression values, and the displayed results correspond to the mean of three independent experiments.

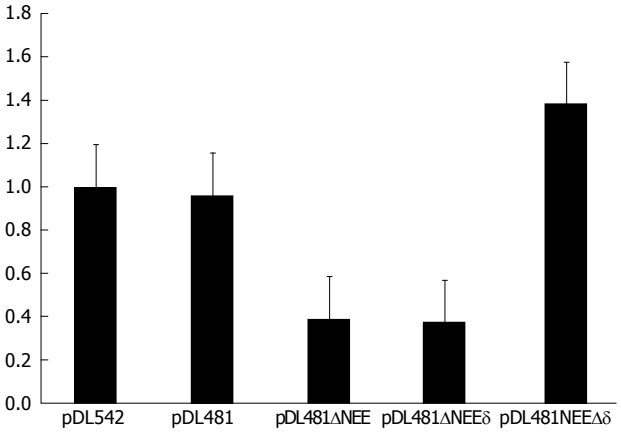


Figure 6 Nucleo-cytoplasmic distribution of hepatitis delta virus RNA in HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmids pDL481, pDl542, pDL481ΔNEE, pDL481ΔNEEδ, and pDL481Δδ. The RNA in nuclear and cytoplasmic cell fractions was determined by real time-polymerase chain reaction using the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method. Results are presented as the cytoplasmic /nuclear ratio (C/N) and correspond to the mean of three independent experiments. Bars indicate the standard deviation.

export of UsnRNAs which is mediated by the exportin CRM1[20]. This specific export pathway can be inhibited in the presence of leptomycin B (LMB)[33]. In order to investigate whether HDV agRNA is exported to the cytoplasm using the pathway mediated by CRM1, we decided to analyze the effect of LMB on CAT protein expression in pDM138-A7AS transfected HuH-7 cells. To do this, 10 nmol/L LMB was added to the culture medium 18 h after transfection, and cells were further incubated for 6 h. Total protein extracts were then prepared and used to determine the concentration of CAT by ELISA. As negative control pDM138-PRE(+) transfected HuH-7 cells were used since it was previously reported that export of HBV PRE(+) is not sensitive to LMB[23,34]. Figure 7 displays the obtained results. As expected, in the absence of LMB both the HDV agRNA A7AS and HBV PRE(+) sequences promote the export of CAT mRNA thus confirming our previous data. In the presence of LMB the export capacity of the HBV PRE(+) sequence is not affected, and we could detect a slight increase in CAT expression. This observation is in accordance with the data obtained by others when measuring CAT enzyme activity in similar experiments[34]. In contrast, the export promoting activity of the HDV agRNA A7AS sequence was found to be affected in the presence of LMB. In fact, we observed a 60% reduction in CAT production when HuH-7 cells were transfected with pDM138-A7AS in the presence of 10 nmol/L LMB. These results seem to indicate that the nuclear export mediated by the A7As agRNA sequence is dependent, at least partially, on CRM1 activity and suggest the involvement of this cellular protein in HDV agRNA export.

DISCUSSION

Although HDV RNA replication occurs in the nucleus of liver cells, virus packaging takes place in the cytoplasm where HDV RNPs meet HBsAgs to assemble newly synthesized virions. Noteworthy, only gRNA molecules were found, until now, to be packaged into mature hepatitis delta virions. This restriction could be due to a possible impairment of export of agRNA molecules to the cytoplasm. However, agRNA was found in HDV virus-like particles secreted by cells expressing agRNA, L-HDAg, and HBsAgs[18].

A previous work showed that HDV RNPs are exported to the cytoplasm independent of the presence of HBsAgs[15]. Additionally, it was demonstrated that export of HDV RNPs is not mediated by a putative nuclear export signal present in delta antigens but is rather promoted by cis elements in virus RNA. In fact, both HDV gRNA and agRNA are exported to the cytoplasm in the absence of

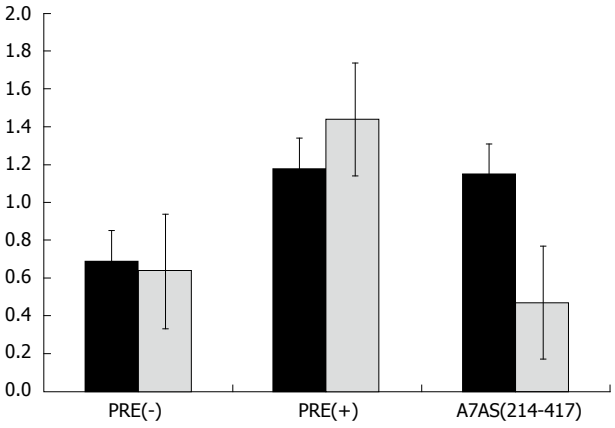


Figure 7 Analysis of chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase expression in HuH-7 cells transfected with plasmids pDM138 (PRE-), pDM138 (PRE+), and pDM138 A7AS, in the absence (black columns) and presence of 10 nmol/L leptomycin B (grey columns). In order to normalize for transfection efficiency, cells were co-transfected with plasmid pSV-β-Gal (Promega). Chloranphenicol acetyl-transferase (CAT) and β-Gal expression levels were determined by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay. Normalization of CAT expression levels was calculated by dividing the values obtained for the CAT protein by the values obtained for the β-Gal protein. The results correspond to the mean of three independent experiments. Bars represent the standard deviation.

HDAgs, an observation also reported by Macnaughton *et al*[17].

Our first approach was designed to confirm that both HDV genomic and antigenomic RNA molecules are exported to the cytoplasm of HuH-7 cells. Using plasmids pDL542 and pDL481 which express exclusively HDV gRNA and agRNA, respectively, we were able to detect both molecules, by *in situ* hybridization, in the nuclear and cytoplasmic compartments of HuH-7 transfected cells. Furthermore, nuclear export of HDV gRNA and agRNA seems to occur with the same efficiency since similar amounts of genomic and antigenomic RNA molecules could be detected, by real time-PCR, in the nuclear and cytoplasmic compartments of HuH-7 cells transiently transfected with plasmids pDL542 and pDL481. The finding that both genomic and antigenomic HDV RNA molecules are exported with similar efficiency suggests a possible biological function associated with the presence of HDV agRNA in the cytoplasm. However, further research is mandatory to clarify the biological significance of these findings.

The above described observations are suggestive of a possible presence of cis-acting nuclear export elements in HDV RNA, both genomic and antigenomic. In an attempt to identify putative cis elements in the HDV gRNA and agRNA capable of mediating the export to the cytoplasm, we used a well characterized CAT reporter system previously used by others to investigate the role of the HBV PRE in export of intronless mRNAs[27]. This system is based on plasmid pDM138 which was generated in order to contain the second half of HIV-1 cDNA under the control of the SV40 promoter[25,26]. This vector was further engineered in order to remove the initiation codons for the Rev and Env proteins, to include the cDNA sequence coding for the CAT protein, and to substitute the HIV-1 RRE sequence by a linker containing a *Cla* I restriction site. After transcription, an mRNA containing the ORF for the CAT protein inserted in the intron of the HIV-1 Env proteins is produced. As positive and negative controls we used plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-), respectively. These plasmids contain the HBV post-transcriptional regulatory element (PRE) inserted in the unique *Cla* I site of pDM138, in sense and antisense orientations, respectively[27]. We cloned several cDNA fragments, covering the entire HDV gRNA and agRNA, in plasmid pDM138. After transfection of HuH-7 cells, CAT production was determined by ELISA. This approach did not allow identifying unequivocally a nuclear export element in gRNA. Although two gRNA fragments corresponding to nucleotides 266-489 and 584-920, (A4S and A6S, respectively) were found to promote export of CAT mRNAs, the efficiency was in all experiments lower than the determined for the positive control pDM138-PRE(+). This could be possibly due to the lack of crucial nucleotides in the ends of the analyzed sequences. Clearly, additional experiments are mandatory to clarify this point.

However, we were able to identify a region (A7AS) in the HDV agRNA, located between positions 214-417, which promoted the export of CAT mRNA with slightly higher efficiency than that observed for the pDM138-PRE(+) positive control. This result was further confirmed by Northern blot analysis of total and cytoplasmic mRNAs prepared from pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138A7AS transfected HuH-7 cells. Moreover, when inserted in the opposite orientation in pDM138, the fragment A7AS was not able to mediate export of CAT mRNAs (data not shown). All the other fragments tested were not capable of promoting export of CAT mRNA at levels comparable to those observed for the pDM138-PRE(+) positive control. In particular, the fragment A9AS which includes the HDV RNA ribozyme sequence displayed a CAT mRNA export capacity significantly lower than the calculated for the negative control. This may be a consequence of instability of the produced mRNA molecules due to the self-cleavage activity of the HDV ribozyme. Besides the A7AS sequence, the only exception to the low export promoting capacity of the analyzed fragments, concerns a cDNA fragment corresponding to positions 1301-1514 in the antigenome (A2AS). This agRNA fragment was able to promote CAT mRNA export with efficiency higher than the negative control but still lower than the determined for the positive control. This fragment, A2AS, includes part of the HDAg ORF. This observation may allow speculating about a possible presence of a cis element in the HDV mRNA involved in export to the cytoplasm. Huang and Carmichael have previously shown that export on intronless histone H2a mRNAs is mediated by a signal present in the coding region[35]. However, further experiments are needed to clarify the possible involvement of a similar signal in export of HDAg mRNA.

In an attempt to analyze in more detail the A7AS sequence in the HDV agRNA we generated, by PCR, eight truncated forms of this motif which were subsequently cloned in pDM138 and used in transfection experiments to determine CAT expression by ELISA. These truncated forms corresponded to nucleotides 314-417, 269-417, 244-417, 244-403, 214-403, 269-379, 214-379, and 214-322. The obtained results showed that deletion of the first 30 nucleotides in the 5' end of the A7AS sequence did not significantly affect the export promoting capacity. However, deletion of the first 55 nucleotides in the 5' end results in loss of the export capacity of the A7AS sequence. In contrast, deletions in the 3' end of the A7AS motif, did not significantly affect the ability to promote nuclear export. In fact, removal of as much as the first 95 nucleotides in the 3' end still resulted in the production of the CAT protein at intermediate levels between the negative and positive controls. Noteworthy, all the analyzed A7AS truncated forms were less efficient in promoting RNA export when compared to the wild-type sequence.

However, analysis of the secondary structure of the entire agRNA molecule did not allow predicting a similar branched structure in the region where the A7AS motif is located. In order to clarify a possible role of a, at least partially, complementary to the A7AS motif sequence in the antigenome, in nuclear export, we constructed deletion mutants of plasmid pDL481. These constructs were designed as follows: pDL481ΔNEE lacks the nuclear export element (A7AS sequence), pDL481Δδ lacks the complementary to the NEE sequence in the antigenome, and pDL481ΔNEEδ lacks both the NEE and the respective complementary sequence. After transfection of HuH-7 cells, the relative amounts of agRNA in nuclear and cytoplasmic fractions were determined by qRT-PCR. The obtained results showed that deletion of the NEE (pDL481ΔNEE) reduces export of agRNA by 60% when compared with wt pDL481. Additionally, deletion of both the NEE and the respective complementary sequence (pDL481ΔNEEδ) results in a similar reduction (62%) of detected cytoplasmic RNA. Finally, deletion of only the complementary to the NEE sequence did not impair the capacity of the agRNA to be exported to the cytoplasm. Taken together, these results indicate that the identified NEE is important to promote nuclear export of the HDV antigenome, and that export efficiency is not diminished by deletion of the respective putative complementary sequence.

Nuclear export of host and virus RNAs may be promoted by several cellular factors that participate in distinct pathways. One of these pathways is mediated by the exportin CRM1 which belongs to the kariopherin-β family of proteins. CRM1 mediates the export of the majority of proteins containing a nuclear export signal (NES) and of two classes of cellular non-coding RNAS, rRNAs and UsnRNAs[21]. The CRM1 export pathway may be specifically inhibited in the presence of LMB which binds to a cysteine residue in the central region of the protein[33]. In order to investigate a possible involvement of CRM 1 in export of HDV agRNA we used LMB to inhibit this pathway in pDM138-A7AS transfected HuH-7 cells. As positive and negative controls we used plasmids pDM138-PRE(+) and pDM138-PRE(-), respectively, since export of the HBV PRE was previously reported to be insensitive to LMB. The obtained results showed that RNA export mediated by the NEE of HDV agRNA is partially inhibited in the presence of LMB, displaying a 50% reduction of CAT expression when compared with the parental pDM138 vector. This suggests an involvement of the CRM1 protein in export of HDV agRNA. However, since CRM1 binds to RNA molecules indirectly through interaction with other NES-containing proteins this implies the participation of other not yet identified host factors in HDV agRNA export. Not surprisingly, using coimmunoprecipitation assays we couldn't detect complexes between HDV RNPs and CRM1 (our unpublished data).

In this work we attempted to identify nuclear export elements present HDV gRNA and agRNA. Although two regions in gRNA were found to be able to promote export of heterologous RNAs, an unequivocal NEE could not be identified in gRNA. However, it was possible to identify a NEE in HDV agRNA located in positions 214-417. This cis element is not only capable of promoting the nuclear export of heterologous intronless RNAs but is also involved in export of HDV antigenomes. Analysis of the export capacity of several truncated forms of the NEE showed that the two mini-helices seem to play a crucial role in mediating RNA export. Cytoplasmic export of HDV agRNA was found to be sensitive to leptomycin B suggesting a possible involvement of a CRM1 mediated pathway.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Dr. Tristram Parslow (Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, United States) for kindly providing plasmid pDM138, Dr. Benedict Yen (University of California, San Francisco, United States) for the generous gift of plasmids pDM138-PRE(-) and pDM138-PRE(+), and Dr. John Taylor (Fox Chase Cancer Center, Philadelphia, United States) for plasmid pDL481.

COMMENTS

Background

Hepatitis delta virus (HDV) is a satellite of hepatitis B virus (HBV). The two viruses share the same envelope which consists of HBV surface antigens (HBsAg). HBsAgs are coded exclusively by the HBV genome and are localized in the cytoplasm of infected cells. In contrast HDV replicates in the nucleus and assembly of mature virions takes place in the cytoplasm. Accordingly, HDV RNPs need to be exported to the cytoplasm and this process is thought to be mediated by cis-elements present in the virus RNA.

Research frontiers

Export of RNA molecules to the cytoplasm depends on the interaction of cellular transport receptors with specific nucleotide sequences. These sequences were previously studied in simple and complex retroviruses as well as in HBV. The cellular proteins and pathways involved in virus RNA export were also identi-

fied. Here, the research hotspot is the identification of nucleotide sequences in HDV RNA capable of promoting export of heterologous RNAs and thus being able to function as nuclear export elements.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This is the first report describing a comprehensive analysis of HDV genomic and antigenomic RNA sequences aiming to identify cis-elements capable of promoting export to the cytoplasm. Two possible regions corresponding to nucleotides 266-489 and 584-920, respectively, were identified in HDV genomic RNA. In addition, analysis of HDV antigenomic RNA sequences allowed finding a nuclear export element in positions 214-417. Furthermore, export mediated by the nuclear export element of HDV antigenomic RNA was found to be sensitive to leptomycin B suggesting a possible role of the cellular protein CRM1 in this transport pathway.

Applications

The results herein described may contribute to a better understanding of an essential step in the HDV replication cycle-the export of virus RNPs to the cytoplasm where they interact with HBsAgs in order to assemble new virions.

Terminology

Nuclear export element is an RNA sequence capable to interact with cellular proteins that promote export from the nucleus to the cytoplasm.

Peer review

The paper is of good quality as research article, its english is perfect and its scientific content is original.

REFERENCES

1 **Smedile A**, Rizzetto M. HDV: thirty years later. *Dig Liver Dis* 2011; **43** Suppl 1: S15-S18 [PMID: 21195366 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(10)60687-1]

2 **Govindarajan S**, Chin KP, Redeker AG, Peters RL. Fulminant B viral hepatitis: role of delta agent. *Gastroenterology* 1984; **86**: 1417-1420 [PMID: 6714570]

3 **Jacobson IM**, Dienstag JL, Werner BG, Brettler DB, Levine PH, Mushahwar IK. Epidemiology and clinical impact of hepatitis D virus (delta) infection. *Hepatology* 1985; **5**: 188-191 [PMID: 3979950 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840050205]

4 **Smedile A**, Rizzetto M, Gerin JL. Advances in hepatitis D virus biology and disease. *Prog Liver Dis* 1994; **12**: 157-175 [PMID: 7746872]

5 **Taylor JM**. Replication of human hepatitis delta virus: recent developments. *Trends Microbiol* 2003; **11**: 185-190 [PMID: 12706997 DOI: 10.1016/S0966-842X(03)00045-3]

6 **Gerin JL,** Casey JL, Purcell RH. Hepatitis delta virus. In: Knipe DM, Howley PM, editors. Fields Virology. 4th edition. Philadelphia, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001: chapter 88

7 **Chang J**, Nie X, Chang HE, Han Z, Taylor J. Transcription of hepatitis delta virus RNA by RNA polymerase II. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 1118-1127 [PMID: 18032511 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01758-07]

8 **Sharmeen L**, Kuo MY, Taylor J. Self-ligating RNA sequences on the antigenome of human hepatitis delta virus. *J Virol* 1989; **63**: 1428-1430 [PMID: 2915386]

9 **Moraleda G**, Taylor J. Host RNA polymerase requirements for transcription of the human hepatitis delta virus genome. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 10161-10169 [PMID: 11581384 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.21.10161-10169.2001]

10 **Casey JL**, Gerin JL. Hepatitis D virus RNA editing: specific modification of adenosine in the antigenomic RNA. *J Virol* 1995; **69**: 7593-7600 [PMID: 7494266]

11 **Chang J**, Gudima SO, Tarn C, Nie X, Taylor JM. Development of a novel system to study hepatitis delta virus genome replication. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 8182-8188 [PMID: 15956563 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.13.8182-8188.2005]

12 **Jeng KS**, Su PY, Lai MM. Hepatitis delta antigens enhance the ribozyme activities of hepatitis delta virus RNA in vivo. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 4205-4209 [PMID: 8676440]

13 **Chang FL**, Chen PJ, Tu SJ, Wang CJ, Chen DS. The large form of hepatitis delta antigen is crucial for assembly of hepatitis delta virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1991; **88**: 8490-8494 [PMID: 1924308 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.88.19.8490]

14 **Glenn JS**, Watson JA, Havel CM, White JM. Identification of a prenylation site in delta virus large antigen. *Science* 1992; **256**: 1331-1333 [PMID: 1598578 DOI: 10.1126/science.1598578]

15 **Tavanez JP**, Cunha C, Silva MC, David E, Monjardino J, Carmo-Fonseca M. Hepatitis delta virus ribonucleoproteins shuttle between the nucleus and the cytoplasm. *RNA* 2002; **8**: 637-646 [PMID: 12022230 DOI: 10.1017/S1355838202026432]

16 **Chou HC**, Hsieh TY, Sheu GT, Lai MM. Hepatitis delta antigen mediates the nuclear import of hepatitis delta virus RNA. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 3684-3690 [PMID: 9557649]

17 **Macnaughton TB**, Lai MM. Genomic but not antigenomic hepatitis delta virus RNA is preferentially exported from the nucleus immediately after synthesis and processing. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 3928-3935 [PMID: 11907232 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.76.8.3928-3935.2002]

18 **Lazinski DW**, Taylor JM. Expression of hepatitis delta virus RNA deletions: cis and trans requirements for self-cleavage, ligation, and RNA packaging. *J Virol* 1994; **68**: 2879-2888 [PMID: 8151758]

19 **Grüter P**, Tabernero C, von Kobbe C, Schmitt C, Saavedra C, Bachi A, Wilm M, Felber BK, Izaurralde E. TAP, the human homolog of Mex67p, mediates CTE-dependent RNA export from the nucleus. *Mol Cell* 1998; **1**: 649-659 [PMID: 9660949 DOI: 10.1016/S1097-2765(00)80065-9]

20 **Izaurralde E**. A novel family of nuclear transport receptors mediates the export of messenger RNA to the cytoplasm. *Eur J Cell Biol* 2002; **81**: 577-584 [PMID: 12498157 DOI: 10.1078/0171-9335-00273]

21 **Cullen BR**. Nuclear RNA export. *J Cell Sci* 2003; **116**: 587-597 [PMID: 12538759 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.00268]

22 **Fornerod M**, Ohno M, Yoshida M, Mattaj IW. CRM1 is an export receptor for leucine-rich nuclear export signals. *Cell* 1997; **90**: 1051-1060 [PMID: 9323133 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80371-2]

23 **Zang WQ**, Yen TS. Distinct export pathway utilized by the hepatitis B virus posttranscriptional regulatory element. *Virology* 1999; **259**: 299-304 [PMID: 10388654 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1999.9777]

24 **Paca RE**, Ogert RA, Hibbert CS, Izaurralde E, Beemon KL. Rous sarcoma virus DR posttranscriptional elements use a novel RNA export pathway. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 9507-9514 [PMID: 11000220 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.20.9507-9514.2000]

25 **Hope TJ**, Huang XJ, McDonald D, Parslow TG. Steroid-receptor fusion of the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 Rev transactivator: mapping cryptic functions of the arginine-rich motif. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1990; **87**: 7787-7791 [PMID: 2217212 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.87.19.7787]

26 **Huang XJ**, Hope TJ, Bond BL, McDonald D, Grahl K, Parslow TG. Minimal Rev-response element for type 1 human immunodeficiency virus. *J Virol* 1991; **65**: 2131-2134 [PMID: 2002556]

27 **Huang ZM**, Yen TS. Role of the hepatitis B virus posttranscriptional regulatory element in export of intronless transcripts. *Mol Cell Biol* 1995; **15**: 3864-3869 [PMID: 7791793]

28 **Sambrook J,** Fritsch EF, Maniatis T. Molecular cloning, a laboratory manual. New York: Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1989: 9-14

29 **Wang Y**, Zhu W, Levy DE. Nuclear and cytoplasmic mRNA quantification by SYBR green based real-time RT-PCR. *Methods* 2006; **39**: 356-362 [PMID: 16893657 DOI: 10.1016/j.ymeth.2006.06.010]

30 **Mota S**, Mendes M, Penque D, Coelho AV, Cunha C. Changes in the proteome of Huh7 cells induced by transient expression of hepatitis D virus RNA and antigens. *J Proteomics* 2008; **71**: 71-79 [PMID: 18541475 DOI: 10.1016/j.jprot.2007.12.002]

31 **Livak KJ**, Schmittgen TD. Analysis of relative gene expression data using real-time quantitative PCR and the 2(-Delta Delta C(T)) Method. *Methods* 2001; **25**: 402-408 [PMID: 11846609 DOI: 10.1006/meth.2001.1262]
32 **Cunha C**, Monjardino J, Cheng D, Krause S, Carmo-Fonseca M. Localization of hepatitis delta virus RNA in the nucleus of human cells. *RNA* 1998; **4**: 680-693 [PMID: 9622127 DOI: 10.1017/S135583829898013X]
33 **Kudo N**, Matsumori N, Taoka H, Fujiwara D, Schreiner EP, Wolff B, Yoshida M, Horinouchi S. Leptomycin B inactivates CRM1/exportin 1 by covalent modification at a cysteine residue in the central conserved region. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999; **96**: 9112-9117 [PMID: 10430904 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.96.16.9112]
34 **Otero GC**, Harris ME, Donello JE, Hope TJ. Leptomycin B inhibits equine infectious anemia virus Rev and feline immunodeficiency virus rev function but not the function of the hepatitis B virus posttranscriptional regulatory element. *J Virol* 1998; **72**: 7593-7597 [PMID: 9696859]
35 **Huang Y**, Carmichael GG. The mouse histone H2a gene contains a small element that facilitates cytoplasmic accumulation of intronless gene transcripts and of unspliced HIV-1-related mRNAs. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 10104-10109 [PMID: 9294170 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.19.10104]

P- Reviewer Kamal SA **S- Editor** Zhai HH
L- Editor A **E- Editor** Lu YJ

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
wjv@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.136

World J Virol 2013 August 12; 2(3): 136-138
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

Identification of novel silent HIV propagation routes in Pakistan

Umar Saeed, Yasir Waheed, Sobia Manzoor, Muhammad Ashraf

Umar Saeed, Yasir Waheed, Sobia Manzoor, Muhammad Ashraf, Department of Healthcare Biotechnology, Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan
Author contributions: Saeed U conceived the study, reviewed literature and wrote the manuscript; Waheed Y edited the manuscript; Manzoor S is the supervisor of Saeed U; Ashraf M provided necessary support and approved the study.
Correspondence to: Dr. Umar Saeed, Department of Healthcare Biotechnology, Atta-ur-Rahman School of Applied Biosciences, National University of Sciences and Technology, Islamabad 44000, Pakistan. umarsaeed15@yahoo.com
Telephone: +92-323-5338544
Received: April 9, 2013 Revised: June 19, 2013
Accepted: July 23, 2013
Published online: August 12, 2013

Abstract

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is rapidly increasing in both high risk groups and the general population. In this study, silent routes of propagation in teenaged Pakistanis are discussed. In order to promote sexual activity in youths, regular clients write contact details of sex workers on the doors of public washrooms. HIV prevalence is much higher among Hijra sex workers. Hijra sex workers have apparently stepped into the profession of begging at public places, where they earn money by both begging and distributing visiting cards offering unsafe sex. In many educational institutes, sex education is lacking or absent; if delivered *via* teachers, government agencies and nongovernmental organizations this could prevent a future epidemic of sexually transmitted infections in Pakistan.

Key words: Human immunodeficiency virus; Pakistan; Sex workers; Silent route; Youth

Core tip: Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is an emerging threat for rising generations in Pakistan. The prevalence of HIV is gradually increasing in different high risk populations due to the rapid increase of sexual activity among Pakistani youth. Increased sexual desperation among Pakistani youngsters has outranked the rest of the world. The rate of HIV spread in Pakistan is much greater than in any of the western countries, therefore adequate preventive measurements should be implemented as soon as possible, otherwise it will be too late.

Saeed U, Waheed Y, Manzoor S, Ashraf M. Identification of novel silent HIV propagation routes in Pakistan. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(3): 136-138 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i3/136.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i3.136

TO THE EDITOR

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is an emerging threat for rising generations in Pakistan. The prevalence of HIV is gradually increasing in different high risk populations due to rapid increase of sexual activity among Pakistani youth. Maximum viral spread and stable maintenance in the environment depends upon effectively penetrating protecting barriers[1]. Prevalence of sexually transmitted diseases was limited to certain areas but unfortunately, now, its prevalence has rapidly increased in different cities. Pakistan is an Islamic republic, where religion, law, culture and society strictly forbid sex outside marriage. Despite the recognition of sex outside marriage as a crime, commercial sex is being offered secretly in various brothels, kothikhana, client homes, rental houses near truck stops and market places, massage parlors and hotels. Strict punishments against sex outside marriage, if implemented by any nation, could prevent individuals from extra marital sexual activity.

We have identified silent routes stimulating sexual

activity among teenaged Pakistanis. Most of the regular clients of sex workers write sexually attractive sentences about female sex workers on the doors of public toilets (in public places such as markets, parks, picnic places, hotels and bus stands) in order to promote sex in the younger generation. Contact details of female sex workers are randomly distributed in public washrooms. Sexually desperate youngsters, introduced to the opportunity, indulge in risky sexual activities which expose them to sexually transmitted infections like HIV and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. At the moment, fortunately, the prevalence of HIV in the general population is very low. However, if unsafe sexual practices stimulated by this rapid advertisement route, were to be carried out by youngsters then this would probably generate an HIV epidemic in society which could create an extra burden on the economy. Another highly dangerous route of sexual advertisement is through Hijra sex workers. In Pakistan, the prevalence of HIV is highest among injecting drug users (IDUs) and Hijra sex workers. The greatest HIV prevalence (37.8%) was found in IDUs from different cities of Pakistan[2,3]. An extremely high HIV prevalence (27.6%) was observed in Hijra sex workers of Larkana Sindh, Pakistan[4]. Similarly another study conducted in Rawalpindi (the city adjoining Pakistan's capital) reported a high prevalence of HIV (21.6%) among transgender men[5]. The rate of HIV spread in Pakistan is much higher than in any of the western countries, therefore adequate preventive measurements should be introduced as soon as it is possible.

Hijra is a distinct type of gender role which includes Khusras (true hermaphrodites), Zananas (crossdressers) and Narnbans (eunuchs)[6]. We have identified that the majority of Hijra sex workers have started promoting sexual activity in the younger generation by distributing various visiting cards among shop keepers and youth as sexual advertisements. Mobile numbers and visiting addresses are written on those cards. Sexually active people usually make a phone call and arrange a time and place for unsafe sexual activities. Hijra sex workers have also stepped into begging at various public sectors including bus stands, markets and traffic signals, where they not only earn money by begging but also promote sex work by contacting youths. Hijras usually flatter the physical beauty and power of their clients thus promoting sexual relationships. Most of the youngsters who indulge in risky sexual relationships are illiterate and have a poor understanding of sexually transmitted diseases and their consequences. Most of them lack awareness and knowledge, and are therefore unable to comprehend the seriousness of this issue.

In educational institutes such as schools and colleges, sex education is mostly avoided. Teachers are often reluctant to educate students with knowledge about awareness and prevention of sexually transmitted disease. If appropriate seminars were arranged for teenaged students this would be a positive step towards awareness and prevention of HIV and other sexually transmitted diseases. In order to reduce any future epidemic of sexually transmitted infections, harm reduction strategies must be implemented rather than intimidation by law enforcement agencies. The mysterious sex industry is based upon the principle of demand and supply. Sexually desperate unemployed youths, tourists, business men, public officials, migrant workers, truck drivers and traders with conspicuous wealth create a strong demand for sexual services. On the other hand, various social and economic factors like acute poverty, unemployment, limited knowledge and skills and the opportunity of a high income through sex, usually compel poor individuals towards offering sex. In such circumstances, suppressing measures *via* law enforcement agencies could further aggravate the spread of hidden risky behavior in society. It has been observed that Hijra sex workers have a strong wish to earn money by positive means but unfortunately our society does not accept them in either the private or public sector. The majority of Hijra sex workers are unable to earn money by positive means due to problems of sexual harassment from sexually active people. By arranging positive support for sex workers, *via* assistance from government sectors and nongovernmental organizations (NGOs) to earn an honorable livelihood, their risky sexual activities and behaviors can be reduced significantly.

Policy makers should not only provide wider opportunities for the dissemination of awareness and knowledge about risk factors associated with viral transmission among populations at risk; but also focus on identification of epidemiological patterns associated with sexually transmitted infections among various high risk populations in Pakistan. At the moment, an inadequate surveillance system for sexually transmitted infections exists with inadequate identification of subpopulations where deadly pathogens are secretly propagating. There is very little knowledge in the general and high risk populations about access to anti-retroviral therapy clinics. Expanded scientific research is also an important factor for successful surveillance of sexually transmitted infections. Among target populations, simple diagnostic tests against HIV could provide information regarding prevalence and trend of HIV infection. If the serum sub-samples are screened against other sexually transmitted infections (like hepatitis C virus and herpes simplex virus 2) after recording valuable basic demographic and behavioral data, this would help to identify behavior risk trends over time and aid surveillance. Another possible way towards harm reduction in Pakistan is by supporting community organizations and NGOs. The mysteries of complex HIV (and other sexually transmitted infection) dynamics could also be investigated using molecular epidemiology studies and mathematical modeling.

REFERENCES

1 **Rodpothong P,** Auewarakul P. Viral evolution and transmission effectiveness. *World J Virol* 2012; **1**: 131-134 [DOI: 10.5501/wjv.v1.i5.131]

2 **Akhtar H**, Badshah Y, Akhtar S, Kanwal N, Akhtar MN,

Zaidi NU, Qadri I. Prevalence of human immunodeficiency virus infection among transgender men in Rawalpindi (Pakistan). *Virol J* 2012; **9**: 229 [PMID: 23039269 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-9-229]

3 **Altaf A**, Zahidie A, Agha A. Comparing risk factors of HIV among hijra sex workers in Larkana and other cities of Pakistan: an analytical cross sectional study. *BMC Public Health* 2012; **12**: 279 [PMID: 22490045 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-12-279]

4 **Hawkes S**, Collumbien M, Platt L, Lalji N, Rizvi N, Andreasen A, Chow J, Muzaffar R, ur-Rehman H, Siddiqui N, Hasan S, Bokhari A. HIV and other sexually transmitted infections among men, transgenders and women selling sex in two cities in Pakistan: a cross-sectional prevalence survey. *Sex Transm Infect* 2009; **85** Suppl 2: ii8-i16 [PMID: 19307351 DOI: 10.1136/sti.2008.033910]

5 **Laith J,** Abu-Raddad, Akala F A, Semini I, Riedner G, Wilson D. Characterizing the HIV/AIDS epidemic in Middle East and North Africa time for strategic action. *The World Bank* 2010

6 **Abdullah MA,** Basharat Z, Shafqaat A, Kamal B, Hasan ZF, Jan AD. Awareness about sexually transmitted infections among Hijra sex workers of Rawalpindi/Islamabad. *Pak J Public Health* 2012; **2**: 40-45

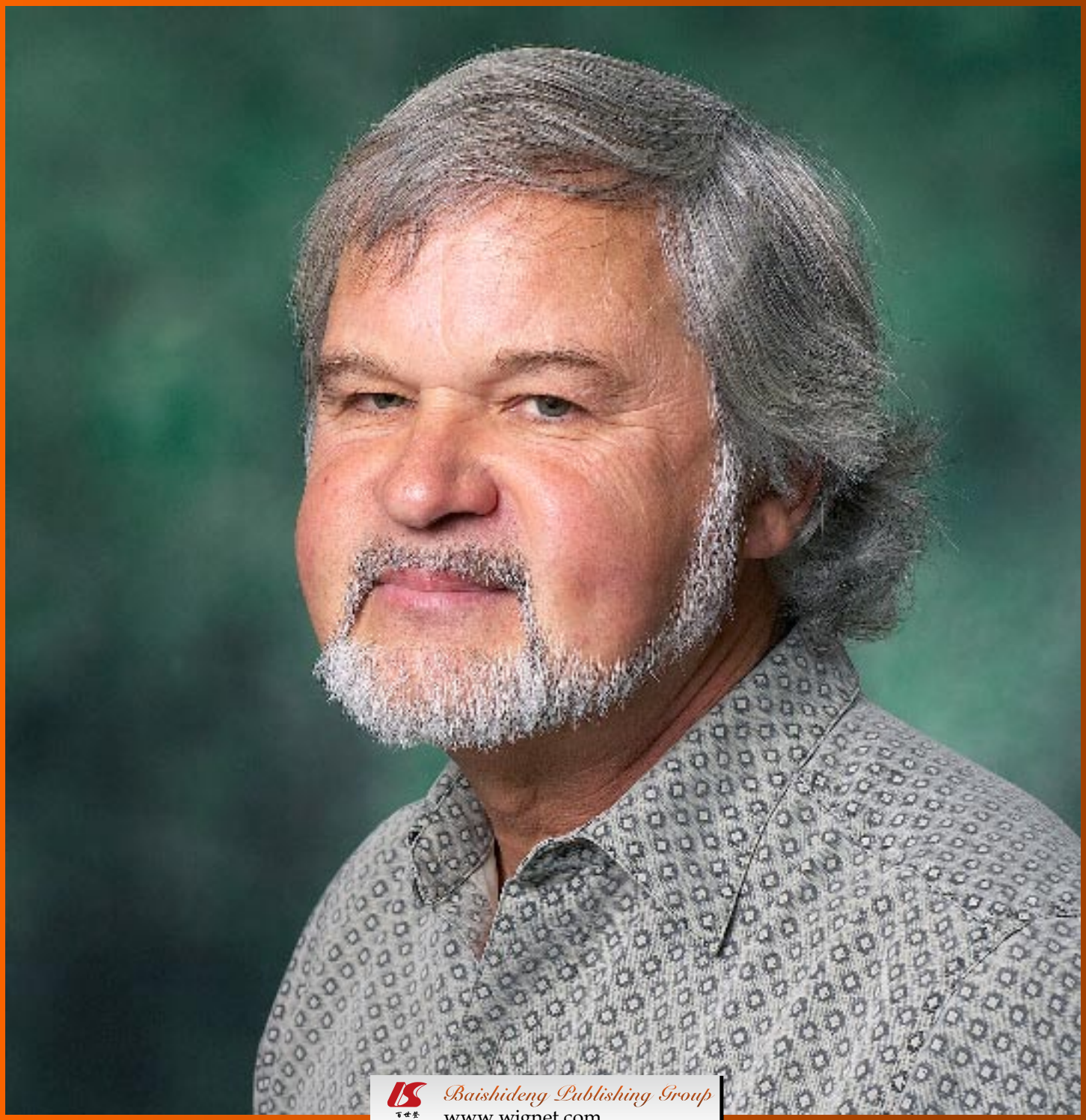
P- Reviewer Souza TML **S- Editor** Wen LL
L- Editor Hughes D **E- Editor** Lu YJ

ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

World Journal of *Virology*

World J Virol 2013 November 12; 2(4): 139-169

Volume End



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Virology

Contents

Quarterly Volume 2 Number 4 November 12, 2013

Contents

World Journal of Virology
Volume 2 Number 4 November 12, 2013

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Virology (*World J Virol*, *WJV*, online ISSN 2220-3249, DOI: 10.5501) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJV covers topics concerning arboviral infections, bronchiolitis, central nervous system viral diseases, DNA virus infections, encephalitis, eye infections, fatigue syndrome, hepatitis, meningitis, opportunistic infections, pneumonia, RNA virus infections, sexually transmitted diseases, skin diseases, slow virus diseases, tumor virus infections, viremia, zoonoses, and virology-related traditional medicine, and integrated Chinese and Western medicine. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of viral diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJV*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Virology

ISSN
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
February 12, 2012

FREQUENCY
Quarterly

World Journal of Virology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-6555-7188
Telephone: +852-3177-9906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
November 12, 2013

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/g_info_20100722180909.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.139

World J Virol 2013 November 12; 2(4): 139-145
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Does prophylactic antidepressant treatment boost interferon-alpha treatment completion in HCV?

Paul J Rowan

Paul J Rowan, Division of Management, Policy, and Community Health, University of Texas Health Sciences Center at Houston School of Public Health, Houston, TX 77030, United States
Author contributions: Rowan PJ solely contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Paul J Rowan, PhD, MPH, Division of Management, Policy, and Community Health, University of Texas Health Sciences Center at Houston School of Public Health, 1200 Herman Pressler Drive, Houston, TX 77030, United States. prowan@uth.tmc.edu
Telephone: +1-713-5009183 Fax: +1-713-5009181
Received: April 25, 2013 Revised: August 13, 2013
Accepted: August 20, 2013
Published online: November 12, 2013

Abstract

Depression is often a side effect of interferon-alpha treatment for hepatitis C, and is recognized as a cause for treatment discontinuation. When detected, antidepressant treatment begins promptly. In contrast to this rescue approach, prophylactic antidepressant treatment has been considered as a superior approach. While studies indicate that depression is lower with prophylaxis, no study has prospectively evaluated the degree that treatment completion might be boosted by the prophylactic strategy. A structured literature search was conducted to discover all trials of antidepressant prophylaxis for patients undergoing antiviral treatment for chronic hepatitis C. Selection criteria included: antidepressant prophylaxis study; report of depression treatment outcome; report of numbers discontinuing and reason for discontinuation (including any of the following: discontinuation data for medical side effects (*i.e.*, thrombocytopenia); discontinuation due to lack of antiviral response; discontinuation due to lack of antidepressant effect; discontinuation due to antidepressant side effects; discontinuation due to patient preference; discontinuation due to loss to follow-up; or unspecified discontinuation). Across the studies, total enrollees were determined for the prophylaxis arms and the rescue arms, and then, again across studies, those discontinuing for reasons other than lack of antiviral response or medical side effect were summed for each of these two arms. Twelve studies were discovered. One was a retrospective chart review, one was an uncontrolled trial, and ten were controlled trials. Discontinuation of antiviral therapy was not less common in the prophylaxis arms: of the 396 patients treated by the prophylaxis strategy, 47 (11.9%) discontinued; of the 380 patients in the rescue strategy, 45 (11.8%) discontinued. While the prophylaxis strategy seems to manage depression symptoms, it does not seem to boost treatment completion. Rescue was a very successful strategy when indicated. While antidepressant prophylaxis has benefit in antiviral treatment, it should not generally be valued for boosting the likelihood of treatment completion.

Key words: Depression; Therapy; Clinical; Psychiatry

Core tip: To inform clinical practice, this narrative review summarizes existing evidence regarding the degree that antidepressant prophylaxis boosts hepatitis C antiviral treatment completion compared to a rescue approach.

Rowan PJ. Does prophylactic antidepressant treatment boost interferon-alpha treatment completion in HCV? *World J Virol* 2013; 2(4): 139-145 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i4/139.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.139

INTRODUCTION

Although pegylated interferon-alpha may provide a sustained viral response from chronic hepatitis C infection[1,2],

this lengthy regimen is challenging to tolerate. Depressive symptoms, one of the more difficult side effects, can lead to discontinuation. Discontinuation rates for factors other than antiviral non-response range from 10% in well-conducted clinical trials[1,2] to 30% or more in clinical settings[3]. If depressive symptoms emerge, they must be clinically managed, including suspension of antiviral treatment as a last resort. Direct-acting antiviral agents may eventually supplant interferon-alpha/ribavirin regimens as standard of care[4], but interferon-alpha-based regimens have recently been re-affirmed as standards of care[5,6].

To reduce the threat of treatment-related depression, the idea of prophylactic depression treatment emerged[7]: when beginning interferon-alpha (and ribavirin) treatment, the patient would be started on an antidepressant with the goal of preventing, or attenuating, depressive symptoms. Initial case studies and case series noted success of this strategy. For example, antiviral treatment was restarted in a cohort of eight chronic hepatitis C patients who previously had discontinued due to emergent depressive episodes; all eight were able to fully complete the second course of treatment[8]. A precedent for this strategy was noting the success of antidepressant prophylaxis for interferon-alpha treatment of malignant melanoma[8,9].

Compared to prophylaxis, traditional practice can be termed "rescue" when depressive symptoms emerge in a patient undergoing antiviral treatment, depression treatment is quickly initiated so that those symptoms can be managed. The advantage to the prophylactic strategy is that depression and the threat of discontinuation can be avoided; the advantage to the rescue strategy is that patients are not unnecessarily treated, and so are not experiencing the additional treatment burden and side effects. Antidepressants may have quite adverse side effects in some patients, including retinal or gastroenterological bleeding[10,11]. Thus, clinicians are faced with a challenging clinical management strategy where risks and benefits must be considered.

Can prophylactic antidepressant treatment boost interferon-alpha treatment completion in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV)? No study has prospectively answered this question. This review has been conducted to discern an answer by reviewing antiviral therapy discontinuation data reported in trials evaluating the efficacy of antidepressant prophylaxis for managing depression. This review is presented in order to enhance the evidence available for clinical decision-making.

LITERATURE SEARCH

A Pubmed literature search was designed to discover trials that might have the data necessary to assess relative treatment completion between prophylaxis arms and control arms. A set of search terms was developed to capture studies relevant to hepatitis C. This included: "hepatitis", "HCV", "Hep C", "Hep-C" and "chronic hepatitis C". This was crossed with each of two other sets. The first was a set to capture depression-related studies: "depression", "depressed", "depressive", "psychiatric", "mental". The other was a set to capture prophylactic strategies: "prophylaxis", "prophylactic" or "prevention".

From this search, all study titles would be reviewed to detect promising abstracts. All promising abstracts would be read, and likely studies would be pulled and assessed for necessary information. References of those studies would be checked manually.

The necessary information for selection into this review was established as the following: patients with chronic hepatitis C who were candidates for interferon-alpha treatment (whether including ribavirin or not, as this treatment strategy emerged as the prophylactic strategy emerged); recognized treatment regimen (*i.e.*, interferon-alpha with ribavirin); no concurrent treatment such as for human immunodeficiency virus, since symptoms and treatment side effects would be significant confounders; at least two study arms where one included prophylactic treatment with an antidepressant, whether open-label or blinded, and the other is a control arm, whether placebo-controlled or not; sustained treatment of at least 8 wk in order to observe emergence of depressive symptoms from interferon-alpha and assess differential depression response between arms; and data on the numbers of patients in each arm that discontinued, or were lost to follow-up, for reasons other than medical side effects (thrombocytopenia, *etc.*) or non-response to antiviral therapy. Thus, the discontinuation group of focus would be those who medically could have completed treatment but discontinued for a reason other than a medical reason. To the degree that discontinuation reasons, such as psychiatric side effects, would be specifically reported, these would be tabulated and compared between the intervention-arm participants and the control-arm participants. The reporting of discontinuation for psychiatric reasons, specifically, was thus not an inclusion criterion.

For each eligible study, the number of patients discontinuing would be noted for each of the arms of the study. A descriptive analysis would be developed based on those results. The goal would be to describe the degree, if any, that antiviral treatment completion might be superior for the prophylactic strategy, compared side-by-side with the rescue strategy. Since the data sources for this study consisted of previously-published research studies, ethics approval for this narrative review was not sought from an institutional review board.

SEARCH RESULTS

For the "prophylaxis" search term set, "pretreatment" was soon discovered as a synonym, so this was added to that set. The "prophylaxis" set returned 1302661 abstracts; the "hepatitis C" set returned 184063 abstracts; and the "depression" set returned 869174 abstracts. The intersection of these three sets returned 419 abstracts. Titles of all were reviewed, leading to a set of 38 abstracts to review. This led to a set of 12 studies[8,12-23] in which the prophylactic strategy was evaluated, and discontinua-

Table 1 Study characteristics and discontinuation data: Antidepressant prophylaxis for interferon-alpha treatment of hepatitis C virus

Study	Leading exclusion criteria	Prophylactic intervention	Medication run-in period	Randomized: Yes/No	Blinded: Yes/No	Follow-up point, in wk[1]	Discontinued/Total in Arm:[2]	
							Prophylaxis	Rescue
Schaefer *et al*[12]	Psychiatric history, interferon treatment	Escitalopram	2 wk	Yes	Yes	24/48	2/90	3/91
Klein *et al*[13], Klein *et al* [14][4]	Active psychiatric disorder in the recent six months	Citalopram	3 wk	Yes	Yes	12	3/29	1/30
de Knegt *et al*[15]	Current Axis I disorder or current psychiatric prescription	Escitalopram	2 wk	Yes	Yes	24	2/34	2/37
Morasco *et al*[16]	Recent 3 mo psychiatric disorder	Citalopram	2 wk	Yes	Yes	24	N/A[3]	N/A[3]
Diez-Quevedo *et al*[17]	Active psychiatric disorder in the recent two months	Escitalopram	2 wk	Yes	Yes	24/48	4/51	6/48
Liu *et al*[18][5]	Alcohol use during treatment	Specific antidepressants not reported	Not reported	No	No	24/48	11/23	2/25
Neri *et al*[19]	Substantial psychiatric history, interferon treatment	Individual, family, and marriage counseling	N/A	Yes	No	24	14/106: 9/106 for lack of compliance, 5/ for psychiatric reasons	28/105: 11/105 for lack of compliance, 17/105 for psychiatric reasons
Gleason *et al*[20]	Depression not yet in remission	Escitalopram	4 wk	N/A	N/A	24/48	2/10	No control group
Morasco *et al*[21]	Active psychiatric disorder in recent six months	Citalopram	4 wk	Yes	Yes	24	3/13	3/15
Raison *et al*[22]	Psychiatric disorder or prescription within recent six months	Paroxetine	2 wk	Yes	Yes	24	0/18	6/18
Kraus *et al*[8]	Active substance abuse	Paroxetine or citalopram	3 wk	No		15	0/8	Not reported for control group of 9
Schaefer *et al*[23]	Current or recent psychiatric diagnosis or prescription	Citalopram	2 wk	N/A	N/A	24	0/14	0/11
						Totals:	47/396	45/380

[1]If 24/48, then treatment period accorded to interferon alpha regimen according to genotype, typically 24 wk for genotypes 2 and 3, and 48 wk for genotypes 1 and 4; [2]Denominator is total, including those lost to follow-up, who could have dropped out due to psychiatric reasons, and excludes those without this possibility, which would include the following: non-response to antiviral therapy, drop-out after randomization but before beginning antiviral therapy, or medical adverse events such as thrombocytopenia; [3]Three of 39 altogether discontinued antiviral therapy, but study report did not distinguish between active treatment and placebo for medical or other discontinuations; [4]2008 study was a trial design report, and 2012 was poster of initial results recently presented at a conference; [5]Retrospective observational chart review study; analysis limited to the two of four study arms that constitute a prophylaxis *vs* rescue comparison; 19 of the 23 in the prophylaxis arm were already taking antidepressants and the remaining 3 were started prophylactically before starting antiviral therapy.

tion data were reported.

These studies are listed, with relevant study characteristics, in Table 1. All but one were prospective trials; one was a retrospective chart review study that composed a cohort of patients who were taking an antidepressant before the initiation of interferon-alpha treatment, and composed a control group of patients who required some kind of psychiatric treatment during interferon-alpha treatment. For the sake of completeness, this chart review study was included. One of the 12 studies (Gleason *et al*[20], 2007), among the first chronologically, did not have a control group; this study simply investigated treatment completion when a prophylactic strategy was trialed. This was included for completeness. For one study, the manuscript reporting the preliminary study design was available, and results have just recently been presented as a poster at a scientific conference; it is assumed that a more complete analysis will be forthcoming. For the sake of completeness, results based on this conference poster were included.

Clinical Interventions

All studies were conducted in the era of prescribing ribavirin along with interferon-alpha. Nearly all were conducted in the era of pegylated interferon, with the exception of some of the earlier-initiated participants in the Morasco *et al*[21] (2007) and Raison *et al*[22] (2007) studies. Likewise, antidepressant dosages were normative, with typical strategies for increasing or augmenting dosage when clinically indicated, and typical medication switching strategies when clinically indicated. All studies used antidepressants from the selective serotonin re-uptake inhibitor class, including paroxetine (one study), paroxetine or citalopram (one study), citalopram (five studies), and escitalopram (four studies). This usage followed the pattern of Food and Drug Administration approval and clinical

adoption of these drugs, with paroxetine favored in earlier studies, citalopram favored in the studies conducted in the middle of this time span, and escitalopram favored in later studies. A range of strategies were used to assess depression level before and during treatment. These generally included: standardized clinical interview, clinical interview, a depression questionnaire, or combination. In some studies, patients could be started on antiviral therapy even if some level of depressive symptoms was present.

Clinical outcomes

The overwhelming majority of patients were able to complete interferon-alpha treatment. Sustained viral response results were in line with other well-managed intervention studies using interferon-alpha and ribavirin (*e.g.*, approximately 40% sustained viral response for those with genotype 1, approximately 75% for those with genotypes 2 or 3). Some patients failed to show a treatment response, and so interferon-alpha was discontinued due to lack of response. Some patients had treatment-related adverse events, such as thrombocytopenia, requiring discontinuation of therapy. To the degree that these data were available, the current study did not include these patients in the denominator at risk of discontinuing due to psychiatric difficulties, since they had discontinued due to medical reasons. Patients who were lost to follow-up or discontinued for other preference or discretionary reasons, or for unidentified reasons, were included in the numbers of patients who discontinued treatment for some reason other than antiviral non-response or medical side effect. This strategy was chosen because it can be challenging, especially from limited data included in published studies, to determine the leading reason for discontinuation or loss to follow-up, and the clinical question is whether prophylaxis boosts study completion.

Generally, providing antidepressant treatment resulted in amelioration of depressive symptoms. For the groups receiving antidepressant treatment prophylactically, average levels of depressive symptoms, or the portion of patients with an emergent depressive disorder, were lower in those receiving prophylactic treatment *vs* rescue treatment. Generally, problems with depression were worse for those at baseline with any depressive disorder history, or with higher initial depression severity.

Despite the clinical efficacy of antidepressant prophylaxis in controlling depressive symptomatology, there seemed to be no indication that the prophylactic strategy boosted treatment completion rates compared to the rescue strategy. Table 1 presents these data by study, including a summation of the total number of patients in the denominator, at risk for discontinuation, for both prophylactic and rescue arms, and the number for both arms that discontinued therapy. Of 396 patients in the prophylaxis arms altogether, who did not discontinue due to medical adverse events or clinical non-response, 47 (11.9%) discontinued interferon treatment before a recognized stopping point (*e.g.*, 24 or 48 wk); of 380 patients in the rescue arms, 45 (11.8%) discontinued interferon treatment. There was no overall statistical difference when tested by Chi-Squared test with Yates' correction (χ^2 = 0.00, P = 0.99).

One study (Raison 2007) seemed to yield a desired effect for prophylaxis: none of the 18 prophylaxis patients discontinued, while 6 of the 18 rescue patients discontinued. A review of this study in the context of other studies did not reveal any clear aspect of study design, measurement, or sampling that would indicate an explanation for this divergent result from the other, similar studies.

The Liu *et al*[18] study (2010) had greater discontinuation in the prophylaxis arm, but the psychosocial intervention used in this study, close monitoring and various counseling modalities, and psychopharmacotherapy only in certain cases where this psychosocial intervention was not successful, was very different from the other studies. Aside from this differential in discontinuation, the psychosocial intervention used in the Liu *et al*[18] study otherwise was successful in managing psychiatric symptoms, and doing so with less dependence on psychopharmacotherapy, compared to the usual care arm with rescue psychopharmacology. In this Liu study, with a psychosocial strategy for prophylaxis rather than psychaopharmacotherapy, the number of patients experiencing severe psychiatric symptoms was lower in the intervention group, with five meeting this criterion, *vs* 17 in the control group. Psychiatric symptomatology at less severe levels, likewise, was less frequent for the intervention arm compared to the control arm, with only six of the intervention patients eventually receiving antidepressant treatment compared to 19 in the control arm.

There were nine studies with data that permitted a Fisher's Exact Test to test whether the discontinuation rate differed between prophylaxis arm and rescue arm. Of these nine, only four had results that were statistically significant. Three modestly favored prophylaxis. These were: Diez-Quevedo *et al*[17] 2010 (7.8% discontinuation in prophylaxis arm, 12.5% rescue arm, Fisher's P = 0.02), Neri *et al*[19] 2010 (8.5% discontinuation in prophlylaxis arm, 10.5% discontinuation in rescue arm, Fisher's P = 0.02), and Raison *et al*[22] 2007 (0.0% prophylaxis arm, 33.3% rescue arm, Fisher's P = 0.02). The one study favoring rescue was Liu *et al*[18] 2010 (47.8% discontinuation in prophylaxis arm, 8.0% discontinuation in rescue arm, Fisher's P = 0.02). With five studies having no statistical difference in discontinuation, three favoring prophylaxis by varying portions, and one favoring rescue by a strong portion, there seems to be no consistent pattern favoring either strategy.

Since these studies were focused upon the presence and severity of depressive symptoms, but not on reasons for failure to complete a full course of therapy, reasons for not completing therapy were not systematically reported, and those reporting did not use consistent criteria. For those that did report, the stated reasons for discontinuation are listed in Table 2. Predominant reasons for not completing therapy included: Lost to follow-up, psychiatric side effects, and non-adherence. These reasons are likely quite overlapping, such as a person

Table 2 For studies reporting discontinuation data, number discontinuing interferon-alpha therapy, and reason for discontinuation, summed across studies

Reason for discontinuation	Prophylactic arm	Rescue arm
Lost to follow-up	21	19
Psychiatric side effects	8	18
Non-adherence	11	14
Did not complete therapy	3	3
Noncompliant or loss to follow-up	0	6
Other side effects	0	4

choosing to fail to continue in treatment due to psychiatric symptoms.

DISCUSSION

Emergence of depressive symptoms is a challenging side effect when treating chronic hepatitis C with interferon-alpha. Rates of depression may be as high as 30% or more. It has been established that monitoring patients for the emergence of depression, and rescuing those in whom depression emerges, is a successful strategy for limiting treatment discontinuation or poor adherence. Because of this high incidence of treatment-related depression, the idea of prescribing an antidepressant prophylactically to all patients at the initiation of antiviral therapy is attractive. This search revealed 12 studies that have evaluated the benefits of prophylactic treatment. From these studies, it is clear that prophylactic treatment serves to reduce the emergence of depression, and serves to manage the level of depressive symptomatology.

This review was undertaken to investigate the degree that the prophylactic strategy might boost treatment completion. There is no clear indication that the prophylactic strategy generally serves to boost treatment completion, compared to a monitor-and-rescue strategy. Where noted, nearly all patients in the rescue arms were successfully rescued from the emergence of depression. Review of study parameters does not suggest any treatment strategy or patient profile where prophylaxis yields a boost in treatment completion.

Advantages to prophylaxis are the superior management of depression during treatment in some portion of patients. This advantage needs to be weighed against the negatives of this strategy, which include the increased treatment burden on the patient, increased cost, and the risk of adverse events from the antidepressant. Two of the reviewed studies indicate some likely applications for prophylaxis. The study by Schaefer *et al*[12] (2005) demonstrated lower rates of treatment-related depression in the prophylactically treated arm, compared to the arm with no prophylaxis, in a cohort of patients with chronic hepatitis C who also had a history of a mental disorder (predominantly affective and dependence disorders) but with no active symptomatology and not currently receiving any psychiatric medication. The Kraus *et al*[13] (2005) study demonstrated successful interferon-alpha retreatment with antidepressant prophylaxis for a cohort of patients who had previously discontinued interferon-alpha treatment due to the emergence of depressive symptoms, while the control arm experienced, on average, even higher depressive symptom levels in the second attempt at interferon-alpha treatment (possibly due to the use, for all, of pegylated interferon-alpha in the second but not first treatment attempt). So, certain subgroups with recognized psychiatric difficulties may benefit from antidepressant prophylaxis.

While psychopharmacology is effective for managing depression in interferon-alpha treatment of hepatitis C, it is interesting to note the positive results of the Liu study, with a psychosocial intervention including individual counseling, family counseling, and couples counseling. The exact design of this intervention was not reported, such as how counseling needs were discovered, or data on the number of sessions delivered, or the specific clinical issues addressed, or whether any component included comprehensive chronic illness management training (disease education, treatment education, stress management, physician-patient communication skills, *etc.*), which has been shown to improve treatment adherence along with health-related quality of life.

Why didn't the prophylaxis approach have superior treatment completion, along with superior depression management, compared to rescue approach? It is possible that, in these trials, the rescue strategy worked as well as prophylaxis because clinical trials often have clinical management practices (answering patient questions, establishing clear lines of communication, systematic symptom monitoring, recruitment of motivated patients) that is stronger than usual care. If this is the case, then those delivering interferon-alpha treatment for chronic hepatitis C should be sure to parallel the symptom monitoring strategy of these trials. The monitoring of depression is a topic that has already been covered well in the literature concerning antiviral therapy, and has long been incorporated into treatment guidelines. The results of the Neri *et al*[19] (2010) study support this possibility: strong psychosocial monitoring led to better affective symptom control, with only a small portion of that advantage due to the use of antidepressants. At the same time, it is valuable to note that, in the Liu *et al*[18] (2005) study, interferon-alpha treatment conclusion or discontinuation led to a reduction in the emergent depressive symptom levels seen, leading the authors to conclude that "depression was specifically related to IFN therapy".

One indirect benefit of antidepressant treatment may be the management of treatment side effects other than psychiatric side effects. Raison *et al*[22] (2007) found stronger completion rates in the prophylaxis arm, and this was noted as being related to lower antiviral side effect difficulties. The study by Diez-Quevedo *et al*[17] (2010) also noted lower levels of antiviral side effects in those receiving antidepressants. Antidepressants are used in a range of clinical indications beyond depression, such as management of pain and management of fibromyalgia symp-

toms. In antiviral therapy, antidepressants may somehow reduce a range of symptoms. This could explain an unusual finding regarding depression in a larger hepatitis C study[24] that used a rescue strategy for emergent depression: while depression emerged for 90 patients in this study of nearly 400, discontinuation rates were lower for those patients (6%) than for those in whom no depression emerged (15%). The antidepressant intervention, or the related social support experienced in the course of clinical response, may have served to ameliorate the experience of treatment side effects. Data were not sufficient in the studies reviewed here to investigate more fully the possibility that antidepressant treatment in antiviral treatment may ameliorate antiviral-related side effects.

Another treatment characteristic suggesting that prophylaxis has limited clinical benefit was the necessity of monitoring and rescuing patients in the prophylaxis group, as well as the rescue group. In the de Knegt *et al*[15] study (2011), with 40 patients in the escitalopram group and 39 in the placebo group, four in the prophylaxis group needed rescue (increase or augmentation of dose, or new medication) while seven patients in the placebo group needed rescue depression treatment. In the Schaefer *et al*[23] (2012) study, three in the prophylaxis group needed rescue by another antidepressant, while 16 in the rescue arm required rescue. In the Morasco *et al*[21] (2010) study, approximately 30% in each arm had to have medication dosage adjusted, with some of those in the prophylaxis arm entering "rescue" treatment. This need to monitor and adjust pharmacotherapy is a limit to the treatment efficiency to be gained by prophylaxis; prophylaxis does not reduce the necessity of monitoring patients for the emergence of depression symptoms, and so does not greatly lighten the task of clinical care required to manage depression.

Because the influences of cytokines upon the central nervous system are quite varied, it is not quite clear how interferon-alpha causes depression in some patients. Pro-inflammatory cytokines can experimentally induce "sickness behavior" in non-human animals. It is hypothesized that this malaise might serve a valuable function: when the body needs to fight off infection, it is advantageous to have a healing period of increased sleep, lower activity level, and lower appetite; pro-inflammatory cytokines promote inflammatory responses, and also may simultaneously be registered in the brain, leading to the coincident sickness behavior[25]. Research in humans has revealed that interferon-alpha has an array of effects in the central nervous system, and elevated cytokine activity, especially tumor-necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-6 can be noted in some portion of cases of major depression[26,27]. Further, serotonin-acting antidepressants have an effect upon tumor-necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-6, as well as other inflammatory markers[28].

Providers should be clear about desired purpose when considering prophylactic antidepressant for hepatitis C patients about to begin antiviral therapy. Antidepressant prophylaxis does not seem to boost treatment completion, so other goals, such as managing depression, should be clarified when considering the strengths and weaknesses of this strategy. Discontinuation of interferon-alpha for chronic hepatitis C is a great treatment challenge, and anything that interferes with completion of treatment should be well investigated.

REFERENCES

1 **Fried MW**, Shiffman ML, Reddy KR, Smith C, Marinos G, Gonçales FL, Häussinger D, Diago M, Carosi G, Dhumeaux D, Craxi A, Lin A, Hoffman J, Yu J. Peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 975-982 [PMID: 12324553 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa020047]

2 **Manns MP**, McHutchison JG, Gordon SC, Rustgi VK, Shiffman M, Reindollar R, Goodman ZD, Koury K, Ling M, Albrecht JK. Peginterferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin compared with interferon alfa-2b plus ribavirin for initial treatment of chronic hepatitis C: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 958-965 [PMID: 11583749 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(01)06102-5]

3 **Beste LA**, Ioannou GN, Larson MS, Chapko M, Dominitz JA. Predictors of early treatment discontinuation among patients with genotype 1 hepatitis C and implications for viral eradication. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 972-978 [PMID: 20692371 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2010.07.012]

4 **Poordad F**, Dieterich D. Treating hepatitis C: current standard of care and emerging direct-acting antiviral agents. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 449-464 [PMID: 22676357 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2012.01617.x]

5 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: management of hepatitis C virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 245-264 [PMID: 21371579 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.02.023]

6 **Ghany MG**, Strader DB, Thomas DL, Seeff LB. Diagnosis, management, and treatment of hepatitis C: an update. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 1335-1374 [PMID: 19330875 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22759]

7 **Angelino AF**, Treisman GJ. Evidence-informed assessment and treatment of depression in HCV and interferon-treated patients. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 2005; **17**: 471-476 [PMID: 16401545 DOI: 10.1080/02646830500381567]

8 **Kraus MR**, Schäfer A, Al-Taie O, Scheurlen M. Prophylactic SSRI during interferon alpha re-therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis C and a history of interferon-induced depression. *J Viral Hepat* 2005; **12**: 96-100 [PMID: 15655055 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2005.00554.x]

9 **Loftis JM**, Hauser P. Safety of the treatment of interferon-alpha-induced depression. *Psychosomatics* 2003; **44**: 524-526 [PMID: 14597693 DOI: 10.1176/appi.psy.44.6.524]

10 **Musselman DL**, Lawson DH, Gumnick JF, Manatunga AK, Penna S, Goodkin RS, Greiner K, Nemeroff CB, Miller AH. Paroxetine for the prevention of depression induced by high-dose interferon alfa. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **344**: 961-966 [PMID: 11274622 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200103293441303]

11 **Weinrieb RM**, Auriacombe M, Lynch KG, Chang KM, Lewis JD. A critical review of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor-associated bleeding: balancing the risk of treating hepatitis C-infected patients. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2003; **64**: 1502-1510 [PMID: 14728113 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.v64n1215]

12 **Schaefer M**, Sarkar R, Knop V, Effenberger S, Friebe A, Heinze L, Spengler U, Schlaepfer T, Reimer J, Buggisch P, Ockenga J, Link R, Rentrop M, Weidenbach H, Fromm G, Lieb K, Baumert TF, Heinz A, Discher T, Neumann K, Zeuzem S, Berg T. Escitalopram for the prevention of peginterferon-α2a-associated depression in hepatitis C virus-infected patients without previous psychiatric disease: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2012; **157**: 94-103 [PMID:

22801672 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-157-2-201207170-00006]
13 **Klein M**, Lee T, Singer J. A multicentre randomized double-blind placebo controlled trial of prophylactic citalopram for the prevention of interferon-alpha associated neurocognitive dysfunction in HIV-HCV co-infection: CTN 194 (PICCO). AIDS 2012: Nineteenth International AIDS Conference; 2012 July 22-27; Washington DC, USA
14 **Klein MB**, Cooper C, Brouillette MJ, Sheehan NL, Benkelfat C, Annable L, Weston F, Kraus D, Singer J. CTN-194 (PICCO): design of a trial of citalopram for the prevention of depression and its consequences in HIV-hepatitis C co-infected individuals initiating pegylated interferon/ribavirin therapy. *Contemp Clin Trials* 2008; **29**: 617-630 [PMID: 18262853 DOI: 10.1016/j.cct.2008.01.001]
15 **de Knegt RJ**, Bezemer G, Van Gool AR, Drenth JP, Hansen BE, Droogleever Fortuyn HA, Weegink CJ, Hengeveld MW, Janssen HL. Randomised clinical trial: escitalopram for the prevention of psychiatric adverse events during treatment with peginterferon-alfa-2a and ribavirin for chronic hepatitis C. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **34**: 1306-1317 [PMID: 21999489 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2011.04867.x]
16 **Morasco BJ**, Loftis JM, Indest DW, Ruimy S, Davison JW, Felker B, Hauser P. Prophylactic antidepressant treatment in patients with hepatitis C on antiviral therapy: a double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Psychosomatics* 2010; **51**: 401-408 [PMID: 20833939]
17 **Diez-Quevedo C**, Masnou H, Planas R, Castellví P, Giménez D, Morillas RM, Martín-Santos R, Navinés R, Solà R, Giner P, Ardèvol M, Costa J, Diago M, Pretel J. Prophylactic treatment with escitalopram of pegylated interferon alfa-2a-induced depression in hepatitis C: a 12-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2011; **72**: 522-528 [PMID: 21034680 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.09m05282blu]
18 **Liu SS**, Schneekloth TD, Talwalkar JA, Kim WR, Poterucha JJ, Charlton MR, Wiesner RH, Gross JB. Impact of depressive symptoms and their treatment on completing antiviral treatment in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: e178-e185 [PMID: 20495464 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181dc250f]
19 **Neri S**, Bertino G, Petralia A, Giancarlo C, Rizzotto A, Calvagno GS, Mauceri B, Abate G, Boemi P, Di Pino A, Ignaccolo L, Vadalà G, Misseri M, Maiorca D, Mastrosimone G, Judica A, Palermo F. A multidisciplinary therapeutic approach for reducing the risk of psychiatric side effects in patients with chronic hepatitis C treated with pegylated interferon α and ribavirin. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: e210-e217 [PMID: 20838237 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181d88af5]
20 **Gleason OC**, Fucci JC, Yates WR, Philipsen MA. Preventing relapse of major depression during interferon-alpha therapy for hepatitis C--A pilot study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2007; **52**: 2557-2563 [PMID: 17436092 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-9729-5]
21 **Morasco BJ**, Rifai MA, Loftis JM, Indest DW, Moles JK, Hauser P. A randomized trial of paroxetine to prevent interferon-alpha-induced depression in patients with hepatitis C. *J Affect Disord* 2007; **103**: 83-90 [PMID: 17292481 DOI: 10.1016/j.jad.2007.01.007]
22 **Raison CL**, Woolwine BJ, Demetrashvili MF, Borisov AS, Weinreib R, Staab JP, Zajecka JM, Bruno CJ, Henderson MA, Reinus JF, Evans DL, Asnis GM, Miller AH. Paroxetine for prevention of depressive symptoms induced by interferon-alpha and ribavirin for hepatitis C. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 1163-1174 [PMID: 17451562 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03316.x]
23 **Schaefer M**, Schwaiger M, Garkisch AS, Pich M, Hinzpeter A, Uebelhack R, Heinz A, van Boemmel F, Berg T. Prevention of interferon-alpha associated depression in psychiatric risk patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2005; **42**: 793-798 [PMID: 15885349 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.01.020]
24 **Evon DM**, Ramcharran D, Belle SH, Terrault NA, Fontana RJ, Fried MW. Prospective analysis of depression during peginterferon and ribavirin therapy of chronic hepatitis C: results of the Virahep-C study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2949-2958 [PMID: 19789525 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2009.528]
25 **Dantzer R**. Cytokine, sickness behavior, and depression. *Neurol Clin* 2006; **24**: 441-460 [PMID: 16877117 DOI: 10.1016/j.ncl.2006.03.003]
26 **Dowlati Y**, Herrmann N, Swardfager W, Liu H, Sham L, Reim EK, Lanctôt KL. A meta-analysis of cytokines in major depression. *Biol Psychiatry* 2010; **67**: 446-457 [PMID: 20015486 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2009.09.033]
27 **Miller AH**, Maletic V, Raison CL. Inflammation and its discontents: the role of cytokines in the pathophysiology of major depression. *Biol Psychiatry* 2009; **65**: 732-741 [PMID: 19150053 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2008.11.029]
28 **Janssen DG**, Caniato RN, Verster JC, Baune BT. A psychoneuroimmunological review on cytokines involved in antidepressant treatment response. *Hum Psychopharmacol* 2010; **25**: 201-215 [PMID: 20373471 DOI: 10.1002/hup.1103]

P- Reviewer: Heiser P **S- Editor**: Wen LL **L- Editor**: A
E- Editor: Wang CH

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.146

World J Virol 2013 November 12; 2(4): 146-151
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Impact of PRRSV on activation and viability of antigen presenting cells

Irene M Rodríguez-Gómez, Jaime Gómez-Laguna, Librado Carrasco

Irene M Rodríguez-Gómez, Librado Carrasco, Department of Anatomy and Comparative Pathology, University of Córdoba, 14071 Córdoba, Spain
Jaime Gómez-Laguna, CICAP - Food Research Centre, Pozoblanco, 14400 Córdoba, Spain
Author contributions: Rodríguez-Gómez IM, Gómez-Laguna J and Carrasco L contributed to this paper.
Supported by The Spanish Ministry of Education and Science, No. AGL2009-12438/GAN
Correspondence to: Irene M Rodríguez-Gómez, DVM, PhD, Department of Anatomy and Comparative Pathology, University of Córdoba, Ctra. Madrid-Cádiz, Km. 396, 14071 Córdoba, Spain. v22rogoi@uco.es
Telephone: +34-957-218162 Fax: +34-957-218682
Received: June 26, 2013 Revised: September 9, 2013
Accepted: October 16, 2013
Published online: November 12, 2013

Abstract

Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) is one of the most important diseases of swine industry. The causal agent, PRRS-virus (PRRSV), is able to evade the host immune response and survive in the organism causing transient infections. Despite all scientific efforts, there are still some gaps in the knowledge of the pathogenesis of this disease. Antigen presenting cells (APCs), as initiators of the immune response, are located in the first line of defense against microorganisms, and are responsible for antigen recognition, processing and presentation. Dendritic cells (DCs) are the main type of APC involved in antigen presentation and they are susceptible to PRRSV infection. Thus, PRRSV replication in DCs may trigger off different mechanisms to impair the onset of a host effective immune response against the virus. On the one side, PRRSV may impair the basic functions of DCs by regulating the expression of major histocompatibility complex class Ⅱ and CD80/86. Other strategy followed by the virus is the induction of cell death of APCs by apoptosis, necrosis or both of them. The impairment and/or cell death of APCs could lead to a failure in the onset of an efficient immune response, as long as cells could not properly activate T cells. Future aspects to take into account are also discussed in this review.

Key words: Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome; Antigen presenting cells; Dendritic cells; Immune response; Major histocompatibility complex class Ⅱ; CD80/86; Cell death; Apoptosis

Core tip: Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) is able to evade the host immune response and survive in the organism causing transient infections. PRRSV interacts with antigen presenting cells, specifically with dendritic cells, causing a regulation of major histocompatibility complex class Ⅱ and/or CD80/86 and cell death by apoptosis and/or necrosis.

Rodríguez-Gómez IM, Gómez-Laguna J, Carrasco L. Impact of PRRSV on activation and viability of antigen presenting cells. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(4): 146-151 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i4/146.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.146

INTRODUCTION

Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRS) is caused by PRRS-virus (PRRSV)[1,2]. This virus belongs to the genus Arterivirus[3] and has a high genetic variability[4]. Two genotypes of PRRSV can be distinguished: PRRSV-1, which comprises strains from Europe; and PRRSV-2, which includes strains from America[3]. Indeed, PRRSV-1 is subdivided into three different subtypes, subtype 1, which includes strains from Western Europe, and subtypes 2 and 3, which comprise strains from

Eastern Europe[4]. Moreover, PRRSV-1 strains can also be classified in accordance with the capability to induce different patterns of tumour necrosis factor α (TNF-α), interleukin-10 (IL-10) after infection of peripheral blood mononuclear cells, porcine alveolar macrophages, peripheral blood SwC3$^+$ cells and bone marrow dendritic cells (BMDCs) into: IL-10$^+$-TNF-α$^+$, IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^+$, IL-10$^+$-TNF-α$^-$ and IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^-$-inducing strains[5].

Host immune response against the virus is weak and erratic and fails to control PRRSV. Different studies point out that type 1 interferons are insufficiently produced, which has been related to an inhibition of interferons by nonstructural proteins 1α, 1β, 2, 11, as well as, N protein[6-9]. Indeed, proinflammatory cytokines are also mildly produced[7,10,11] being associated nonstructural protein 2 to a decreased release of IL-1β and TNF-α[12,13]. Some *in vitro* evidences in the literature also point out that PRRSV can induce a suppression of NK cells[14]. Although PRRSV may induce the induction of cytotoxic T lymphocytes[15], these cells seem to suffer an impairment to exert their cytotoxic activity to PRRSV-infected macrophages[16]. Furthermore, the number of interferon-γ-secreting cells is not enough to control PRRSV[17-20] and neutralizing antibodies (NAs) are delayed and not produced in a vast extent[17]. Two to four weeks after infection, NA-response takes place, resulting in very low titers (1/32-1/64 or even lower)[17,18,20,21].

Antigen presenting cells (APCs) are located in the first line of defense against microorganisms attack. These cells recognize, process and present antigens to T cells in order to trigger an effective immune response[22-25]. While B cells can directly recognize antigens by means of its B cell-antigen receptor, T cells need the involvement of different molecules through two mandatory signals. The first signal consists on the binding between the T-cell antigen receptor (TCR) and the major histocompatibility complex class Ⅱ (MHC-Ⅱ) molecule. For the second signal, the CD28 molecule from T cells interacts with co-stimulatory molecules (CD80/86) from APCs. The correct linking of these molecules in the presence of antigens will suitably activate T cells[26,27].

Dendritic cells (DCs) are the main type of APC involved in antigen presentation. However, macrophages and B cells, although less efficiently, can also act as APCs[26,28-30]. Interestingly, it has been shown that different types of DCs and macrophages can suffer PRRSV replication *in vitro*[31-37]and *in vivo*[38-43]. However, in an *ex vivo* experiment, Loving *et al*[44] showed that lung-DCs were not permissive for PRRSV infection. A reasonable explanation for this result is that these lung-DCs could lack the receptors that PRRSV uses to go into the cell (*i.e.*, CD163, sialoadhesin, heparan sulphate)[45], while other types of DCs conserve these receptors. Furthermore, PRRSV replication directly impairs the basic functions of infected macrophages, including phagocytosis, antigen presentation and production of cytokines, and also induce cell death[46]. Therefore, changes in the number of APCs and/or a downregulation on the expression of MHC-Ⅱ and CD80/86 may lead to suppose an impairment in the onset of an effective immune response against PRRSV.

Other strategy followed by PRRSV to evade the host immune response might be the induction of cell death of APCs by apoptosis, necrosis or both of them[47-52]. Apoptosis is a regulated process modulated by both pro-apoptotic and anti-apoptotic cellular factors and it can be considered an active process[53], while necrosis is the passive death of cells[54]. In any case, APCs death could also cause a failure in the onset of an efficient immune response, owing to cells could not properly activate T cells.

WHAT DO WE KNOW ABOUT THE INTERACTION BETWEEN PRRSV AND APCS?

PRRSV and the expression of active (MHC-Ⅱ) and co-stimulatory (CD80/86) molecules

Due to the complexity in the isolation and culture of DCs from different porcine organs[55,56], the vast majority of conducted studies are *in vitro* studies.

After the infection of monocyte-derived dendritic cells (MoDCs) with either PRRSV-1 or PRRSV-2 strains, the expression of MHC-Ⅱ decreased[32,34,35] or remained unaltered[37]. The expression of MHC-Ⅱ in BMDCs infected with a PRRSV-2 strain did not show any change in its expression[33,36]. Nevertheless, according to Gimeno *et al*[5] in which 4 selected PRRSV-1 strains were used (one IL-10$^+$-TNF-α$^+$ strain, one IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^+$ strain, one IL-10$^+$-TNF-α$^-$ strain and one IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^-$ strain), infected-BMDCs exhibited either an increased expression of MHC-Ⅱ or no changes. Three out of four of these strains induced high expression of SLA-Ⅱ, while the IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^+$-prototype strain did not evidence any change. Therefore, the use of different genotypes on different or the same subpopulation of APCs leads to different outcomes[5].

With regard to the expression of CD80/86 molecules, some authors pointed out a decrease in the expression of these molecules on MoDCs[34], while others mentioned an increased expression on these cells[35]. With regard to BMDCs, a decrease[5], no changes[5] and an increased expression of CD80/86[5,33,36] have been reported. Interestingly, in the article published by Peng *et al*[36], it was observed that both, bystander and PRRSV-infected cells, showed high expression of CD80/86 which may be associated with the release of soluble factors by infected cells or the engulfment of infected and/or apoptotic DCs. In fact, in the above mention study from Gimeno *et al*[5], the IL-10$^-$-TNF-α$^-$ prototype strain leads to the highest increase in the expression of CD80/86 in BMDCs while the double positive one, induced a decrease in CD80/86 compared to mock-infected group. It demonstrates that the behaviour of each strain can vary depending on the induced-cytokine profile.

The diminished expression of MHC-Ⅱ has also been linked to a lack of proliferation of leucocytes when co-

cultured with PRRSV-infected DCs, suggesting that PRRSV might modulate the immune stimulatory function of porcine DCs[35]. Moreover, in most of the above mentioned studies, only one of the two molecules (either MHC-Ⅱ or CD80/86) was increased and both of them are mandatory for the correct activation of T cells[26,27]. These findings highlight the complexity of the immune response against PRRSV, which may be triggering off different mechanisms to evade the host immune response not only in PRRSV-infected cells but also in bystander non-infected cells.

The *in vivo* expression of MHC-Ⅱ, as well as, CD80/86 on APCs has been poorly studied. In a study carried out by our research group, pigs which had been infected with a PRRSV-1 strain showed a decrease in the number of macrophages, as well as, the expression of MHC-Ⅱ in the tonsil, retropharyngeal and mediastinal lymph nodes compared to uninfected pigs[43]. In addition, a significant negative correlation was found between the expression of PRRSV antigen and the number of human leucocyte antigen-DR (HLA-DR) positive cells. Studying consecutive immunohistochemical sections, we observed that most of PRRSV antigen-positive cells were negative for HLA-DR antigen[43], pointing out a downregulation of MHC-Ⅱ in PRRSV infected cells.

PRRSV and cell death

Not only PRRSV could alter the expression of molecules involved in antigen presentation. Other way to abrupt antigen presentation is causing the death of APCs. Thus, concerning this point, several *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies have been conducted.

Concerning *in vitro* experiments, some authors observed apoptosis in bystander non-infected cells of American Type Culture Collection CRL11171 cell line[49] at the same time that other authors perceived co-localization of both, apoptotic and PRRSV antigens on macrophages and MARC-145 cells[57]. According to these authors, PRRSV is first able to provoke an anti-apoptotic state on cells suffering viral replication, inducing apoptosis later when the replication cycle has taken place. However, not only death has been observed during PRRSV infection, but also necrosis of MARC-145 cells[58,59].

Regarding MoDCs and BMDCs, cell death after PRRSV infection has been poorly studied. Both, apoptosis[32,34] and necrosis[32] phenomena have been noticed, although no co-localization of apoptotic or necrotic markers with PRRSV antigen were studied.

In vivo studies have evidenced apoptotic cells in testis[48], lungs and lymphoid organs of PRRSV-1 and PRRSV-2 infected pigs[49-52]. Although apoptosis has been associated with GP5 of PRRSV in infected cells[47,60], cell death has also been reported in non-infected bystander cells[49,50,52]. However, no co-localization of apoptotic markers and PRRSV expression has been analysed. This approach suggests that besides a direct induction of apoptosis by viral particles, an indirect pathway of apoptosis play a role in cell death during PRRSV infection. Several attempts have been carried out to relate indirect apoptosis of PRRS to the release of some apoptogenic cytokines, such as, TNF-α[61], IL-1 or IL-10[51]. Nonetheless, some of these associations could not be confirmed by *in vitro* studies with recombinant porcine cytokines[51]. Other studies have shown an enhanced expression of both Fas and FasLigand in PRRSV-2 infected splenic macrophages and in co-cultured splenic and peripheral blood lymphocytes[62], highlighting the necessity of exploring the role of different apoptotic mediators in PRRSV-induced cell death.

FUTURE ASPECTS AND ADVICES TO HEED IN THIS ISSUE

The expression of MHC-Ⅱ and CD80/86 has been analysed in different *in vitro* DC-models. However, these studies lack of the co-localization of PRRSV and the molecule involved in. Moreover, strains with different profile of cytokine release lead to different results. Therefore, co-localization studies, as well as, cytokine analyses should be performed in order to obtain clearer results on PRRSV modulation of the host immune response. Key cytokines might be interferon (IFN)-α and IFN-γ, because of their antiviral properties; TNF-α, due to anti-inflammatory, antiviral and apoptogenic functions; and IL-10, because of its immunomodulatory and apoptogenic properties. By doing so, it will be clarified if the virus itself, different cytokines, or both of them are able to cause a change in the expression of these molecules.

As above mentioned, TCR-MHC-Ⅱ and CD28-CD80/86 signals are mandatory to properly activate T cells. Thus, it is necessary to study both molecules in every conducted experiment to extrapolate and ensure the behaviour of these molecules.

A decreased expression of MHC-Ⅱ, CD80/86 or both of them could result in a failure or, at least, a non-effective immune response. In an *in vitro* study carried out in our group (data not published), it has been observed an enhanced expression of both molecules, MHC-Ⅱ and CD80/86, in MoDCs infected with a PRRSV-1 strain which had previously been tested for inducing a strong activation of the immune response. However, no proliferation of T cells was observed in this study and, on the contrary, a high rate of dead cells was detected. Therefore, a new strategy of the virus could be drawn, by which, although the virus induces the expression of MHC-Ⅱ and CD80/86 in MoDCs, they result ineffective since the virus later on induce their cell death. Thus, the use of cell-death markers should be also included in our routine experiments.

The same view should be extrapolated to death pathways studies. Moreover, future foresight experiments should broaden the spectrum of APC types and PRRSV strains in order to generate a clearer picture of this disease. The consideration of these aspects will improve the current knowledge on the pathogenesis and immune response against this virus, paving the way for its control.

REFERENCES

1 **Wensvoort G**, Terpstra C, Pol JM, ter Laak EA, Bloemraad M, de Kluyver EP, Kragten C, van Buiten L, den Besten A, Wagenaar F. Mystery swine disease in The Netherlands: the isolation of Lelystad virus. *Vet Q* 1991; **13**: 121-130 [PMID: 1835211]

2 **Collins JE**, Benfield DA, Christianson WT, Harris L, Hennings JC, Shaw DP, Goyal SM, McCullough S, Morrison RB, Joo HS. Isolation of swine infertility and respiratory syndrome virus (isolate ATCC VR-2332) in North America and experimental reproduction of the disease in gnotobiotic pigs. *J Vet Diagn Invest* 1992; **4**: 117-126 [PMID: 1616975]

3 **King AMQ**, Adams MJ, Carstens EB, Lefkowitz EJ. Virus Taxonomy - Classification and Nomenclature of Viruses. Ninth Report of the International Committee of Taxonomy of Viruses. London: Elsevier Academic Press, 2012: 804

4 **Stadejek T**, Oleksiewicz MB, Scherbakov AV, Timina AM, Krabbe JS, Chabros K, Potapchuk D. Definition of subtypes in the European genotype of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus: nucleocapsid characteristics and geographical distribution in Europe. *Arch Virol* 2008; **153**: 1479-1488 [PMID: 18592131 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-008-0146-2]

5 **Gimeno M**, Darwich L, Diaz I, de la Torre E, Pujols J, Martín M, Inumaru S, Cano E, Domingo M, Montoya M, Mateu E. Cytokine profiles and phenotype regulation of antigen presenting cells by genotype-I porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus isolates. *Vet Res* 2011; **42**: 9 [PMID: 21314968 DOI: 10.1186/1297-9716-42-9]

6 **Albina E**, Carrat C, Charley B. Interferon-alpha response to swine arterivirus (PoAV), the porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 1998; **18**: 485-490 [PMID: 9712364]

7 **Van Reeth K**, Labarque G, Nauwynck H, Pensaert M. Differential production of proinflammatory cytokines in the pig lung during different respiratory virus infections: correlations with pathogenicity. *Res Vet Sci* 1999; **67**: 47-52 [PMID: 10425240]

8 **Chen Z**, Lawson S, Sun Z, Zhou X, Guan X, Christopher-Hennings J, Nelson EA, Fang Y. Identification of two autocleavage products of nonstructural protein 1 (nsp1) in porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus infected cells: nsp1 function as interferon antagonist. *Virology* 2010; **398**: 87-97 [PMID: 20006994 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2009.11.033]

9 **Yoo D**, Song C, Sun Y, Du Y, Kim O, Liu HC. Modulation of host cell responses and evasion strategies for porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Virus Res* 2010; **154**: 48-60 [PMID: 20655963 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2010.07.019]

10 **Thanawongnuwech R**, Young TF, Thacker BJ, Thacker EL. Differential production of proinflammatory cytokines: in vitro PRRSV and Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae co-infection model. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol* 2001; **79**: 115-127 [PMID: 11356254]

11 **Gómez-Laguna J**, Salguero FJ, Pallarés FJ, Fernández de Marco M, Barranco I, Cerón JJ, Martínez-Subiela S, Van Reeth K, Carrasco L. Acute phase response in porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus infection. *Comp Immunol Microbiol Infect Dis* 2010; **33**: e51-e58 [PMID: 20004019 DOI: 10.1016/j.cimid.2009.11.003]

12 **Subramaniam S**, Kwon B, Beura LK, Pattnaik AK, Osorio F. Elucidation of mechanism of TNFα suppression by PRRSV. Proceedings of the 90th Meeting of the Conference of Research Workers in Animal Disease; 2009 Dec 4-5; Chicago, USA (Abstract 89)

13 **Beura LK**, Sarkar SN, Kwon B, Subramaniam S, Jones C, Pattnaik AK, Osorio FA. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus nonstructural protein 1beta modulates host innate immune response by antagonizing IRF3 activation. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 1574-1584 [PMID: 19923190 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01326-09]

14 **Cao J**, Grauwet K, Vermeulen B, Devriendt B, Jiang P, Favoreel H, Nauwynck H. Suppression of NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity against PRRSV-infected porcine alveolar macrophages in vitro. *Vet Microbiol* 2013; **164**: 261-269 [PMID: 23522639 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2013.03.001]

15 **Gómez-Laguna J**, Salguero FJ, De Marco MF, Pallarés FJ, Bernabé A, Carrasco L. Changes in lymphocyte subsets and cytokines during European porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome: increased expression of IL-12 and IL-10 and proliferation of CD4(-)CD8(high). *Viral Immunol* 2009; **22**: 261-271 [PMID: 19594397 DOI: 10.1089/vim.2009.0003]

16 **Costers S**, Lefebvre DJ, Goddeeris B, Delputte PL, Nauwynck HJ. Functional impairment of PRRSV-specific peripheral CD3+CD8high cells. *Vet Res* 2009; **40**: 46 [PMID: 19445889 DOI: 10.1051/vetres/2009029]

17 **Meier WA**, Galeota J, Osorio FA, Husmann RJ, Schnitzlein WM, Zuckermann FA. Gradual development of the interferon-gamma response of swine to porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus infection or vaccination. *Virology* 2003; **309**: 18-31 [PMID: 12726723]

18 **Díaz I**, Darwich L, Pappaterra G, Pujols J, Mateu E. Immune responses of pigs after experimental infection with a European strain of Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *J Gen Virol* 2005; **86**: 1943-1951 [PMID: 15958672]

19 **Barranco I**, Gómez-Laguna J, Rodríguez-Gómez IM, Quereda JJ, Salguero FJ, Pallarés FJ, Carrasco L. Immunohistochemical expression of IL-12, IL-10, IFN-α and IFN-γ in lymphoid organs of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus-infected pigs. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol* 2012; **149**: 262-271 [PMID: 22889555 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetimm.2012.07.011]

20 **Loemba HD**, Mounir S, Mardassi H, Archambault D, Dea S. Kinetics of humoral immune response to the major structural proteins of the porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Arch Virol* 1996; **141**: 751-761 [PMID: 8645111]

21 **Lopez OJ**, Osorio FA. Role of neutralizing antibodies in PRRSV protective immunity. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol* 2004; **102**: 155-163 [PMID: 15507302]

22 **Steinman RM**. The dendritic cell system and its role in immunogenicity. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1991; **9**: 271-296 [PMID: 1910679]

23 **Hart DN**. Dendritic cells: unique leukocyte populations which control the primary immune response. *Blood* 1997; **90**: 3245-3287 [PMID: 9345009]

24 **Banchereau J**, Briere F, Caux C, Davoust J, Lebecque S, Liu YJ, Pulendran B, Palucka K. Immunobiology of dendritic cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2000; **18**: 767-811 [PMID: 10837075]

25 **Reid SD**, Penna G, Adorini L. The control of T cell responses by dendritic cell subsets. *Curr Opin Immunol* 2000; **12**: 114-121 [PMID: 10679408]

26 **Banchereau J**, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* 1998; **392**: 245-252 [PMID: 9521319]

27 **Kindt TJ**, Osborne BA, Goldsby RA. Overview of the immune system. In: Kindt TJ, Osborne BA, Goldsby RA. Kuby Immunology. New York: W.H. Freeman and Company, 2006: 1-22

28 **Inaba K**, Pack M, Inaba M, Sakuta H, Isdell F, Steinman RM. High levels of a major histocompatibility complex II-self peptide complex on dendritic cells from the T cell areas of lymph nodes. *J Exp Med* 1997; **186**: 665-672 [PMID: 9271582]

29 **Tizard IR**. Dendritic cells and antigen processing. In: Tizard IR. Veterinary Immunology. St. Louis: Elsevier Saunders, 2013: 91-101

30 **Harding CV**, Ramachandra L. Presenting exogenous antigen to T cells. *Curr Protoc Immunol* 2010; Chapter 16: Unit 16.2 [PMID: 20143316 DOI: 10.1002/0471142735.im1602s88]

31 **Charerntantanakul W**, Platt R, Roth JA. Effects of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus-infected antigen-presenting cells on T cell activation and antiviral cytokine production. *Viral Immunol* 2006; **19**: 646-661 [PMID: 17201660]

32 **Wang X**, Eaton M, Mayer M, Li H, He D, Nelson E, Christopher-Hennings J. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus productively infects monocyte-derived dendritic cells and compromises their antigen-presenting ability. *Arch Virol* 2007; **152**: 289-303 [PMID: 17031757]

33 **Chang HC**, Peng YT, Chang HL, Chaung HC, Chung WB. Phenotypic and functional modulation of bone marrow-derived dendritic cells by porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Vet Microbiol* 2008; **129**: 281-293 [PMID: 18221843 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2007.12.002]

34 **Flores-Mendoza L**, Silva-Campa E, Reséndiz M, Osorio FA, Hernández J. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus infects mature porcine dendritic cells and up-regulates interleukin-10 production. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2008; **15**: 720-725 [PMID: 18272667 DOI: 10.1128/CVI.00224-07]

35 **Park JY**, Kim HS, Seo SH. Characterization of interaction between porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus and porcine dendritic cells. *J Microbiol Biotechnol* 2008; **18**: 1709-1716 [PMID: 18955824]

36 **Peng YT**, Chaung HC, Chang HL, Chang HC, Chung WB. Modulations of phenotype and cytokine expression of porcine bone marrow-derived dendritic cells by porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Vet Microbiol* 2009; **136**: 359-365 [PMID: 19128898 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2008.11.013]

37 **Silva-Campa E**, Cordoba L, Fraile L, Flores-Mendoza L, Montoya M, Hernández J. European genotype of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome (PRRSV) infects monocyte-derived dendritic cells but does not induce Treg cells. *Virology* 2010; **396**: 264-271 [PMID: 19913865 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2009.10.024]

38 **Halbur PG**, Miller LD, Paul PS, Meng XJ, Huffman EL, Andrews JJ. Immunohistochemical identification of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) antigen in the heart and lymphoid system of three-week-old colostrum-deprived pigs. *Vet Pathol* 1995; **32**: 200-204 [PMID: 7771065]

39 **Halbur PG**, Paul PS, Frey ML, Landgraf J, Eernisse K, Meng XJ, Lum MA, Andrews JJ, Rathje JA. Comparison of the pathogenicity of two US porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus isolates with that of the Lelystad virus. *Vet Pathol* 1995; **32**: 648-660 [PMID: 8592800 DOI: 10.1177/030098589503200606]

40 **Halbur PG**, Paul PS, Frey ML, Landgraf J, Eernisse K, Meng XJ, Andrews JJ, Lum MA, Rathje JA. Comparison of the antigen distribution of two US porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus isolates with that of the Lelystad virus. *Vet Pathol* 1996; **33**: 159-170 [PMID: 8801709 DOI: 10.1177/030098589603300205]

41 **Haynes JS**, Halbur PG, Sirinarumitr T, Paul PS, Meng XJ, Huffman EL. Temporal and morphologic characterization of the distribution of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus (PRRSV) by in situ hybridization in pigs infected with isolates of PRRSV that differ in virulence. *Vet Pathol* 1997; **34**: 39-43 [PMID: 9150544]

42 **Cheon DS**, Chae C. Distribution of a Korean strain of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus in experimentally infected pigs, as demonstrated immunohistochemically and by in-situ hybridization. *J Comp Pathol* 1999; **120**: 79-88 [PMID: 10098017]

43 **Rodríguez-Gómez IM**, Gómez-Laguna J, Barranco I, Pallarés FJ, Ramis G, Salguero FJ, Carrasco L. Downregulation of antigen-presenting cells in tonsil and lymph nodes of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus-infected pigs. *Transbound Emerg Dis* 2013; **60**: 425-437 [PMID: 22816521 DOI: 10.1111/j.1865-1682.2012.01363.x]

44 **Loving CL**, Brockmeier SL, Sacco RE. Differential type I interferon activation and susceptibility of dendritic cell populations to porcine arterivirus. *Immunology* 2007; **120**: 217-229 [PMID: 17116172]

45 **Van Breedam W**, Delputte PL, Van Gorp H, Misinzo G, Vanderheijden N, Duan X, Nauwynck HJ. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus entry into the porcine macrophage. *J Gen Virol* 2010; **91**: 1659-1667 [PMID: 20410315 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.020503-0]

46 **Gómez-Laguna J**, Salguero FJ, Pallarés FJ, Carrasco L. Immunopathogenesis of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome in the respiratory tract of pigs. *Vet J* 2013; **195**: 148-155 [PMID: 23265866 DOI: 10.1016/j.tvjl.2012.11.012]

47 **Suárez P**, Díaz-Guerra M, Prieto C, Esteban M, Castro JM, Nieto A, Ortín J. Open reading frame 5 of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus as a cause of virus-induced apoptosis. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 2876-2882 [PMID: 8627762]

48 **Sur JH**, Doster AR, Christian JS, Galeota JA, Wills RW, Zimmerman JJ, Osorio FA. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus replicates in testicular germ cells, alters spermatogenesis, and induces germ cell death by apoptosis. *J Virol* 1997; **71**: 9170-9179 [PMID: 9371575]

49 **Sirinarumitr T**, Zhang Y, Kluge JP, Halbur PG, Paul PS. A pneumo-virulent United States isolate of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus induces apoptosis in bystander cells both in vitro and in vivo. *J Gen Virol* 1998; **79** (Pt 12): 2989-2995 [PMID: 9880013]

50 **Sur JH**, Doster AR, Osorio FA. Apoptosis induced in vivo during acute infection by porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Vet Pathol* 1998; **35**: 506-514 [PMID: 9823592]

51 **Labarque G**, Van Gucht S, Nauwynck H, Van Reeth K, Pensaert M. Apoptosis in the lungs of pigs infected with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus and associations with the production of apoptogenic cytokines. *Vet Res* 2003; **34**: 249-260 [PMID: 12791235]

52 **Gómez-Laguna J**, Salguero FJ, Fernández de Marco M, Barranco I, Rodríguez-Gómez IM, Quezada M, Carrasco L. Type 2 Porcine Reproductive and Respiratory Syndrome Virus infection mediated apoptosis in B- and T-cell areas in lymphoid organs of experimentally infected pigs. *Transbound Emerg Dis* 2013; **60**: 273-278 [PMID: 22607093 DOI: 10.1111/j.1865-1682.2012.01338.x]

53 **Hetts SW**. To die or not to die: an overview of apoptosis and its role in disease. *JAMA* 1998; **279**: 300-307 [PMID: 9450715]

54 **Majno G**, Joris I. Apoptosis, oncosis, and necrosis. An overview of cell death. *Am J Pathol* 1995; **146**: 3-15 [PMID: 7856735]

55 **Makala LH**, Haverson K, Stokes CR, Bailey M, Bland PW. Isolation and characterisation of pig Peyer's patch dendritic cells. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol* 1998; **61**: 67-81 [PMID: 9613473]

56 **Haverson K**, Singha S, Stokes CR, Bailey M. Professional and non-professional antigen-presenting cells in the porcine small intestine. *Immunology* 2000; **101**: 492-500 [PMID: 11122453]

57 **Costers S**, Lefebvre DJ, Delputte PL, Nauwynck HJ. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus modulates apoptosis during replication in alveolar macrophages. *Arch Virol* 2008; **153**: 1453-1465 [PMID: 18563285 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-008-0135-5]

58 **Kim TS**, Benfield DA, Rowland RR. Porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus-induced cell death exhibits features consistent with a nontypical form of apoptosis. *Virus Res* 2002; **85**: 133-140 [PMID: 12034480]

59 **Miller LC**, Fox JM. Apoptosis and porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Vet Immunol Immunopathol* 2004; **102**: 131-142 [PMID: 15507300]

60 **Fernández A**, Suárez P, Castro JM, Tabarés E, Díaz-Guerra M. Characterization of regions in the GP5 protein of porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus required to induce apoptotic cell death. *Virus Res* 2002; **83**: 103-118 [PMID: 11864744]

61 **Choi C**, Chae C. Expression of tumour necrosis factor-alpha is associated with apoptosis in lungs of pigs experimentally infected with porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus. *Res Vet Sci* 2002; **72**: 45-49 [PMID: 12002637]
62 **Chang HW**, Jeng CR, Lin CM, Liu JJ, Chang CC, Tsai YC, Chia MY, Pang VF. The involvement of Fas/FasL interaction in porcine circovirus type 2 and porcine reproductive and respiratory syndrome virus co-inoculation-associated lymphocyte apoptosis in vitro. *Vet Microbiol* 2007; **122**: 72-82 [PMID: 17321702]

P- Reviewers: Darrasse-Jèze G, Nauwynck HJ, Ramakrishna V
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Wang CH

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.152

World J Virol 2013 November 12; 2(4): 152-159
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Genetic analysis of structural proteins in the adsorption apparatus of bacteriophage epsilon 15

Jared A Guichard, Paula C Middleton, Michael R McConnell

Jared A Guichard, Paula C Middleton, Michael R McConnell, Department of Biology, Point Loma Nazarene University, San Diego, CA 92106, United States

Author contributions: McConnell MR designed and performed the genetic mapping and DNA sequencing experiments and also directed undergraduate researchers; Guichard JA and Middleton PC, in performing compositional analyses of particles produced by nonsense mutant viruses and the wt parent strain under non-permissive growth conditions; McConnell MR interpreted the resulting data and wrote the manuscript.

Supported by The NIH-AREA Grant, No. 1R15GM52696-01; the NSF-RUI Grant, No. DMB-8608480; the Howard Hughes Medical Research Institute (two grants to the PLNU Biology Department); Research Associates of PLNU (a 300 member alumni support group); and the PLNU Administration

Correspondence to: Michael R McConnell, PhD, Department of Biology, Point Loma Nazarene University, 3900 Lomaland Drive, San Diego, CA 92106,
United States. mmcconne@pointloma.edu
Telephone: +1-619-8492304 Fax: +1-619-8492598

Received: June 30, 2013 Revised: September 20, 2013
Accepted: October 15, 2013
Published online: November 12, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To probe the organizational structure of the adsorption apparatus of bacteriophage epsilon 15 (E15) using genetic and biochemical methodology

METHODS: Hydroxylamine was used to create nonsense mutants of bacteriophage E15. The mutants were then screened for defects in their adsorption apparatus proteins, initially by measuring the concentrations of free tail spike proteins in lysates of cells that had been infected by the phage mutants under non-permissive growth conditions. Phage strains whose infected cell lysates contained above-average levels of free tail spike protein under non-permissive growth conditions were assumed to contain nonsense mutations in genes coding for adsorption apparatus proteins. These mutants were characterized by classical genetic mapping methods as well as automated sequencing of several of their genes. Finally, sodium dodecyl sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and autoradiography were used to examine the protein compositions of the radioactive particles produced when the various mutants were grown on a non-permissive host cell in the presence of ^{35}S-methionine and co-purified along with E15wt phage on CsCl block gradients.

RESULTS: Our results are consistent with gp4 forming the portal ring structure of E15. In addition, they show that proteins gp15 and gp17 likely comprise the central tube portion of the E15 adsorption apparatus, with gp17 being more distally positioned than gp15 and dependent upon both gp15 and gp16 for its attachment. Finally, our data indicates that tail spike proteins comprised of gp20 can assemble onto nascent virions that contain gp7, gp10, gp4 and packaged DNA, but which lack both gp15 and gp17, thereby forming particles that are of sufficient stability to survive CsCl buoyant density centrifugation.

CONCLUSION: The portal ring (gp4) of E15 is bound to tail spikes (gp20) and the tail tube (gp15 and gp17); gp17's attachment requires both gp15 and gp16.

Key words: Epsilon15; Virion structure; Salmonella phages

Core tip: Epsilon 15 (E15) is a temperate, serotype-converting bacteriophage that specifically infects group E1 Salmonellae bacteria. This paper presents genetic and biochemical evidence regarding the identities and positional relationships of the proteins that comprise the tail tube structure of E15. As such, it makes a small contribution towards what may someday be a fuller understanding, not only of how E15 stabilizes its packaged DNA, but also, how it triggers release of its DNA

when the phage encounters a susceptible Salmonella host cell.

Guichard JA, Middleton PC, McConnell MR. Genetic analysis of structural proteins in the adsorption apparatus of bacteriophage epsilon 15. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(4): 152-159 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i4/152.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.152

INTRODUCTION

Salmonella bacteria are enteric organisms that constitute a serious source of gastro-intestinal infection in humans and agriculturally important animals[1]. Bacteriophages provide an important mechanism of genetic variation and gene exchange among Salmonella bacteria (and thus, the potential for enhanced pathogenicity) through their ability to promote lateral transfer of host cell genes. Understanding the structural features of phage DNA packaging and adsorption/DNA ejection apparati is an important step in being able to fully assess how phage contribute to genetic variation within their Salmonella hosts.

Bacteriophage epsilon15 (E15) is a temperate, Group E1 Salmonella-specific phage that belongs to the Order "Caudovirales" and the Family "Podoviridae"[2]. At the genomic level[3], it closest relatives are the Salmonella-specific viruses, SPN1S (NCBI Accession number JN391180.1) and SPN9TCW (NCBI Accession number JQ691610.1) but it also shares 36 related genes in common with the *E. coli* O1H57-specific phage, ϕV10 (NCBI Accession number DQ126339.2). E15 was among the first Salmonella-specific phages to be discovered and was a popular experimental model for Japanese and US investigators in the 50's, 60's and 70's, both because of its ability to cause serotype conversion and because of its enzymatically active tail spikes, which display endorhamnosidase activity towards the host cell O-polysaccharide structure[4-9]. The publication of the E15 genome sequence by our laboratory in 2002 (NCBI Accession number AY150271.1) stimulated renewed interest in E15, this time as a model system for investigating virion structure by cryo-electron microscopy (cryo-EM), matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight (MALDI-TOF) mass spectrometry and other methods[3,10-14]. These studies, combined with earlier genetic and biochemical investigations[6], have revealed the following: (1) gp7 and gp10 together comprise the capsid of E15; (2) E15's enzymatically active tail spikes are homotrimers of gp20; and (3) other major proteins in E15 virions include gp4, gp15 and gp17. Circumstantial evidence, including size, relative abundance within virion particles and the position of its gene just downstream of those coding for the small and large terminase subunits in the late transcript are all consistent with gp4 being the portal protein of E15[3].

In addition to being a powerful tool for elucidating virion capsid structures, cryo-EM can also be used effectively to decipher the structure of a phage adsorption apparatus, especially if the adsorption apparatus can be detached intact from the virion capsid and prepared in purified form. Such was the case for the Group B Salmonella-specific phage, P22, and the resulting structure that was determined by cryo-EM analysis of these P22 adsorption apparati (termed "tail machines") is, in a word, spectacular[15,16]. To date, no one has reported having successfully purified the intact adsorption apparatus of phage E15.

In this paper, we present genetic and biochemical data that is consistent with gp4 forming the portal ring structure of E15; in addition, our data indicates that the centrally-positioned tail tube portion of the adsorption apparatus is likely comprised of gp15 and gp17, with gp17 being more distally positioned than gp15 and dependent upon both gp15and gp16 for its attachment. Finally, our data indicates that tail spike proteins comprised of gp20 can form stable associations with nascent virus particles that contain gp7, gp10, gp4 and packaged dsDNA, but which lack both gp15 and gp17. This implies that tail spikes bind directly to the portal ring during the assembly process that leads to the formation of mature virions.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Phage and bacterial strains

Parental phages E15 and E15vir (a clear plaque mutant with a missense mutation in gp38, the major repressor protein) as well as bacterial host strains *Salmonella enterica subsp. enterica* serovar Anatum A1 *and Salmonella enterica subsp. enterica* serovar Anatum 37A2Su+ all came originally from the laboratory of Dr. Andrew Wright (Tufts University, Boston, MA). E15 (am2) is a nonsense mutant of E15 that is unable to produce tail spike proteins[6]. Propagation of bacteria and phage was in trypticase soy broth, unless otherwise indicated.

Isolation of phage nonsense mutants with adsorption apparatus defects

Nonsense mutants of E15vir were generated by hydroxylamine mutagenesis[17] and were detected initially by an anaerobic, double layer plating method that dramatically increases plaque size[18]. Hydroxylamine-treated phage were mixed with an amber suppressor strain (*Salmonella anatum* 37A2Su+) in the bottom LB soft agar layer, then overlaid with a second soft agar layer containing the non-suppressing parental strain *Salmonella anatum* A1. Turbid-looking plaques were cloned and re-screened to verify their inability to form plaques on *Salmonella anatum* A1.

Phage nonsense mutants isolated by the method described above were subsequently screened individually for potential defects in adsorption apparatus proteins other than the tail spike by measuring the level of free tail spike protein in lysates of non-permissively infected cells. The tail spike assay was based on a method developed earlier in an investigation involving phage P22 tailspikes[19]; It involved UV-irradiating 10000RPM (10K) supernatant frac-

tions obtained from lysates of *Salmonella anatum* A1 cells infected by E15vir nonsense mutants, then incubating the irradiated 10K supernatants with E15 "heads" obtained by infecting *Salmonella anatum* A1 with E15 (am2), an E15 nonsense mutant that is unable to produce tail spike protein. Following incubation, reaction mixes were plated at varying dilutions on the permissive host strain, *Salmonella anatum* 37A2Su+, in order to titer the number of E15 (am2) "heads" that were made infectious by the binding of tail spike proteins *in vitro*.

Genetic mapping and sequencing of Epsilon15 nonsense mutations: E15vir nonsense mutants isolated and screened as described above were characterized (along with the known tailspike nonsense mutant, am2) using classical *in vivo* complementation and two-factor recombination assay procedures that have been previously described[6]. These genetic mapping studies revealed the number of complementation groups (*i.e.,* genes) defined by the nonsense mutants and also allowed for an approximation of their locations relative to the E15 tail spike gene. Shortly after the mapping of the nonsense mutations using classical methods, the genomic sequence of E15 was completed by our lab. Gene 20 was then shown by sequencing analysis to contain the am2 nonsense mutation (*i.e.,* gp20 is the tailspike protein) and in addition, was observed to be the distal-most gene in the late mRNA transcript of E15[3].

Each E15vir mutant believed to be defective in an adsorption apparatus protein was subjected to DNA sequence analyses for genes 15, 16 and 17, in an effort to assign a gene identity for its nonsense mutation. The bracketing, Frwrd and Rvrse primer pairs used for initial PCR amplification of the three genes are shown below, with underlined bases representing modifications made in order to facilitate cloning of the PCR products into plasmids. Gene 15: *E15.Orf15*.Frwrd, AGGGATCCAAATGCCAGTTGTACCTACAG, *E15.Orf15*.Rvrse, ATACATAAGCTTTTATTCAACCCTCACG; Gene 16: *E15.Orf16*.Frwrd, TGGATCCATGGCTGATGTATTTTCACT, *E15.Orf16*.Rvrse, ACACATGCCTGCAGCATTATGGATTCCT; Gene 17*: E15.Orf17*.Frwrd, GAGGGATCCATAATGAAACAGGCATGTGT, *E15.Orf17*.Rvrse, GTTAAGGGTACCATCATTGTCCTA.

Because of their large sizes (ranging from 1928 to 2782 basepairs), the resulting PCR products were sequenced not only with the same Frwrd and Rvrse primers that had been used to produce them, but also with several additional primers known to bind internally within each PCR product. The internal sequencing primers were as follows: Gene 15: *E15.g15.W12689*: GGCGCTGCTCATGGCTGGAGTCATGAACAG, *E15.g15.W13264*: CGCGGCTATCGGTCTTTCTCAGTTACCTAC, *E15g15.W13879*: GGAGGCGGCTGCGCTGTCTGAACAGGTAC; Gene 16: *E15.g16.W15213*: CGGCAGGCATGGCCCTTCCTGCTGCTGTTG, *E15.g16:W15689*:TAGCGAACAGCCAGCGCATCCTGGATAAC; Gene 17: *E15.g17.W17092*: GCGGCAAAGTCTGCACAGTTCCAGATCCTG, *E15.g17.W17717*: GACCTGACGCTGCGCGAAACTTTTCCCTTG, *E15.g17.W18214*: GCGGCGTTCGGGCTGTTGATGTACAAAAAC.

Taq polymerase is somewhat error-prone[20], so in order to generate PCR products suitable for accurate DNA sequencing, PCR reaction mixes were prepared on a large scale (250 μL), then separated into five 50 μL aliquots prior to commencing the thermocycling reaction. Upon completion of PCR, the five aliquots were recombined into a single 250 μL sample and the DNA product was purified using a QIAGEN PCR purification column. Automated DNA sequencing reactions were performed by the Microchemical Core Facility at San Diego State University.

Preparation and analysis of ^{35}S-methionine labeled, virion-like particles produced by phage nonsense mutants under non-permissive conditions: Preparations of ^{35}S-methionine labeled, wild type E15vir phage particles and non-infectious, virion-like particles produced by the nonsense mutants were obtained by incubating mid-log phase *Salmonella anatum* A1 cells grown in low sulfate medium with phage (multiplicity of infection of 10) for ten minutes at 0 °C, then adding ^{35}S-methionine to a final concentration of 10 uCi/mL and shifting the incubation temperature to 37 ℃. At T = 90 min, cell cultures were lysed with chloroform, then centrifuged for 10 min at 10000 RPM in order to remove cellular debris. The resulting 10K supernatant fractions were loaded onto CsCl block gradients and centrifuged for 30 min at 38000 RPM on a Beckman L8-80M ultracentrifuge (an excess of cold E15wt phage was included in each sample as a carrier). Particles displaying virion-like densities (*i.e.,* the ability to pass readily through a 1.375 g/cm^3 CsCl layer and settle onto a 1.6 g/cm^3 CsCl layer along with non-radioactive E15wt carrier phage) were dialyzed, normalized for cpm and electrophoresed on 12% sodium dodecyl sulfate-protective antigen (SDS-PA) gels. The gels were subsequently dried on Whatman 3M paper and the paper was exposed to Kodak X-Omat X-ray film in order to detect radioactive proteins by autoradiography.

RESULTS

Isolation and mapping of E15 nonsense mutants with adsorption apparatus defects

We reasoned that cell lysates produced by infection of *Salmonella anatum* A1 with E15vir phage containing nonsense mutations in genes coding for adsorption apparatus proteins other than the tail spike should contain higher than normal levels of free tail spike protein. Cell lysates produced by infection with different E15 nonsense mutants were therefore screened for their ability to provide tail spike proteins to E15 (am2) "heads" *in vitro*, thereby rendering the heads infectious. Six E15vir nonsense mutants whose lysates had tail spike levels surpassing that

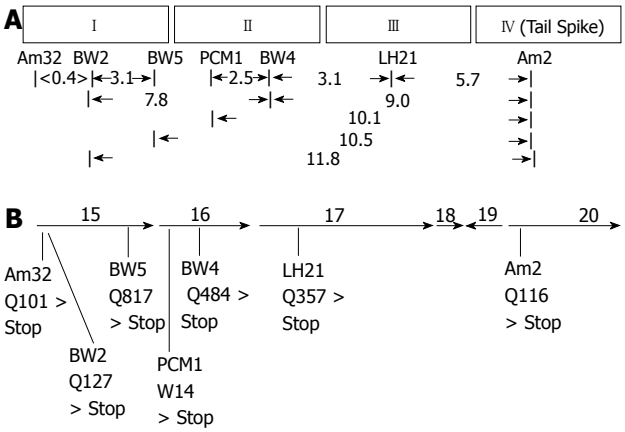


Figure 1 Genetic mapping and sequencing data showing positions of nonsense mutations that affect the protein composition of the epsilon 15 adsorption apparatus. A: Two-factor recombination values for nonsense mutations falling within *in vivo* complementation groups I through IV; B: Gene sequencing data. PCM1: Pericentriolar material 1; LH: Luteinizing hormone.

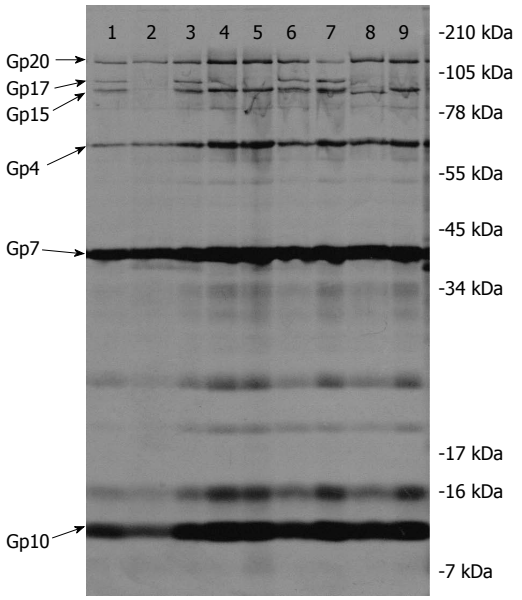


Figure 2 Autoradiogram showing compositions of non-infectious epsilon 15Vir particles. Lanes 1, 3 and 6, E15vir; Lane 2, gene 15 mutant am32 (BW2 is not shown but gives an identical pattern); Lanes 4 and 5, gene 16 mutants pericentriolar material 1 and BW4; Lane 7, partially suppressed am2 (gp20-) particles; Lane 8, gene 15 mutant BW5; Lane 9, gene 17 mutant luteinizing hormone21. molecular weight markers are depicted to the right.

of an E15vir lysate were identified, then further analyzed using classical genetic mapping methods. The six mutants were shown to define three complementation groups (*i.e.,* genes), which mapped in close proximity to each other as well as to the tail spike gene, defined by nonsense mutation am2 (Figure 1A). After confirming by DNA sequencing that the am2 mutation lay within gene 20 (the last gene in E15's "late" mRNA transcript), PCR primers were used to amplify and sequence three genes for each of the six mutants; namely 15, 16 and 17. Genes 15 and 17 were chosen for sequence analysis because the pI values, overall sizes, and tryptic digestion fragment sizes of their inferred polypeptide products closely matched those of E15 virion proteins shown by SDS-PA/autoradiography to be missing in virion-like particles formed by the various nonsense mutants under non-permissive conditions[3]. Gene 16 was included for sequence analysis as well because the genetic mapping data showed that the collection of six nonsense mutations with potential adsorption apparatus defects defined three different genes. Other neighboring genes (*i.e.,* 13, 14, 18 and 19) all coded for inferred proteins that were either very small or strongly hydrophobic, and were therefore not included in the sequencing analysis.

The DNA sequencing data (Figure 1B) revealed the presence of unique amber nonsense mutations in gene 15 for the three non-complementing phage mutants am32, BW2 and BW5. Non-complementing mutants pericentriolar material 1 (PCM1) and BW4 both contained unique amber nonsense mutations in gene 16, while mutant luteinizing hormone 21 (LH21), which the classical mapping data showed to be in a complementation group of its own, was found to contain a unique amber nonsense mutation in gene 17. The positions of the nonsense mutations determined by DNA sequencing correlated nicely with the linear map order that had been established for them previously by recombination analysis. In every case, the nonsense mutation had resulted from a hydroxylamine-induced C > T transition (either CAG > TAG, or TGG > TAG).

Yields and polypeptide compositions of E15 nonsense mutants with adsorption apparatus defects

MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry analyses of trypsin-digestion products obtained from purified E15 virion proteins[10] indicate that after the tail spike protein, gp20 (1070 amino acids, 115676 daltons), the next two largest proteins contained in E15 virions are gp17 (918 amino acids, 100841 daltons) and gp15 (842 amino acids, 91012 daltons). When ^{35}S-methionine-labeled particles produced by the various nonsense mutants under non-permissive conditions were co-purified with non-radioactive, "carrier" E15wt phage on CsCl block gradients, then analyzed by SDS-PAGE and autoradiography, it was observed that the two gene 16 mutants (PCM1 and BW4) and the gene 17 mutant (LH21) all produced good yields of radioactive particles relative to E15wt (118%, 154% and 100%, respectively, with a mean of 124 ± 28% SD) and that these particles all lacked gp17 (Figure 2, Lanes 4, 5 and 9). The three gene 15 mutants (am32, BW2 and BW5) all produced lower quantities of radioactive particles than E15wt (17%, 23% and 44%, respectively, with a mean of 28 ± 14% SD). The am32 and BW2 mutants, whose nonsense mutations mapped at codons 101 and 127, respectively, of gene 15 (845 codons), produced particles that lacked both gp15 and gp17 (Figure 2, Lane 2). Mutant BW5, whose nonsense mutation maps at codon 817 of gene 15, produced particles lacking gp17 but containing a novel protein with a slightly faster mobility than that of gp15; a protein most

likely comprised of amino acids 1 through 816 of gp15 (Figure 2, Lane 8). The quantity of the slightly truncated gp15 protein in BW5 particles is reduced, relative to the quantity of gp15 observed in E15vir and the various gp17-deficient mutants (see Lane 9, for example), thus indicating that its ability to assemble onto nascent virion particles has been diminished by the loss of 29 C-terminal amino acids, but not entirely eliminated. The 10K supernatant fractions obtained from cells infected by the three gene 15 mutants (am32, BW2 and BW5) were also analyzed by SDS-PAGE and autoradiography. All three supernatants contained a protein that co-migrated with the gp17 protein of E15wt (data not shown).

The two gene 16 nonsense mutants analyzed in this study (PCM1 and BW4) both produced good yields (118% and 154%, respectively, relative to wt E15) of non-infectious, virion-like particles that are missing gp17 (Figure 2, Lanes 4 and 5). As was the case for the three gene 15 mutants, a protein with gp17-like mobility was present in the 10K supernatant fractions of cells infected by PCM1 and BW4 (data not shown).

Every nonsense mutant that was studied produced radioactive particles that contained DNA, as judged by their ability to co-sediment with E15wt virions through CsCl at 1.375 g/mL and layer onto the 1.6 g/mL solution. In addition, all of the mutants, whether gp17-deficient or both gp15- and gp17-deficient, displayed normal quantities of the two known capsid proteins, gp7 and gp10, as well as gp4. Yields of the radioactive particles that lacked both gp15 and gp17 were significantly lower than those of particles that lacked gp17 only, suggesting that maximum stability of packaged DNA is achieved when both gp4 and gp15 are present. All of the mutant phage particles contained sufficient gp20 tail spike protein for easy detection by autoradiography (see lanes 2, 4, 5, 8, 9 of Figure 2).

DISCUSSION

The complete absence of both gp15 and gp17 in high-density particles produced by mutants am32 and BW2, whose nonsense mutations both map near the beginning of gene 15, combined with the gp17-only deficiency observed in high density particles produced by the gene 17 nonsense mutant (LH21), argues for a model in which gp15 and gp17 occupy penultimate and terminal positions, respectively, within a peripheral E15 virion structure that we hypothesize is the tail tube. The missing 29 amino acids at the C-terminal end of the gp15-like protein that is produced by BW5 phage under non-permissive conditions must be critical for gp17 binding since no gp17 protein was detected in these particles.

We currently do not know why gp16 is required for gp17's assembly onto nascent virions. The gp16 protein is inferred to have 634 amino acids and our two gene 16 nonsense mutations, PCM1 and BW4, are positioned at codons 14 and 484, respectively. The predicted mass for gp16 is 67364 daltons and its inferred overall methionine content (2.4%) falls within the range of methionine contents inferred for the other known virion proteins (from as low as 1.3% for gp20 to as high as 5.2% for gp4). In other words, if gp16 is present in E15 virions in appreciable quantities, then it should contain sufficient ^{35}S-methionine to show up in our autoradiogram. Faint protein bands were observed above the 78 kDa marker and above and below the 55 kDa marker on the gel (Figure 2), but none of these three proteins appeared to be diminished in quantity in the gene 16 mutants, relative to the other mutants or to E15vir. It is conceivable that gp16 is a virion protein that was not detected in our experiment because it co-migrated with gp4 protein (the inferred mass for gp4 is 61657 daltons). If that is true, though, one can argue that the quantity of gp16 in virions must be quite small, since the intensities of the gp4 bands in the two gene 16 mutants do not appear to be diminished, relative to those of E15vir and the other nonsense mutants that were analyzed. It should be noted that both our lab and at least one other have detected gp16 tryptic fragments in purified E15 virions using MALDI-TOF analysis[10]; the other lab has more recently hypothesized that gp16 is a tail tube protein[21]. While the data in this paper does not support that hypothesis, we remain open to the possibility and are continuing to explore the role played by gp16 in E15 virion assembly. It has also been hypothesized that gp17 functions as a pilot (or ejection) protein for E15[21]; this seems highly unlikely since ejection proteins, as the name implies, exit the capsid along with the DNA during the infection process[22,23]. Our results clearly show that E15 particles lacking gp17 retain stably packaged DNA within their capsids, as evidenced by their ability to co-purify in high yields with E15wt carrier phage on CsCl block gradients; furthermore, the same holds true, albeit to a lesser degree, for particles that are lacking both gp15 and gp17.

Frankly, we were surprised that tail spikes were present in all of the particles produced by our nonsense mutants. The initial screening procedure used to identify nonsense mutants for this study was based on the assumption that mutations resulting in adsorption apparatus defects would hinder tail spike assembly onto the virion, thereby resulting in higher than normal levels of free tail spike protein in the infected cell lysates, as well as the production of phage particles lacking tail spike proteins. Our current explanation is that gp4 forms the portal ring structure and perhaps, with help from immediately adjacent capsid proteins, provides a significant part of the binding surface(s) to which gp20 tail spikes normally attach during virion assembly. Interestingly, in their first cryo-EM paper dealing with E15, Jiang *et al*[10] reported that two of E15's six tail spikes occupy positions around the tail tube that place them in very close contact with the capsid. If these two tailspikes are more firmly bound in gp17- and gp15-/gp17-deficient particles than the other four, then that might explain both the presence of gp20 in the mutant particles as well as the enhanced levels of tail spike protein in their infected cell lysates.

Figure 3 sums up our current model for the structure of the E15 adsorption apparatus: (1) gp4 forms the

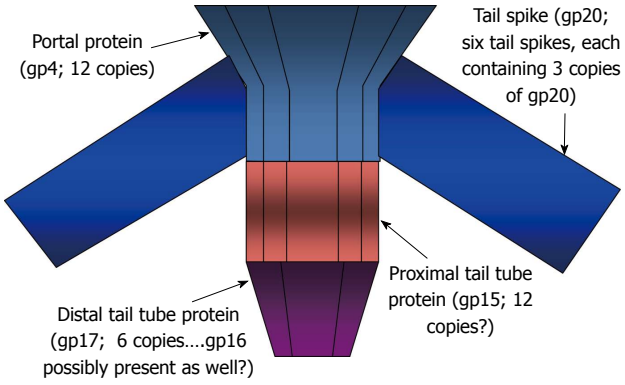


Figure 3 Schematic model for protein positions and interactions within the adsorption apparatus of bacteriophage Epsilon 15. The estimates of 12 and 6 copies for gp15 and gp17, respectively, are based upon stoichiometric measurements made relative to the numbers of capsid and tail spike proteins present in epsilon 15[13]; tail spike attachment to portal protein may be further stabilized by interactions with gp15 and/or capsid proteins.

portal ring structure and perhaps, with help from neighboring capsid proteins, provides a binding surface that is sufficient for attachment of tail spikes (gp20); (2) gp15 and gp17 form the central tail tube, with gp17 occupying the more distal position and interacting with gp15 by 4° interactions that cannot occur if the C-terminal 29 amino acids of gp15 are missing. The association of gp17 with gp15 is also gp16-dependent but we do not know yet whether or not gp16 forms part of the tail tube. We are currently continuing our study of E15 adsorption apparatus structure and function by conducting phenotypic suppression experiments with an E15 mutant in our collection that under non-permissive conditions, adsorbs to cells and degrades O-polysaccharide normally, but fails to eject its DNA[6].

The best understood Salmonella-specific phage in the Podoviridae family is P22 and recent X-ray crystallography and cryo-EM studies have revealed features of the proteins that comprise its capsid, portal, tail tube, needle and tail spikes in exquisite detail[15,16,24,25]. The dodecameric, ring-shaped portal structure of P22 is comprised of gp1; below the portal ring is the tail tube, comprised of twelve copies of gp4 (bound directly to the portal) and six copies of gp10, which are bound to gp4. Attached to the distal portion of gp10 is P22's "needle" structure, which is comprised of three copies of gp26. The six laterally-positioned, homo-trimeric tail spikes of P22 are comprised of gp9 and are thought to be associated with a binding surface generated cooperatively by proteins gp4 and gp10 at their point of junction on the sides of the tail tube[15].

Gene homology studies indicate that of the three Podoviridae phages known to infect Group E Salmonellae, namely E15, Epsilon34 (E34) and g341, two (E34 and g341) likely have adsorption apparatus protein compositions and organizations that are similar to that of P22[26,27]. Phage E15, on the other hand, has clearly taken a different path; Its tail spike protein is gp20, which at 1070 amino acids (aa) is about 63% larger, on average, than those of E34 (606 aa), g341 (705 aa) and P22 (667 aa) and is homologous with them only in a short stretch of amino acids at the N-terminal end that are thought to be critical for assembly onto the virion. Although they appear to occupy similar positions in the tail tube, there is no apparent structural homology between the proximal tail tube proteins of E15 and P22 (gp15 and gp4, respectively) or between their distal tail tube proteins (gp17 and gp10, respectively). There are stoichiometric similarities, though, in that densitometry measurements of Coomassie Blue-stained proteins of wild type E15 virions, followed by normalization for size differences, indicate that tail spikes (gp20), proximal tail tube proteins (gp15) and distal tail tube proteins (gp17) are present in E15 virions at approximately a 3/2/1 ratio, which matches the well-established 18/12/6 ratios of tail spike (gp9), proximal tail tube (gp4) and distal tail tube (gp10) proteins known to be present in P22 virions. No homolog of the P22 "needle" protein (gp26) is present among inferred bacteriophage E15 proteins, but that is not surprising since the tail tubes of negatively-stained E15 virions do not display the "needle-like" protuberance that is seen in electron micrographs of P22[6]. The "needle" is thought to play a role in the movement of the P22's genome across the bacterial cell envelope during an infection[28]. How E15 compensates for its lack of a "needle" protein remains to be determined.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors thank Jonathon King (MIT) for reading the manuscript and for providing useful suggestions and encouragement. We're also grateful to Michael McClelland (Vaccine Research Institute of San Diego) and Jack Johnson (The Scripps Research Institute, La Jolla, CA), both of whom provided space in their laboratories for the principle author to perform experiments and write during his sabbatical.

COMMENTS

Background

In April, 2010 (http://www.hhs.gov/asl/testify/2010/04/t20100428b.html), the Director of the Center for Disease Control reported to the House Subcommittee on Human Health that approximately 1.4 million Americans are infected annually with foodborne strains of Salmonellae bacteria. He further stated that the incidence of antibiotic resistance among isolates of Salmonella strains obtained in hospitals, stock animals and the food supply were all on the rise. Generalized transduction by bacteriophages is a major method for the horizontal transfer of genes between Salmonella organisms and thus, likely plays a role in their evolving pathogenicity.

Research frontiers

The ability of a bacteriophage to infect a bacterium is governed by the nature of its adsorption apparatus. The adsorption apparatus is a collection of proteins that cooperate together to maintain the stability of the phage's packaged genome until the moment when a susceptible host cell is encountered. At that point, the same sets of proteins interact with each other in an entirely different manner to trigger ejection of the phage genome and facilitation of its transport into the host cell cytoplasm.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Recent cryo-electron microscopy studies on virions of the Group E1 Salmo-

nella-specific bacteriophage, epsilon 15 (E15) have yielded highly detailed information on the composition and structure of the phage's capsid. Those same investigators have also produced the first close-up view of the adsorption apparatus of E15. This paper presents data regarding the identities of the proteins that comprise E15's adsorption apparatus; in addition, the data presented herein provides some insight into the ways these proteins interact with each other in order to form the adsorption apparatus.

Applications

Compared with other salmonellae-specific members of the podoviridae family, bacteriophage E15 appears to be unique when it comes to the collection of proteins that comprise its adsorption apparatus. Perhaps, in addition to the uniqueness of their physical characteristics, the manner in which these proteins interact with each other to control the stability of packaged DNA as well as its release in response to the proper environmental cue will also prove to be novel, and thus, worthy of further study.

Terminology

Adsorption apparatus pertains to those proteins that are stably associated with the mature virion, either through direct binding interactions with the portal ring or else, by virtue of their association with other proteins that are bound to the portal ring.

Peer review

The authors used genetic and biochemical methods to examine compositional and organizational aspects of the adsorption apparatus of bacteriophage E15. Although preliminary, the results are sufficient for establishing a simple model that should be possible to refine with further experimentation.

REFERENCES

1 **Hoelzer K**, Isabel A, Switt M, Wiedmann M. Animal contact as a source of human non-typhoidal salmonellosis. *Veterinary Research* 2011; **42**: 34 [DOI: 10.1186/1297-9716-42-34]

2 **Ackermann HW**. Tailed bacteriophages: the order caudovirales. *Adv Virus Res* 1998; **51**: 135-201 [PMID: 9891587 DOI: 10.1016/S0065-3527(08)60785-X]

3 **Kropinski AM**, Kovalyova IV, Billington SJ, Patrick AN, Butts BD, Guichard JA, Pitcher TJ, Guthrie CC, Sydlaske AD, Barnhill LM, Havens KA, Day KR, Falk DR, McConnell MR. The genome of epsilon15, a serotype-converting, Group E1 *Salmonella enterica*-specific bacteriophage. *Virology* 2007; **369**: 234-244 [PMID: 17825342 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2007.07.027]

4 **Kanegasaki S**, Wright A. Studies on the mechanism of phage adsorption: interaction between phage epsilon15 and its cellular receptor. *Virology* 1973; **52**: 160-173 [PMID: 4803392 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(73)90406-6]

5 **Losick R**, Robbins PW. Mechanism of epsilon-15 conversion studies with a bacterial mutant. *J Mol Biol* 1967; **30**: 445-455 [PMID: 4970573 DOI: 10.1016/0022-2836(67)90361-0]

6 **McConnell M**, Reznick A, Wright A. Studies on the initial interactions of bacteriophage epsilon15 with its host cell, *Salmonella anatum*. *Virology* 1979; **94**: 10-23 [PMID: 35879 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(79)90434-3]

7 **Robbins PW**, Keller JM, Wright A, Bernstein RL. Enzymatic and kinetic studies on the mechanism of O-antigen conversion by bacteriophage epsilon-15. *J Biol Chem* 1965; **240**: 384-390 [PMID: 14253440]

8 **Takeda K**, Uetake H. In vitro interaction between phage and receptor lipopolysaccharide: a novel glycosidase associated with Salmonella phage epsilon15. *Virology* 1973; **52**: 148-159 [PMID: 4215212 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(73)90405-4]

9 **Uetake H**, Luria SE, Burrous JW. Conversion of somatic antigens in Salmonella by phage infection leading to lysis or lysogeny. *Virology* 1958; **5**: 68-91 [PMID: 13519750 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(58)90006-0]

10 **Jiang W**, Chang J, Jakana J, Weigele P, King J, Chiu W. Structure of epsilon15 bacteriophage reveals genome organization and DNA packaging/injection apparatus. *Nature* 2006; **439**: 612-616 [PMID: 16452981 DOI: 10.1038/nature04487]

11 **Petrov AS**, Lim-Hing K, Harvey SC. Packaging of DNA by bacteriophage epsilon15: structure, forces, and thermodynamics. *Structure* 2007; **15**: 807-812 [PMID: 17637341 DOI: 10.1016/j.str.2007.05.005]

12 **Jiang W**, Baker ML, Jakana J, Weigele PR, King J, Chiu W. Backbone structure of the infectious epsilon15 virus capsid revealed by electron cryomicroscopy. *Nature* 2008; **451**: 1130-1134 [PMID: 18305544 DOI: 10.1038/nature06665]

13 **Zhang J**, Nakamura N, Shimizu Y, Liang N, Liu X, Jakana J, Marsh MP, Booth CR, Shinkawa T, Nakata M, Chiu W. JADAS: a customizable automated data acquisition system and its application to ice-embedded single particles. *J Struct Biol* 2009; **165**: 1-9 [PMID: 18926912 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsb.2008.09.006]

14 **Baker ML**, Hryc CF, Zhang Q, Wu W, Jakana J, Haase-Pettingell C, Afonine PV, Adams PD, King JA, Jiang W, Chiu W. Validated near-atomic resolution structure of bacteriophage epsilon 15 derived from cryo-EM and modeling. Proc. *Natl Acad Sci* 2013; **110**: 12301-12306 [DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1309947110]

15 **Tang L**, Marion WR, Cingolani G, Prevelige PE, Johnson JE. Three-dimensional structure of the bacteriophage P22 tail machine. *EMBO J* 2005; **24**: 2087-2095 [PMID: 15933718 DOI: 10.1038/sj.emboj.7600695]

16 **Lander GC**, Khayat R, Li R, Prevelige PE, Potter CS, Carragher B, Johnson JE. The P22 tail machine at subnanometer resolution reveals the architecture of an infection conduit. *Structure* 2009; **17**: 789-799 [PMID: 19523897 DOI: 10.1016/j.str.2009.04.006]

17 **Hall DH**, Tessman I. T4 mutants unable to induce deoxycytidylate deaminase activity. *Virology* 1966; **29**: 339-345 [PMID: 5943540 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(66)90041-9]

18 **McConnell M**, Wright A. An anaerobic technique for increasing bacteriophage plaque size. *Virology* 1975; **65**: 588-590 [PMID: 1093319 DOI: 10.1016/0042-6822(75)90065-3]

19 **Israel JV**, Anderson TF, Levine M. *In vitro* morphogenesis of phage P22 from heads and baseplate parts. *Proc Natl Acad Sci* 1967; **57**: 284-291

20 **Lundberg KS**, Shoemaker DD, Adams MW, Short JM, Sorge JA, Mathur EJ. High-fidelity amplification using a thermostable DNA polymerase isolated from Pyrococcus furiosus. *Gene* 1991; **108**: 1-6 [PMID: 1761218]

21 **Chang JT**, Schmid MF, Haase-Pettingell C, Weigele PR, King JA, Chiu W. Visualizing the structural changes of bacteriophage Epsilon15 and its Salmonella host during infection. *J Mol Biol* 2010; **402**: 731-740 [PMID: 20709082 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2010.07.058]

22 **Israel V**. E proteins of bacteriophage P22. I. Identification and ejection from wild-type and defective particles. *J Virol* 1977; **23**: 91-97

23 **Perez GL**, Huynh B, Slater M, Maloy S. Transport of phage P22 DNA across the cytoplasmic membrane. *J Bacteriol* 2009; **191**: 135-140 [DOI: 10.1128/JB.00778-08]

24 **Lander GC**, Tang L, Casjens SR, Gilcrease EB, Prevelige P, Poliakov A, Potter CS, Carragher B, Johnson JE. The structure of an infectious P22 virion shows the signal for headful DNA packaging. *Science* 2006; **312**: 1791-1795 [PMID: 16709746 DOI: 10.1126/science.1127981]

25 **Steinbacher S**, Miller S, Baxa U, Budisa N, Weintraub A, Seckler R, Huber R. Phage P22 tailspike protein: crystal structure of the head-binding domain at 2.3 A, fully refined structure of the endorhamnosidase at 1.56 A resolution, and the molecular basis of O-antigen recognition and cleavage. *J Mol Biol* 1997; **267**: 865-880 [PMID: 9135118]

26 **Casjens SR**, Thuman-Commike PA. Evolution of mosaically related tailed bacteriophage genomes seen through the lens of phage P22 virion assembly. *Virology* 2011; **411**: 393-415 [PMID: 21310457 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2010.12.046]

27 **Villafane R**, Zayas M, Gilcrease EB, Kropinski AM, Casjens SR. Genomic analysis of bacteriophage epsilon 34 of *Salmonella enterica* serovar Anatum (15+). *BMC Microbiol* 2008; **8**: 227 [PMID: 19091116 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2180-8-227]

28 **Bhardwaj A**, Olia AS, Walker-Kopp N, Cingolani G. Domain organization and polarity of tail needle gp26 in the portal vertex structure of bacteriophage P22. *J Mol Biol* 2007; **371**: 374-387 [PMID: 17574574]

P- Reviewers: Datta S, Ghiasi SM, Jaime GL, Kamal SA, Menendez-Arias L, Piergiuseppe De B **S- Editor**: Qi Y
L- Editor: A **E- Editor**: Wang CH

World Journal of Virology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.160

World J Virol 2013 November 12; 2(4): 160-169
ISSN 2220-3249 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Evolution of an avian H5N1 influenza A virus escape mutant

Kamel M A Hassanin, Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim

Kamel M A Hassanin, Biochemistry Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Beni-Suef University, Beni-Suef 62511, Egypt
Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, Virology Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Beni-Suef University, Beni-Suef 62511, Egypt
Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, Microbiology Department, Virology Division, College of Medicine, Taif University, Al-Taif 21944, Makkah Province, Saudi Arabia
Author contributions: Both authors contributed equally to this work.
Correspondence to: Ahmed S Abdel-Moneim, Professor of Virology, Virology Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Beni-Suef University, Beni-Suef 62511, Egypt. asa@bsu.edu.eg
Telephone: +20-82-2327982 Fax: +20-82-2327982
Received: June 29, 2013 Revised: August 21, 2013
Accepted: September 14, 2013
Published online: November 12, 2013

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the genetic constitution of an escape mutant H5N1 strain and to screen the presence of possible amino acid signatures that could differentiate it from other Egyptian H5N1 strains.

METHODS: Phylogenetic, evolutionary patterns and amino acid signatures of the genes of an escape mutant H5N1 influenza A virus isolated in Egypt on 2009 were analyzed using direct sequencing and multi-sequence alignments.

RESULTS: All the genes of the escape mutant H5N1 strain showed a genetic pattern potentially related to Eurasian lineages. Evolution of phylogenetic trees of different viral genes revealed the absence of reassortment in the escape mutant strain while confirming close relatedness to other H5N1 Egyptian strains from human and avian species. A variety of amino acid substitutions were recorded in different proteins compared to the available Egyptian H5N1 strains. The strain displayed amino acid substitutions in different viral alleles similar to other Egyptian H5N1 strains without showing amino acid signatures that could differentiate the escape mutant from other Egyptian H5N1.

CONCLUSION: The genetic characteristics of avian H5N1 in Egypt revealed evidence of a high possibility of inter-species transmission. No amino acid signatures were found to differentiate the escape mutant H5N1 strain from other Egyptian H5N1 strains.

Key words: Chicken; Genotyping; H5N1; Influenza; Virus evolution

Core tip: The evolution of phylogenetic trees of different viral genes revealed the absence of reassortment in the examined escape mutant H5N1 strain; however, a variety of amino acid substitutions were recorded. The displayed amino acids substitutions in different viral alleles denoted considerable possibility of inter-species transmission, virulence to mammalian species and cytokine resistance.

Hassanin KMA, Abdel-Moneim AS. Evolution of an avian H5N1 influenza A virus escape mutant. *World J Virol* 2013; 2(4): 160-169 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3249/full/v2/i4/160.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5501/wjv.v2.i4.160

INTRODUCTION

The influenza A viruses belong to the Family Orthomyxoviridae. The hemagglutinin (*HA*) and neuraminidase (*NA*) genes encode viral envelope proteins and there are 17 *HA* and 10 *NA* subtypes[1]. Other influenza genes include *PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NS*, *M* and *NP* that encode for viral internal proteins, are required for viral replication and assembly[2] and play an important role in viral infectivity[3]. Reassortments between different influenza A subtypes H9N2 and H5N1 or H7N3 have been detected[4,5]. Interspecies transmission can lead to catastrophic consequences. Egyptian H5N1 viruses are classified as clade

Table 1 Oligonucleotides used for amplification of the *H5N1* genes

Locus	Name	Primer sequence	Length	Amplicon size (bp)	Location	Ref.
N1	N1-F	ATGAATCCAAATCAGAAG	18	1350	21-38	[38]
	N1-R	TGTCAATGGTGAATGGCAAC	20		1346-1365	
PB2	B2-F	GAGGCGATCTGAATTTCG	18	986	1256-1273	[39]
	B2-R	TATGCTAGAGTCCCGTTTCC	20		2222-2241	
PB1	B1F	AGCGAGGAGTATCTGTGAGA	20	601	774-793	[40]
	B1R	TTCCCTCATGATTCGGTGCA	20		1356-1375	
PA	PA-F	ATGAAGAGAGCAGGGCAAGA	20	868	491-510	This study
	PA-R	CAATGGGATACTTCCGCTGT	20		1339-1358	
NP	NP-F	TGCTTGCCTGCTTGTGTGTA	20	665	823-842	[39]
	NP-R	TACTCCTCTGCATTGTCTCCGA	22		1466-1487	
M	M-F	CCCTCAAAGCCGAAATCGCGCA	22	875	56-77	[40]
	M-R	TGCTGTTCCTGCCGATACTCTTCCC	25		906-930	
NS	NS-F	CACTGTGTCAAGCTTTCAGG	20	798	23-42	[39]
	NS-R	TCTCTTGCTCCACTTCAAGC	20		786-805	

2.2.1, which is further subdivided into two groups: A (A1-A5) and B (B1-B2)[6]. The economic consequences, in addition to the zoonotic implications, of highly pathogenic avian influenza virus H5N1 continue to constitute an important problem. According to the recent report of the World Health Organization in June 2013, 628 H5N1 infected cases with 374 fatal consequences were recorded. Egypt is among the countries that contain a very high number of the infected human cases (172) with a total of 62 fatal cases[7]. Endemic situations of H5N1 in Egypt is still an unsolved problem[8]. In Egypt, vaccination of poultry with inactivated vaccine preparations is currently adopted to combat H5N1; however, vaccination of household poultry was suspended in mid 2009 due to the limited impact on H5N1 incidence[8]. In turn, so-called "escape mutants" resulting from antigenic drift of the viruses are selected[9,10]. Escape mutants are known to be less liable to neutralizing antibodies induced by vaccines. Influenza viruses showed a considerable capacity to cross species barriers and to infect and be transmitted among susceptible mammals, including humans. Point mutations and allelic combinations possess a crucial effect on the virulence of HPAI H5N1 isolates and are thought to be polygenic[11,12]. Genetic reassortments among avian influenza viruses are commonly detected in wild bird and poultry isolates[13,14]. The possibility that an avian influenza virus, H5N1, can evolve to human-to-human or mammal-to-mammal transmission through the acquisition of genetic material from the other influenza viruses subtypes already circulating in human or mammals is not weak. The currently studied strain is an escape mutant strain that belongs to 2.2.1, B2 sublineage[10]. The current study aimed to investigate the genetic constitution of the escape mutant strain and compare it with other influenza strains. It also aimed to screen the presence of possible amino acid signatures that could differentiate the escape mutant from other Egyptian H5N1.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Viral RNA extraction and RT PCR

Viral RNA was extracted from the infective allantoic fluid of A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 using a spin column purification kit (Koma Biotech. Inc., South Korea). Amplification of viral genes was performed with gene-specific primers for *PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NP*, *NA*, *M* and *NS* (Table 1) using a Koma one step RT PCR kit (Koma Biotech. Inc., South Korea). Following electrophoresis in a 1.5% agarose gel, bands of expected sizes were excised and purified using a QIAquick gel extraction kit (Qiagen, Germany). Purified amplicons were sequenced in both forward and reverse directions (Macrogen, South Korea). Sequences from different genes were routinely assembled and processed. Sequence data of the current study were submitted to the GenBank after removal of trimming primer-linker (Accession No. KC815941-KC815947).

Genetic and phylogenetic analysis

Sequence analysis of the viral genes was conducted using Mega 4.1 as previously described[15]. Sequence alignments of each of the seven genomic segments were conducted using the partial coding regions. Phylogenetic analyses of the A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 strain in the current study were conducted with other influenza A viruses to screen the possible reassortant allele. All gene sequence data were collected from the National Center for Biotechnology Information flu database. The neighbor-joining method with Kimura two-parameter distances was used for building the phylogenetic trees using the Mega 4.1[15]. The consistency of the internal branches was evaluated by the p-distance substitution model and 1000 bootstrap replications. The influenza A virus genotype tool at http://www.flugenome.org/genotyping.php[16] was used to determine individual genome segment lineages. A number of human, non-human mammalian and avian viruses were included in the evolutionary trees of *PB2, PB1, PA, NP, NA, M* and *NS* genes with selected sequences from different influenza serotypes in the GenBank to investigate relatedness and possible genetic reassortment.

Deduced amino acid sequence analysis

The multisequence alignment tool available in the flu database was used to compare the deduced amino acid

Table 2 Comparison of amino acid signatures in selected genes of avian and human strains to Egyptian H5N1 strains

Gene	Residue	Avian[1]	Human	Egyptian H5N1	A/CK/Egypt/F10/2009
PB2	475	$L^{214}M^{1}$	$M^{839}L^{3}$	$L^{52}M^{2}$	L
	588	$A^{203}/T^{6}/V^{6}$	$I^{835}/V^{3}/A^{2}$	A^{53}/T^{1}	A
	613	V^{212}/A^{3}	$T^{816}/I^{16}/A^{8}/V^{1}$	V^{54}	V
	627	E^{196}/K^{19}	$K^{838}/R^{2}/E^{1}$	K^{48}/E^{6}	K
	674	$A^{204}/S^{6}/T^{2}/G^{2}/E^{1}$	$T^{836}/A^{2}/I^{2}/P^{1}$	A^{54}	A
PB1	327	R^{147}/K^{3}	K^{766}/R^{66}	R^{58}	R
	336	V^{142}/I^{8}	I^{773}/V^{59}	V^{58}	V
PA	225	$S^{213}C^{1}$	$C^{829}S^{10}$	S	S
	268	L^{214}	$I^{827}K^{11}$	L	L
	356	$K^{212}X^{1}R^{1}$	$R^{827}K^{11}$	K	K
	382	$E^{208}D^{5}V^{1}$	$D^{824}E^{11}V^{2}N^{1}$	E	E
	404	A^{214}	$S^{828}A^{9}P^{1}$	A	A
	409	$S^{189}N^{24}I^{1}$	$N^{830}S^{7}I^{1}$	$S^{77}N^{1}$	S
NP	283	L^{372}/P^{1}	L^{7}/P^{643}	L^{61}	L
	293	R^{371}/K^{2}	R^{28}/K^{622}	R^{60}/K^{1}	R
	305	R^{369}/K^{4}	K^{636}/R^{14}	R^{61}	R
	313	$F^{371}/I^{1}/L^{1}$	Y^{642}/F^{8}	F^{61}	F
	357	$Q^{368}/K^{4}/T^{1}$	$K^{44}/R^{8}/Q^{1}$	Q^{61}	Q
	372	$E^{357}/D^{15}/K^{1}$	D^{630}/E^{23}	E^{61}	E
	422	R^{373}	K^{630}/R^{23}	R^{61}	R
	442	T^{372}/A^{1}	$A^{629}/T^{23}/R^{1}$	T^{61}	T
	455	D^{373}	$E^{630}/D^{22}/T^{1}$	D^{60}/E^{1}	D
M1	115	$V^{856}/I^{2}/L^{1}/G^{1}$	I^{981}/V^{9}	V^{88}	V
	121	$T^{840}/A^{19}/P^{1}$	A^{988}/T^{2}	T^{88}	T
	137	$T^{859}/A^{1}/P^{1}$	A^{974}/T^{12}	T^{88}	T
M2	11	$T^{434}/I^{11}/S^{2}$	I^{911}/T^{44}	T^{90}	T
	20	S^{471}/N^{13}	N^{926}/S^{29}	S^{90}	S
	57	$Y^{481}/C^{1}/H^{1}$	$H^{913}/Y^{33}/R^{2}/Q^{1}$	Y^{90}	Y
NS2	70	$S^{453}/G^{21}/D^{1}$	G^{903}/S^{2}	S^{61}	S

[1]Avian and human amino acid signatures in different viral genes of influenza A viruses as previously determined[20]. Numerical superscripts refer to the number of strains that possess those residues.

Table 3 Amino acid site residues associated with virulence in mammals in comparison with Egyptian isolates

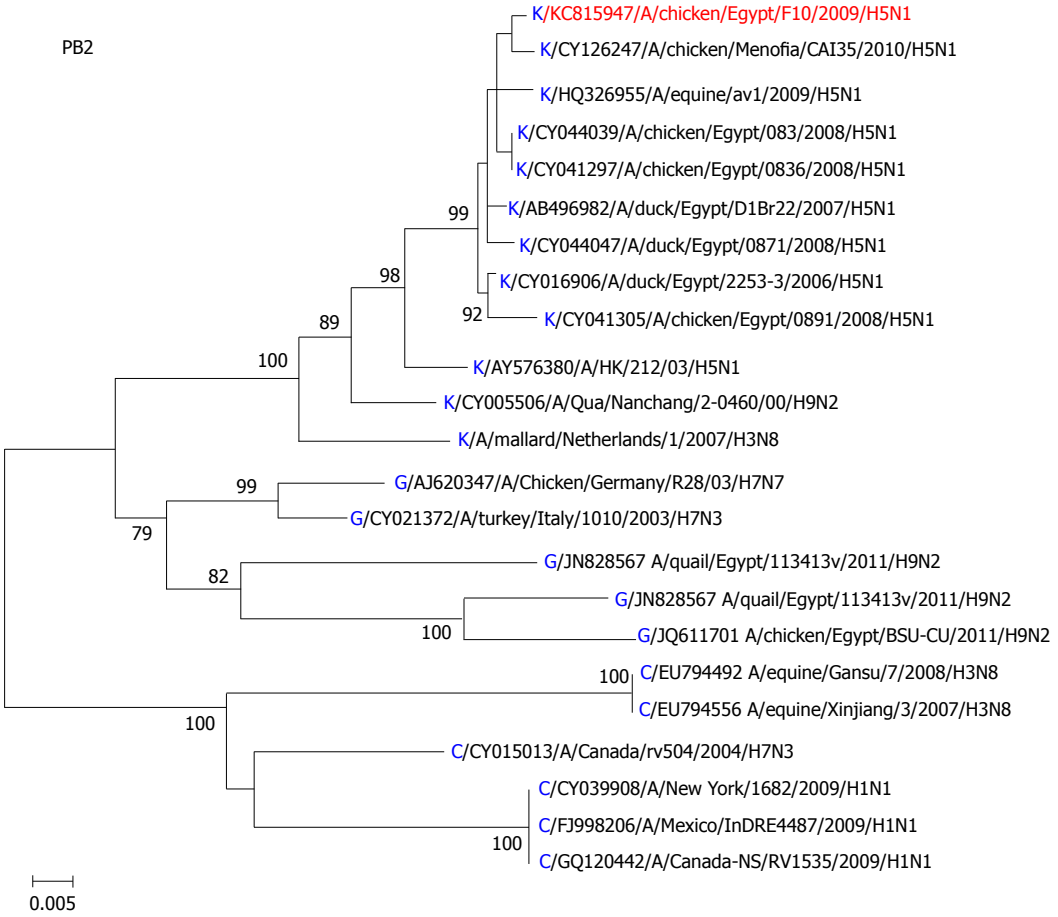
Gene	Site	Residue[1]		Egyptian	A/CK/	Ref.
		Virulent	Avirulent	H5N1 isolates	Eg/F10/09	
PB2	627	K	E	K	K	[11,27]
	701	N	D	D	D	[28]
PB1	317	I	M/V	M/V	M	[11,27]
PA	127	I	V	V	N.I.[2]	[25]
	336	M	L	L	L	[25]
M2	64	S/A/F	P	S	L	[17]
	69	P	L	P	P	[17]
NS1	42	S	A/P	S	S	[29]
	92	E	D	D	D	[27]
	97/92	E	D	E	E	[23]
	127	N	T/D/R/V/A	T/I	I	[30]
	189	N	D/G	D	D	[25]
	195	T/Y	S	S	S	[31]
NS2	31	I	M	M	M	[25]
	56	Y	H/L	H	H	[25]

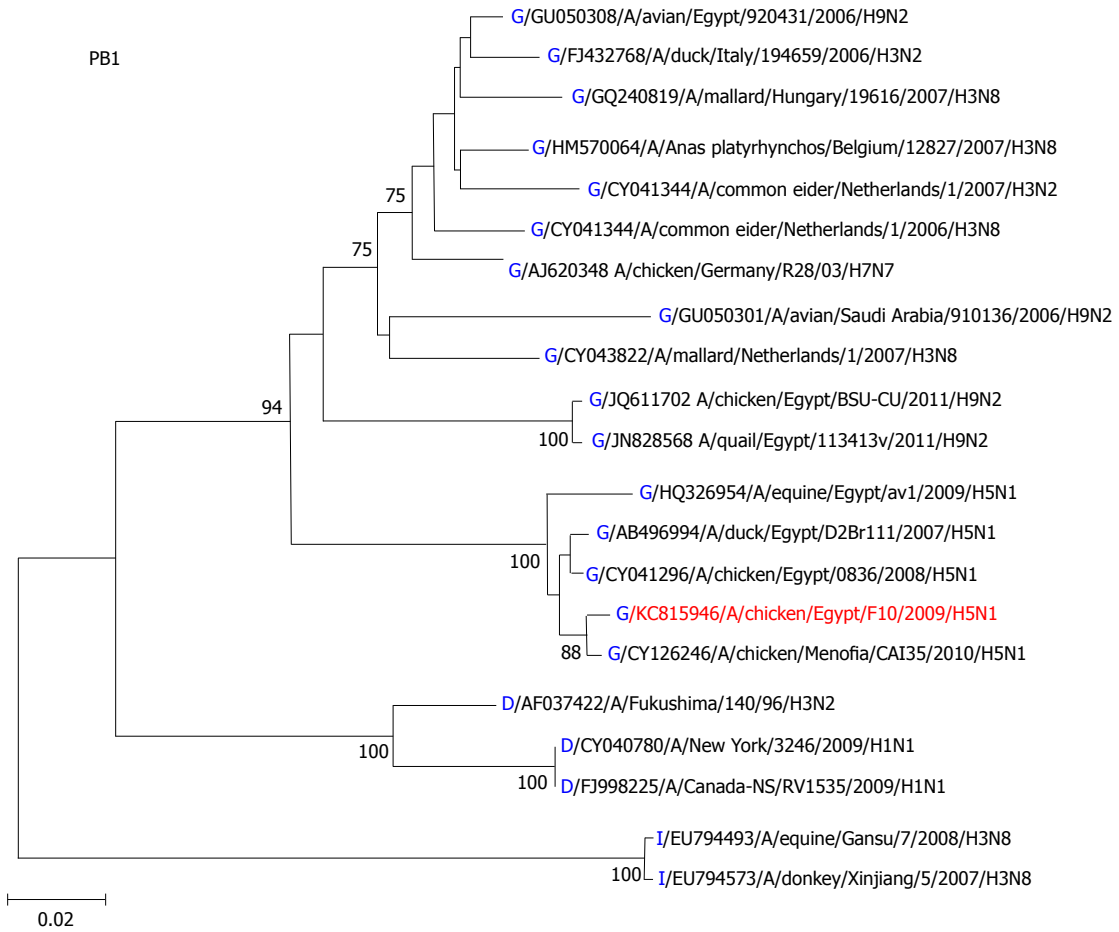
[1]Virulent and non virulent amino acid residues refer to the ability of the virus to replicate in mammals as determined by Lycett *et al*[17]. [2]N.I.: Not included since it is not flanked by the primers used in the current study.

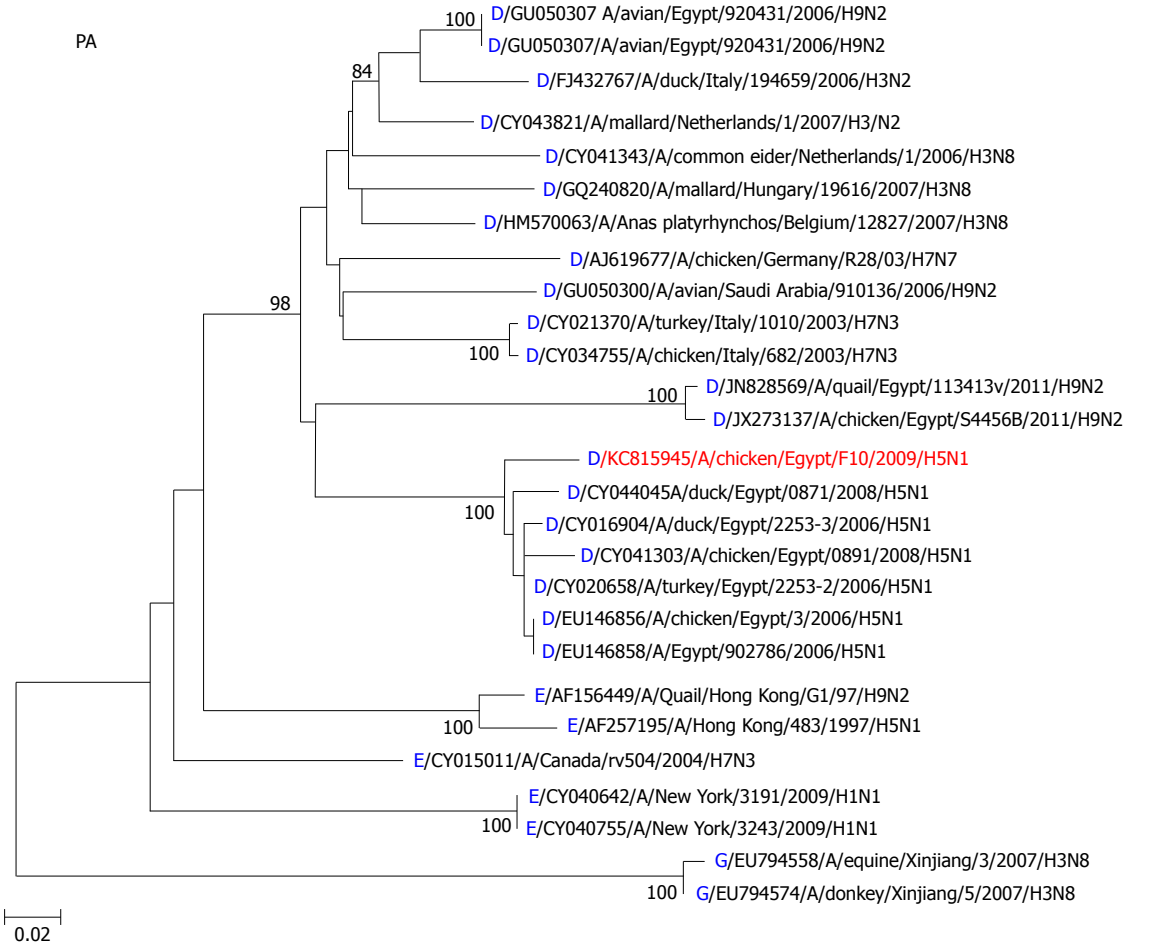
sequences of the seven genes of the A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 strain with other H5N1 strains from the Egyptian H5N1 isolates available in the flu database in order to screen amino acid signature and mutation trend change. Amino acid residues that have associated with mammalian virulence were also screened.

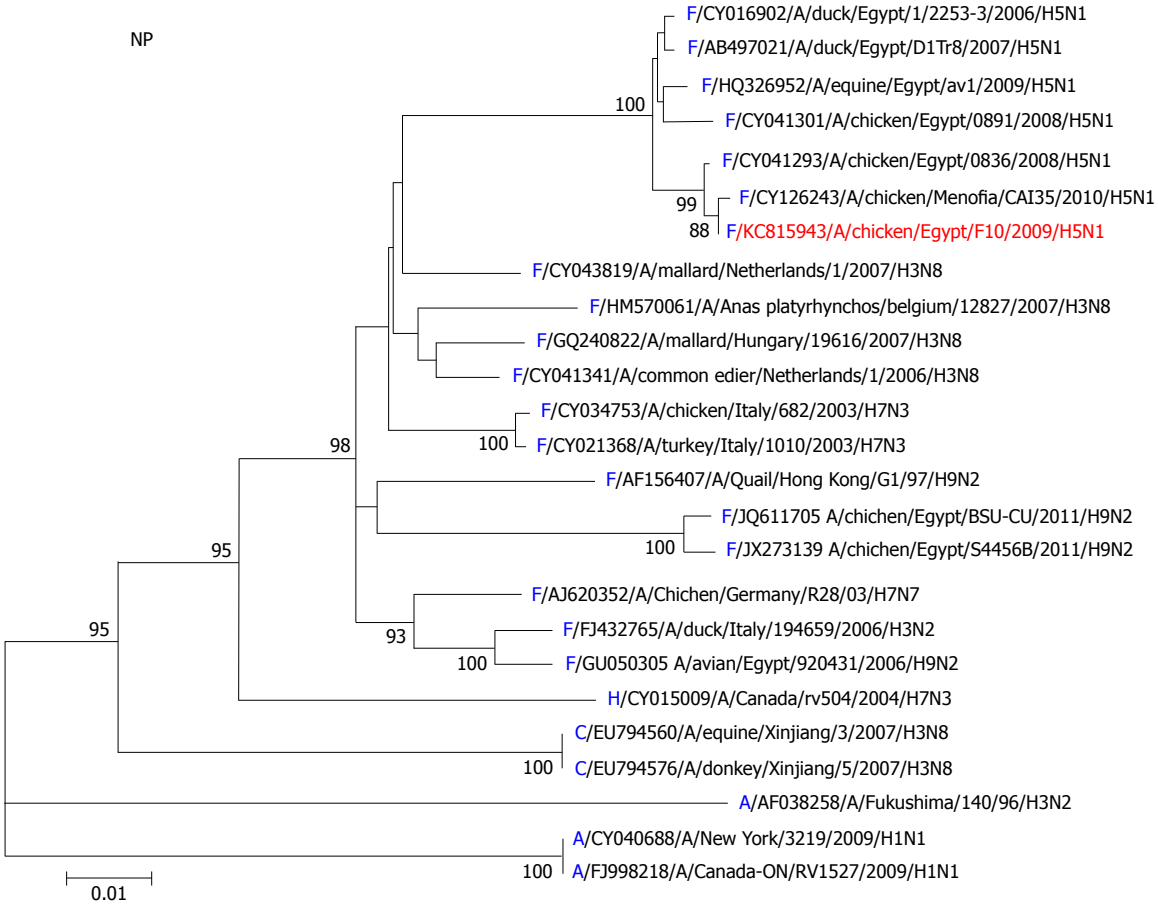
RESULTS

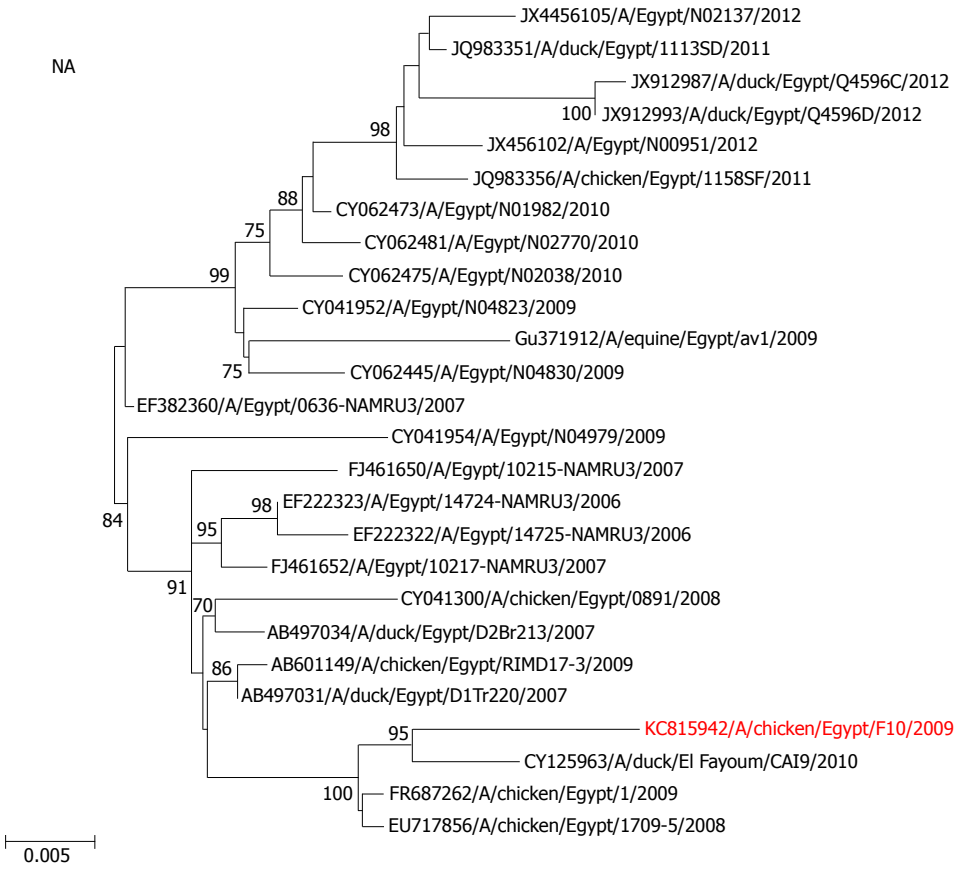
A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 in the current study is related to B2 sublineage. Eight amino acid substitutions were found in the F10 strain at the amino acid positions P74S, D 97N, H110R, S123P, R140G, F144Y, N165H and A184E. The different alleles of the F10 isolate were located within subtrees of the majority of the Egyptian strains (Figure 1). The influenza genotyping web tool revealed that the alleles of the F10, *PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NP*, *NA*, *M* and *NS* alleles, are related to K, G, D, F, 1J, F and 1E genotypes respectively. Analysis of the *NA* gene revealed the presence of the 20-amino acid deletion (data not shown) and the presence of amino acid arginine (R) at position 110. The 228 (N to S) substitution is also present in the F10. The six internal genes (*PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NP*, *M* and *NS*) of A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 showed avian like amino acid signatures (Table 2). The polymorphic amino acid residues in different protein sequences of the Egyptian human and avian strains in comparison to the current escape mutant strain were screened and the residues were classified as virulent or nonvirulent (Table 3). Five virulent residues were detected in the avian H5N1 strains in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (S64, P69) and *NS1* (S42, E92/97); however, F10 showed only 4 virulent residues

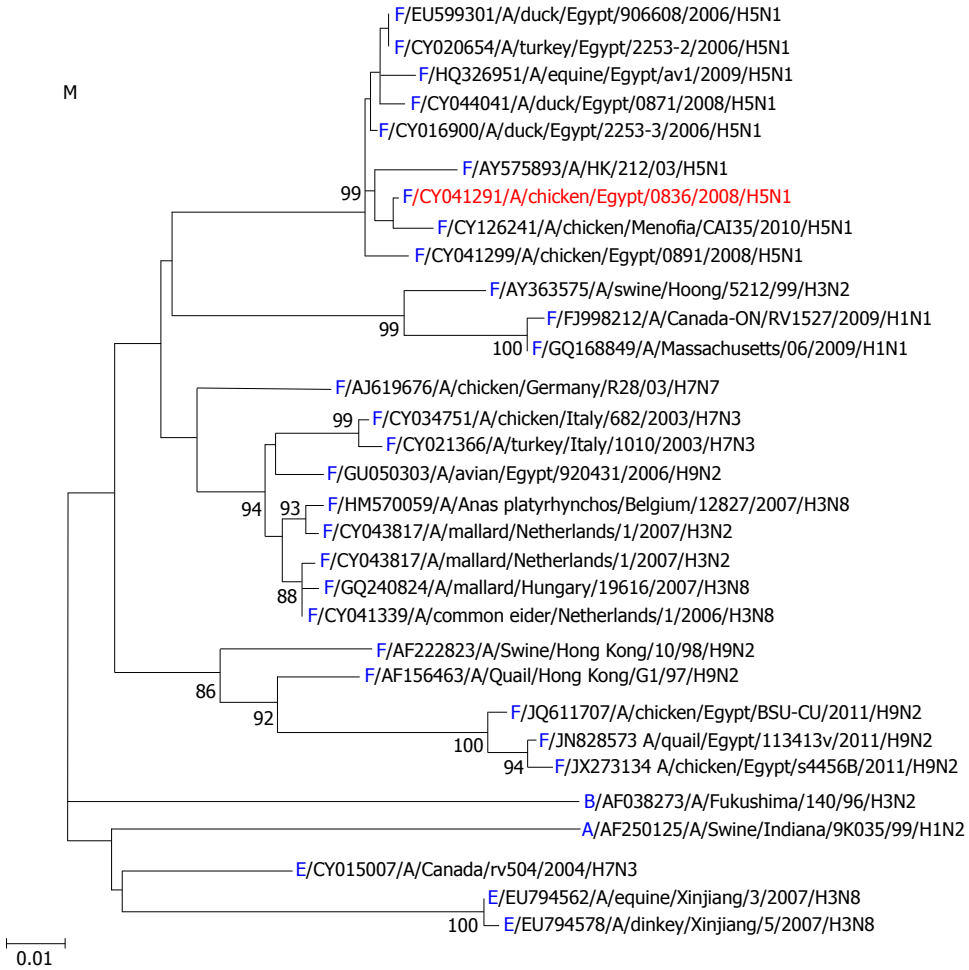

PB2
K/KC815947/A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009/H5N1
K/CY126247/A/chicken/Menofia/CAI35/2010/H5N1
K/HQ326955/A/equine/av1/2009/H5N1
K/CY044039/A/chicken/Egypt/083/2008/H5N1
K/CY041297/A/chicken/Egypt/0836/2008/H5N1
99
K/AB496982/A/duck/Egypt/D1Br22/2007/H5N1
K/CY044047/A/duck/Egypt/0871/2008/H5N1
98
K/CY016906/A/duck/Egypt/2253-3/2006/H5N1
92
K/CY041305/A/chicken/Egypt/0891/2008/H5N1
89
100
K/AY576380/A/HK/212/03/H5N1
K/CY005506/A/Qua/Nanchang/2-0460/00/H9N2
K/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N8
99
G/AJ620347/A/Chicken/Germany/R28/03/H7N7
G/CY021372/A/turkey/Italy/1010/2003/H7N3
79
G/JN828567 A/quail/Egypt/113413v/2011/H9N2
82
G/JN828567 A/quail/Egypt/113413v/2011/H9N2
100
G/JQ611701 A/chicken/Egypt/BSU-CU/2011/H9N2
100
C/EU794492 A/equine/Gansu/7/2008/H3N8
C/EU794556 A/equine/Xinjiang/3/2007/H3N8
100
C/CY015013/A/Canada/rv504/2004/H7N3
C/CY039908/A/New York/1682/2009/H1N1
C/FJ998206/A/Mexico/InDRE4487/2009/H1N1
100
C/GQ120442/A/Canada-NS/RV1535/2009/H1N1
0.005


PB1
G/GU050308/A/avian/Egypt/920431/2006/H9N2
G/FJ432768/A/duck/Italy/194659/2006/H3N2
G/GQ240819/A/mallard/Hungary/19616/2007/H3N8
G/HM570064/A/Anas platyrhynchos/Belgium/12827/2007/H3N8
75
G/CY041344/A/common eider/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N2
G/CY041344/A/common eider/Netherlands/1/2006/H3N8
75
G/AJ620348 A/chicken/Germany/R28/03/H7N7
G/GU050301/A/avian/Saudi Arabia/910136/2006/H9N2
G/CY043822/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N8
94
G/JQ611702 A/chicken/Egypt/BSU-CU/2011/H9N2
100
G/JN828568 A/quail/Egypt/113413v/2011/H9N2
G/HQ326954/A/equine/Egypt/av1/2009/H5N1
G/AB496994/A/duck/Egypt/D2Br111/2007/H5N1
100
G/CY041296/A/chicken/Egypt/0836/2008/H5N1
G/KC815946/A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009/H5N1
88
G/CY126246/A/chicken/Menofia/CAI35/2010/H5N1
D/AF037422/A/Fukushima/140/96/H3N2
100
D/CY040780/A/New York/3246/2009/H1N1
100
D/FJ998225/A/Canada-NS/RV1535/2009/H1N1
I/EU794493/A/equine/Gansu/7/2008/H3N8
100
I/EU794573/A/donkey/Xinjiang/5/2007/H3N8
0.02


PA
D/GU050307 A/avian/Egypt/920431/2006/H9N2
D/GU050307/A/avian/Egypt/920431/2006/H9N2
D/FJ432767/A/duck/Italy/194659/2006/H3N2
D/CY043821/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3/N2
D/CY041343/A/common eider/Netherlands/1/2006/H3N8
D/GQ240820/A/mallard/Hungary/19616/2007/H3N8
D/HM570063/A/Anas platyrhynchos/Belgium/12827/2007/H3N8
D/AJ619677/A/chicken/Germany/R28/03/H7N7
D/GU050300/A/avian/Saudi Arabia/910136/2006/H9N2
D/CY021370/A/turkey/Italy/1010/2003/H7N3
D/CY034755/A/chicken/Italy/682/2003/H7N3
D/JN828569/A/quail/Egypt/113413v/2011/H9N2
D/JX273137/A/chicken/Egypt/S4456B/2011/H9N2
D/KC815945/A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009/H5N1
D/CY044045A/duck/Egypt/0871/2008/H5N1
D/CY016904/A/duck/Egypt/2253-3/2006/H5N1
D/CY041303/A/chicken/Egypt/0891/2008/H5N1
D/CY020658/A/turkey/Egypt/2253-2/2006/H5N1
D/EU146856/A/chicken/Egypt/3/2006/H5N1
D/EU146858/A/Egypt/902786/2006/H5N1
E/AF156449/A/Quail/Hong Kong/G1/97/H9N2
E/AF257195/A/Hong Kong/483/1997/H5N1
E/CY015011/A/Canada/rv504/2004/H7N3
E/CY040642/A/New York/3191/2009/H1N1
E/CY040755/A/New York/3243/2009/H1N1
G/EU794558/A/equine/Xinjiang/3/2007/H3N8
G/EU794574/A/donkey/Xinjiang/5/2007/H3N8
100
84
98
100
100
100
100
100
0.02


NP
F/CY016902/A/duck/Egypt/1/2253-3/2006/H5N1
F/AB497021/A/duck/Egypt/D1Tr8/2007/H5N1
F/HQ326952/A/equine/Egypt/av1/2009/H5N1
F/CY041301/A/chicken/Egypt/0891/2008/H5N1
F/CY041293/A/chicken/Egypt/0836/2008/H5N1
F/CY126243/A/chicken/Menofia/CAI35/2010/H5N1
F/KC815943/A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009/H5N1
F/CY043819/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N8
F/HM570061/A/Anas platyrhynchos/belgium/12827/2007/H3N8
F/GQ240822/A/mallard/Hungary/19616/2007/H3N8
F/CY041341/A/common edier/Netherlands/1/2006/H3N8
F/CY034753/A/chicken/Italy/682/2003/H7N3
F/CY021368/A/turkey/Italy/1010/2003/H7N3
F/AF156407/A/Quail/Hong Kong/G1/97/H9N2
F/JQ611705 A/chichen/Egypt/BSU-CU/2011/H9N2
F/JX273139 A/chichen/Egypt/S4456B/2011/H9N2
F/AJ620352/A/Chichen/Germany/R28/03/H7N7
F/FJ432765/A/duck/Italy/194659/2006/H3N2
F/GU050305 A/avian/Egypt/920431/2006/H9N2
H/CY015009/A/Canada/rv504/2004/H7N3
C/EU794560/A/equine/Xinjiang/3/2007/H3N8
C/EU794576/A/donkey/Xinjiang/5/2007/H3N8
A/AF038258/A/Fukushima/140/96/H3N2
A/CY040688/A/New York/3219/2009/H1N1
A/FJ998218/A/Canada-ON/RV1527/2009/H1N1
100
99
88
98
100
95
100
95
93
100
100
0.01


NA
JX4456105/A/Egypt/N02137/2012
JQ983351/A/duck/Egypt/1113SD/2011
JX912987/A/duck/Egypt/Q4596C/2012
JX912993/A/duck/Egypt/Q4596D/2012
JX456102/A/Egypt/N00951/2012
JQ983356/A/chicken/Egypt/1158SF/2011
CY062473/A/Egypt/N01982/2010
CY062481/A/Egypt/N02770/2010
CY062475/A/Egypt/N02038/2010
CY041952/A/Egypt/N04823/2009
Gu371912/A/equine/Egypt/av1/2009
CY062445/A/Egypt/N04830/2009
EF382360/A/Egypt/0636-NAMRU3/2007
CY041954/A/Egypt/N04979/2009
FJ461650/A/Egypt/10215-NAMRU3/2007
EF222323/A/Egypt/14724-NAMRU3/2006
EF222322/A/Egypt/14725-NAMRU3/2006
FJ461652/A/Egypt/10217-NAMRU3/2007
CY041300/A/chicken/Egypt/0891/2008
AB497034/A/duck/Egypt/D2Br213/2007
AB601149/A/chicken/Egypt/RIMD17-3/2009
AB497031/A/duck/Egypt/D1Tr220/2007
KC815942/A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009
CY125963/A/duck/El Fayoum/CAI9/2010
FR687262/A/chicken/Egypt/1/2009
EU717856/A/chicken/Egypt/1709-5/2008
98
100
98
88
75
99
75
84
98
95
91
70
86
95
100
0.005


M
F/EU599301/A/duck/Egypt/906608/2006/H5N1
F/CY020654/A/turkey/Egypt/2253-2/2006/H5N1
F/HQ326951/A/equine/Egypt/av1/2009/H5N1
F/CY044041/A/duck/Egypt/0871/2008/H5N1
F/CY016900/A/duck/Egypt/2253-3/2006/H5N1
F/AY575893/A/HK/212/03/H5N1
F/CY041291/A/chicken/Egypt/0836/2008/H5N1
F/CY126241/A/chicken/Menofia/CAI35/2010/H5N1
F/CY041299/A/chicken/Egypt/0891/2008/H5N1
F/AY363575/A/swine/Hoong/5212/99/H3N2
F/FJ998212/A/Canada-ON/RV1527/2009/H1N1
F/GQ168849/A/Massachusetts/06/2009/H1N1
F/AJ619676/A/chicken/Germany/R28/03/H7N7
F/CY034751/A/chicken/Italy/682/2003/H7N3
F/CY021366/A/turkey/Italy/1010/2003/H7N3
F/GU050303/A/avian/Egypt/920431/2006/H9N2
F/HM570059/A/Anas platyrhynchos/Belgium/12827/2007/H3N8
F/CY043817/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N2
F/CY043817/A/mallard/Netherlands/1/2007/H3N2
F/GQ240824/A/mallard/Hungary/19616/2007/H3N8
F/CY041339/A/common eider/Netherlands/1/2006/H3N8
F/AF222823/A/Swine/Hong Kong/10/98/H9N2
F/AF156463/A/Quail/Hong Kong/G1/97/H9N2
F/JQ611707/A/chicken/Egypt/BSU-CU/2011/H9N2
F/JN828573 A/quail/Egypt/113413v/2011/H9N2
F/JX273134 A/chicken/Egypt/s4456B/2011/H9N2
B/AF038273/A/Fukushima/140/96/H3N2
A/AF250125/A/Swine/Indiana/9K035/99/H1N2
E/CY015007/A/Canada/rv504/2004/H7N3
E/EU794562/A/equine/Xinjiang/3/2007/H3N8
E/EU794578/A/dinkey/Xinjiang/5/2007/H3N8
99
99
100
99
94
93
88
86
92
100
94
100
0.01

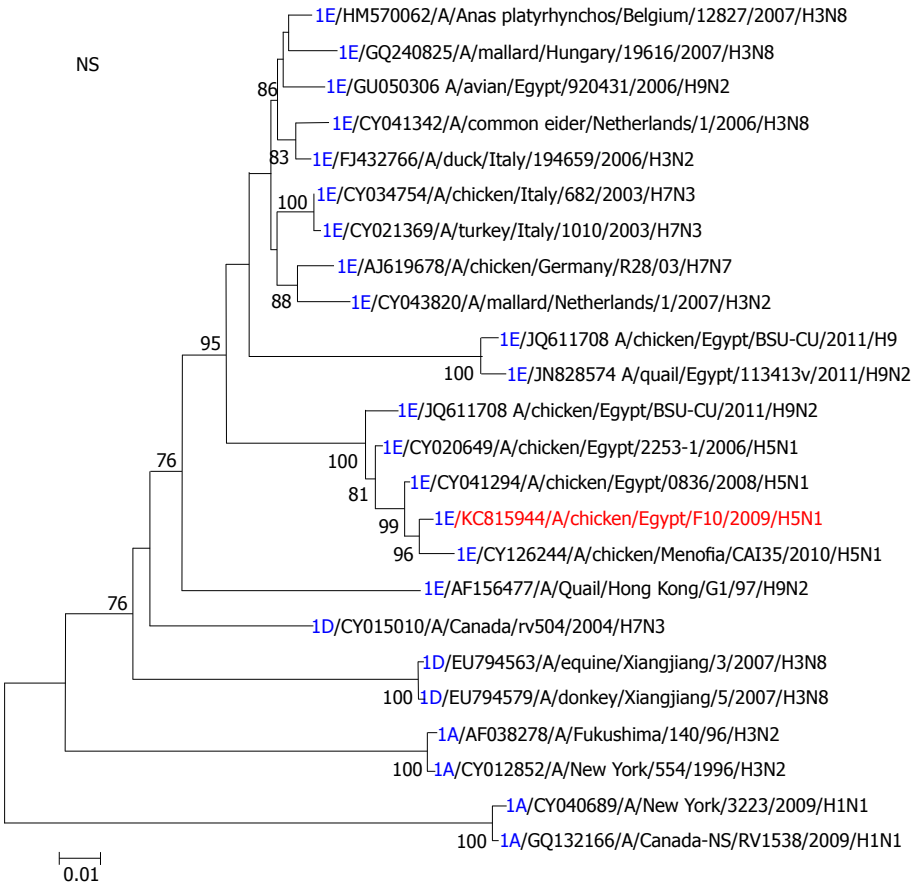


Figure 1 Phylogenetics of the viral genes of escape mutant H5N1 compared to selected influenza viruses. Escape mutant F10 strain examined in the current study was marked by a red color. The selected viruses were chosen to be representative from relevant sequences in GenBank database: H5N1 strains representative to the major gene lineages. Serotypes H1N1, H1N2, H3N2, H3N8, H7N3, H7N7 and H9N2 were also included in the phylogenetic trees of PB2, PB1, PA, NP, M and NS. For NA, Egyptian N1 sequences from Egyptian H5N1 strains were the only included sequences. The robustness of the individual nodes of the tree was assessed using a bootstrap of 1000 resembling in percent (70% and higher). Influenza A virus genotype tool (http://www.flugenome.org/ genotyping.php) was used to determine individual gene segment lineage. The genotype of each strain was mentioned in a blue color in the phylogenetic trees of PB2, PB1, PA, NP, M and NS.

in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (P69) and *NS1* (S42, E92/97). The mutation of aspartic acid (D) to glutamic acid (E) at position 92 (97 in strains with 5 amino acids deletion) was observed in this study in the F10 and also in other Egyptian H5N1 strains (Table 3). *PB2* of all Egyptian strains, including avian, mammalian isolates, possessed K627 (Table 3). F10 possessed virulent amino acid substitutions in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (P69) and *NS1* (S42, E97). All the detected virulent residues are also found in the other Egyptian H5N1 strains. Interestingly, all the Egyptian H5N1 strains possess virulent residue S64 in M2 protein while F10 possessed non virulent residue (L64) (Table 3). The *NS1* gene of F10 and other H5N1 Egyptian strains harbored L103F and I106M amino substitutions. The Egyptian H5N1 strains also possessed such amino acid substitutions (data not shown). Egyptian avian H5N1 strains including F10 possessed two human specific residues, E14 and R18 (data not shown).

DISCUSSION

Previous studies revealed that the *HA* genes from H5N1 Egyptian isolates were subjected to cumulative genetic drifts that resulted in further classification of the Egyptian strains into two sublineages [A(A1-A5) and B(B1-B5)][10]. A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 in the current study is related to the B2 sublineage. Eight amino acid substitutions were found in the Egyptian variants in lineage B, including the F10 strain at the amino acid positions P74S, D 97N, H110R, S123P, R140G, F144Y, N165H and A184E[10]. The deduced amino acid exchanges, as with most H5N1 Egyptian strains, showed polybasic cleavage motif consensus for clade 2.2 viruses, PGERRRKKR/GLF, while the consensus of 2.2, F10 PQGEGRRKKR/GLF, showed (R325G) substitution[10] with unknown significance. Lycett *et al*[17] specified 6 amino acid residues (86V, 124S, L/N138, T/S156, E/R212, T263) that are linked to the virulence of H5N1 in mammals. T156 and T263 were also present in F10 hemagglutinin[10].

In the current study, the different alleles of the F10 isolate were located within subtrees of the majority of the Egyptian strains. The influenza genotyping web tool revealed that the alleles of the F10, *PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NP*, *NA*, *M* and *NS* alleles, are Eurasian in origin and related to K, G, D, F, 1J, F and 1E genotypes respectively[16].

Analysis of the *NA* gene revealed the presence of

the 20-amino acid deletion, a feature that is frequently observed during the process of adaptation of influenza viruses to poultry that are found to enhance the pathogenesis in chickens. The presence of amino acid arginine (R) at position 110 and the amino acid deletion in the *NA* are characteristic of clade 2.2 viruses[18]. The 228 (N to S) substitution is also present in the F10 and is an indication of 2.2.1 virus. Four *NA* mutations, E119G, H274Y, R292K and N294S, have been reported to confer resistance to *NA* inhibitors[19] but none were detected in the F10 isolate.

Chen *et al*[20] detected amino acid signatures specific to avian and human influenza A viruses. The six internal genes (*PB2*, *PB1*, *PA*, *NP*, *M* and *NS*) of A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009 and most of Egyptian H5N1 strains showed avian like amino acid signatures.

Identification of the host range-specific amino acids could assume the functional sites that may mediate a host range. In a previous report, the amino acid sequences of the internal proteins in the Hong Kong poultry H5N1 viruses have been compared with those of other avian and human viruses[21]. The polymorphic amino acid residues in different protein sequences of the Egyptian human and avian strains, in comparison to the current escape mutant strain, were screened and the residues were classified as virulent or nonvirulent; such residues have functional significance for virulence in H5N1 to mammals[17]. Five virulent residues were detected in the avian H5N1 strains in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (S64, P69) and *NS1* (S42, E92/97); however, F10 showed only 4 virulent residues in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (P69) and *NS1* (S42, E92/97). An association between glutamic acid (E) at position 92 of the NS1 protein and resistance of H5N1 virus to interferons and TNF-α has been reported[22]. The mutation of aspartic acid (D) to glutamic acid (E) at position 92 (97 in strains with 5 amino acids deletion)[23] was observed in this study in the F10 and also in other Egyptian H5N1 strains. However, Seo *et al*[22] 2004 reported that this substitution possesses low impact in the virulence in mammals. E627K substitution in the PB2 protein is one of the genetic indicators for the adaptation and efficient replication in humans[24,25]. The temperature sensitivity of the virus and the efficacy of viral replication depend on the amino acid residue 627 of PB2. Viruses showing K627 displayed higher activity of the polymerase complex during viral replication at a lower temperature in comparison to viruses displaying E627[26]. Efficient virus replication may explain the wide host range of subtype H5N1 strains and their high virulence[26]. The PB2 of all Egyptian strains, including avian and mammalian isolates, possessed K627.

We have compared the amino acid residues associated with H5N1 virulence in mammals[11,17,23,25,27-31] to their corresponding residues in the A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009. F10 possessed virulent amino acid substitutions in *PB2* (K627), *M2* (P69) and *NS1* (S42, E97). All the detected virulent residues are also found in the other Egyptian H5N1 strains. Interestingly, all the Egyptian H5N1 strains possess virulent residue S64 in the M2 protein, while F10 possessed non virulent residue (L64). P42S and D97E amino acid substitutions in the NS1 are responsible for the virulence of H5N1 in mammalian species and cytokine resistance[22]. In addition, amino acid substitutions L103F and I106M were found to be adaptive genetic determinants for growth and virulence in the NS1 gene of both mammals and avian[32]; F10 and other H5N1 Egyptian strain harbored these amino substitutions. The G184 that was detected in F10 and other H5N1 Egyptian strains contributes to the cleavage and the polyadenylation specificity factor binding and strongly affected the viral virulence[33].

Amantadine resistance is associated with one of the following M2 residues: 26, 27, 30, 31, 34, or 38[34,35]; however, the Egyptian H5N1 strains did possess such amino acid substitutions. Human, swine and avian specific M2 residues were determined[36]. Egyptian avian H5N1 strains, including F10, possessed two human specific residues, E14 and R18[36,37].

The genetic characteristics of the H5N1 virus isolates from chicken in Egypt provided evidence of a high possibility of inter-species transmission. The examined escape mutant H5N1 strain carried no clear amino acid signatures from other Egyptian H5N1 strains.

COMMENTS

Background

Avian influenza viruses showed considerable capacity to cross species barriers to infect susceptible mammals, including humans. Point mutations and reassortment possess a crucial effect on the virulence of HPAI H5N1. Escape mutants resulting from antigenic drift of the viruses were selected under vaccination. The current study aimed to investigate whether the escape mutant strain (A/chicken/Egypt/F10/2009) possesses reassortant genes or amino acid signatures that differentiate it from other classical strains.

Research frontiers

The high error-prone replication of influenza viruses and vaccination pressure unequivocally enhance the robustness of mutation capacity of the influenza viruses. The amino acid signatures of the escape mutant strains have not been addressed. In this study, the authors demonstrate the genetic constitution of the escape mutant strain and the possible amino acid signatures that could differentiate the escape mutant from other Egyptian H5N1.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Recent reports have highlighted critical amino acid substitutions in different alleles of influenza viruses that are associated with virulence to mammals. Amino acid signatures specific to avian and human influenza A viruses were also determined in previous reports. This study reported the presence of different amino acids substitutions in different alleles related to virulence to mammals; however, it failed to find the presence of prominent amino acid signatures in the examined escape mutant strain.

Applications

By understanding the amino acid substitutions in H5N1 escape mutants, its impact on virulence to mammals and how it could be accelerated under vaccination pressure, the avian influenza control procedure method based on vaccination should be reevaluated.

Terminology

Mutation at the *HA* epitope region is among the strategies the influenza virus uses to escape the immune system and represents the most important hindrance to vaccine development. Meanwhile, mutations in the other viral alleles play a crucial role in modulating virus pathogenicity to the original hosts and inter-species transmission to mammalian species, including humans.

Peer review

The authors studied the genetic constitution of the escape mutant H5N1 strain

in comparison with other influenza viral strains. Possible amino acid signatures were explored for identification of the escape mutant from other Egyptian H5N1 and different proteins with amino acid substitutions were also recorded compared to the available Egyptian H5N1 strains. The paper's scientific content is original and of good quality as a research article.

REFERENCES

1 **Tong S**, Li Y, Rivailler P, Conrardy C, Castillo DA, Chen LM, Recuenco S, Ellison JA, Davis CT, York IA, Turmelle AS, Moran D, Rogers S, Shi M, Tao Y, Weil MR, Tang K, Rowe LA, Sammons S, Xu X, Frace M, Lindblade KA, Cox NJ, Anderson LJ, Rupprecht CE, Donis RO. A distinct lineage of influenza A virus from bats. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 4269-4274 [PMID: 22371588 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1116200109]

2 **Snyder MH**, Buckler-White AJ, London WT, Tierney EL, Murphy BR. The avian influenza virus nucleoprotein gene and a specific constellation of avian and human virus polymerase genes each specify attenuation of avian-human influenza A/Pintail/79 reassortant viruses for monkeys. *J Virol* 1987; **61**: 2857-2863 [PMID: 2441080]

3 **Guan Y**, Peiris JS, Lipatov AS, Ellis TM, Dyrting KC, Krauss S, Zhang LJ, Webster RG, Shortridge KF. Emergence of multiple genotypes of H5N1 avian influenza viruses in Hong Kong SAR. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2002; **99**: 8950-8955 [PMID: 12077307 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.132268999]

4 **Guan Y**, Shortridge KF, Krauss S, Chin PS, Dyrting KC, Ellis TM, Webster RG, Peiris M. H9N2 influenza viruses possessing H5N1-like internal genomes continue to circulate in poultry in southeastern China. *J Virol* 2000; **74**: 9372-9380 [PMID: 11000205 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.74.20.9372-9380.2000]

5 **Iqbal M**, Yaqub T, Reddy K, McCauley JW. Novel genotypes of H9N2 influenza A viruses isolated from poultry in Pakistan containing NS genes similar to highly pathogenic H7N3 and H5N1 viruses. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e5788 [PMID: 19517011 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0005788]

6 **Abdel-Moneim AS**, Shany SA, Fereidouni SR, Eid BT, el-Kady MF, Starick E, Harder T, Keil GM. Sequence diversity of the haemagglutinin open reading frame of recent highly pathogenic avian influenza H5N1 isolates from Egypt. *Arch Virol* 2009; **154**: 1559-1562 [PMID: 19669616]

7 Cumulative number of confirmed human cases for avian influenza A (H5N1) reported to WHO. World Health Organization; 2013 Jun 4. Available from: URL: http: //www.who.int/influenza/human_animal_interface/H5N1_cumulative_table_archives/en/

8 Emergency Prevention System, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations-Global early Warning System. 2010. H5N1 HPAI global overview, vol 3: p 1-8. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy

9 **Swayne DE**, Kapczynski D. Strategies and challenges for eliciting immunity against avian influenza virus in birds. *Immunol Rev* 2008; **225**: 314-331 [PMID: 18837791 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00668.x]

10 **Abdel-Moneim AS**, Afifi MA, El-Kady MF. Genetic drift evolution under vaccination pressure among H5N1 Egyptian isolates. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 283 [PMID: 21651796 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-283]

11 **Chen H**, Bright RA, Subbarao K, Smith C, Cox NJ, Katz JM, Matsuoka Y. Polygenic virulence factors involved in pathogenesis of 1997 Hong Kong H5N1 influenza viruses in mice. *Virus Res* 2007; **128**: 159-163 [PMID: 17521765 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2007.04.017]

12 **Govorkova EA**, Rehg JE, Krauss S, Yen HL, Guan Y, Peiris M, Nguyen TD, Hanh TH, Puthavathana P, Long HT, Buranathai C, Lim W, Webster RG, Hoffmann E. Lethality to ferrets of H5N1 influenza viruses isolated from humans and poultry in 2004. *J Virol* 2005; **79**: 2191-2198 [PMID: 15681421 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.79.4.2191-2198.2005]

13 **Dugan VG**, Chen R, Spiro DJ, Sengamalay N, Zaborsky J, Ghedin E, Nolting J, Swayne DE, Runstadler JA, Happ GM, Senne DA, Wang R, Slemons RD, Holmes EC, Taubenberger JK. The evolutionary genetics and emergence of avian influenza viruses in wild birds. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e1000076 [PMID: 18516303 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000076]

14 **Macken CA**, Webby RJ, Bruno WJ. Genotype turnover by reassortment of replication complex genes from avian influenza A virus. *J Gen Virol* 2006; **87**: 2803-2815 [PMID: 16963738 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.81454-0]

15 **Kumar S**, Tamura K, Jakobsen IB, Nei M. MEGA2: molecular evolutionary genetics analysis software. *Bioinformatics* 2001; **17**: 1244-1245 [PMID: 11751241 DOI: 10.1093/bioinformatics/17.12.1244]

16 **Lu G**, Rowley T, Garten R, Donis RO. FluGenome: a web tool for genotyping influenza A virus. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2007; **35**: W275-W279 [PMID: 17537820 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkm365]

17 **Lycett SJ**, Ward MJ, Lewis FI, Poon AF, Kosakovsky Pond SL, Brown AJ. Detection of mammalian virulence determinants in highly pathogenic avian influenza H5N1 viruses: multivariate analysis of published data. *J Virol* 2009; **83**: 9901-9910 [PMID: 19625397 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00608-09]

18 **Chen H**, Smith GJ, Li KS, Wang J, Fan XH, Rayner JM, Vijaykrishna D, Zhang JX, Zhang LJ, Guo CT, Cheung CL, Xu KM, Duan L, Huang K, Qin K, Leung YH, Wu WL, Lu HR, Chen Y, Xia NS, Naipospos TS, Yuen KY, Hassan SS, Bahri S, Nguyen TD, Webster RG, Peiris JS, Guan Y. Establishment of multiple sublineages of H5N1 influenza virus in Asia: implications for pandemic control. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 2845-2850 [PMID: 16473931 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0511120103]

19 **Yen HL**, Ilyushina NA, Salomon R, Hoffmann E, Webster RG, Govorkova EA. Neuraminidase inhibitor-resistant recombinant A/Vietnam/1203/04 (H5N1) influenza viruses retain their replication efficiency and pathogenicity in vitro and in vivo. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 12418-12426 [PMID: 17855542 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01067-07]

20 **Chen GW**, Chang SC, Mok CK, Lo YL, Kung YN, Huang JH, Shih YH, Wang JY, Chiang C, Chen CJ, Shih SR. Genomic signatures of human versus avian influenza A viruses. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2006; **12**: 1353-1360 [PMID: 17073083 DOI: 10.3201/eid1209.060276]

21 **Zhou NN**, Shortridge KF, Claas EC, Krauss SL, Webster RG. Rapid evolution of H5N1 influenza viruses in chickens in Hong Kong. *J Virol* 1999; **73**: 3366-3374 [PMID: 10074191]

22 **Seo SH**, Hoffmann E, Webster RG. The NS1 gene of H5N1 influenza viruses circumvents the host anti-viral cytokine responses. *Virus Res* 2004; **103**: 107-113 [PMID: 15163498 DOI: 10.1016/j.virusres.2004.02.022]

23 **Long JX**, Peng DX, Liu YL, Wu YT, Liu XF. Virulence of H5N1 avian influenza virus enhanced by a 15-nucleotide deletion in the viral nonstructural gene. *Virus Genes* 2008; **36**: 471-478 [PMID: 18317917 DOI: 10.1007/s11262-007-0187-8]

24 **Shinya K**, Hamm S, Hatta M, Ito H, Ito T, Kawaoka Y. PB2 amino acid at position 627 affects replicative efficiency, but not cell tropism, of Hong Kong H5N1 influenza A viruses in mice. *Virology* 2004; **320**: 258-266 [PMID: 15016548 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol]

25 **Subbarao K**, Shaw MW. Molecular aspects of avian influenza (H5N1) viruses isolated from humans. *Rev Med Virol* 2000; **10**: 337-348 [PMID: 11015744 DOI: 10.1002/1099-1654(200009/10)10:5<337::AID-RMV292>3.0.CO;2-V]

26 **Massin P**, van der Werf S, Naffakh N. Residue 627 of PB2 is a determinant of cold sensitivity in RNA replication of avian influenza viruses. *J Virol* 2001; **75**: 5398-5404 [PMID: 11333924 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.75.11.5398-5404.2001]

27 **Lee MS**, Deng MC, Lin YJ, Chang CY, Shieh HK, Shiau JZ, Huang CC. Characterization of an H5N1 avian influenza virus from Taiwan. *Vet Microbiol* 2007; **124**: 193-201 [PMID: 17512143 DOI: 10.1016/j.vetmic.2007.04.021]

28 **Steel J**, Lowen AC, Mubareka S, Palese P. Transmission of influenza virus in a mammalian host is increased by PB2 amino acids 627K or 627E/701N. *PLoS Pathog* 2009; **5**: e1000252 [PMID: 19119420 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000252]

29 **Jiao P**, Tian G, Li Y, Deng G, Jiang Y, Liu C, Liu W, Bu Z, Kawaoka Y, Chen H. A single-amino-acid substitution in the NS1 protein changes the pathogenicity of H5N1 avian influenza viruses in mice. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 1146-1154 [PMID: 18032512 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01698-07]

30 **Min JY**, Li S, Sen GC, Krug RM. A site on the influenza A virus NS1 protein mediates both inhibition of PKR activation and temporal regulation of viral RNA synthesis. *Virology* 2007; **363**: 236-243 [PMID: 17320139]

31 **Bornholdt ZA**, Prasad BV. X-ray structure of NS1 from a highly pathogenic H5N1 influenza virus. *Nature* 2008; **456**: 985-988 [PMID: 18987632 DOI: 10.1038/nature07444]

32 **Dankar SK**, Wang S, Ping J, Forbes NE, Keleta L, Li Y, Brown EG. Influenza A virus NS1 gene mutations F103L and M106I increase replication and virulence. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 13 [PMID: 21226922 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-13]

33 **Steidle S**, Martínez-Sobrido L, Mordstein M, Lienenklaus S, García-Sastre A, Stäheli P, Kochs G. Glycine 184 in nonstructural protein NS1 determines the virulence of influenza A virus strain PR8 without affecting the host interferon response. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 12761-12770 [PMID: 20926573 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00701-10]

34 **Belshe RB**, Smith MH, Hall CB, Betts R, Hay AJ. Genetic basis of resistance to rimantadine emerging during treatment of influenza virus infection. *J Virol* 1988; **62**: 1508-1512 [PMID: 3282079]

35 **Schnell JR**, Chou JJ. Structure and mechanism of the M2 proton channel of influenza A virus. *Nature* 2008; **451**: 591-595 [PMID: 18235503 DOI: 10.1038/nature06531]

36 **De Filette M**, Fiers W, Martens W, Birkett A, Ramne A, Löwenadler B, Lycke N, Jou WM, Saelens X. Improved design and intranasal delivery of an M2e-based human influenza A vaccine. *Vaccine* 2006; **24**: 6597-6601 [PMID: 16814430 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.05.082]

37 **Betakova T**. M2 protein-a proton channel of influenza A virus. *Curr Pharm Des* 2007; **13**: 3231-3235 [PMID: 18045172 DOI: 10.2174/138161207782341295]

38 **Abdel-Moneim AS**, Abdel-Ghany AE, Shany SA. Isolation and characterization of highly pathogenic avian influenza virus subtype H5N1 from donkeys. *J Biomed Sci* 2010; **17**: 25 [PMID: 20398268 DOI: 10.1186/1423-0127-17-25]

39 **Abdel-Moneim AS**, Shehab GM, Abu-Elsaad AA. Molecular evolution of the six internal genes of H5N1 equine influenza A virus. *Arch Virol* 2011; **156**: 1257-1262 [PMID: 21431346 DOI: 10.1007/s00705-011-0966-3]

40 **Abdel-Moneim AS**, Afifi MA, El-Kady MF. Isolation and mutation trend analysis of influenza A virus subtype H9N2 in Egypt. *Virol J* 2012; **9**: 173 [PMID: 22925485 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-9-173]

P- Reviewers: Borgmann S, John JM, Liu XY **S- Editor:** Ma YJ
L- Editor: Roemmele A **E- Editor:** Wang CH

百世登
Baishideng®

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited**
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza, 315-321 Lockhart Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-65557188
Telephone: +852-31779906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com